ERINDALE COLLEGE
3 1761 03401 8150

HANDBOUND
AT THE
UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS

LIBRARY
ROYAL ONTARIO MUSEUM
100 QUEEN'S PARK
TORONTO - CANADA
M5S 2C6

Ret'd to:

Erindale

Date Ret'd:

Aug 28/92.

FRONTISPIECE.

A Man at Arms in Plate Armour mounted on a Barded Horse; and an Archer, with his Bow, Arrows, & Leaden Mallet.

MILITARY ANTIQUITIES

RESPECTING

A HISTORY

OF

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

FROM

THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.

By Francis Grose Esq.r F.A.S.

A new Edition with material additions & improvements.

VOL. I.

London. Printed for T. Egerton, Whitehall; & G. Kearsley, Fleet Street

1801.

TEMPLE
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

PREFACE

TO THIS EDITION.

THESE Military Antiquities reſpecting a Hiſtory of the Engliſh Army firſt appeared in 1786. The former edition was received by the Public as one of thoſe works of rare merit which claim a place in every well-ſelected library; and for ſome time paſt the bookſellers' ſhops have been without a copy. This new edition, it may be hoped, will not be leſs acceptable, at a time when the minds of men have a greater tendency towards ſuch inveſtigations, and when the military ſpirit of the nation, now revived, burns with as much ardour as in the days of chivalry under our princes of the Norman race, or the Plantagenets.

It is not, however, to profeſſional men only that this Work will be found valuable. It cannot leſs intereſt the curioſity of the general reader, as it tends greatly to illuſtrate our hiſtory; and indeed affords to hiſtorians themſelves a copious fund of information.

The antiquities collected by the Author on this ſubject take a ſtill wider range. They are not merely confined to Britain, but relate, in a great meaſure, to the military ſyſtem of a conſiderable part of Europe for ſeveral centuries. Nor is this Hiſtory, as far as it particularly reſpects England, the annals of an army of a ſecondary rate, nor of a ſervice eclipſed by the ſuperior brilliancy and utility of another: it is the Hiſtory of an Army which, at ſeveral æras, held a pre-eminent rank among the European nations, and ſcarcely at any time was inferior to thoſe of its moſt warlike neighbours.

Mr. GROSE, the Author of this Hiſtory (though his diffidence would not allow him to give it that title,) was peculiarly qualified for ſuch a work. He had entered the army early in life, and had ſerved ſucceſſively in the Cavalry, the Infantry, and the Militia. He was adjutant and paymaſter of his laſt regiment, had officiated often as deputy judge advocate, and beſides being an excellent draughtſman, had conſiderable know-

[Printed by T. Daviſon, Whitefriars.]

ledge as an engineer. His induſtry in the purſuit of his object was indefatigable; and his profound knowledge of antiquities has been ſufficiently proved by former publications. He had been the greateſt part of his life collecting the materials for theſe volumes; and he had free acceſs to the repoſitories of our antient and modern weapons, armour, and ordnance. Though at the cloſe of his work he modeſtly intimates a wiſh that ſome perſon of greater ability would take up the ſubject, it does not appear that there is, or has been, any one more able to do it juſtice *.

The principal defect of the laſt edition was the want of arrangement and method, which cauſed a certain degree of confuſion, and made the work ſeem void of chronological order. This the Editor has endeavoured to remedy in the preſent edition, by a diviſion of the whole into diſtinct chapters. Some errors, which will unavoidably find their way into every original work, have been corrected; and the hiſtory, which in no part reached later than 1785, *has been brought down to the preſent year,* 1800.

It was not the wiſh of the Editor to add to the Author's reſearches into antiquities, which are already ſo ample.

The period between the year when the Author left off, and that to which the work is now brought, is but a ſhort one; yet in thoſe fifteen years our military inſtitutions have undergone very material changes. Where the New Regulations partake too much of detail, the Reader, after ſome ſlight notice in the text, will often find them in the Appendix: and to this part of the Book the Editor has thought it proper to aſſign ſome articles, that were rather too prolix in the laſt Edition. Some other parts are compreſſed, the Editor truſts, without injury to the Author, and he is ſure with advantage to the Reader.

This compreſſion has enabled the Publiſher to add to the Work the Treatiſe on Antient Armour and Weapons, which was written about the ſame time by the Author; ſo that both are now comprehended in Two Quarto Volumes.

The following Advertiſement was prefixed by the Author to the Firſt Edition.

---

* Francis Grose, Eſq. the author of theſe volumes, of the Antiquities of England and Wales, &c. died at Dublin, in an apoplectic fit, on the 12th of May, 1791, in the 52d year of his age.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE deſign of this Work being to give an hiſtorical and chronological detail of the different conſtituent parts of the Engliſh Army, from the conqueſt to the preſent time, with the various changes they have ſucceſſively undergone; for the ſake of method, they will be arranged, and conſidered under the following heads:

A BRIEF account of the Anglo-Saxon Army before the battle of Haſtings. The general outlines of that part of the feudal ſyſtem which reſpects military ſervice, inſtituted by William I. The conſtitutional force of this kingdom ſhortly after the Norman invaſion, with the ſubſequent regulations relative thereto. Of ſtipendiary or mercenary troops. Of troops, proviſion, and munition, levied by the Royal Prerogative.

THE modes of ſummoning the military tenants. The forms of aſſembling the poſſe comitatus. Of embodying and arming the clergy. Commiſſion of array. Methods of engaging for troops by

indenture, and other occaſional expedients practiſed for levying ſoldiers in caſes of emergency.

The different kinds of troops of which our armies have from time to time been compoſed. Their arms offenſive and defenſive, the diviſion of the antient forces into troops and companies, the number and denomination of their officers, with the ſucceſſive alterations to the preſent time.

The general, field and ſtaff officers of different ranks. The antient manner of muſtering the troops, and appreciating the horſes of the cavalry, with the prices allowed for them.

The pay of the officers and ſoldiers at different periods. Clothing, quarters, caſtrametation, colours, ſtandards, and military muſic; exerciſe, evolutions and manœuvres.

Artillery. The antient machines uſed for projecting darts and ſtones, their conſtruction, power, and ranges. The machines impelled by human force. Thoſe contrived for covering troops employed in a ſiege. The Greek fire and other artificial fireworks. Gunpowder, with an inveſtigation of the time when and by whom it was invented. Proportions obſerved at different times in the materials of which it is compounded. The invention of cannons and mortars, with their improvements. The introduction of handguns of different ſorts and denominations.

Fortification. The antient manner of attack and defence of

towns, forts, and caſtles, before the uſe of gunpowder; alterations and improvements ſince that invention. Mines and infernals.

Administration of juſtice, and the various manners of trying military delinquents. The military laws and ordonnances of different reigns. Obſervations on the preſent articles of war. Military rewards and puniſhments.

The laws and cuſtoms reſpecting priſoners of war, their parole, and ranſom.

These are the different articles under which the author propoſes to conduct his enquiry; an undertaking it muſt be confeſſed of no ſmall magnitude; but as the due execution of it will depend more on induſtry than genius, he flatters himſelf a degree of patience and application, a great liking for the ſubject, and many years practical experience in divers branches of it, will enable him to complete his undertaking, if not in a manner equal to his wiſhes, at leaſt ſo as to eſcape the accuſation of temerity for the attempt; and he farther hopes that his endeavours may excite ſome more able writer to take up the ſubject.

It may be neceſſary to obſerve, that although the number of references to cuſtoms and uſages obſerved in France, brought as proofs of like practices in England, may at firſt ſight be deemed incompetent evidence; yet when it is conſidered that the Conqueror would, undoubtedly, with the feudal ſyſtem, introduce all the other Norman cuſtoms into his Engliſh army; and when we recollect the intimate

connection that long ſubſiſted between the two nations, and that moſt of our great barons were formerly poſſeſſed of eſtates and ſeigneuries in both countries, with the number of French troops that ſerved in the Engliſh armies, this objection will vaniſh, and the propriety of the introduction become apparent. Indeed the ſimilarity of military uſages was not confined to France and England; the number of different nations aſſembled by the cruſades could not fail of making the military cuſtoms, arms, machines, and diſcipline, pretty much alike throughout Europe.

As many records and other authorities are recited in ſupport of aſſertions, in which the mere word of the Author ought not to be taken as ſufficient proof, ſuch of them as cannot be conveniently inſerted in the notes, will be placed at the end of the ſecond volume, under the title of Appendix.

CONTENTS OF THIS VOLUME.

		PAGE
CHAP. I.	*Of the Military Eſtabliſhment under the Feudal Syſtem*	4
II.	*Of the Formation, Progreſs, and preſent Eſtabliſhment, of the National Militia* - - -	20
III.	*Of the Supplementary Militia* - - -	54
IV.	*Of the regular ſtipendiary Forces* - - -	57
V.	*Of the different Kinds of Troops; their Arms, offenſive and defenſive; their Organization and Appointments* - - - - - -	100
VI.	*Of the Method of arranging and muſtering the Troops*	178
VII.	*Of the Staff, Field, and Regimental Officers of different Ranks; with the ſucceſſive Alterations to the preſent Time* - - - - - -	190
VIII.	*Of the Pay of the Engliſh Armies* - - -	271
IX.	*Of the Clothing of the Troops* - - -	323
X.	*Of Quarters* - - - - -	339
XI.	*Of Field Exerciſe and Tactics* - - -	349
XII.	*Of Military Machines and Artillery* - - -	366

DIRECTIONS FOR PLACING THE CUTS.

	PAGE
NORMAN Soldiers - - - - -	101
A Horſeman's Arms, Armour, and Accoutrements - - -	105
Antient Dragoon - - - - - -	111
Horſe-Guard—Light Dragoon - - - - -	112
Officer of Pike-Men - - - - - -	132
A Man at Arms in Plate-Armour, and an Archer (as a Frontiſpiece) -	140
Croſſe Bowe - - - - - - -	148
A Soldier, armed with a Caliver - - - - -	156
Infantry - - - - - - -	161
An Officer and Serjeant of a Highland Regiment - - -	164
Highland Soldiers - - - - - -	166
A Piper of a Highland Regiment - - - - -	168
A Yeoman of the Guard - - - - -	176
Double-armed Man, 2 Plates - - - - -	354
Exerciſe of the Pike, 4 Plates - - - - -	356
Exerciſe of the Muſketeers, 5 Plates - - - -	359
Muſket and Halbert Exerciſe, 2 Plates - - - -	360
Standing and Marching Salutes, 3 Plates - - - -	362
Exerciſe of the Horſe, 6 Plates - - - - -	365
Antient Artillery, 4 Plates - - - - -	367
Onager - - - - - - -	381
Machines for throwing Darts and Stones - - - -	382
Paviſors and a moveable Tower - - - - -	385
Artillery, 4 Plates - - - - - -	398
The Partridges - - - - - -	400
Pierriers, or Pattateros - - - - - -	402
Carts of War, 2 Prints - - - - -	407
The Petard - - - - - - -	408
The Infernal - - - - - - -	410

HISTORY

OF

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

ALTHOUGH in the following work I propoſe to commence my inveſtigations from the period immediately ſucceeding the Norman invaſion, it will throw ſome light on the ſubject, briefly to deſcribe the military eſtabliſhment of the Anglo-Saxons, at, and about the time of that event.

By the Saxon laws, every freeman of an age capable of bearing arms, and not incapacitated by any bodily infirmity, was, in caſe of a foreign invaſion, internal inſurrection, or other emergency, obliged to join the army, that being one of the three ſervices compriſed under the title of the trinoda neceſſitas; theſe were, attending perſonally in war for the defence of the nation, working at, and con-

tributing to the building of the public caſtles and fortreſſes, and repairing bridges and highways.

In forming their armies the following regulations were obſerved: all ſuch as were qualified to bear arms in one family, were led to the field by the head of that family. Every ten families made a tything, which was commanded by the borſholder, in his military capacity ſtyled conductor. Ten tythings conſtituted an hundred; the ſoldiers of each hundred were led by the chief magiſtrate of the hundred, ſometimes called the hundredary. Several hundreds formed a trything (a), which was commanded by the officer called a trything-man; and the force of the county or ſhire was commanded by the hertoch, dux or duke, and he by the king or an officer called the kynings hold, *i. e.* the king's lieutenant or general, which office laſted only during the war. In times of peace, or when the king did not think it neceſſary to have a general, the militia remained under the command of the dukes of each county.

Every landholder was obliged to keep armour and weapons according to his rank and poſſeſſions; theſe he might neither ſell, lend, nor pledge, nor even alienate from his heirs. In order to inſtruct them in the uſe of arms, they had their ſtated times for performing their military exerciſe; and once in a year, uſually in the ſpring, there was a general review of arms, throughout each county.

The clergy were exempted from perſonal military ſervices, not only as being contrary to their profeſſion, but likewiſe that they might the better attend to their religious duties. Their eſtates,

---

(a) Corruptly in Yorkſhire called a ryding, from the ſimilarity of ſound; the eaſt, north, and weſt ridings, really meaning the eaſt, north, and weſt trythings.

This officer was elected by the hundred, at their public court, where they met armed, and every member, as a token of his obedience, touched the weapon of the hundredary; whence theſe courts were called *wapentakes*, a name ſtill kept up in Yorkſhire.

though held in franc almoigne, were however chargeable to the trinoda neceſſitas, the only impoſition to which they were liable.

The greater part of the Anglo-Saxon forces conſiſted of infantry; the cavalry was chiefly compoſed of the Thanes, and ſuch men of property as kept horſes.

The Saxon cavalry are frequently delineated in ancient illuminations as riding without ſtirrups, with no other defenſive armour than a helmet; their weapon a ſpear. It is nevertheleſs certain, that defenſive armour was worn by their officers and great men about the time of the Norman conqueſt.

Their infantry ſeem to have been of two ſorts, the heavy and light armed. The firſt are repreſented with helmets made of the ſkins of beaſts, the hair outwards; large oval convex ſhields, with ſpikes projecting from the boſſes; long and very broad ſwords, and ſpears. The light infantry with ſpears only, and ſome no other weapon than a ſword, beſides which, different hiſtories relate that they alſo uſed clubs, battle-axes, or bills, and javelins; the latter they darted with great dexterity, and then inſtantly came to cloſe fight. The dreſs of both horſe and foot was a tunic with ſleeves, the ſkirts reaching down to the knees: the horſemen wore ſpurs with only one point.

The kings commonly wore their crowns in battle, which alſo in ſome meaſure anſwered the purpoſe of a helmet.

The Anglo-Saxon mode of drawing up their armies was in one large denſe body, ſurrounding their ſtandard, and placing their foot with their heavy battle-axes in the front.

By the laws of King Edward the Confeſſor, any man who from cowardice abandoned his lord, or fellow-ſoldiers, whilſt under the command of the hertoch, in any expedition by land or ſea, forfeited both his life and property, and his lord might reſume any lands he had formerly granted him. Of him who was ſlain in war-fighting before his lord, either at home or abroad, all payments due for reliefs on his eſtates were remitted to his heirs, who were to enjoy his lands and money without any diminution, and might divide it among them.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Military Eſtabliſhment under the Feudal Syſtem.

THE introduction of the feudal ſyſtem, which took place in this kingdom about the year 1086, gave a very conſiderable change to the military eſtabliſhment of the nation. This alteration in the conſtitution was not, it is ſaid, effected by the ſole power of King William, but was adopted with the conſent of the great council of the realm, aſſembled at Sarum, where all the principal land-holders ſubjected their poſſeſſions to military ſervices, became the king's vaſſals and did homage, and ſwore fealty to his perſon for the lands held of him as ſuperior lord and original proprietor. But when it is conſidered, that the great land-holders at that meeting were moſt of them Normans, the friends and followers of the king, on whom he had beſtowed the eſtates taken from the Engliſh; the ſuffrage of ſuch an aſſembly, though freely obtained, will ſcarce juſtify the meaſure being deemed a national choice.

BY this ſyſtem all the lands of the realm were conſidered as divided into certain portions, each producing an annual revenue, ſtyled a knight's fee. Our ancient lawyers are not agreed as to the quantity of land or ſum of money of which it conſiſted; it indeed ſeems to have varied at different periods: however in the reigns of Henry II. and Edward II. a knight's fee was ſtated at 20l. per annum; the number of knights' fees in this kingdom was eſtimated at ſixty thouſand.

BY the feudal law, every tenant in capite, that is, every perſon holding immediately from the king the quantity of land amounting

to a knight's fee, was bound to hold himſelf in readineſs, with horſe and arms, to ſerve the king in his wars, either at home or abroad, at his own expence, for a ſtated time, generally forty days in a year (d), to be reckoned from the time of joining the army. Perſons holding more or leſs, were bound to do duty in proportion to their tenures; thus, one poſſeſſed of but half a fee, was to perform ſervice for twenty days only (e). The lands of the church were not exempt, but eccleſiaſtics were generally indulged with performing their ſervice by deputies. Although ſometimes their perſonal appearance was inſiſted on, poſſibly from a ſuppoſition that their preſence with the army would give a confidence to the ſoldiers, and a ſanction to the cauſe, effects not unlikely in thoſe days of ſuperſtition; or perhaps the inſtance here particularly alluded to, was occaſioned by ſome new contrivance of the clergy, to avoid the performance of their military ſervices, by calling a convocation (f).

(d) OMNES comites et barones, et milites, et ſervientes, et univerſi liberi homines totius regni noſtri prædicti, habeant & teneant ſe ſemper bene in armis et in equis, ut decet et oportet: et ſint ſemper prompti et bene parati ad ſervitium ſuum integrum nobis explendum et peragendum cum opus fuerit; ſecundum quod nobis debent de fœdis et tenementis ſuis de jure facere; et ſicut illis ſtatuimus per commune concilium totius regni noſtri prædicti. Cap. 58, Wilk. 228.

(e) KNIGHTS' fees were often divided into many parts, ſome tenants in chief holding only a fourth, or an eighth part; and an inſtance occurs of a tenant in capite, enfeoffed after the death of Henry I. who had only one twentieth. Theſe ſmall tenancies are ſuppoſed to have ariſen from the deſire of holding in chief of the crown, though by ever ſo ſmall a fief, on account of the honour and ſuperior protection annexed to that tenure.

(f) AN inſtance of this happened in the 41ſt of Hen. III. as appears by the following writ, printed in Rymer's Fœdera, which, as it ſeems extremely ſingular, is here given at length. Rex H. Linc. Epiſcopo ſalutem. Cum pro exercitu noſtro, cum quo tendimus ad partes Ceſtriæ contra Wallenſes inimicos noſtros, vos et omnes alios prælatos & magnates regni noſtri fecerimus ſummoneri, ad eundem nobiſcum cum toto ſervitio ſuo, nobis debito, pro defenſione terræ noſtræ contra prædictos Wallenſes. Et archiepiſcopos Cantuarienſis quondam convocationem epiſcoporum fieri fecit London, in octabri aſſumptionis

Beatæ

The ſervice being accompliſhed, the tenant was at liberty to return home; if he or his followers afterwards continued to ſerve with the army, they were paid by the king: certificates from the conſtable or marſhal were ſometimes required, in proof that a knight had duly performed his ſervice.

If a tenant in capite, or knight, could not perform his ſervice in perſon, through ſickneſs, being a minor, or any other cauſe, he obtained leave to ſend ſome able perſon in his ſtead, an indulgence for which it was often neceſſary to fine to the king; a fine being in the language of thoſe days, not only an amercement for an offence, but alſo the price of a favour. Our records afford ſeveral inſtances, wherein feudal tenants unable to bear arms, were by proclamation directed to find unexceptionable perſons to perform their ſervices for them (g).

Beatæ Mariæ ut audivimus; quæ quidem convocatio, aut alii tractatus vel concilia, nobis exiſtentibus & agentibus in exercitu noſtro, fieri non debent, eo quo ſinguli, *tam prælati quam allii in propriis perſonis venire debeant* ad defenſionem coronæ et regni noſtri, & per abſentiam eorundem grave nobis & terræ noſtræ periculæ poſſet imminire; inhibuimus diſtricte præfato archiepiſcopo, ne dictam convocationem faciat, ſed convocationem illam, dum fuerimus in exercitu noſtro, revocat & ſuſpendat.

Unde ſub debiti fidelitatis qua nobis tenemini & forisfactura terrarum & tenamentorum, quæ in regno noſtro tenetis, vobis diſtricte prohibemus ne ad convocationem hujuſmodi, dum fuerimus in exercitu noſtro, accedere præſumatis, ſed ad nos verſus Walliam pro defenſionem noſtra et terræ noſtræ contra prædictos Wallenſes ſine moræ diſpeudie veniatis, ſervitium veſtrum nobis debitum *perſonalites* impenſuri, ne pro defectu veſtri, exhæredationem perpetuam patiamur. Teſte meipſo apud Wodeſt. 19 die Julii.

Eodum modo mandatum eſt aliis epiſcopis Cantuar. provinciæ in Anglia exiſtentibus.

Et mandatum eſt officialibus epiſcoporum ejuſdem provinciæ agentium in partibus tranſmarinis, quod ad convocationem prædictam non accedant, ſed ſub amiſſione omnium terrarum dominorum ſuorum mittent regia ſervitia, quæ domino ſuo regi debent.

(g) A. D. 1294, 22d Ed. I. that king granted a commiſſion to the biſhop of Bath and Wells, appointing him, with the barons of the exchequer, to receive fines to his uſe, according to their direction, from archbiſhops, biſhops, abbots, priors, and other religious and eccleſiaſtical perſons, ladies, widows, and other women, in lieu of military ſervice

As a tenant who held ſeveral knights' fees could not do the ſervice of more than one in his perſon, he might diſcharge the others by able ſubſtitutes being knights, or by two eſquires, ſometimes ſtyled ſervientes, in lieu of each knight (h).

Sometimes the king compounded with his tenants for particular ſervices, and ſometimes for thoſe of the whole year, accepting in lieu thereof pecuniary payments, with which he hired ſtipendiary troops: this is generally ſuppoſed to have introduced the practice of levying ſcutages, firſt begun by King Henry II. (i). The puniſhment

---

ſervice in the preſent expedition to Gaſcony. Rymer. And anno 1303, 31ſt of the ſame reign, that king having ſummoned his feudal tenants to aſſemble at Berwick, in order to go againſt the Scots, commanded the ſheriffs to proclaim publicly, that ſuch prelates, or women, as were willing to pay fines in lieu of perſonal ſervice, ſhould come before the barons of the exchequer, the morrow of the Aſcenſion of our Lord next enſuing, or ſooner if poſſible, at York, or ſend ſome one for them, in order to fine for their ſaid ſervices, there to pay at the rate of 20l. for one knight's fee, otherwiſe to attend and perform their ſervices. See Rymer in anno.

(h) In the reign of Edward I. the biſhop of Hereford did his ſervices for five knights' fees, by two knights, and ſix eſquires, each knight being eſtimated equal to two eſquires. *Madox Baron.* l. 1, c. 5, p. 9.

(i) The other ancient levies were in the nature of a modern land-tax, for we may trace the original of that charge as high as the introduction of our military tenures; when every tenant of a knight's fee was bound, if called upon, to attend the king in his army for forty days in every year. But this perſonal attendance growing troubleſome in many reſpects, the tenants found means of compounding for it, by firſt ſending others in their ſtead, and in proceſs of time, by making a pecuniary ſatisfaction to the crown in lieu of it. This pecuniary ſatisfaction at laſt came to be levied by aſſeſſments, at ſo much every knight's fee, under the name of ſcutages: which appear to have been levied for the firſt time in the fifth year of Henry II. on account of his expedition to Thouloufe, and were then (I apprehend) mere arbitrary compoſitions, as the king and the ſubject could agree; but this precedent being afterwards abuſed into a means of oppreſſion, by levying ſcutages on the landholders by the royal authority only, whenever our kings went to war, in order to hire mercenary troops, and pay their contingent expences; it became therefore a matter of national complaint, and King John was obliged to promiſe in his magna charta,

for non-attendance, when duly ſummoned, was a heavy fine (k) or forfeiture of the tenure (l).

THE tenants in capite, in order to find ſubſtitutes for thoſe fees for which they could not ſerve themſelves, made under-grants to their favourites and dependents, liable to the ſame conditions as thoſe on which they held them from the crown, namely fealty and homage, and that their tenant ſhould attend them to the wars, when they ſhould be called upon by the king, there to ſerve for a ſtated time at their own expence, properly armed and mounted: theſe again had their under-tenants and vaſſals. Men at arms, or knights, were generally attended by their tenants and vaſſals, both on horſeback and on foot; theſe ſerved in the infantry either as archers or bill-men.

THE conſtitutional military force of England, ſoon after the conqueſt, conſiſted of the feudal troops and the poſſe comitatus.

THE feudal troops were either the perſons who held lands in capite (m), that is immediately of the crown, or their vaſſals and

---

charta, that no ſcutage ſhould be impoſed without the conſent of the common council of the realm. This clauſe was indeed omitted in the charters of Henry III. where we only find it ſtipulated, that ſcutages ſhall be taken as they were uſed to be in the time of King Henry II. yet afterwards by a variety of ſtatutes under Edward I. and his grandſon, it was provided, that the king ſhall not take any aids or taſks, any tailliage or tax, but by the common aſſent of the great men and commons in parliament. *Blackſtone's Commentaries*, vol. 1, p. 299, octavo.

(k) AN hundred marks was the fine impoſed on two defaulters of this kind. William de Haſtings, and William biſhop of Wincheſter, the firſt in the reign of Richard I. the ſecond in the 30th of Henry III. See *Madox's Hiſtory of the Exchequer*.

(l) MATHEW TURPIN was diſſeiſed of his land and ſerjeantry in Wanterlow, becauſe he was not in the king's ſervice beyond ſea. Mag. Rot. 1ſt of John, Rot. 13, f. Wilts. And Duncan de Locals was diſſeiſed of three knights' fees and a half, for non-attendance in Scotland. Mag. Rot. 12, John 2. b. Many other inſtances occur in our records.

(m) BY the ſtatute of the 11th of Henry VIII. every perſon bearing an office, fee, or annuity of the king's grant, was bound to attend him perſonally whenever he went himſelf to the wars (except certain privileged perſons mentioned in the act, or ſuch as had the king's licence, or were prevented by ſome juſt cauſe), on pain to forfeit ſuch office, fee, and annuity.

under-tenants, both of whom were, as has before been obſerved, obliged by their tenures to attend the king and their lords to the wars, at home or abroad, completely armed and mounted, for forty days in a year, or according to the value of the fees held by them.

The poſſe comitatus, or power of the county, included every free man above the age of fifteen, and under that of ſixty, and although the chief deſtination of this eſtabliſhment was to preſerve the peace under the command of the ſheriff, they were alſo, in caſe of hoſtile invaſions, called out to defend the country, and repel the enemy (n). The poſſe comitatus differed from the feudal troops in this; they were only liable to be called out in caſe of internal commotions, or actual invaſions, on which occaſions only they could legally be marched out of their reſpective counties, and in no caſe out of the kingdom (o); whereas the feudal troops were ſubject to foreign ſervice at the king's pleaſure. That this body of men might be ready to take the field, the following law was enacted by Henry II. A. D. 1181, in the 27th year of his reign; which was in ſubſtance ſimilar to that mentioned in treating of the military eſtabliſhment before the battle of Haſtings.

Whosoever holds one knight's fee ſhall have a coat of mail, a helmet, a ſhield and a lance; and every knight as many coats of

---

(n) He (the ſheriff) is alſo to defend his county againſt any of the king's enemies, when they come into the land, and for that purpoſe, as well as for the keeping of the peace and purſuing of felons, he may command all the people of his county to attend him; which is called the poſſe comitatus, or power of the county; which ſummons every perſon above fifteen years old, and under the degree of a peer, is bound to attend upon warning, under pain of fine and impriſonment. *Blackſtone's Commentaries*, vol. I. p. 332. 8vo.

(o) Item le Roy voet deformes nul ſoit charge de ſoi armer, autrement quil ne ſoleit en temps de ces aunceſtres Roys d' Engleterre. Et que nul ſoient diſtreintz daler hors de leur countez, ſi non par cauſe de neceſſite de ſodeyne venue des eſtraunges enemys en roialme et adonques ſoit fait come ad eſte fait avant ces heures par defens du roialme. Stat. 1. Ed. 3d. cap. 5.

mail (p), helmets, ſhields, and lances, as he ſhall have knights' fees in his domain.

EVERY free layman having in chattels or rent to the value of ſixteen marks, ſhall keep a coat of mail, a helmet, a ſhield, and a lance.

EVERY free layman who ſhall have in chattels or rent ten marks, ſhall have a habergon (q), a chapelet of iron, and a lance.

ALSO all burgeſſes and the whole community of freemen ſhall have a wambais (r), a chaplet of iron, and a lance.

EVERY one of theſe (before-mentioned) ſhall ſwear that he will have theſe arms before the feaſt of St. Hilary, and will bear fealty to King Henry, to wit, the ſon of the Empreſs Matilda; and that he will keep theſe arms for his ſervice according to his command, and with fidelity to our lord the king and his realm: and no man having theſe arms ſhall ſell, pledge, nor lend them, nor alienate them in any other manner; nor ſhall the lord take them from his vaſſal by forfeiture, gift, pledge, or any other manner.

ON the death of any one having theſe arms, they ſhall remain to his heir; and if the ſaid heir is not of ſuch age as to be able to uſe arms, they ſhall, if neceſſary, be put into the cuſtody of him who has the guardianſhip of his perſon, who ſhall provide a man to uſe them in the ſervice of our lord the king, if required, until the heir ſhall be of proper age to bear arms, and then they ſhall be delivered to him.

ANY burgeſs having more arms than he is by this aſſize required

---

(p) LORICA. A coat of mail either compoſed of ringlets of iron or ſmall plates like ſcales, ſewed on leather, ſo as to lap over each other.

(q) HALBERGELLUM et capelet ferri. The halbergellum or haubergeon was a ſmall coat, compoſed either of plate or chain mail, without ſleeves; the chaplet an iron ſcull cap, commonly without viſor or bever.

(r) WAMBAIS, &c. Doublets compoſed of many folds of linen, ſtuffed with cotton, wool, or hair, and commonly covered with leather.

to have, ſhall ſell or give them, or ſo alienate them, that they may be retained for the ſervice of our lord the king of England; and none of them ſhall keep more arms than he is by this aſſize bound to have.

No Jew ſhall have in his cuſtody a coat of mail or habergeon, but ſhall ſell or give it away, or in ſome other manner ſo diſpoſe of it, that it ſhall remain in the king's ſervice.

Also, no man ſhall carry arms out of the kingdom, unleſs by the command of our lord the king, nor ſhall any man ſell arms to another, who means to carry them out of the kingdom.

By other parts of this law, it was directed, that juries ſhould be appointed in the hundreds and boroughs of every county, to diſcover who had chattels or rent to the value expreſſed therein; on which inqueſt no perſon who had not chattels to the value of ſixteen marks, or ten at leaſt, was to ſerve. The king's juſtices in their circuits were required to enrol the names of the jurors, and of thoſe who ſhould be found to have chattels or rents to the value above mentioned, after which they were to cauſe this aſſize to be publicly read, and all the perſons concerned were to be ſworn to obſerve it in all points.

And if it happened that any one of thoſe who ought to have theſe arms was not in his county at the time the juſtices were there, they were directed to appoint another time and county for his appearance; and if he did not come to them in any of the counties through which they paſſed, they were in that caſe to appoint him a time at Weſtminſter, at the octaves of St. Michael, then to attend and take his oath, as he loved himſelf and all that belonged to him; and he was likewiſe to be commanded to have, before the feaſt of St. Hilary, arms ſuch as he was by law bound to poſſeſs.

Also the juſtices were enjoined to cauſe it to be notified over all the counties through which they were to paſs, that thoſe who had not theſe arms as aforeſaid, the king would puniſh corporally in their limbs, and not in their goods, their lands, or chattels.

Also none might act as jurors reſpecting legal and freemen, who hath not ſixteen marcs in land, or ten marcs in chattels.

Also the juſtices to command in all the counties by which they ſhould paſs, that no one as he loved himſelf, and all that belonged to him, ſhould buy or ſell any ſhip, to be taken out of England; and the king commanded that none but a freeman ſhould be admitted to take the oath of arms.

This regulation, or aſſize, received a farther corroboration, by the ſtatute of the 13th of King Edward I. called the ſtatute of Wincheſter, by which every man was bound to provide and keep armour and weapons, according to his eſtate or goods.

The armour and weapons directed by the ſtatute of Wincheſter, to be kept by perſons of different poſſeſſions, were thus allotted: every one poſſeſſed of lands to the yearly value of fifteen pounds, and forty marks in goods, to keep a haubergeon, an iron headpiece, a ſword, knife, and horſe. Thoſe having from ten and under fifteen pounds in lands and chattels, or the value of forty marks, the ſame as the preceding claſs, the horſe excepted. Perſons having an hundred ſhillings per annum in land, and upwards, were to keep a doublet, a headpiece of iron, a ſword, and a knife. And from forty ſhillings annual rent in land, and upwards, to one hundred, a ſword, bow and arrows, and a knife. He that had under forty ſhillings in land, was ſworn to keep faulchions, giſarmes, daggers, and other ſmall arms. Perſons poſſeſſing leſs than twenty marks in chattels, to have ſwords, daggers, and other inferior weapons; and all others authoriſed to keep bows and arrows, might have them out of the foreſts. A review of theſe arms was to be made twice a-year, by two conſtables out of every hundred, who were to report defaulters to the juſtices, and they were to preſent them to the king in parliament. This ſtatute was repealed in the firſt of Philip and Mary, and another enacted, wherein armour and weapons of more modern date were inſerted.

By that act it was provided that all temporal perſons, having eſtates of a thouſand pounds or upwards, ſhould from the 1ſt of May, 1588, keep ſix horſes or geldings fit for mounting demi-launces, three of them at leaſt to have ſufficient harneſs, ſteel ſad-

dles (s) and weapons requiſite and appertaining to the ſaid demi-launces, horſes or geldings; and ten light horſes or geldings, with the weapons and harneſs requiſite for light-horſemen; alſo forty corſelets furniſhed (t), forty almaine rivetts (u), or inſtead of the ſaid forty almaine rivetts, forty coates of plate (x), corſelets or brigandines (y) furniſhed; forty pikes, thirty long bowes, thirty ſheafs of arrowes (z), thirty ſteele cappes or ſculles (a), twenty black bills (b) or halberts, twenty haquebuts (c), and twenty morians (d), or ſallets (e).

(s) SADDLES whoſe burrs or bowe were covered with ſteel.

(t) THE corſelet was a ſpecies of armour chiefly worn by pikemen, who were thence often denominated corſelets; ſtrictly ſpeaking, the word corſelet meant only that part which covered the body, but was generally uſed to expreſs the whole ſuit, under the term of a corſelet furniſhed or complete; this included the head-piece and gorget, the back and breaſt, with ſkirts of iron called taſſes or taſſets covering the thighs.

(u) ALAMAINE rivetts were probably coats of armour made flexible by means of rivetts, invented in or imported from Germany.

(x) COATS of plate were made of thin plates of iron.

(y) BRIGANDINES took their name from the troops by whom they were firſt worn, theſe were called Brigans; they were a kind of light-armed irregular foot, much addicted to plunder, frequently mentioned by Froiſſart: from their irregularities, the appellation of brigands was uſed in common to ſignify all ſorts of freebooters. The brigandine was compoſed of a number of ſmall plates of iron ſewed upon quilted linen or leather through a ſmall hole in the center of each plate, their edges laid over each other, like tiles or the ſcales of a fiſh. Theſe ſcales were covered over with leather or cloth, ſo as to have the appearance of common coats; they were proof againſt the ſtroke of a ſword, or puſh of a pike, and yet extremely pliable to every motion of the body.

(z) A SHEAF contained twenty-four arrows.

(a) THE ſcull was a head-piece reſembling a bowl, or a baſon.

(b) A BLACK bill was a ſpecies of halbert, not commonly kept bright, whence they were called black and ſometimes brown bills.

(c) HAQUEBUT, a hand-gun, called haque or hook-but, from its ſtock being hooked or bent.

(d) A MORION was commonly an open helmet without viſor or bever, worn by the harquebuſiers and muſketteers; Guillim ſays, it took its name of morion from being commonly worn by the Moors.

(e) SALLETS or celates were head-pieces without creſts, ſometimes having a viſor, and ſometimes without one.

Temporal perſons having eſtates to the value of 1000 marks and upwards, and under the clear yearly value of 1000l. to maintain four horſes or geldings for demi-launces, whereof two, at the leaſt, to be horſes; with ſufficient weapons, ſaddles, meete and requiſite to the ſaid demi-launces; ſix light horſes, with furniture, &c. neceſſary for the ſame, thirty corſelets furniſhed, thirty almaine rivetts, or in lieu thereof, thirty coats of plate, corſelets, or brigandines furniſhed; thirty pikes, twenty long bowes, twenty ſheafs of arrowes, twenty ſteel caps or ſculls, ten black bills or halberts, ten haquebuts and ten morians or ſallets.

Every temporal perſon having 400l. per annum, and under the clear yearly value of 1000 marks, to keep two horſes, or one horſe and one gelding; for light horſes, twenty corſelets furniſhed, twenty almaine rivetts furniſhed, or inſtead thereof, twenty coats of plate, corſelets, or brigandines furniſhed; twenty pikes, fifteen long bowes, fifteen ſheafs of arrowes, fifteen ſteel caps, or ſculls, ſix haquebuts, and ſix morians, or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having clear 200l. per annum, and under 400l. per annum, one great horſe or gelding fit for a demi-launce, with ſufficient furniture and harneſs, ſteeled ſaddle, &c. two geldings for light horſe, with harneſs and weapons as aforeſaid: ten corſelets furniſhed, ten almaine rivetts, or inſtead thereof, ten coats of plate, corſelets, or brigandines furniſhed, ten pikes, eight long bows, eight ſheafs of arrowes, eight ſteel caps or ſculls, three haquebuts, and three morians or ſallets.

Every temporal perſon, &c. having 100l. or under 200l. per annum, two geldings and furniture, &c. for light horſemen, three corſelets furniſhed, three almaine rivetts, corſelets or brigandines furniſhed, three long pikes, three bowes, three ſheafs of arrowes, three ſteel caps or ſculls, two haquebuts, and two morians or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having 100 marks and under 100l. per annum, one gelding and furniture for a light horſeman, two corſelets fur-

niſhed, two almaine rivetts, coats of plate or brigandines furniſhed, two pikes, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, two ſteel caps, or ſculls, one haquebut, one morian or ſallet.

Temporal perſons having 40l. or under 100 marks per annum, two corſelets furniſhed, two almaine rivetts, corſelets or brigandines furniſhed; two pikes, one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, one ſteel cap or ſcull, two haquebuts, two morians or ſallets.

Persons having 20l. and under 40l. per annum, one corſelet furniſhed, one pike, one haquebut, one morain or ſallet, one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, and one ſteel cap or ſcull.

Temporal perſons having 10l. and under 20l. per annum, one almaine rivett, a coat of plate or brigandine furniſhed, one haquebut, one morian or ſallet, and one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, and one ſteel cap or ſcull.

Temporal perſons having 5l. and under 10l. per annum, one coat of plate furniſhed, one black bill or halbert, one long bowe, and one ſheaf of arrowes, ſteel cap or ſcull.

Temporal perſons having goods and chattels to the amount of 1000 marks, one horſe or gelding furniſhed for a demi-launce, one gelding furniſhed for a light-horſeman, or eighteen corſelets furniſhed, inſtead of the ſaid horſe and gelding, and furniture of the ſame, at their choice; two corſelets furniſhed, two almaine rivetts, or inſtead thereof two corſelets or two brigandines furniſhed, two pikes, four long bowes, four ſheafs of arrowes, four ſteel caps or ſculls, and three haquebuts, with three morains or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having goods, &c. to the amount of 400l. and above, and under 1000 marks, one gelding for a light-horſeman, properly furniſhed, or inſtead thereof nine corſelets furniſhed at his choice, and one other corſelet furniſhed; one pike, two almaine rivetts, or plate coates, or brigandines furniſhed, one haquebut, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, and two ſteel caps or ſculls.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 200l. and upwards, and under 400l. one corſelet furniſhed, one pike, two almaine rivetts, plate coats, or

brigandines furniſhed; one haquebut, one morian or ſallet, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, and two ſcull or ſteel caps.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 100l. or above, and under 200l one corſelet furniſhed, one pike, one pair of almaine rivetts, one plate coat, or pair of brigandines furniſhed, two long bowes, and two ſheafs of arrowes and two ſculls.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 40l. and under 100l. two pair of almaine rivetts, or two coats of plate or brigandines furniſhed, one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, one ſteel cap or one ſcull, and one black bill or halbert.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 20l. and upwards, and under 40l. one pair of almaine rivetts, or one coat of plate, or one pair of brigandines, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, two ſculls or ſteel caps, and one black bill or halbert.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 10l. and above, and under 20l. one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, with one ſteel cap or ſcull, and one black bill or halbert.

Temporal perſons not charged by this act, having annuities, copyholds, or eſtate of inheritance to the clear yearly value of 30l. or upwards, to be chargeable with furniture of war, according to the proportion appointed for goods and chattels.

And every perſon, who by the act of the 33d of King Hen. VIII. cap. 5. was bound by reaſon, that his wife ſhould wear ſuch kind of apparell, or other thing, as in the ſame ſtatute is mentioned and declared, to keepe or find one great ſtoned trotting horſe, viz. Every perſon temporall, whoſe wife (not being divorced nor willingly abſenting herſelf from him) doth weare any gowne of ſilke, French hood, or bonet of velvet, with any habiliment, paſt, or edge of golde, pearle, or ſtone, or any chaine of golde about her necke, or in her partlet, or in any apparell of her body, except the ſonnes and heirs apparent of dukes, marquiſes, earles, viconts, and barons, and others having hereditaments to the yearly value of 600 marks or above, during the life of their fathers; and wardes having hereditaments of

the yearly value of 200l. and who are not by this act before charged, to have, maintaine, and keep any horſe or gelding; ſhall from the ſaid 1ſt of May, have, keep, and maintaine, one gelding, able and meete for a light-horſeman, with ſufficient harneſs and weapon for the ſame, in ſuch manner and forme, as every perſon having lordſhips, houſes, lands, &c. the clear yearly value of 100 marks is appointed to have.

Any perſon chargeable by this act, who for three whole months from the 1ſt of May, ſhall lack or want the horſes or armour, with which he is charged, ſhall forfeit for every horſe or gelding in which he is deficient, ten pounds: for every demi-launce and furniture, three pounds; for every corſelet and furniture of the ſame, forty ſhillings; and for every almaine rivet, coat of plate, or brigandine and furniture of the ſame, twenty ſhillings; and for every bow and ſheaf of arrows, bill, halbert and hacquebut, ſteel cap, ſcull, morian, and ſallet, ten ſhillings, one half of theſe forfeitures to the king and queen, the other half to the parties ſuing for the ſame.

The inhabitants of all cities, burroughs, towns, pariſhes, &c. other than ſuch as are ſpecially charged before in this act, ſhall keep and maintain at their common charges, ſuch harneis and weapons as ſhall be appointed by the commiſſioners of the king and queen, to be kept in ſuch places as ſhall, by the ſaid commiſſioners, be appointed.

Indentures to be made of the numbers and kinds thereof, between two or more of the ſaid commiſſioners, and twelve, eight, or four, of the principal inhabitants of every ſuch city, burrough, &c. &c. one part to remain with the chief officer of the ſaid city, &c. and the other part with the clerk of the peace of the county.

And if any of the inhabitants ſhall be deficient for three months in any of the articles directed to be found, they ſhall forfeit for every article according to the proportion before mentioned, to be applied and levied as there directed.

The lord chancellor for the time being ſhall have full power to grant commiſſions under the great ſeal of England, to as many juſtices of every ſhire or county as he ſhall deem neceſſary, for making this appointment of horſes and armour. This act not to invalidate

any covenant between a landlord and his tenant for finding of horſes, armour, or weapons.

The juſtices of every county are hereby authoriſed to make ſearch and view from time to time of and for the horſes, armour, &c. to be kept by perſons poſſeſſed of 200l. per ann. and not above 400l. per ann. or to be found by perſons chargeable on account of their goods, chattels, &c. as aforeſaid, and to hear and determine at their quarter ſeſſions every default committed or done, contrary to this act, within the county, and to levy the penalties.

Any ſoldier making ſale of his horſe, harneis, or weapon, or any of them, contrary to the form of the ſtatute made in the ſaid 2d and 3d year of the late king, *i. e.* the 2d and 3d of King Edw. VI. (which ſee in Captains), ſhall incur the penalty of the ſaid ſtatute, and the ſale ſhall be void, the purchaſer knowing him to be a ſoldier.

All preſentments and proſecutions to be within one year after the commiſſion of the offence.

Persons proſecuted for deficiencies of armour may plead their inability to procure it, on account of the want of it within the realm; which plea, if true, ſhall be a ſufficient juſtification; if denied, iſſue to be joined, and the trial of ſuch iſſue, only had by the certificate of the lord chancellor, lord treaſurer, the lord preſident of the council, the lord ſteward of the king's and queen's moſt honourable houſehold, the lord privie ſeal, the lord admiral, and the lord chamberlain of the ſaid houſehold, or by three of them, under their hands and ſeals, &c. &c. this act or any uſage to the contrary notwithſtanding. No perſons to be charged both for lands and goods. This act not to repeal the act of the 33d Henry VIII. for having long bowes and exerciſing archery.

Provided any horſes ſhall die, or be killed, or armour be loſt or expended in the defence of the realm, the owner ſhall not be proſecuted for the deficiency within one year after ſuch loſs.

The want of a gantlet or gantlets ſhall not be reckoned a deficiency for a corſelet.

The ſervants of ſuch perſons as are bound to find haquebut, may exerciſe themſelves in ſhooting at ſuch marks as are limited and ap-

pointed by the 33d of Henry VIII. (which fee in croſs bowes) ſo that they do not uſe ſuch haquebut in any highway. This act not to extend to Wales, Lancaſter, or Cheſter, nor to oblige any one to have or to find a haquebut, but that they may, at their will and pleaſure, have and keep, inſtead of every haquebut charged in this act, one long bowe, and one ſheaf of arrows, over and above ſuch other armour and munition, as is by the laws of the realm appointed (i).

The lord chancellor or lord keeper of the great ſeal may from time to time, by virtue of the king's commiſſion, appoint commiſſioners in every city, borough, &c. &c. as well in England as in Wales, conſiſting of juſtices, with other perſons joined with them, as he ſhall think meet, to take a view of armour, and to aſſign what harneis, &c. they ſhall be bound to provide and keep.

In the reigns of Richard II. Henry VII. and Henry VIII. four military bodies were inſtituted, which are ſtill exiſting; the ſerjeants at arms, the yeomen of the guard, the gentlemen penſioners, and the artillery company; the firſt are entirely degenerated into a civil employment, and ſeveral of the others have retained very little of their ancient military character. An account of their eſtabliſhment ſhall be given under the head of the different ſpecies of troops, of which the Engliſh armies have at various times been compoſed.

During the troubles under King Charles I. the royal army conſiſted chiefly of regiments, raiſed by the nobility and gentry who adhered to the royal cauſe, from among their tenants and dependents. Moſt of the militia, and particularly the trained bands of London, have ſided with the parliamentarians, who likewiſe employed the public money in levying and paying their armies.

(i) This clauſe plainly ſhews that the rulers of thoſe times were not very ſolicitous to introduce the uſe of fire-arms into the nation, but conſidered the long bow as equal to a haquebut.

In a ſet of inſtructions for executing the commiſſion for muſtering and training all manner of perſons, 15 Eliz. 1572, ſubſcribed by the privy council, No. 6844, Harleian MSS. in every hundred footmen, forty are directed to be harquebuſiers, twenty archers, if ſo many can be procured, the remainder to be bill-men, halberdiers, or morris-pykes.

CHAPTER II.

Of the Formation, Progreſs, and preſent Eſtabliſhment, of the National Militia.

AFTER the reſtoration of King Charles II. feudal tenures being aboliſhed by act of parliament, a national militia was eſtabliſhed, wherein houſekeepers, and other ſubſtantial perſons, were bound to find men and horſes, arms, ammunition and pay, each according to their real or perſonal eſtates; which militia was declared by an act of parliament, to be under the immediate orders of the king; a matter that had in the preceding reign been ſtrongly conteſted by the commons, and which had in a great meaſure contributed to that unhappy rupture, which ſo long had deluged this country with blood. By this regulation the king was authoriſed to appoint lieutenants to the ſeveral counties, cities, and places, who with his approbation might appoint deputies, liable to be diſmiſſed at the royal pleaſure; theſe deputies were bound to obey all ſuch orders as they ſhould receive from their principals, the lieutenants.

No peer was capable of acting as a lieutenant, or deputy lieutenant, unleſs he had firſt taken the oath of allegiance and ſupremacy, before ſix of the privy council, or ſuch other perſons as ſhould be authoriſed by the king.

No perſon under the degree of a peer, could be capable of acting as a lieutenant, or deputy lieutenant, till he had taken the abovementioned oaths, before a juſtice of the peace. A lieutenant of a county might adminiſter them to his deputies.

The lieutenants of counties were authoriſed to grant commiſſions of colonels, majors, captains, and other commiſſion officers, to ſuch perſons as they thought proper, who, before they acted, were obliged to take the oaths preſcribed, to be adminiſtered by the lieutenants, or two of their deputies. It is to be always underſtood, that the king had power to confirm or diſplace ſuch officers at his pleaſure.

The lieutenants and deputies, or the major part of them then preſent, or in the abſence of the lieutenant, the major part of the deputy lieutenants then preſent, ſuch majority not being leſs in number than three, had power to charge any perſon, in the county, city, or town corporate, wherein his eſtate was ſituated, having reſpect to, and not exceeding, the following proportions:

No perſon could be charged with finding a horſe, horſeman, and arms, unleſs he had a real eſtate of 500l. per annum in poſſeſſion, or a perſonal eſtate of 6000l. in goods and money, excluſive of the furniture of his houſe, and ſo in proportion for a greater or leſſer eſtate. No perſon was liable to be charged with finding a foot ſoldier and arms, that had not a yearly revenue of 50l. in poſſeſſion, or a perſonal eſtate of 600l. in goods and money, other than ſtock upon the ground; and after the ſaid rate, proportionally for a greater or leſſer revenue or eſtate.

But the deputy lieutenants might require the conſtables to furniſh, at a reaſonable time, and place, to be appointed, on a penalty not exceeding 40s. ſo many ſufficient arms, with wages, and other incidental charges, as they ſhould aſſeſs, according to the ſaid proportions, upon revenue under 50l. a year, or on perſonal eſtates leſs than 600l. And in order thereunto, if any perſon on demand refuſed, or neglected, to provide a foot ſoldier, or ſoldiers, according to the proportions aforeſaid, or to pay any ſums of money, whereat he was aſſeſſed by a pound rate, according to a liſt ſigned by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, towards the defraying the neceſſary charge in providing ſuch arms as aforeſaid; the conſtable by warrant might levy ſuch ſum by diſtreſs and ſale, rendering the overplus (the charge of diſtraining being firſt deducted); and the tenant was bound

to pay the ſame, and deduct it out of his next rent, and in default thereof, his goods alſo were liable to be diſtrained and ſold.

No perſon having an eſtate of 200l. a year, or perſonal eſtate of 2,400l. was liable to be charged with finding a foot ſoldier, or ſoldiers.

Any one poſſeſſed of an eſtate of 100l. per annum, or under 200l. or having a perſonal eſtate of 1,200l. and under 2,400l. might be charged towards the finding of foot or horſe, as by the lieutenant ſhall be deemed moſt expedient, but no one could be charged to find both horſe and foot in the ſame county.

Two, three, or more perſons, might be joined in the charge of finding an horſeman and arms, but no perſon who had not 100l. a year in poſſeſſion, in lands, leaſehold or copyhold, or 1,200l. perſonal eſtates, was compellable to contribute towards the finding a horſe or horſeman.

No perſon chargeable to find a horſe and horſeman, or to be contributary thereunto, could for the ſame eſtate be charged with finding a foot ſoldier with arms, or be liable to pay towards the coſt thereof.

When two, or more, were charged to find any horſe or foot ſoldier and arms, three deputy lieutenants might appoint who ſhould find the ſame, and who ſhould be contributors, and ſettle the ſums to be paid by each contributor, in caſes where the contribution was not aſcertained by the agreement of the parties.

And for the better diſcovery of the abilities of perſons to be aſſeſſed and charged, and likewiſe of all miſdemeanors tending to the hindrance of the ſervice, the deputy lieutenants were authoriſed to examine upon oath, ſuch perſons as they ſhould think neceſſary or convenient, or as ſhould be produced by the party charged or accuſed, other than the perſons themſelves who were accuſed, or to be aſſeſſed; and they might likewiſe hear complaints, and give redreſs, according to the merits of the cauſe.

No peers might be charged otherwiſe than as follows, viz. The king might iſſue out commiſſions under the great ſeal, to ſo many

peers (not fewer than twelve) as he thought fit, who, or any five of them, had power to aſſeſs all, or any peers, according to the proportions mentioned in the act (except the monthly taxes, hereafter following), and to execute all the powers of the act, as well for laying aſſeſſments, as impoſing of penalties (impriſonment only excepted), which aſſeſſment, or charge ſo made, and penalties impoſed, were to be certified to the lieutenants. And in caſe of default in performance of any thing to be done, or paid by any peer, the lieutenant and deputies, or any three of them, might cauſe diſtreſſes to be taken on the lands of ſuch defaulter; and if ſatisfaction was not made in one week after ſuch diſtreſs was taken, then the ſame to be ſold: and if a tenant was diſtrained, he might deduct the ſum ſo levied out of his next rent.

Every commiſſioned foot officer was exempted from finding, or contributing to find, any horſe or foot ſoldier, for his whole eſtate, if it was but charged with one horſe, or leſs charge, or for ſuch part of his eſtate as was charged with one horſe; if his whole eſtate was charged with a greater charge than one horſe, in the county or lieutenancy where he ſerved as a foot officer in reſpect of the expence neceſſarily incurred by the ſaid employment.

Any papiſt, reputed papiſt, or other perſon, refuſing to take the oaths, who are chargeable in reſpect of his eſtate, the lieutenant or his deputies, or three of them, might appoint ſuch perſons as they judge meet, to furniſh the ſame, and might charge the eſtate with the payment of the yearly ſum of 8l. for every horſe, horſeman, and arms, and of 30s. for a foot ſoldier and his arms; and if he did not pay the ſame on demand, they might, by their warrant, levy the ſame by diſtreſs and ſale of the goods of ſuch perſon, or of his tenants, rendering them the overplus, all neceſſary charges in levying thereof being firſt deducted: and ſuch tenant might deduct the ſame out of his rent.

When any perſon was charged in the county, city, or place, wherein he did not reſide, the deputy lieutenants were to ſend him notice of the charge, if he had any land in his own occupation, to

ſuch perſon as he employed as his ſervant in managing the ſame; and if all his eſtate was let to farm, then to one or two of the moſt ſufficient tenants; who were forthwith, with all convenient ſpeed, to convey the ſame to their maſter or landlord, and within a time appointed, to bring an account of his anſwer; and on neglect or refuſal of the landlord to provide ſuch horſe or foot, as was duly charged upon him for the yearly rent, reſerved upon every demiſe, or other grant, and not otherwiſe, within the time limited; then the tenant to provide, and do as the landlord in that behalf ought to have done; and if the tenant refuſed or neglected within the time limited, the lieutenants, or in their abſence, or by their directions, the deputies, or two of them, might levy by their warrant, all ſuch penalties as are appointed by this act, by diſtreſs and ſale of the offender's goods.

And the tenant might ſtop out of his next rent, all ſuch money as he had neceſſarily laid out in providing the ſame, or as had been levied on him by diſtreſs for any default; unleſs the landlord could make it appear in two months after ſuch levying, before the lieutenant, or by his direction, the deputies, or any two of them, that the default and penalty was occaſioned by the wilful neglect of the tenant. But this was not to make void any covenant between landlord and tenant, but all charges were to be borne by ſuch tenant, according to the agreement.

If any perſon refuſed, or neglected, by a reaſonable appointed time, to provide ſuch horſe, horſeman, arms, and other furniture, or to pay ſuch ſums as were directed towards providing the ſame, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty on ſuch perſon, not exceeding 20l. and by their warrant might levy ſuch ſum, or the value of ſuch horſe, arms, and furniture, and ſuch penalty inflicted by diſtreſs and ſale, rendering the overplus, all neceſſary charges in levying thereof being firſt deducted: the ſame to be employed to the uſes, in default whereof the ſame was impoſed.

And if any perſon refuſed, or neglected, in a reaſonable time to

be appointed, to provide and furniſh ſuch foot ſoldier and arms, as was charged upon him, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5l. to be employed to the uſes, in default whereof it was impoſed. And the conſtable, by warrant for that purpoſe, might levy ſuch ſum by diſtreſs and ſale, rendering the overplus, charges of diſtraining firſt deducted, and the tenant might deduct the ſame out of his next rent.

But no perſon charged with the finding horſe or foot, or with contributing thereunto, was compellable to ſerve in perſon, but might find one to ſerve for him, to be approved by the captain, ſubject nevertheleſs to be altered upon appeal to the lieutenant, or in his abſence to two deputy lieutenants.

Every man who ſerved in his own perſon, or ſuch perſon as was accepted in his ſtead, was at the next muſter of his troop or company, to give in his name and place of abode, unto ſuch perſon as the lieutenant, or in his abſence, or by his direction, any two deputy lieutenants ſhould appoint, to the end that the ſame might be liſted, that is, written on the liſt. No one was capable of acting as a ſoldier, unleſs he had firſt taken the oaths of allegiance and ſupremacy before-mentioned, to be adminiſtered by the lieutenant, the deputy lieutenants, or any two of them

The lieutenants had power to call together the militia, to arm and array them, to form them into companies, troops, and regiments, and in caſes of inſurrection, rebellion, or invaſion, to lead, conduct, or employ them, or cauſe them to be led, conducted, or employed, as well within the ſeveral counties, cities, and places for which they were commiſſioned reſpectively, as alſo into any other counties and places, for the ſuppreſſing of all ſuch inſurrections and rebellions, and repelling of invaſions, as might happen to be, according as they ſhould receive directions from his majeſty.

The lieutenants, and in their abſence, or by their directions, the deputy lieutenants, or two of them, had power to lead, train, and exerciſe, or by warrant under their hands and ſeals, to cauſe to be led, trained, and exerciſed, the perſons ſo raiſed, arrayed, and wea-

poned. But nothing in theſe acts might extend to the giving any power for marching any ſubjects out of the realm, otherwiſe than by the laws of England ought to be done.

The ordinary times for training, exerciſing, and muſtering, were theſe: the general muſter and exerciſe of regiments, not above once a year; the training and exerciſing of ſingle companies, not above four times a year, unleſs ſpecial directions were given by the king, or his privy council, and ſuch ſingle companies and troops, might not at any time be continued in exerciſe above the ſpace of two days; and at a general muſter and exerciſe of regiments, no officer, nor ſoldier, could be conſtrained to ſtay above four days together from their habitations.

At every ſuch muſter and exerciſe, every muſketeer was to bring with him half a pound of powder, and half a pound of bullets, and every muſketeer ſerving with a match lock, to bring with him three yards of match; every horſeman to bring with him a quarter of a pound of powder, and a quarter of a pound of bullets, all which were to be at the charge of him who provided the ſaid ſoldier and arms, on pain of five ſhillings for every omiſſion.

The arms offenſive and defenſive of a trooper, with the furniture for his horſe, were as follows: the defenſive armour, a breaſt, back, and pot (a), piſtol proof; the offenſive arms, a ſword, and a caſe of piſtols, the barrels not under fourteen inches in length; the furniture for the horſe, a great ſaddle, or pad, with burs and ſtraps for affixing the holſters, a bit and bridle, with a pectoral and crupper: for the foot, a muſketeer had a muſket, the barrel not under three feet in length, and the gauge of the bore for twelve bullets to the pound, a collar of bandileers, with a ſword. A pikeman was armed with a pike of aſh, not under ſixteen feet in length (head and foot included), with a back, breaſt, head piece, and ſword. It was enacted, that the

(a) A cuiRass conſiſting of a breaſt-plate, joined to a backpiece, with a pot or ſcull cap without vizor or bever. Some of them have brims round them like a flapped hat.

muſter maſter ſhould be an inhabitant of the county, and that once a year each ſoldier ſhould pay to him, ſuch ſum, not exceeding one ſhilling for a horſeman, and ſixpence for a footman, as the lieutenants, and their deputies, or any three of them, ſhould under their hands and ſeals direct; who had power to levy the ſame, by diſtreſs and ſale of the goods of the perſon charged to find ſuch horſeman, or foot ſoldier, unleſs the default was cauſed by the neglect of ſuch ſoldier, who in that caſe was to be accountable for it.

If any perſon charged, refuſed, or neglected to ſend in, or deliver his horſe, arms, or other furniture, at the beat of the drum, ſound of the trumpet, or other ſummons, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5l. to be levied by diſtreſs and ſale, rendering the overplus, after deducting the neceſſary charges incurred in levying it.

It was provided, that no officer, or ſoldier of the militia, belonging to any city, borough, or town corporate, being a county of itſelf, or to any other corporation or port town, who had uſed to be muſtered only within their own precincts, ſhould be compellable to appear out of any ſuch precincts at any muſter, or exerciſe only.

For the furniſhing ammunition and other neceſſaries, the lieutenants and deputies, or any three of them, were empowered to lay rates on the reſpective counties and places, not exceeding in the whole, in any one year, the proportion of a fourth part of one month's aſſeſſment in each county, after the rate of 70,000l. a month, charged by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. to be aſſeſſed, collected, and paid by ſuch perſons, and according to ſuch directions as ſhould be given by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, under the like penalties, and by the like way and means, as were preſcribed in the ſaid act.

Which ſaid act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. directs the ſum of 70,000l. a month to be raiſed in the ſame manner as by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 21. which act did direct the ſame to be raiſed, according to the proportions, and in ſuch manner as by an

ordinance of both houſes, made in his majeſty's abſence: which ordinance was as followeth, that is to ſay, there ſhall be raiſed an aſſeſſment of 70,000l. a month, in theſe proportions:

	£.	s.	d.		£.	s.	d.
Bedford	933	6	8	Oxon City	107	6	8
Berks	1088	17	10	Rutland	272	4	6
Buckingham	1283	6	8	Salop	1322	4	4
Cambridge	1102	10	0	Stafford	919	6	8
Iſle of Ely	367	10	0	Litchfield	14	0	0
Cheſter County	770	0	0	Somerſet	2722	4	6
—— City	85	11	2	Briſtol	171	2	2
Cornwall	1633	6	8	Southampton	2022	4	4
Cumberland	108	0	0	Suffolk	3655	11	2
Derby	933	6	8	Surrey	1565	5	6
Devon	3003	15	6	Southwark	184	14	6
Dorſet	1311	10	6	Suſſex	1905	11	2
Town of Pool	10	14	0	Warwick	1244	8	10
Durham	153	14	4	Weſtmoreland	73	19	4
Eſſex	3500	0	0	Wilts	1944	8	10
Glouceſter	1626	6	8	Worceſter	1182	4	4
—— City	162	11	6	—— City	62	4	6
Hereford	1166	13	4	York	3043	8	10
Hertford	1400	0	0	Kingſton	67	13	4
Huntingdon	622	4	6	Angleſea	135	14	4
Kent	3655	11	2	Brecknock	361	13	4
Lancaſter	933	6	8	Cardigan	213	10	0
Leiceſter	1088	17	8	Carmarthen	352	6	8
Lincoln	2722	4	10	Carnarvon	202	4	4
Middleſex	1788	17	10	Denbigh	272	4	6
London	4666	13	4	Flint	135	14	6
Northampton	1400	0	0	Glamorgan	458	17	8
Nottingham	903	4	4	Merioneth	124	8	10
—— Town	30	2	4	Monmouth	466	13	4
Norfolk	3624	8	10	Montgomery	295	11	0
Norwich	186	13	4	Pembroke	406	0	0
Northumberland	179	19	10	Radnor	254	6	8
Newcaſtle	35	11	8	Haverford Weſt	14	11	8
Oxon	1127	15	6	Berwick	5	16	8

And the commiſſioners were to cauſe the proportions to be equally aſſeſſed; and to appoint aſſeſſors in each pariſh, who were to aſſeſs the ſame by a pound rate, according to all eſtates, both real and perſonal, within the limits of their pariſhes.

And in caſe the way of aſſeſſing by a pound rate, was found obſtructive to the ſpeedy bringing in of the aſſeſſment; the commiſſioners

were authoriſed to direct the aſſeſſors to aſſeſs the ſame, according to the moſt juſt and uſual way of rates practiſed in ſuch places: provided that the appointment of the aſſeſſment ſhould not be drawn into precedent. No privileged place was to be exempted from the aſſeſſment. But nothing contained in this ordinance, could charge any maſter, fellow, or ſcholar of any college, in either of the univerſities, or of Wincheſter, Eaton, or Weſtminſter, or in any other free ſchools; or any reader, officer, or miniſter of the ſame, or of any hoſpitals, or alms-houſes, in reſpect of any profit ariſing from the ſaid places; nor charge any houſes or lands belonging to Chriſt Hoſpital, Bartholomew, Bridewell, Thomas, and Bethlehem. But their tenants were to pay for ſo much as their leaſes were yearly worth, over and above the rents reſerved.

Persons in London were to be aſſeſſed in the pariſhes wherein they dwelt, and perſons out of London, having offices in that town, to be aſſeſſed where they reſided.

The aſſeſſors were obliged to deliver one copy of the aſſeſſment to the commiſſioners, who were to ſign and ſeal two duplicates, one of which was to be delivered to the ſub-collectors, with warrant to collect, the other to the receiver general.

If any difference aroſe between the landlord and tenant concerning the rates, the commiſſioners might ſettle the ſame, and perſons aggrieved by being over-rated, on complaint made to the commiſſioners, within ſix days after the ſaid aſſeſſment was demanded, might be by them relieved. If any controverſy aroſe, in which any one of the commiſſioners was concerned, that commiſſioner was bound to withdraw.

In caſe of non-payment, the collectors might diſtrain, and in the day time, taking with them the conſtable, might break open any houſe, cheſt, or box, wherein any goods were depoſited. And if any queſtion aroſe upon the taking of ſuch diſtreſs, the ſame might be determined by the commiſſioners. If any perſons conveyed away

their goods, the commiſſioners might impriſon them (they not being peers), till payment, and tenants might deduct the ſame out of their rent.

And if the proportions were not fully paid, nor could be levied, the commiſſioners might re-aſſeſs.

If any perſon wilfully neglected to perform his duty in the execution of this ordinance, the commiſſioners might fine him in any ſum not exceeding 20l. to be levied by diſtreſs, and paid to the receiver general, who had for his fees one penny in the pound; the ſame poundage was allowed to the ſub-collectors, the head-collectors, and the commiſſioners clerks. Nothing herein was to be drawn into example, to the prejudice of the ancient rights belonging to the peers. The ſame power which the commiſſioners had by this ordinance (which is much in the manner of the ancient ſubſidies, and of the preſent land tax) the lieutenants and deputy lieutenants ſeem to have had by the act of the 13th and 14th of Charles II.

The lieutenants and deputy-lieutenants, or the chief officers upon the place in the reſpective counties and places, might charge carts, waggons, wains, and horſes, for the carrying of powder, match, bullet, and other ammunition or accoutrements, allowing ſixpence a mile outward only, to every ſuch cart, waggon and wain with five horſes, or ſix oxen, and ſo proportionably, and for every horſe employed out of waggon or cart one penny, upon the marching of any regiment, company, or troop, on occaſion of invaſion, inſurrection, or rebellion.

The lieutenants were authoriſed to appoint one or more treaſurers, or clerks, for receiving and paying ſuch monies as were levied; of all which receipts and diſburſements thereof, they were, every ſix months, to give in written accounts upon oath, to the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, which accounts were forthwith to be certified to the privy council, and duplicates thereof to be certified by the juſtices at the next ſeſſions.

It was provided that the lieutenants or their deputies ſhould not iſſue warrants for raiſing any trophy money (b), till the juſtices in ſeſſions ſhould have examined, ſtated and allowed the accounts of the trophy money, collected for any preceding year, and certified ſuch examination.

The lieutenants, or two of their deputies, might, by warrant under their hands and ſeals, employ ſuch perſons as they thought fit (of which a commiſſioned officer, and the conſtable or his deputy, or in his abſence ſome other perſon bearing office in the pariſh where the ſearch was to be made, were always to be two) to ſearch for and ſeize all arms in the cuſtody of any perſon whom the lieutenants or two of their deputies judged dangerous to the peace of the kingdom, and to ſecure the ſame, and thereof to give an account to the lieutenants; and in their abſence, or by their direction, to the deputies, or two of them; provided that no ſearch was made in any houſe between ſun-ſetting and ſun-riſing, other than in cities or their ſuburbs, and towns corporate, market towns, and houſes within the bills of mortality, where they might ſearch in the night time, if the warrant ſo directed; and in caſe of reſiſtance, might enter by force: but no dwelling-houſe of a peer might be ſearched, but by immediate warrant from the king, or in preſence of the lieutenant or a deputy lieutenant: and in all places and houſes whatſoever, where ſearch was to be made, it was lawful, in caſe of reſiſtance, to enter by force. And the arms ſo ſeized might be reſtored to the owners, if the lieutenants, or in their abſence as aforeſaid, their deputies, or two of them, ſo thought fit.

If any militia man did not appear and ſerve, completely furniſhed with horſe, arms, and other furniture, at the beat of the drum, ſound of the trumpet, or other ſummons: the deputies, or two of them, if

(b) Trophy Money originally meant a fund for providing ammunition, drums, colours, muſic, and other contingent expences.

the default was in that perſon, might impriſon him for five days; or might inflict a penalty, if a horſeman, not exceeding twenty ſhillings, and if a footman, not exceeding ten ſhillings: and the lieutenants or deputies, or chief officers upon the place might impriſon mutineers and ſuch ſoldiers as did not do their duty at the days of muſter and training: and might inflict for puniſhment for every ſuch offence any pecuniary mulct, not exceeding five ſhillings, or impriſonment, not exceeding twenty days.

No militia man duly enliſted, could be exchanged, diſcharged, or leave his colours, but by the leave of the lieutenants, or two deputies, or his captain, upon reaſonable cauſe, firſt obtained under his hand and ſeal, on pain of forfeiture of 20l. to be levied as other penalties; and for non-payment, or want of diſtreſs, he was to be committed to the common gaol of the county, for any time not exceeding three months.

If any perſon detained, or embezzled his horſe, arms, or furniture, the lieutenants, and in their abſence, or by their directions, the deputies, or two of them, if the default was in ſuch perſon, might impriſon him till he had made ſatisfaction.

The pay of the officers, during ſuch time as they were with their ſoldiers, not exceeding one month in actual ſervice, was to be provided for by the king, out of the treaſury. And the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, were authoriſed to diſpoſe of ſo much of the fourth part of the 70,000l. a month, to the inferior officers, for their pains and encouragement, as to them ſhould ſeem expedient.

Every perſon charged, was on pain of 5s. to pay on demand, 2s. 6d. a day to each trooper; and on pain of 2s. on demand, 1s. a day to each foot ſoldier, for ſo many days as they were abſent from their dwellings, or callings, by occaſion of muſter or exerciſe, unleſs ſome certain agreement had been made to the contrary, before good witneſs, and the ſaid penalty was to be paid to ſuch ſoldier, to whom his pay was denied: the reſpective penalties to be demanded in ſix

weeks after default, or at, or before the next muſter, or exerciſe, and not afterwards.

And in caſe of invaſions, inſurrections, or rebellions, whereby occaſions happened for drawing out ſuch ſoldiers into actual ſervice; the perſons ſo charged, were to provide each their ſoldier, with pay in hand, not exceeding one month's pay, as ſhould be directed by the lieutenants, and in their abſence, or by their directions, by the deputies, or any two of them, for the payment whereof proviſion was to be made by the king, out of the treaſury.

And in caſe a month's pay had been provided, and advanced as aforeſaid, nò perſon who had advanced his proportion thereof, could be charged with any other like month's payment, until he had been reimburſed the ſaid month's pay, and ſo from time to time the month's pay by him laſt before provided and advanced.

All forfeitures, penalties, and payments, by the 15th of Ch. II. c. 4. not otherwiſe directed by this act, might be recovered by warrant under the hands and ſeals of the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, by diſtreſs and ſale; and if ſufficient diſtreſs could not be found, then the party to be impriſoned till ſatisfaction ſhould be made. And all high and petty conſtables, and other officers and miniſters, were directed to be aiding and aſſiſting to the lieutenants and their deputies, or any of them.

These ordinances were for a while executed, and the militia occaſionally muſtered and exerciſed, but being found expenſive and troubleſome to the country, it was by degrees neglected, inſomuch, that, the city of London excepted, the name of a militia muſter was almoſt forgotten: but about the year 1756, the nation being ſo much alarmed by the apprehenſion of an invaſion, that a body of Hanoverians and Heſſians were called in for its defence; many leading perſons reſumed the idea of inſtituting a well-diſciplined militia, which after ſome oppoſition, was at length carried into a law (c).

(c) The new militia laws were at firſt ſet on foot in the 30th of George II. which in a few years' time received ſo many alterations, that in the 2d of George III. it was thought

By which it was enacted, that a body of thirty thouſand ſeven hundred and forty men, ſhould be forthwith raiſed in the different counties of England and Wales, in the proportions ſpecified in the note below (d). Theſe, in caſe of actual invaſion or rebellion, might

---

neceſſary to repeal the whole, and reduce the ſubſtance thereof into one act of parliament. Since which time ſo many other alterations have been made, that a new revival thereof ſeems very deſirable, and this the rather as the leading ſtatute, 2d of George III. c. 20. to which all the ſubſequent ſtatutes refer, was founded on the principles of the original ſtatute, of the 30th of George II. c. 25. being before any militia were then raiſed, and conſequently proceeds all along upon that ſuppoſition, giving directions concerning the firſt raiſing of the militia in the ſeveral places, which directions, when the militia are now already on foot, are in ſome inſtances ſuperfluous, or otherwiſe inapplicable. *Burn's Digeſt of the Militia Laws*, 1779.

(d) Number of men to be raiſed in the ſeveral counties.

Bedford	400	Lancaſter	800
Berks	560	Leiceſter	560
Bucks	560	Lincoln, with the city and county of the city of Lincoln	1200
Cambridge	480	Middleſex, (excluſive of the Tower Hamlets)	1600
Cheſter, with the city and county of the city of Cheſter	560	Monmouth	240
Cornwall	640	Norfolk, with the city and county of the city of Norwich	960
Cumberland	320	Northampton	640
Derby	560	Northumberland, with the town and county of the town of Newcaſtle, and town of Berwick	560
Devon, with the city and county of the city of Exeter	1600	Nottingham, with the town and county of the town of Nottingham	480
Dorſet, with the Iſland of Purbeck, and the town and county of the town of Pool	640	Oxford	560
Durham	400	Rutland	120
Eſſex	960	Salop	640
Glouceſter, with the city and county of the city of Briſtol	960	Somerſet	840
Hereford	480	Southampton, with the town and county of the town of Southampton	960
Hertford	560		
Huntingdon	320		
Kent, with the city and county of the city of Canterbury	960		

Stafford,

be called forth, embodied, and put under the command of general officers, who might march them to any part of the kingdom; but they might not on any account be tranſported out of the realm. The general outlines of the chief regulations of this act, ſtood in the year 1779 as follows:

In order to put this law into execution, the lords lieutenants of counties were authoriſed, with the king's approbation, to appoint twenty, or more, gentlemen, in each county, all having a freehold eſtate of 200l. per annum, in actual poſſeſſion, being heirs apparent to double that ſum (e), or poſſeſſed of an eſtate for life, or leaſe determinable on one or more lives. A certain number of theſe, might, in caſe of the vacancy of a lieutenant, or in his abſence, by the king's

Stafford, with the city and county of the city of Litchfield	560	York, Eaſt Riding, with the town and county of the town of Kingſton	400
Suffolk	960	Angleſea	80
Surry	800	Brecknock	160
Suſſex	800	Cardigan	120
Warwick, with the city and county of the city of Coventry	640	Caermarthen	200
Weſtmorland	240	Caernarvon	80
Worceſter, with the city and county of the city of Worceſter	560	Denbigh	280
Wilts	800	Flint	120
York, Weſt Riding, with the city and county of the city of York	1240	Glamorgan	360
North Riding	720	Merioneth	80
		Montgomery	240
		Pembroke	160
		Radnor	120
		Total	30,740

(e) The qualifications for deputy lieutenants and officers. The counties of Cumberland, Huntingdon, Monmouth, Weſtmorland, and Rutland, were for a deputy lieutenant 150, colonel 600, lieutenant colonel, or major commandant 400, major or captain 150, lieutenant 30, and enſign 20, or the proportionable reverſions, &c. In the Iſle of Ely, the qualification of a deputy lieutenant was 150l. per ann. a captain 100l. lieutenant 30l. and enſign 20l.

appointment, act for him. They were likewiſe to proportion the numbers of men, to be raiſed in the different diviſions, or pariſhes, and at their meetings to ballot for the men to complete the eſtabliſhment, and fill up occaſional vacancies.

The commiſſion officers to be appointed by the lord lieutenant, the king's approbation firſt obtained, he having a right to diſapprove, or diſmiſs any deputy lieutenant, or officer, at his pleaſure. That the command of the militia might be in the hands of perſons intereſted in the defence of the kingdom, it was required that every commiſſion officer ſhould be poſſeſſed of a certain eſtate, according to the rank in which he ſerved. The qualification of a colonel was 1000l. a year, in poſſeſſion, or double that ſum in expectancy, as heir apparent. A lieutenant colonel 600l. a year, or being heir apparent to ſome perſon poſſeſſed of 1,200l. a year. Major, or captain, an eſtate of the yearly value of 200l. heir apparent to ſome perſon poſſeſſed of an eſtate of the yearly value of double that ſum, or the younger ſon of ſome perſon, who at his death was poſſeſſed of an eſtate of the yearly value of 600l. A lieutenant an eſtate of 50l. per annum, with perſonal eſtate of the value of 1000l. or real and perſonal eſtate together, amounting to 2000l. or being the ſon of a perſon who died poſſeſſed of an eſtate of the yearly value of 600l. An enſign, an eſtate of 20l. a year, with perſonal to the value of 500l. or real and perſonal together to the value of 1000l. or being the ſon of ſome perſon, who at the time of his death was poſſeſſed of an eſtate of the annual value of 50l. with perſonal eſtate to the amount of 1000l. or real and perſonal eſtates together of the value of 2000l. a moiety of all theſe eſtates to be ſituated in the counties for which the officers ſerved. On receiving their commiſſions, the different officers were obliged to lodge a deſcription of their qualifications with the clerk of the peace, and to take the proper oaths, and ſign the declaration. The penalty of acting, not being qualified, or neglecting to deliver in their qualifications, and taking the oaths, &c. was for a colonel, lieutenant colonel, or major, 200l. captain, lieutenant, or enſign, 100l. half to the perſon

who ſued for it. The acceptance of a commiſſion in the militia, did not vacate a ſeat in parliament, or prevent the party, if a reduced officer, from receiving his half pay, and exempted him from ſerving the office of high ſheriff.

The pay of the militia officers, when called out for their annual exerciſe, was the ſame as the ſubſiſtence of the officers of the army (f), but the field officers received no other ſubſiſtence than as captains.

When the militia were embodied, and called out into actual ſervice, the officers were to rank with thoſe of the army of equal degree, but as the youngeſt of that rank, and during ſuch time as they remained embodied, they were to be ſubject to all the penalties in the mutiny act, and articles of war, unleſs where ſpecially otherwiſe provided by the militia act (g). Officers might be promoted on account of military merit, in time of actual rebellion, or invaſion, notwithſtanding they had not the neceſſary qualifications, but this was not to exceed the rank of lieutenant colonel, nor could any perſon, not having the qualification for a captain, be promoted higher than that rank.

In order to circulate the knowledge of military diſcipline among the country gentlemen, the lord lieutenant, together with three deputy lieutenants, or on his death, or removal, any five deputy lieutenants, might, at the end of four years, at their annual meeting, the militia not being then embodied, diſcharge one field officer, and a number of other officers, equal to the number of qualified perſons, giving notice in writing to the lieutenant, one month at leaſt before ſuch meeting, that they are willing to ſerve. But to prevent a corps being left deſtitute of a ſufficient number of experienced officers, it

---

(f) All the militia officers now receive the ſame pay, when employed, with thoſe of a correſponding rank in the regular infantry; and the ſubaltern officers of a certain ſtanding are to receive an allowance, ſimilar to half pay, after their corps are diſembodied.

(g) Both officers and private militia men were likewiſe ſubject to theſe articles at the time of their annual exerciſe, but not to extend to life, or limb.

was provided that the number ſo diſcharged, ſhould not exceed one third of thoſe who had ſerved for four years. Any commiſſion officer having ſerved four years, was not compellable to ſerve in perſon as a private man in any militia, nor to find a ſubſtitute.

No officer of the army could ſit as a member of a court martial, for the trial of any officer, or private militia man; nor might an officer of the militia ſit on the trial of an officer, or ſoldier of the army.

For the due inſtruction of the militia men in the uſe of arms, the king was authoriſed to appoint to each regiment, battalion, or independant company, a proper perſon then ſerving, or who had ſerved as a commiſſioned officer in his regular forces. This qualification, after the militia had been ſome time raiſed and embodied, was changed for that of having ſerved in an embodied corps of militia. The adjutant, if appointed out of the army, retained his rank therein, during his ſervice in the militia, and if on half pay, was entitled to receive it, notwithſtanding his commiſſion of adjutant, which was ſigned by the king. The lord lieutenant might alſo grant him an enſigncy, or lieutenancy, although he had not a legal qualification for either of theſe appointments; his pay was 6s. a day, without deduction, or arrears: it was commonly paid two months in advance. A proviſion of half pay was likewiſe made for him, in ſeveral annual acts, for the payment and clothing of the militia. The adjutant, beſides the duty of inſtructing, and drilling the officers and private men at their annual exerciſe, had the particular care of the ſerjeants and drummers, when not aſſembled, and the charge of the arms.

The ſerjeants, that they might be properly qualified to inſtruct the private men in their exerciſe, were at the firſt raiſing of the militia, to be appointed by the king out of his regular forces, from perſons who had ſerved therein for one year. This qualification, like that of the adjutant, was afterwards changed, and the having ſerved in an embodied militia, was deemed ſufficient.

The proportion of ſerjeants to be one to every twenty men. The ſervice in the militia of perſons ſo appointed out of the regular forces,

entitled them to the benefit of Chelſea Hoſpital, in the ſame manner as if they had continued in the army. Serjeants taken from among the invalids or penſioners of that hoſpital, upon their diſcharge from the militia, provided they produced certificates of their good behaviour from the commanding officer, were to be put again upon that eſtabliſhment. A ſerjeant on the Chelſea liſt at an allowance of 12d. per day, being appointed to ſerve in the militia, might receive that allowance together with his militia pay. A ſerjeant who had ſerved as ſuch fifteen years in the militia, and was diſcharged on account of age and infirmities, on a recommendation to the Chelſea board, from the commanding officer of the corps in which he ſerved, and the lord lieutenant or deputy lieutenants of the county, was capable of being placed on the penſion of 5d. a day. No ſerjeant, during his ſervice in the militia, was liable to ſtatute work, or to ſerve as a peace or pariſh officer.

To prevent their enticing the private men to ſpend their money in liquor, no perſon ſelling liquors by retail, could be appointed a ſerjeant.

The daily pay of a ſerjeant was a ſhilling, without deduction, with an annual allowance of 3l. 10s. for a ſuit of clothes, beſides a billet on a public houſe in the diſtrict to which his company belonged, but this entitled him to lodgings only. The commanding officer of a corps, being a field officer, might, on the application of the captain, diſplace a ſerjeant.

A serjeant convicted of miſbehaviour, might by a court martial be reduced to the ranks, in which caſe, if he had been made from a private militia man, he was to ſerve till he had completed his three years' ſervice as ſuch. If taken from the regular forces, he was within one month after ſuch reduction, if not reſtored, to be ſent back to the corps from whence he was taken. And it was afterwards added, that any ſerjeant by the commanding officer, or the ſentence of a court martial, reduced to the ranks for miſbehaviour, beſides the puniſhment inflicted on him by the court, ſhould be obliged to ſerve as a private militia man for one year, notwithſtanding he might have

already ſerved three years, before his being appointed to the halbert; but this ſeems only to reſpect thoſe promoted from militia men.

The vacancy of a ſerjeant happening in any corps, might be filled up by the captain of the company, with the approbation of the commanding officer. A ſerjeant on being appointed, was to ſwear allegiance to the king and his ſucceſſors, that he was a proteſtant, and would faithfully ſerve as a ſerjeant in the militia, within the kingdom of Great Britain, for the defence of the ſame, until he ſhould be legally diſcharged.

The duty of the ſerjeant, beſides aſſiſting in the drilling of the private men, was to attend the courts of lieutenancy for recruits, to take care of, and clean the arms, and air the clothes when depoſited in ſtore, to deliver them out at the annual meetings, and to collect them in from the militia men, previouſly to their diſmiſſion; they were when diſembodied to take their orders from the adjutant.

The commanding officer of the regiment might out of theſe ſerjeants appoint one ſerjeant major, to whom there was an additional allowance of 2s. 6d. per week, over and above his pay as a ſerjeant, and of 1l. in his annual clothing.

These were the chief clauſes and regulations reſpecting the ſerjeants, a body of men who even in regular regiments are of the utmoſt uſe and importance, but in the militia conſtitute the muſcles and ſinews of the corps, and although by the above eſtabliſhment they bear a greater proportion to the private men than is allowed in the army, an increaſe of them would highly benefit the militia ſervice, although purchaſed by the diminution of ſome of the higher commiſſioned officers: if this obſervation be true, how falſe and deſtructive is that œconomy which tends to diminiſh their number!

The captain of a company was by this act authoriſed to appoint two drummers or fifers to his company, whom he might alſo for miſbehaviour diſcharge, and appoint others in their places. Their daily pay when unembodied was 6d. they were annually clothed, for which 2l. was allowed for each ſuit, and they as well as the ſerjeants were entitled to quarters. Having received pay, they were compel-

lable to ſerve in the regiment or battalion, until legally diſcharged. If any drummer deſerted at the time the militia was not aſſembled, he was when taken to be committed to gaol, there to remain till the aſſembling of the militia, when he was to be tried by a court martial; negligence, or diſobedience to the adjutant, or any other ſuperior officer, when the militia were not aſſembled, being proved on oath before a juſtice of the peace, was puniſhable by a fine of 40s. which if not immediately paid, the captain of the company was authoriſed to ſtop out of his pay, to be applied to the common ſtock of the corps; and by a ſubſequent act, over and above this puniſhment, ſuch offender might be committed to the common gaol of the county for which he ſerved, for any time not exceeding ſix months. In theſe clauſes, ſerjeant majors, drum majors, and ſerjeants, were included. Perſons harbouring ſuch deſerters forfeited 5l. If any militia ſerjeant, drummer, or fifer, inliſted into any of his majeſty's other forces, ſuch inliſting was declared void. The commanding officer of the regiment might appoint a drum major out of the drummers; he, like the ſerjeant major, had an additional allowance for pay and clothing, the firſt was 6d. a day, the latter 20s. for the ſuit.

All perſons not labouring under bodily incapacity, were liable to be choſen for private militia men, and obliged either to ſerve in perſon, or find a proper ſubſtitute, except ſuch perſons as were ſpecially excepted in the act. Theſe were, peers of the realm, commiſſioned and non-commiſſioned officers, and private men ſerving in his majeſty's regular forces, or in any of his caſtles or forts, commiſſioned officers ſerving or who had ſerved four years in the militia, members of the two univerſities, clergymen, and licenſed teachers of ſeparate congregations, conſtables, and other ſuch peace officers, articled clerks, apprentices, ſeamen, or ſeafaring men, perſons muſtered and trained, and doing duty in the royal docks, freemen of the company of watermen on the river Thames, poor men having three children born in wedlock, and perſons of more than forty-five years of age.

THE mode of making out the lists of persons liable to serve in the militia, with divers regulations respecting the balloting for, and swearing in of the persons chosen, were as follows:

A GENERAL meeting being held on the day appointed, consisting of the lord lieutenant, and two of his deputies, or in his absence, of three deputy lieutenants; the times and places for holding the sub-division meetings were to be fixed. These to consist of three deputy lieutenants, two deputy lieutenants and one justice, or one deputy lieutenant and two justices, except in counties where the militia was on actual service, where the business might be transacted by two deputy lieutenants, or one deputy lieutenant and one justice. At this general meeting also, precepts were to be issued to the chief constables, or principal peace officers, of the several hundreds, rapes, or other great divisions of the county, requiring the constables, or other such officers of each parish, or place, to return to the deputy lieutenants within the sub-divisions, on a day appointed, lists in writing of the names of all persons, usually, and at that time, dwelling within their several parishes, &c. between the ages of eighteen and forty-five, distinguishing their ranks and occupations, and which of the persons so returned laboured under any infirmities incapacitating them from serving, having first affixed a copy thereof on the door of the church or chapel. Any chief, or other constable, or officer, neglecting to return such list, or making a fraudulent or partial return, was punishable by a fine not exceeding 5l. nor under 40s. or a month's imprisonment in the common gaol, at the discretion of the deputy lieutenants, and justices on the bench. Persons endeavouring, by threats or bribes, to prevail on a constable to make a false return, forfeited 50l. to any one that would sue for it, and any person refusing to tell his christian and sur-name to the officer authorised to demand it, for the purpose of making out the lists, forfeited 10l.

ON the day, and at the place appointed for the first sub-division meeting, and the return of the lists, the constables were to attend and to deliver in their lists, which they were to verify upon oath.

AT this meeting, persons who thought themselves aggrieved,

either by being inſerted on the liſts, or by any of their neighbours being omitted, might appeal, and the names of all ſuch as were exempted by the act, or any other cauſe, were to be ſtruck out, and the liſts ſo corrected, to be returned to the next general meeting, where the number of men to be found by each hundred, rape, and other of the larger diviſions of the county, were allotted: and theſe were again divided, and proportioned at the next ſub-diviſion meeting, for each pariſh, tithing, or place. Where notice was given of the time of balloting, when the church-wardens might, with the conſent of the pariſh, offer volunteers, provided they were men able and fit for ſervice, and at the leaſt five feet four inches in height. The money for hiring theſe volunteers to be collected by a pariſh rate, to which all were bound to contribute.

If no ſuch volunteers were offered, the deputy lieutenants at the third ſub-diviſion meeting, proceeded to ballot, which being publicly done, notice was to be ſent to the perſons choſen, directing them to appear at a meeting to be held within three weeks, there to be ſworn in, or to bring with them a proper ſubſtitute to ſerve in their ſtead. At this meeting the petty conſtables were to attend, and make a return upon oath, of the time when ſuch notices were ſerved. Here the ballotted men were either to be ſworn in themſelves, or to produce a ſubſtitute, ſuch as was approved of by the court, and not being of a leſs height than five feet four inches. Sometimes, in particular caſes, further time was given for procuring a ſubſtitute. The oath to be taken was this: "I, A. B. do ſincerely promiſe and ſwear, that I will be faithful, and bear true allegiance, to his majeſty King George, his heirs and ſucceſſors: and I do ſwear, that I am a proteſtant, and that I will faithfully ſerve in the militia, within the kingdom of Great Britain, for the defence of the ſame, during the time which I am ſo certified for, unleſs I ſhall be ſooner diſcharged, ſo help me God:" his name was then to be entered on the roll.

Any perſon choſen by lot, quakers excepted, refuſing to take the oaths, or find a ſubſtitute, if the regiment was not embodied, forfeited 10l. to be levied by diſtreſs, and at the expiration of three

years was liable to ſerve again, or provide a ſubſtitute. The penalty to be applied by the deputy lieutenants for hiring a ſubſtitute, and the remainder, if any, was to be paid to the commanding officer of the regiment, for the uſe of the ſtock purſe. If the offender had not goods ſufficient to produce that ſum, he was to be committed to the common gaol, for any time not exceeding three months, but in caſe the regiment was embodied, he was to be delivered over to the commanding officer of the regiment, and his name enrolled. In caſe of deſertion, he was ſubject to the ſame puniſhment, as if he had taken the oaths.

In order to alleviate the diſtreſs, that being drawn for the militia might occaſion to a poor man, the church-wardens were, when a regiment was embodied, obliged to pay ſuch perſon choſen by lot, within one month after he was ſworn and enrolled, or had provided a fit ſubſtitute, ſuch ſum, not exceeding 5l. as ſhould be adjudged by the deputy lieutenants, and juſtices, one half of the current price of a ſubſtitute.

No perſon having ſerved perſonally, or by a ſubſtitute, three years in the militia, could be obliged to ſerve again, until it came to his turn by rotation; but having ſerved as a ſubſtitute for another, did not excuſe ſuch ſubſtitute from ſerving for himſelf, if choſen by lot.

The men being thus ſworn in, and enrolled, copies of the rolls were to be tranſmitted to the lord lieutenant, and within one month after they were ſo returned, a general meeting was to be held, at which the militia was formed into companies and battalions, or regiments. A regiment was to conſiſt of twelve, and in no caſe of leſs than eight, companies, of eighty men at the moſt, and ſixty men at the leaſt. To theſe they were to poſt the following commiſſioned and non-commiſſioned officers: a colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, who were likewiſe captains of companies; alſo as many captains as there were companies, excluſive of thoſe of the field officers. A captain lieutenant to the colonel's company, with a lieutenant to every other, and an enſign to each company, except the grenadiers and light infantry, to both of which an additional lieutenant was

allowed. The adjutant, ſerjeant major, drum major, ſerjeants and drummers, with corporals, made from the militia men, completed the regiment; a quarter maſter, ſurgeon and mate, were added when a regiment was embodied.

Where the numbers of men were not ſufficient to make a regiment, but were from five to under eight companies, ſuch militia was to be formed into a battalion, with only two field officers, a lieutenant colonel, and a major; and where the number of private men amounted to only three companies, or any number under five, likewiſe into a battalion, but with only one field officer, a lieutenant colonel, or major. The captains, lieutenants, and enſigns, and non-commiſſioned officers, the ſame as in the regiments. Where a lieutenant colonel had commanded a battalion for five years, or longer, the lord lieutenant might, with the conſent of his majeſty, give ſuch lieutenant colonel commandant a commiſſion of colonel; and in all counties were the militia amounted to four companies only, the lord lieutenant might appoint two perſons, legally qualified, to ſerve without pay as field officers, with the ſame rank as if the number had been ſufficient to form a regiment.

Where the number of companies were not ſufficient to form a regiment, or battalion, they were to be formed into independant companies, each company to conſiſt of eighty men, at the moſt, and ſixty men at the leaſt, with one captain, one lieutenant, and one enſign, to each. And his majeſty might join together any number of ſuch independant companies, as would form a battalion, or incorporate them with any regiment, or battalion; but ſo that the number of companies in ſuch corps did not exceed, or fall ſhort of the number of companies by this act allowed for a regiment, or battalion. This clauſe was however afterwards virtually repealed, by the act for raiſing volunteer companies, by which ſome regiments had fourteen companies. When there were two companies only, as in ſome of the ſmaller Welch counties, the eldeſt captain ranked as a major.

Having thus raiſed our regiments, their pay and clothing comes next under conſideration; whence it is neceſſary to begin, by men-

tioning the regimental or battalion clerk, or in other words, the paymaſter of the unembodied militia: the nomination of this officer was in the commanding officer of the regiment: his ſalary 50l. a year. To him the receiver general of the county, was by annual acts directed to iſſue the pay of the unembodied militia, four calendar months in advance: that of the adjutant, regimental clerk, ſerjeant major, drum major, ſerjeants, and drummers, at the rates before mentioned, and alſo 6d. per month for each private man, and drummer, for defraying contingent expences, 1d. whereof to be applied to the hoſpital expences, when the corps was aſſembled for the annual exerciſe; and for half a year's ſalary for the clerk of the regiment, or battalion. The annual clothing for the non-commiſſioned officers, was alſo paid to him.

The time being ſettled by the deputy lieutenants for the annual exerciſe, and a certificate thereof being ſent by them to the receiver general, ſpecifying the number of men, and the days they were to be abſent from home, allowing them ſufficient time for their coming to, and returning from, the place of exerciſe; he within fourteen days after the receipt of ſuch certificate, was to iſſue out the amount to the clerk of the regiment, at the rates for the commiſſioned officers, ſerjeants, and drummers, as has been before mentioned, and for the corporals, at the rate of 1s. 6d. and private men 1s. per day each, this to be paid by him to the commanding officers of companies, who were to account for it, according to a form preſcribed by the act.

In order to provide neceſſaries, ſuch as ſhirts, ſhoes, and ſtockings, for thoſe militia men who ſhould be deficient in thoſe articles, the commanding officers of companies were authoriſed to ſtop any ſum not exceeding 6d. per diem, out of the daily ſubſiſtence, accounting with them for the balance, at their diſmiſſion.

The private militia men and corporals, were by the act of parliament to be clothed every three years: the ſum allowed for that purpoſe was 1l. 10s.; this was to be paid by the receiver general, ſo ſoon as he ſhould receive a warrant under the hand of the colonel, or commanding officer, certifying the receipt of the clothing, and

an order for the ſame, payable to the clothier. This clothing, with their arms, was to be delivered out to the militia men, on their aſſembling for their annual exerciſe, and to be by them returned back into the ſtores, previous to their diſmiſſion. Any militia man ſelling, pawning, or loſing any of his arms, clothes, or accoutrements, on conviction before a juſtice, forfeited a ſum not exceeding 3l. and if he did not immediately pay the ſame, might be committed to the houſe of correction for one month, and until the ſame was paid, and if he was not of ability to pay it, then for the ſpace of three months. Any man neglecting to return his arms, clothes, and accoutrements, in good order to his captain, or the perſon appointed to receive them, whenever demanded, on conviction before a juſtice, forfeited 10s. and on default of immediate payment, might be committed to the houſe of correction, for any time not exceeding fourteen days. Any perſons knowingly buying, taking in exchange, concealing, or otherwiſe receiving any arms, clothes, or accoutrements, belonging to the militia, upon any pretence whatſoever, on conviction before one juſtice, forfeited 5l. to be levied by diſtreſs, and for want of ſufficient goods for ſuch diſtreſs, was to be committed to the common gaol for three months, or to be publicly whipped, at the diſcretion of the juſtice.

At the end of three years, every militia man was entitled to his clothes.

The regulations, reſpecting the training and exerciſe of the militia, were theſe: the militia to be trained and exerciſed by regiment or battalion, twice in a year, fourteen days at each time, or once in a year, for twenty-eight days together, as ſhould be directed by the lord lieutenant, and two of his deputies, or by three deputy lieutenants, at ſuch time and place as ſhould be leaſt inconvenient to the public, to be by the ſaid deputy lieutenants appointed at a general meeting; and during ſuch time, all the proviſions in any act for puniſhing mutiny and deſertion, and the better payment of the army, and their quarters, was to extend and take place, in reſpect to the

officers and private men of every regiment, or battalion, but not to extend to life or limb.

Notice of the time and place appointed was to be ſent by the clerk of the general meeting, to the chief conſtables, with directions to forward the ſame to the petty conſtables, or other officers of the ſeveral pariſhes, or places within the county, who were to cauſe ſuch notices to be fixed on the doors of their churches, or chapels, reſpectively; or if any place being extra parochial, ſhould have no church, or chapels, belonging to it, on the door of the church, or chapel, of ſome place, or pariſh, thereto adjoining. At this place all militia men, not incapacitated by ſickneſs, or other legal impediment, were directed to attend, under penalty, if convicted before a juſtice, of forfeiting 20l. or being committed to the common gaol of the county, or place where taken and convicted, there to remain without bail, or mainprize, for ſix months, or until they had paid that ſum. And any militia man, who having joined the corps, deſerted, during the time of the annual exerciſe, was liable to the ſame penalty, or puniſhment, or if taken before the diſmiſſion of the corps, might be puniſhed by the ſentence of a court martial.

Deserters taken after the expiration of the term for which they were enrolled, might be puniſhed for their crime, and be alſo obliged to complete the remainder of their three years' ſervice, which was unexpired at the time of their deſertion. And to prevent the too frequent practice of perſons taking money to ſerve as ſubſtitutes, and deſerting, who not having goods whereon to levy the pecuniary penalty, and the alternative of impriſonment tending only to corrupt their morals; it was enacted, that every ſubſtitute who ſhould deſert, whenever taken, over and above any military puniſhment that ſhould be inflicted upon him, ſhould ſerve for three years, to be computed from the day on which he was apprehended, and that the commanding officer ſhould order notice to be given to the clerk of the ſubdiviſion, in which he was engaged to ſerve, of his deſertion, and the time of his apprehenſion, in order that he might make a freſh entry of his name in the roll, to ſerve for three years from that time.

On the application made by the lord lieutenant, or the commanding officer of the regiment, aſſembled for exerciſe, to the mayors, bailiffs, or chief magiſtrates of the different places; they were to billet the officers, ſerjeants, drummers, and private men, on ſuch houſes as ſoldiers were uſually quartered on. And on the ſame application, conſtables of thoſe places through which they marched were obliged to find them carriages, at the ſame rates as paid by his majeſty's other forces.

The commanding officers of corps of militia, as often as they were called out to exerciſe, were to return to the lord lieutenant a true ſtate of their regiment, or battalion; and alſo, within thirty days after the exerciſe was finiſhed, to tranſmit to one of the ſecretaries of ſtate a return, ſigned by him, of the ſeveral officers, non-commiſſioned officers, and private men, preſent at the ſaid exerciſe, with the number of days on which each commiſſioned officer was preſent. A ſimilar return was at the ſame time to be ſent by him to the auditor of the exchequer.

A militia man falling ſick at, or in going to, or returning from, the annual exerciſe, was to be taken care of by the pariſh in which it happened, who were to be reimburſed their expences from the county ſtock.

In caſe of actual invaſion, or upon imminent danger thereof, or in caſe of rebellion in the kingdom, or any of the territories, or dominions thereunto belonging, it was lawful for the king (the occaſion being firſt communicated to parliament, if then ſitting, or if not ſitting, declared in council, and notified by proclamation), to order his lieutenants, or three of the deputy lieutenants in each county, with all convenient ſpeed, to draw out and embody their reſpective regiments, or battalions of militia, or as many of them as ſhould be deemed neceſſary. And in ſuch caſe, his majeſty might direct the ſaid forces to be put under the command of ſuch general officers as he ſhould appoint, and order them to be led by their reſpective officers into any parts of this kingdom, for the repelling, and ſuppreſſion of ſuch invaſion, or rebellion; provided that neither the

militia of this kingdom, nor any corps, detachment, or draught thereof, ſhould on any account be tranſported out of the iſland of Great Britain.

And the officers of the militia and private militia men, from the time of their being drawn out and embodied, and until they returned again to their reſpective pariſhes, or places of abode, were to remain under the command of ſuch general officers, and to be entitled to the ſame pay as was received by the officers and private men of the king's other regiments of foot, and no other; and the officers of the militia were, during ſuch time, to rank with the officers of the king's other forces, of equal degree with them, as the youngeſt of their rank (h).

(h) During the time the militia were laſt embodied, a notion was propagated, that they were not liable to be commanded by any regular officer under the rank of a general: this ſeems to have been a miſtake; the clauſe which empowers the king to put the militia under the command of general officers, by no means implies, they are to be commanded by general officers only; the right of command, as far as the rank of colonel, had been ſettled by that clauſe in the act which provided, that militia officers, when embodied, ſhall rank with thoſe of the army, as youngeſt of each degree; but as there were no militia generals, that rule did not extend to generals of the army; a declaratory clauſe therefore became neceſſary to ſettle that point, and authoriſe their command.

Rank, in the military acceptation, always implies command, a proof of which is ſhewn in the regulations of rank between the officers of the navy and army, wherein it was thought neceſſary to except the right of either to command out of their proper element, which would otherwiſe have followed of courſe.

The brevets of army rank, granted at that time to the militia colonels of a certain ſtanding, ſhew that the officers of the army occaſionally, might command thoſe of the militia; theſe brevets being given to prevent a very old colonel of militia from being commanded by a very young colonel of the army, the multitude of new levies having then given that rank to many young ſoldiers.

That the army and militia were meant to ſerve together, is clearly expreſſed by the act of the 18th of George III. cap. 59, where treating of fencible men, and corps whoſe officers after reduction were not entitled to rank or half pay, it is ſaid, that during the time that the officers of ſuch corps and the militia ſhall ſerve together, they ſhall rank according to the date of their reſpective commiſſions: ſeveral new-raiſed regular regiments were then under that predicament.

Should an actual invaſion take place, the militia regiments would certainly be mixed and brigaded with thoſe of the army, in which caſe there would ariſe an indiſpenſable neceſſity,

And during ſuch time, as aforeſaid, all the proviſions contained in any act of parliament then in force for puniſhing mutiny and deſertion, and for the better payment of the army, and their quarters, were to extend to the officers, and private militia men (except only ſuch particulars as were, or ſhould be, otherwiſe ſpecially provided for by any act, or acts, of parliament for regulating the militia forces); on being diſembodied, they were to return to the ſame regulations they were under before they were called forth.

The lieutenant of the county, on receiving his majeſty's orders for embodying the militia, or in his abſence, three deputy lieutenants, were immediately to iſſue their precepts to the chief conſtables, with directions to them to forward the ſame to the petty conſtables, or other officers of the pariſhes, and places within the county; and ſuch conſtables were, on the receipt thereof, forthwith to give, or leave in writing at their abodes, notices to the ſeveral militia men, to attend at the time and place mentioned in ſuch order.

If any militia man, ſo ordered to be drawn out and embodied (not labouring under any infirmities incapacitating him to ſerve), did not appear, and march in purſuance thereof, on conviction before two juſtices, he forfeited 40l. which if he did not immediately pay, he was

---

ceſſity, that the officers of both denominations ſhould roll together, and conſequently the elder of the different ranks command. If the militia regiments are not bound to obey any other officers of the army but a general, they cannot be admitted into ſeveral of our garriſons and caſtles, where the lieutenant governors are moſtly under that rank; as in that caſe, ſuch lieutenant governor would have a garriſon he did not command.

By a clauſe in the articles of war, the officers and ſoldiers of the foot guards can be tried only by their own officers, except in particular caſes, where one half the members of the court may be officers of the line; they likewiſe commonly do ſeparate duty; yet I believe no inſtance can be ſhewn, where any officer or ſoldier of that corps refuſed to obey any ſuperior officer, though of a marching regiment.

Soon after the militia was firſt embodied, Captain Linch of the Suffolk regiment was tried for diſobeying the orders of Lieutenant Governor Thickneſs, of Land-guard-fort: as was Captain Lewis of the Surry, for diſobedience of thoſe of Lieutenant Colonel Strode of the invalids, both under the rank of generals. Had not the militia been ſubject to their orders, ſuch diſobedience could not have been deemed criminal, nor would warrants to try them have been granted, the right of Mr. Thickneſs and Lieutenant Colonel Strode to iſſue orders to the militia being thereby admitted.

to be by them committed to the common gaol for twelve months, or until he had paid the ſame. Any perſon harbouring or concealing a militia man, not attending when ordered into actual ſervice, knowing him to be ſuch, on conviction thereof before one juſtice, forfeited 5l. to be levied by diſtreſs; and for want of ſufficient diſtreſs, ſuch juſtice to commit him to the houſe of correction for two months, or to cauſe him to be publicly whipped.

In order to enable the militia men, ordered out on actual ſervice, to provide themſelves with neceſſaries, it was enacted, that when the militia was ſo ordered out, the receiver general of the land tax for the reſpective county, or place, ſhould pay to the captain, or other commanding officer, of each company ſo ordered, one guinea for each private militia man belonging to his company, to be by him paid to ſuch militia man, on, or before the day appointed for their marching; and the ſame for every militia man who ſhould afterwards be enrolled and ordered out, to be paid when he joined his company. But this mode being found productive of great irregularities, the man ſpending it in liquor, inſtead of applying it to the purpoſe intended, that clauſe was afterwards altered; and the commanding officer of the company was authoriſed to lay out that guinea, in a manner moſt advantageous for each militia man, giving him an account within three months, or as ſoon as deſired, how ſuch money had been expended.

In caſe any militia man choſen by lot to ſerve in a corps that was embodied and called into actual ſervice, left a family unable to ſupport themſelves, one juſtice might order the overſeers of the poor of the pariſh, where ſuch family dwelt, to pay them a weekly allowance according to the following rule: for any child under ten years of age, a ſum not exceeding the price of one day's labour; for two children under that age, a ſum not exceeding two days' labour; for three or four children under the age aforeſaid, any ſum not exceeding the price of three days' labour; and for five or more children under the age before named, any ſum not exceeding four days' labour; and for the wife of ſuch militia man, any ſum not exceeding the price of one day's labour: the ſame was to be forthwith reimburſed to ſuch overſeer by the treaſurer of the county, out of the county ſtock. The families

of fubſtitutes, hired men, or volunteers, were likewiſe to be taken care of by the pariſh wherein they dwelt, without ſuch allowance making them removeable.

Any perſon having ſerved in the militia when called into actual ſervice, and being a married man, might ſet up and exerciſe ſuch trade as he was apt and able for, in any town or place within Great Britain or Ireland without moleſtation, the ſame as any ſoldier or mariner.

The clothes of an embodied militia man were to be applied at the end of every year as the commanding officer ſhould judge beſt for the uſe of ſuch militia man.

About the year 1780, it being thought expedient to increaſe the militia, perſons duly qualified according to the militia act then in force, were authoriſed to raiſe one or more volunteer companies, to be added to the regiment or battalion of any county; and the lord lieutenant was, with the king's approbation, to grant commiſſions to a ſufficient number of officers for the ſame; and on a certificate from the commanding officer of the regiment of theſe companies being complete, they were entitled to the allowance of bounty, ſubſiſtence money, arms, and clothing, and to be ſubject to the ſame regulations in every reſpect as the reſt of the militia forces. By a former clauſe, captains were authoriſed when embodied to augment their companies with volunteers, but then it was required they ſhould be already trained, armed, and clothed. An act of parliament alſo paſſed in 1794, authorizing the lords lieutenants of counties to augment the militia by volunteer companies.

These are ſome of the moſt important clauſes in the militia act, a more particular account would have exceeded the limits allowed for that part of the work, a general outline of it being all that is meant to be delineated (1).

(1) Such perſons as wiſh to ſee an entire code of the Militia Laws, will meet with ample information from a digeſt of them, both old and new, drawn up by the Reverend Doctor Burne, from which moſt of theſe extracts have been taken. N.B. Since this note was written, the militia laws have been reviſed, and moulded into one act of parliament, An. 26. Geo. 3.

CHAPTER III.

Of the Supplementary Militia, and the new Eſtabliſhment of the Militia Forces.

IN 1796, this country being threatened with an invaſion from France, an act of parliament paſſed to augment this part of the national force, by enrolling in each county a certain number of effective men, to be trained to arms, and called out, either a part or the whole, whenever the executive government ſhould judge it neceſſary. This was called *the ſupplementary militia*, and its force was double that of the old militia. It was not, however, taken in the ſame proportion with the old corps from the ſeveral counties, but calculated to bring the number of the whole into a more equal ratio with the actual population of each. The following was the number to be ballotted for in each county, in the ſame manner with the eſtabliſhed militia, and to be commanded by a ſufficient number of qualified officers, or if a ſufficient number of qualified officers could not be found, by officers who had retired from the army or the militia.

County of Bedford	254	County of Hereford	662
Berks	749	Huntingdon	0
Bucks	662	Lancaſter	5160
Cambridge	646	Lincoln	2140
Cheſter	1460	Monmouth	360
Cornwall	828	Northampton	1128
Cumberland	1180	Nottingham	896
Derby	1666	Rutland	80
Dorſet	185	Somerſet	2960
Eſſex	1756	Stafford	2095

County of Surry	2460	County of Middlefex	5820
Warwick	900	Norfolk	1992
Worceſter	825	Northumberland	824
York, Weſt Riding	4694	Oxford	852
North Riding	1360	Salop	1558
Eaſt Riding	861	Southampton	847
Carmarthen	790	Suffolk	1470
Denbigh	420	Suſſex	1160
Glamorgan	622	Weſtmorland	350
Montgomery	259	Wilts	1049
Radnor	220	Angleſea	320
Devon	1694	Brecon	340
Durham	800	Cardigan	474
Glouceſter	1757	Carnarvon	176
Hertford	500	Flint	311
Kent	1873	Merioneth	174
Leiceſter	928	Pembroke	331

His majeſty was inveſted with power to call out this ſupplementary militia, in caſe of actual invaſion, or other emergency: the conſent of parliament was neceſſary if ſitting; but in the time of a prorogation or an adjournment, his majeſty could embody either the whole or a part, of his own authority, at the ſame time ſummoning the parliament to meet within fourteen days.

The ſupplementary militia was accordingly called out and embodied in the ſpring of 1798; but previouſly to this an act of parliament had authoriſed ſupplementary militia-men to receive bounties for enliſting into the marching regiments, not to a greater amount than 10,000 for the whole, or the fifth part of the number ballotted for any particular county. When called out, the ſupplementary militia was incorporated with the old, where the numbers were ſmall; the reſt were formed into ſeparate battalions, and commanded by their own officers.

The plan for recruiting the regular army out of the militia was afterwards extended; and another act of parliament in July, 1799,

enabled the marching regiments to enlift out of the old or new militia any number of men not exceeding one fourth of the whole eftablifhment, or the fame proportion of any particular corps. The number of the militia was at the fame time reduced, fo that this voluntary enlifting would occafion no frefh ballotting in the counties. By thefe meafures many of the marching regiments, which were mere fkeletons, were filled up, and government was enabled to fend a large force to Holland.

By the original conftitution of the militia, this national force was to be confined to the ifland of Great Britain ; but on the rebellion taking place in Ireland, parliament authorifed the executive power to fend any number of the militia that would voluntarily offer into the fifter kingdom. Near a third of the old militia regiments, with the exception of a few individuals in each, accordingly tendered their fervices. A confiderable number of regiments were fent to Ireland, and were inftrumental in reducing the malcontents to fubmiffion.

These innovations having been made in the conftitution of the militia, it has finally been carried to fuch a length, as to make that force anfwer nearly all the purpofes of a regular ftanding army. The troops fent upon the expedition into Holland requiring reinforcements, a bill paffed both houfes in October, 1799, for reducing the whole of the militia forces, old and new, to the number of 30,626 men, and permitting the refidue to enter on bounties into the marching regiments ; but fuch volunteers from the militia, by this act, were not to be fent out of Europe.

CHAPTER IV.

Of the Regular Stipendiary Forces.

BESIDES theſe conſtitutional forces, there were in the Engliſh armies and garriſons, at all times from the conqueſt downward, ſtipendiary troops, both national and foreigners, the firſt hired by our kings, with the money paid by perſons commuting for their feudal ſervices, and employed in caſtle guards, foreign garriſons, and protecting the marches or borders of the kingdom, next Wales and Scotland. The foreigners were paid out of the privy purſe, or ſuffered to live upon free quarters. They were known by the various names of ruptarii, routers, and ryters, the laſt from a German word, ſignifying a horſeman or knight; they were alſo ſtiled Brabançons, Provençales, Coterelli and Flemings, and were really a ſet of free-booters of all nations, ready to embrace any ſide for hire. Theſe were chiefly called in by our kings, in their diſputes with the great barons. They were employed by the kings William Rufus, Stephen, Henry II. and John. Henry I. it is ſaid, hired no foreigners to ſerve him in England: but this is contradicted by ſeveral deeds preſerved in Rymer's Fœdera, wherein there are agreements between that king and the earl of Flanders, and others; one wherein that earl, for the conſideration of four hundred marks of ſilver per annum, engages to furniſh five hundred ſoldiers for the king's ſervice, either in England or Normandy, each ſoldier having three horſes (k). The garriſons in Ireland were at firſt chiefly kept up by the perſons who held lands

(k) Vol. 1. p. 1, 2, 3.

there by grants from the crown; there were afterwards, beſides theſe, a ſmall number of the king's troops, which were gradually increaſed, as may be ſeen in the note below (l).

King Edward I. employed mercenary ſoldiers in his French wars. In Rymer there is an order from his ſon Edward II. A. D. 1308, to the conſtable of Burgundy, to pay the arrears due to divers officers, particularly to Elias de Ponte, and William Alarde, for their wages, and thoſe of their followers.

A. D. 1310, an allowance is directed to be made to Walter de Scudamore, ſheriff of Dorſet, for 25l. 5s. paid by the king's order to four men at arms, four croſs bows, and four archers, of the guard of the caſtle of Shireburn, for one hundred and one days' wages (m).

A. D. 1322, the ſeneſchal of Gaſcony was directed to raiſe two hundred croſs bow men, and two hundred lance men, both foot, and to bring them over, ſo that they might be at Newcaſtle upon Tyne in October, to go againſt the Scots. Raymunde de Mille Sactis was made chief leader (n).

From the time of King Edward III. when it became cuſtomary for our kings to engage with their ſubjects, and other perſons by inden-

---

(l) The firſt eſtabliſhed force in Ireland was the 14th of Edward IV. when one hundred and twenty archers on horſeback, forty horſemen, and forty pages, were eſtabliſhed by parliament there. Theſe were ſix years afterwards reduced to eighty archers, and twenty ſpearmen on horſeback. In the reign of Henry VIII. anno 1535, the army in Ireland conſiſted of three hundred men, and in 1543 was increaſed to three hundred and eighty horſe, and one hundred and ſixty foot, which was then the peace eſtabliſhment. When the Iriſh were in rebellion, which frequently happened, the armies were conſiderably increaſed.

In the reign of Queen Mary, the ſtanding forces in Ireland amounted to about one thouſand two hundred men. During the greateſt part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the Iriſh were in open rebellion, but when that was ſuppreſſed, the force kept up was between one thouſand five hundred and two thouſand men, at which number they continued till the army raiſed by Lord Stafford, the 15th of King Charles I.

Anno 1680, the eſtabliſhment in Ireland was ſeven thouſand eight hundred men, officers included. And in King William's reign, anno 1698, twenty-four thouſand eight hundred and ninety-one.—*Trenchard's Short Hiſtory of Standing Armies, London*, 1698.

(m) See Rymer in anno. (n) Ibid.

ture to furniſh ſoldiers at certain wages, moſt of our armies conſiſted of ſtipendiary troops: ſuch was the army raiſed and commanded by the biſhop of Norwich, A. D. 1382, the 6th of Richard II. and in the army of the 16th of Henry V. In France there were ſo many ſtipendiaries, that in his orders to the captain of Rouen, they, and the ſoldiers, are ſeparately mentioned, and that in ſeveral articles (o); the particulars of theſe contracts, both as to form and ſubſtance, will be elſewhere fully explained: but as the agreement with the biſhop of Norwich, reſpecting the army here alluded to, gave cauſe to a very extraordinary military trial, the ſubſtance of it, as extracted from the rolls of parliament, is here laid before the readers. The biſhop of Norwich, who had before made an offer for guarding the ſeas, now came before the king and parliament, and offered, if he would grant him the whole fifteenth, lately voted by the commons for carrying on the war, he would ſerve him in France for one whole year, with two thouſand five hundred men at arms, and two thouſand five hundred archers, all well arrayed and mounted, of whom one thouſand men at arms, and the ſame number of archers, ſhould (God willing) be at the ſea ſide, within twenty days from the payment of the money, properly equipped, and ready to embark for the ſuccour of the city of Gaunt, and the county of Flanders; he likewiſe undertook to pay the expence of tranſporting this army, and all other incidental charges, for the due performance of which he offered to enter into ſufficient obligations. This propoſal appeared to the king and his parliament fair and advantageous; but before it was accepted, the king deſired that he and his council might be acquainted what leaders the biſhop intended to procure for commanding theſe troops, their numbers, and names, as it was well known, that unleſs an army had good officers at its head, it would ſoon fall to anarchy and ruin. To

(o) The words ſoldier and ſtipendiary are etymologically the ſame; ſoldier is derived from ſolde pay, and ſtipendiary from ſtipendium, wages or hire. Cuſtom perhaps made the difference; the firſt ſignifying one of the conſtitutional military and ſtipendiary of the indented troops. See the orders above mentioned in Rymer.

this the biſhop anſwered, that if it pleaſed the king to accept of his propoſals, he would employ ſome of the beſt captains in the land, his majeſty and the blood royal excepted, but that he would not give their names, till he was ſure of having a grant of the expedition; on this it was aſked him, what lord he deſired to have with him, to act as the king's lieutenant, as one was abſolutely neceſſary in ſo high and weighty a buſineſs, who ſhould have power to take cognizance of crimes, and to do other things neceſſary, which office never was to this time granted to a prelate, or any man of holy church. The biſhop then offered to give the king in writing the names of a certain number of lords, out of whom he might ſelect any one he thought beſt qualified for that office, who, on his appointment, ſhould have orders to obey him (the biſhop), in all things appertaining to the cruſade (p), and he on his part, would engage to obey the lieutenant in all things relative to his lieutenantcy; and moreover, if within the ſaid year it ſhould happen, that the kingdom of France ſubmitted to Urban the true pope, he would furl and withdraw the banner of the cruſade, and ſerve the king the remainder of the year with his ſtipulated number of men, under his own proper banner. This being approved of by the king and parliament, the king granted his licence to all ſuch perſons as choſe to accompany the biſhop in this expedition, the royal retinue, and thoſe of the great lords excepted, to leave the realm without moleſtation. The biſhop then delivered to the king the names of four perſons of his kingdom, from among whom he might chuſe his lieutenant; this he did not do, for what reaſon is unknown; but granted, that if the biſhop could not agree with any of the lords by him named, or ſome other ſufficient perſon, worthy to bear ſo high an office, he might in that caſe have the government and diſpoſition of the army in all things.

THESE ſtipendiary forces were, the garriſons and caſtle guards excepted, kept up only in time of war, and though mercenary, were

(p) A CRUSADE was at that time on foot againſt Clement, the anti-pope, of which the biſhop of Norwich was by Pope Urban appointed general.

not ſtanding armies. Their ſubſiſtence was drawn from the grants made by parliament, in which their ſpecific numbers were ſometimes ſtipulated.

THE firſt ſtanding forces employed by our kings were their immediate body guards, ſuch as the ſerjeants at arms, the yeomen of the guards, and gentlemen penſioners; yet theſe were rather calculated for the ſplendour of a court, than the operations of the field.

DURING the troubles under Charles I. a number of troops were levied by both parties, without any attention to law or cuſtom; their inſtitution does not therefore come within the ſcope of this work. Many of the regiments raiſed by the parliament were on the reſtoration of Charles II. diſbanded, and the ſame day relevied for that king's ſervice. Two regiments of guards raiſed by him in 1660, one of horſe, and one of foot, formed the two firſt corps of our preſent army: theſe were afterwards conſiderably increaſed. In 1661, the firſt regiment, or royal Scotch, were brought back from France (r),

(r) THIS regiment is from its antiquity jocularly ſtiled Pontius Pilate's guards.

FATHER DANIEL gives the following hiſtory of it, under the title of the Scotch Regiment of Douglas. "This regiment ſerved ſeveral years in France, and diſtinguiſhed itſelf very greatly. I find in the ordonance of Louis XIV. of the year 1670, for the rank of regiments, that it was one of the firſt: it came from Scotland to France in the time of James VI.

THE chevalier Hepburne was the colonel; he was a man of diſtinguiſhed merit, and beloved by Henry IV. and Louis XIII.; he was called in France Colonel Hebron, the name of Hepburne being difficult to pronounce. Although he was killed (anno 1636) during the reign of Louis XIII. his memory was ſo dear in France, that King Louis XIV. cauſed a magnificent monument to be erected for him in the cathedral of Toul. After the death of Hepburne, the Lord James Douglas was appointed colonel of the regiment, which from that time began to be called the regiment of Douglas. This colonel was killed between Douay and Arras, commanding a flying camp. He was a lieutenant general, and highly eſteemed in France for his bravery and conduct.

HIS brother, the Lord George Douglas, who had afterwards the title of Lord Dumbarton, was appointed colonelof thisregiment, and did not yield in merit to his predeceſſors.

THIS regiment of Douglas being in garriſon at Avennes in 1661, had orders to paſs over to England, where it rendered very conſiderable ſervices to King Charles II.

IT conſiſted but of eight companies when it left France, but on its return a year afterwards,

where they had ſerved from the time of King James I. There were alſo, about the ſame time, an Engliſh corps of cavalry in the French ſervice (s).

---

wards, had thirty-three companies, which were compoſed at the leaſt of an hundred men each. Lord George Douglas always commanded it in France. It is to be obſerved, that there was at the ſame time in France another regiment of Douglas, the colonel of which was brother to the two lords before mentioned; he was alſo called the Lord James Douglas. This regiment, which conſiſted of but one battalion, was incorporated with that of his brother. The regiment of my Lord George Douglas was recalled to England about the year 1678.

After the laſt revolution, the colonel who had then the title of Lord Dumbarton, lieutenant general in France and England, and a great number of officers, followed the late King James into France. Many ſoldiers imitated the example of their officers. This regiment ſtill ſubſiſts, and is inconteſtibly the fineſt corps in England. It is commanded by the Lord Orkney, a lieutenant general, and brother to the late duke of Hamilton, and nephew to the Lord Dumbarton. It is called the royal regiment, or Orkney's regiment. This regiment has furniſhed a number of excellent officers, many of whom are ſtill ſerving in France. What I have here related was taken from the memoirs of a Scotch officer who was well informed on this ſubject.

There were beſides this regiment, another of ſeventeen hundred men, commanded by Colonel Rutherford, which ranked as guards in France; they came over from Scotland in 1643, and were at the battle of Lens, in 1648. When King Charles was reſtored to the crown, he appointed Rutherford governor of Dunkirk, who quitted the French ſervice without paying the proper compliments to the king of France, by whom he had been loved and entruſted. On his quitting France the regiment was reduced, and the ſubalterns and ſuch ſoldiers as choſe to ſerve in France, incorporated in Douglas's regiment.

(s) The Engliſh company of gens d'armes which is the ſecond, was brought into France, in 1667, by the Count George Hamilton, lord of the branch of Hamilton Albercome, long eſtabliſhed in Ireland; this company came into France on the following occaſion. Charles II. having remounted on the throne in 1660, cauſed ſome catholick officers and ſoldiers, who had ſerved in Flanders under him and his two brothers, to come to England; theſe he incorporated into his guards; ſome time after the parliament being at variance with the court obliged that prince to diſmiſs all theſe catholick officers and ſoldiers of his guards. On this occaſion George Hamilton had permiſſion from the king his maſter to enrol theſe officers and ſoldiers, and to take them over to France. There were in this company Engliſh, Scotch, and Iriſh. On Hamilton's arrival, the king of France, finding they were good and well-made men, formed them into a company of gens d'armes, under the title of the Engliſh gens d'armes, excepting that he draughted out the Scotch, and incorporated them in the Scotch gens d'armes; he declared himſelf captain of this new company, and appointed George

AMONG other unconſtitutional innovations made by the ill-adviſed James II. that of diſmiſſing the proteſtant officers from his army, and introducing Iriſh papiſts in their room, was the moſt impolitic, and loſt him the affection and ſupport of his troops, which towards the latter end of his reign were increaſed to upwards of twenty thouſand men in England, and eight thouſand ſeven hundred in Ireland (t). A liſt of the military eſtabliſhment for the year 1684, is given in the appendix.

George Hamilton captain lieutenant, who was killed at the head of the regiment bearing his name, in an engagement near Severne, in 1675. *P. Daniel.* tom. 2. p. 249.

(t) THESE all, except the royal regiment, conſiſted of independent companies or troops, till April 1683, when they were regimented by King Charles II. and formed into three regiments of horſe, and eight of foot. The 18th was one of theſe regiments; the earl of Granard was the firſt colonel; he reſigned it to his ſon. A ſingular circumſtance happened to this corps, in the year 1689, on the diſbanding of the Iriſh regiments on the arrival of K. William III. which is thus related by one, then a ſoldier in it: "A moſt unaccountable rumour prevailed throughout the kingdom, that all the Iriſh ſoldiers had got together, burning and deſtroying all before them, and this alarm had ſo wonderful an effect, that not a town or village but had an account, that the very next town or village was in flames: in ſhort it had prevailed ſo far, that the trained bands of London were all under arms, guarding the ſtreets and avenues leading to the city.

UPON this alarm the country people came down in great numbers, to be revenged on the Iriſh regiment at Brentford, for the depredations their countrymen were making all over the kingdom; Sir John Edgworth, our major, was commanding officer (for Lord Brittas, our lieutenant colonel, being a papiſt, had fled); he ordered the regiment to their arms immediately, and drew them with all diſpatch he could, within the walls of Lord Oſſinton's court yard. From thence he expoſtulated with the populace, but all to no purpoſe; they would have revenge. At laſt, perceiving two gentlemen among the croud, he called them to him, and aſſured them that his men were not Iriſh papiſts, as they imagined, but proteſtants, and deſcended from Engliſhmen, though born in Ireland; and to convince them they were all true church of England men, he deſired they would ſend for the parſon of the pariſh to read prayers to them; the parſon was ſent for, and to prayers they went.

THE ſoldiers had moſt of them their common prayer books about them, and (whether it was out of fear or devotion) they anſwered the reſponſes of the church ſo diſtinctly, and behaved with ſo much decency, that it ſurprized both the parſon and the gentlemen; whereupon they returned to the crowd who gave us a huzza; cried, the prince of Orange for ever! and went away.

THIS

THE revolution, which ſhortly after ſucceeded, cauſed the military part of the conſtitution to be new modelled, and the army to be voted from year to year only, by an act ſtiled the mutiny bill, which is prefaced by a declaratory clauſe, that it is unlawful to raiſe or keep a ſtanding army in time of peace, without the permiſſion of parliament. In this act, the numbers of which the army is to conſiſt are ſpecified, and divers laws and regulations for their government are laid down; from theſe the king is authoriſed to frame ſuch other articles as he ſhall deem expedient and neceſſary. This act has of late been regularly paſſed every year, whence an opinion has ariſen, that ſhould it be ſuffered to expire, the army would of courſe be diſbanded, and that the ſoldiers might quit their colours without being liable to any puniſhment; this is however not univerſally allowed (u), and cannot in time of war be legal. The declaratory clauſe above-

---

THIS regiment going to Flanders, a diſpute aroſe reſpecting its rank in the army, which a board of general officers was appointed to ſettle; but being all colonels of regiments intereſted in the deciſion, they would allow it rank only from the time it came on Engliſh pay, by which it loſt precedency of eleven regiments. It obtained the title of a royal regiment for its gallant behaviour in mounting the breach at Namur, in 1695. See Captain Robert Parker's Memoirs. The liſt of the army publiſhed by Millan, and Kane in his Campaigns, date the raiſing of this regiment April 1, 1684.

(u) NOTWITHSTANDING this opinion, the mutiny act has expired, and been ſuffered to remain for ſome time unrenewed, more than once, ſince its inſtitution; the firſt time was A. D. 1689, when the mutiny bill having expired the 10th of November, the new bill, which originated with the lords, was not ſent to the commons, till the 14th, four days after the former act had expired; and though it did not receive the royal aſſent till the 23d of December, it was directed to take place on the 20th. In the year 1691, the mutiny bill, which expired on the 20th of December, was not renewed till March 14th, 1692-3, but ordered to be in force from the 10th.

In the year 1694, the new mutiny bill was not paſſed till the 16th of April, although it ceaſed on the 10th of the preceding month of March; and in the ſucceeding year it did not receive the royal aſſent till the 22d of April, ſix days after its expiration.

AFTER the bill which was paſſed in the 1ſt of April, 1697, *for one year longer*, had expired, no other bill was paſſed or ordered till January 31ſt, 1701, when one was offered which received the royal aſſent, 2d of March, 1701-2. See the Journals of the houſes of lords and commons.

mentioned being reſtricted to the time of peace only; and it being declared felony by the acts of the 7th of Henry VII. cap. 1, and 3d Henry VIII. cap. 5, for any ſoldier to depart from the army without the king's licence, which acts were, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, pronounced by all the judges (x) perpetual; and Blackſtone in his Commentaries, vol. 4, p. 101, ſays, deſertion from the king's armies in time of war, whether by land or ſea, in England or in parts beyond the ſeas, is by the ſtanding laws of the land (excluſive of the annual acts of parliament to puniſh mutiny and deſertion), and particularly by ſtatute 18th Hen. VI. c. 19, and 5th Eliz. c. 5. made felony, but not without benefit of clergy: but by the ſtatute of 2d and 3d Edward VI. c. 2, clergy is taken away from ſuch deſerters, and the offence is made triable by the juſtices of every ſhire. The ſame ſtatutes puniſh other inferior military offences, with fines, impriſonment, and other penalties.

The regular modes of aſſembling the national forces were anciently as follows: the great barons, biſhops, abbots, and other tenants holding immediately from the king, were, when circumſtances permitted, warned to aſſemble by both a ſpecial and general ſummons; the firſt was by the royal mandate particularly directed to each baron, biſhop, or abbot, ſent to the ſheriffs of the counties wherein they reſided, to be by them or their officers perſonally ſerved on the parties to whom they were addreſſed (y). In theſe notices they were poſitively enjoined on their fidelity, as they regarded the king's honour and the lands they held of him, to be at a certain time and place, with their due ſervice of men and horſes, properly equipped, to ſet out with the king or his general on the intended expedition; this was peculiar to the tenants in capite or great barons; they likewiſe partook with the

(x) See Coke's Reports, p. 520, caſe of ſoldiers. Trinit. 43 Eliz

(y) See a ſummons of this nature to William de Fortibus, A. D. 1257, 41 Hen. III. Rymer, vol. 1, p. 635. The ſummonſes for ſuch perſons as reſided at the king's court were ſent by the treaſurer to the exchequer, and thence to the keepers of the king's wardrobe, who delivered them. *Madox Hiſt. Exchcq.*

inferior feudal tenants, in being ſummoned by public proclamation, made by the ſheriffs and their officers, in all market towns and boroughs within their counties, commanding all perſons bound to perform military ſervice, to aſſemble at a time and place therein named, duly mounted and armed, under penalty of forfeiting their fees, or being ſeverely amerced. Theſe proclamations were made in conſequence of the king's writ to the ſheriff, many ſpecimens of which are to be found in Rymer and the other public records (z). See the form of one in the note below. If it was found neceſſary to alter or poſtpone the time or place of meeting, it was done by like proclamation.

In caſes of popular inſurrection, rebellion, or the apprehenſion of a foreign invaſion, where it was deemed neceſſary to collect a greater force than the feudal troops, the king iſſued his writ to the ſheriffs of thoſe counties, whoſe forces it was thought expedient to array and embody, directing them to ride night and day through their diſtricts, cauſing it to be proclaimed wherever they came, that all perſons between the ages of ſixteen and ſixty, not labouring under bodily diſability, called defenſible men, were commanded to join the king's army, with all poſſible ſpeed, at a place appointed, competently armed, according to their poſſeſſions, under pain of forfeiture of life, limb, and every other thing they could forfeit.

It was alſo cuſtomary, whilſt the ſtatute of Wincheſter, or that of Philip and Mary, continued in force, for the king to iſſue commiſſions of array, appointing certain experienced officers, in whom they could confide, to aſſemble, muſter, array, and try, or exerciſe the inhabitants

---

(z) Vicecomiti Kanciæ ſalutem. Præcipimus tibi quod ſine delatione ſummoneri facias per totam ballivam tuam archiepiſcopos, epiſcopos, abbates, priores, comites, barones, milites & libere tenentes, & omnes alios qui ſervitiam nobis debent, ſive ſervitiam militare vel ſerjeantiæ: quodque ſimiliter clamari facias per totam baillivam tuam, quod ſint apud Wigorniam in craſtino St. Trinitatis, anno regni noſtri ſeptimo, omni dilatione & occaſione poſtpoſitis, cum toto hujuſmodo ſervitio quod nobis debent, paratis cum equis et armis, ad eundum in ſervitium noſtrum, quo eis præceperimus. T. H. &c. apud Weſtmon. 25 die Maii, eodem modo ſcribitur omnibus vicecomitibus Angliæ. Cl. 7. H. 3. m. 10. dorſo.

of certain diſtricts, with an intent to ſee they had their proper armour and weapons; and alſo in ſome meaſure to inſtruct them in the uſe of arms. Divers commiſſions of array occur in Rymer's Fœdera, two will be given in the appendix. The form of theſe commiſſions was ſettled in parliament the 5th of Henry IV.

Under the article of ſummoning the defenſible men of the realm, may be placed ſome very extraordinary writs, iſſued in the reigns of King Edward III. and Richard II. directed to the archbiſhops and biſhops, directing them to arm, array, and regiment all the abbots, priors, monks, and other eccleſiaſtical perſons, of what dioceſe ſoever, between the ages of ſixteen and ſixty. As this appears a matter of great curioſity, a literal tranſlation of one of theſe writs is here given.

"The King to the Venerable Father in Chriſt, William, by the ſaid grace Archbiſhop of Canterbury, Primate of all England, greeting. As in our laſt parliament, by your aſſent, and that of the other prelates, nobles, and commons of our realm, it hath been ordered that all the men of our ſaid kingdom of England, as well clergy as laity, to wit, every one of them according to their ſtate, poſſeſſions, and abilities, ſhould be armed and arrayed, to go forth, for the ſafety of holy church and the ſaid kingdom, againſt our enemies, if any ſhall preſume to enter the ſaid kingdom.

"Wherefore, by divers of our commiſſions, we have aſſigned certain of our truſty perſons in every county of our kingdom, for arraying, and cauſing to be arrayed and armed, all defenſible men there found, between the ages of ſixteen and ſixty years, and to cauſe them to be divided into thouſands, hundreds, and twenties, ſo that the ſaid men ſo armed and arrayed, and well furniſhed with competent arms, may be ready and prepared to reſiſt the ſaid enemy, for the ſafety and defence of the ſaid church and kingdom.

"And becauſe our enemies, the French, having broken the peace between France and England, laſt entered into at Calais, have in an hoſtile manner taken our cities, caſtles, towns, and many other places, ſlaying our faithful ſubjects reſiding therein, and taking them

into their own hands, thus detaining and occupying them. And not content with this alone, they have aſſembled and are diligently preparing with the utmoſt expedition, in divers parts of the ſea coaſts, a large fleet of ſhips, with a multitude of forces and armed men, in order ſhortly to invade our ſaid kingdom, and us, our ſaid kingdom and people, to conquer by force, and to ſubvert our realm and the church of England.

" We willing, in the moſt convenient manner, to provide for the ſafety and defence of the church and our ſaid kingdom with all our power: and adverting that you and all the other prelates, and all the clergy of the ſaid kingdom, with our other faithful ſubjects, are bound to lend an aſſiſting hand to reſiſt our ſaid enemies, for the ſafety of holy church and the ſaid kingdom:

" We therefore firmly enjoin and command you by the fealty and love by which you are bound unto us, and conſidering the imminent perils and heavy damages threatened by the invaſion of our aforeſaid enemies, that you cauſe all abbots, priors, religious, and other eccleſiaſtical perſons (every delay being laid aſide), to be armed, arrayed, and furniſhed with competent arms, (to wit) every one between the ſaid ages, according to their ſaid ſtate, poſſeſſions, and abilities, and theſe to be arranged into thouſands, hundreds, and twenties, ſo that they may be ready and prepared to ſet forth together with our other faithful ſubjects, againſt our ſaid enemies, within our kingdom, in order, with God's aſſiſtance, to conquer, repel, and deſtroy them, and to puniſh their audacity.

" And this, as you eſteem us and our honour, your own and the ſafety of holy church and our kingdom, you will by no manner omit.

" Witness the King at Weſtminſter, the 6th day of July, A.D. 1369, clauſ. 4 Ed. III. M. 13."

Like writs were ſent directed to the archbiſhop of York, and every other biſhop in England (a).

(a) Two other writs of this kind, and in the ſame reign, occur in Rymer; the 1ſt in the 46th year, and the other in the 47th: another the 1ſt of Richard II.

Notwithstanding theſe writs were at leaſt three or four times iſſued, hiſtory does not inform us that theſe reverend battalions were ever actually called forth under arms. Indeed many ſeemingly inſuperable obſtacles militated againſt it. Firſt, the immunities of the church, which would have been highly violated by making private ſoldiers of its members; next, many councils and canons, as well as the determinations of different popes, all concurred in prohibiting eccleſiaſtics to uſe any other ſword than that of the ſpirit, or by any means to ſpill human blood. Beſides, the very order directed an impoſſibility: how could a monk, who had no private property, purchaſe armour or weapons, had it even been lawful for him to make uſe of them? Beſides, ſuppoſing them aſſembled, armed and regimented, it would have required a much greater time to render them in any degree fit for ſervice, than the exigency of the cauſe for which they were aſſembled would admit. Perhaps after all, theſe ſummonſes were iſſued rather with an intent to draw a commutation from their treaſury, than to call them to the field.

It ſeems extremely difficult to reconcile the practice of the eccleſiaſtics of ancient times with their principles and laws. We everywhere read of biſhops ſerving in, and ſometimes commanding armies; and frequently of their fighting, like private troopers, in the ranks of a ſquadron, and that not in cruſados or religious wars: at the ſame time, canons, councils, and popes, unanimouſly forbid eccleſiaſtics of all degrees to uſe the ſword, or engage in any military operations. An inſtance of this is ſhewn in the caſe of Philip de Dreux, biſhop of Beavais; who, as Matthew Paris relates, being taken priſoner by King Richard I. in complete armour, was confined in priſon; the pope, interfering in his behalf, ſolicited his releaſe, under the title of his ſon and the ſon of the church: in anſwer to which, the king ſent him the coat of mail, wherein the biſhop was taken, with the following queſtion, "Is this thy ſon's coat or not?" to which the pope ingenuouſly anſwered, it was neither his ſon's coat, nor the coat of the ſon of the church; thereby diſavowing him, and declining to intereſt himſelf for an eccleſiaſtic ſo improperly employed.

This biſhop, in order to avoid offending the letter of the canon and other regulations, did not uſe a ſword, but fought with a mace, of which he made ſo powerful an uſe, that at the battle of Bovines, he beat down Long-Sword earl of Saliſbury ; how he contrived to avoid the ſpilling of blood, is not ſo evident, ſince it would be next to impoſſible, to beat out a man's brains, without cauſing the prohibited effuſion.

In the ancient poem of the ſiege of Caerlaverok, Anthony Beck biſhop of Durham is complimented on his courage, and is there ſaid to be the moſt valiant clerk in the kingdom or indeed in Chriſtendome, but abſent from that ſervice, on account of a wound he had received. Henry Spencer biſhop of Norwich, in the reign of King Richard II. not only raiſed, but alſo commanded, an army in France ; and at Ickingham near Newmarket, leaped his horſe over ſome barricados and a trench, with which ſome rebels had fortified themſelves, and Godwin ſays, " rode into the very midſt of them, and beſtirred himſelf ſo manfully, as, if it had been an action agreeable to his calling, had deſerved great commendations." Among the perſons indenting to raiſe ſoldiers for King Henry V. are ſeveral biſhops : and at the battle of Floddon Field, there were ſlain of the Scots, one archbiſhop, two biſhops, and four abbots.

Father Daniel ſuggeſts a motive, which perhaps, beſides the love of glory, cauſed the biſhops and other great eccleſiaſtics to follow the armies ; which was, that by their being accuſtomed to the uſe of arms, they were the better able to defend themſelves againſt the encroachments of the great barons, who frequently, particularly in France, ſeiſed on their revenues, under pretence of reimburſing themſelves the expences they had been at in fighting for the defence of the church and ſtate.

In France the abbots frequently impoveriſhed their abbies, by fitting out their equipages for war, although forbidden by the council of Soiſſons, an. 774 (b). Perhaps likewiſe they were, by ſome clauſe

(b) Pere Daniel, tom. i. p. 15.

unknown to us, obliged by their tenures, on certain occaſions, to attend perſonally. Indeed, one inſtance has already been quoted in this work, wherein it is commanded (c), but at the ſame time it is probable, the prelates and great abbots did not entirely diſlike it; otherwiſe, conſidering the many arguments to be adduced againſt it, and the high power of the church, it would eaſily have been overruled.

THE methods of raiſing the ſtipendiary, or mercenary troops, were either by commiſſions, in ſubſtance much like our preſent beating orders, authoriſing perſons to enliſt volunteers; or by indenture, a practice that began about the latter end of the reign of King Edward III. (d) and in that of Henry V. became general. By theſe indentures, different perſons engaged themſelves to provide a certain number of able men, properly armed, to ſerve the king for a ſtated time, at a ſtipulated pay and bounty, then ſtiled wages and regards; both the wages and regards were calculated according to the nature of the ſervice, and place in which it was to be performed: beſides ſettling the quantum of the pay and bounty, with the time and manner of payment, theſe indentures contained divers covenants reſpecting the ſharing of priſoners of war, or booty that might happen to be taken by the contractor or his men, ranſom being at that time one of the principal emoluments ariſing from military ſervice, and conſidered by the ſoldiers of thoſe days as an expectancy, ſimilar to that of prize money in our preſent navy. Not only ſoldiers of fortune indented for this ſervice, but alſo biſhops and other eccleſiaſtical and civil perſons. Specimens of theſe indentures (e) are given in the

(c) NOTE, (f) page 5.

(d) ALTHOUGH indentures with the king's ſubjects were not common before this period, Rymer contains ſeveral records of agreements with foreigners to find ſoldiers for our earlier kings.

(e) INDENTURE of war. John Haytely, Eſquire, Dame Beatrice Shirley, Bundel 8. This indenture, made between the king our ſovereign lord of the one part, and John Haytely, Eſquire, of the other part, witneſſeth, that the ſaid John is bound to our ſaid lord the king to

notes and appendix: the originals are ſtill extant at the Paper Office, Whitehall. In theſe agreements it was uſual for the king to advance part of the pay beforehand, afterwards called impreſt money, and alſo to give ſecurity for the regular payment of the remainder; for

---

to do him ſervice of war, in the parts beyond ſea, for three quarters of a year, and the ſaid John to have continually remaining with him during the ſaid time, three archers mounted and arrayed as appertains to their eſtate, and the ſaid John ſhall take for wages for himſelf twelve pence a day, with accuſtomed regards, and for each of his ſaid archers ſixpence the day, during the time above mentioned, which wages and regards ſhall be paid to him for himſelf and his ſaid archers, immediately in hand for two months, and for the third month at his muſter; and for the ſecond and third quarter above mentioned, the ſaid John ſhall be paid from month to month, at the beginning of each month, in Engliſh gold, or in ſome other money then current in France, of the value of the ſaid gold in England above ſaid, by the hands of the treaſurer of war of the king our ſaid ſovereign lord, for the time being. And the ſaid John ſhall be bound to be with the people of his ſaid retinue at the port of Southampton, the 1ſt day of April next coming, to make a full muſter of himſelf and his ſaid retinue, and the ſaid term ſhall commence on the day of the ſaid muſter; and our ſaid lord the king ſhall have as well the third part of the gains of war of the aforeſaid John, as the third part of the thirds for which the people of his retinue ſhall be anſwerable to him out of their gains of war, be they priſoners, booty or other things taken, and all the other accuſtomed droits; for which thirds of thirds and droits the ſaid John ſhall be bound to anſwer to our ſaid ſovereign lord the king, at his exchequer, in England, upon oath, to be taken by the ſaid John, or the executor or executors of his will, in his name and not otherwiſe, and the ſaid John ſhall have all the priſoners during the ſaid time by him or any of his ſaid people taken, except kings and princes, and the ſons of kings, and in particular Charles called the Dauphin of Vienne and other great captains of the blood royal, alſo chieftains and lieutenants having power from the ſaid Charles, and excepting alſo thoſe who killed and ſlew John late Duke of Bourgundy, or were knowing and conſenting, or counſelling and aiding thereunto, of whom all and every one ſhall remain the priſoners of our ſaid lord the king, for whom he ſhall make a reaſonable agreement to him or them who ſhall have taken them; and the ſaid John ſhall perform watch and ward, and alſo muſter himſelf and his retinue when and as often as it ſhall be by our ſaid lord the king duly warned and required during the time aforeſaid; and the ſaid John ſhall have the tranſportation of himſelf, his men, and horſes, to France and back at the expence of our lord the king before named. In witneſs whereof the ſaid John has affixed his ſeal to part of this indenture, before our ſaid lord the king. Given at Weſtminſter the 7th day of February, in the 9th year of the reign of our ſaid ſovereign lord.

On the back.—The indenture of John Hayteley, Eſquire, for and in the name of Dame Beatrice Shirley.

this purpoſe King Henry V. pledged all his jewels, which were not redeemed till after his death.

An expedient ſometimes practiſed by our kings to procure troops for foreign ſervice, was to pardon criminals, on condition of their ſerving in the king's army abroad, and finding ſecurity to anſwer any proſecution if called upon at their return (f). Some of the king's juſtices were occaſionally empowered to iſſue theſe pardons, and to receive the obligations of the criminals (g), after which they were allowed a ſmall time to prepare for their voyage; they were then aſſembled by writs iſſued to the ſheriffs of the different counties of England, directing them to cauſe it to be cried throughout their diſtricts, that all ſuch as had charters of pardon ſhould repair towards the ſea, to enter into the pay and ſervice of the king; thoſe in the weſt at Dartmouth; thoſe in the counties of Kent, Surry, and Suſſex, at Winchelſea; in Cambridge, Huntingdon, Norfolk, Suffolk, Lincoln, Northampton, or Rutland, and the neighbouring counties, at Yarmouth and St. Botolf's; ſo that they were there by a ſtated time, under penalty of loſing their charters of pardon (h).

These were the regular and conſtitutional modes of aſſembling our armies in former times, beſides which ſeveral of our ſovereigns under the authority of the royal prerogative, obliged diſtricts, cities, towns, corporations, and even particular perſons, to find men, horſes, and arms, or to pay contributions for that purpoſe, not always according to any regular proportion or aſſeſſment, but allotted ſolely by their will and pleaſure. This being contrary to the ſtatute of the 1ſt of King Edward I. was complained of by the commons in the reign of King Edward III. when although a more ſtrict obſervation was promiſed, and alſo directed by a ſtatute, yet both in that and the ſucceeding reigns, particularly thoſe of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth, the ſame was frequently practiſed.

The following curious abſtract of the different kings who have

(f) See Hal. Pl. Cr. vol. ii. p. 145, and Barrington on the Statutes.

(g) Rot. Vaſcon, anno Ed. M. 8. N. 11. MS. Yelvert.

(h) Rot. Parl. anno 13 Ed. III.

exercifed this prerogative, was drawn up by Sir Robert Cotton, as it appears, by the order of the king, and laid before the lords of the privy council, it is now in the Cotton library, in the Britifh Mufeum. Julius, F. 6.

Raifing Forces at the Counties' Charge.

King John ordered in councill, that every nine men fhould find the tenth at their own chardges.—Pat. 6 Johs.

Henry III. of every two ploughlands commanded one man to attende his fervice for 40 daies, at the publique chardge of the villadge. Dorf. Clauf. 14. Hen. III. Scutage he affeffed feveral times, for his fervices, and for fuch fervice unto Gafcoigne, William de Umfreville made fine 100 marks, many others at the fame time. Rot. Fin. 26 H. III. & clauf. 15 H. III.

In the 14th he caufed his fubjects, jurare ad arma, proportionable from a knite fee to 20s. to be ready at the Whitfuntide following (i). Thefe men the year following were reminded to furnifh themfelves at the country's chardge with munition and victualls for 40 daies (k), making fine of fuch as held in capite, and attended not, and levied victualls upon his people for fupplie of his army. And 27 the like fervices were commanded in Gafcoigne, the names of the attendants entered upon the roll (l).

The nobles by Ed. I. were enjoined fervices into Gafcoigne in the 22d, and their names entered upon the roll (m). The like the fame year to go againft Wales (n).

Edward II. impofed fea fervice twelve feveral times upon the porte towns at their owne coft, fometimes for a month, as 11mo. fome for four, as 12mo. fometimes for feven, as 4to (o).

In his 17th year Southampton is charged with fixteen fhipps, and

---

(i) This was only ad defenfionem nri & fua regni. Dorf. clauf. 14 H. III. m. 6.
(k) Dors. clauf. 15 H. III. m. 8.
(l) Rot. Vafc. 27 H. III.
(m) Rot. Vafc. 22 Ed. I. in dorf.
(n) Rot. Wall. 22 E. I. dorf.
(o) Rot. Cl. et Pat. de Ans. infra.

one hundred and eighteen ſea townes more ratably. And he cauſed ſome of them to build gallies at their own charges, as he did Southampton of one hundred and twenty oares, in the 23d of his reign.

By Ed. II. in his firſt yeare, men at armes, the countrey victuals and the poſt towns ſhippes. The charges of men and munition for them for ſeven weeks, in his 4th yeare, and one out of every towne for ſixty daies, and to ſeize their goods, and impriſon their perſons that refuſed (p).

The D. of Lancaſter is commanded out of his land to levy two thouſand foot, and bring them to Newcaſtle; the like to other noblemen. The cities and villadges to find for forty daies men and furniture at their coſte; the number in this roll is expreſſed, and there an ordinance of the K. and Cls. to furniſh the armes of every degree is entered. Five hundred men are aſeſſed on London ſumptibus proprijs in his 12th year (q).

In the 13th thoſe of 40s. land that attended not upon the king's ſummons, were fined for the firſt default, at a third of their goodes, and the reſte for their ſecond, and their bodies to be at the king's pleaſure for the third; and of every knight's fee twenty pounds were taken of him that fayled (r). In the 15th one of every town ſumptibus proprijs for 40 daies and the ſhire of Bucks redeemed their ſervice of their men with 600 marks fine, all that had 40l. land, were commanded at their own chardges to ſerve the king, at the forfeiture of their lande and chattels (s). The nobility with horſe and armes are commanded in the 18th year, and their numbers entered on the roll (t).

Edward III. in his firſt yeare, charged upon the ſea towns, all their ſhipps from 60 tonne upwards, and the year following 76 poort townes are commanded to furniſh all their barks above 40 tonn (u). The

(p) Rot. Scac. I. Ed. II. dorſ.
(q) Claus et Pat. 12 Ed. II.
(r) Claus. et Pat. in 13 Ed. II.
(s) Rot Claus. 15 Ed. II.
(t) Vasc. 18 Ed. II.
(u) Pat. and Claus. de ann. 1 and 2 Ed. III.

nobility are ſummoned in his eighth year to attend att Rokeſburgh with armed men (x).

The like in the 10th, upon the citie of London, he impoſed a levy of men (y), and aſſeſſed upon the ſhires of England certaine horſeman, as eighty out of Suffolke, he diſpenſeth with their ſervice, ſo they ſend him money after the rate they ſhould be at (z), and the ſee towns are enjoyned to build barges to attend the king's fleete at their own chardge (a).

In the 11th yeare the towns and borrowghs are commanded to furniſh men (b). All men enjoyned to find men according to their tenures. The clergie furniſh the king with armed men, and all from ſixteen to ſixty, to be ready to ſerve, the impotente and aged to contribute to the chardge, and power given to arreſt goods of ſuch as ſhould refuſe, tanquam de inimicis (c). The cinque ports maintained thirty ſhipps, during the time of war, and when the ſubjects complained in parliament of theſe chardges, they received no farther anſwer than this, "it "ſhall be as before (d)."

In the 16th diverſe men expreſſed by name in the record, do furniſhe the king with men at armes, and archers (e); and pardon is granted to all felons, that ſhall be ready to ſerve the king in his warres (f), the year following at the chardge of the nobility, divers armed men are ſet forth. Every man that had lande to the value of five pound, was ordered to find the king one archer for his warres: in the 20th yeare (g), the cities and towns find the king for his warres armed men; in anno 24th, and the yeare followinge, the citie of London furniſhed three hundred archers for the king's chardge. And that theſe chardges were legally aſſeſſed, thoughe not by parliament, it

(x) Rot. Scoc. 8 Ed. III.
(y) Rot. Scoc. 10 Ed. III. dor.
(z) Rot. Scoc. 10 Ed. III. 10. Aug.
(a) Claus. 10 Ed. III.
(b) Vasc. 11 Ed. III.
(c) Rot. ..... 13 Ed. III.
(d) Claus. et. Pat. 13 Ed. III.
(e) Rot. Franc. 16 Ed. III.
(f) Rot. Franc. 17 Ed. III.
(g) Rot. Franc. 20 Ed. III.

appeareth, becauſe diverſe men procure themſelves patents of diſchardge out of ſpeciall favour (h).

After this year, theſe forms and courſes were changed totally, and this king and ſo all following for the moſt parte furniſhed their occaſions of warre, by contracting with their nobility and gentrie, to finde them a proportion of men at certain wages: the indentures from this king, unto Edward IV. remaine for the moſt part with the clerk of the Pells at Weſtminſter, and the kings had leſs reaſon to chardge their people, in this king's time and followinge, becauſe they were ſupplied by parliament that was annuall.

Richard II. in anno 22d, levied horſes, and cartes, and victuallers of his people, for their voyadge into Ireland (i).

Henry VI. in his 20th year enjoned the perſons to attend him in his warres, and diſpenſeth with as many as would contribute to his occaſions. The chardge of two daies' expence if they ſerved in perſon (k).

Henry VII. muſtered his army, partly by benevolence, and partly at his ſubjects' chardge, the diſtinction is entered on the liſt (l).

Henry VIII. impoſed on his people the finding of archers for his warres, aſſeſſing ſome one knight at forty pound, as Sir Adrian Forteſcue, and the like in the 16th, but at a higher ceſs, ſome one knight finding a hundred men (m), the lords and chief men of every county, commanded to attend the king in his warres, ſome one with fifty men for the defence of Calais in the 14th yeare (n), a leavy of ſix hundred archers ſeſſed upon the nobility, clergie, and good townes; in the 20th, every knight furniſhinge ten foot at the leaſt. A like leavy of men in the 25th, ſome one perſon being charged with fifty foot, and three launces. A proportion I have, at that time drawn (whether

(h) Rot. Franc. 21 Ed. III.
(i) Chron. Walſingham.
(k) Original Inſtructions A. 20 Hen. VI. ap. Rob. Cotton.
(l) Fragment Inſtruction ap. Rob. Cotton.
(m) Littera Orig. manu Regis. 13 Hen. VIII. ap. Rob. Cotton.
(n) Orig. ap. Rob. Cotton.

acted or not uncertaine) for an army royall to attend Henry VIII. into Fraunce, in which, on all his ſubjects from 4000l. land or fees, to 20l. in goodes, a proportion is ſet to find for the king's ſervice, proportions of men (o).

The late queen to withſtand the Spaniſh invaſion in Ireland, impoſed a chardge of horſe and furniture, upon the nobilty, gentrie, and her ableſt ſubjects, which was willingly performed accordingly by all (p).

Having thus far in obedience to his majeſty's command, with a light touch preſented to your honour the many chardges, occaſions of ſtate have lead the foregoing princes, to lay upon their people by ſupreme power, and not by parliament; in all humility I offer up unto your lordſhips theſe two conſiderations: Firſt, that many of theſe though entered upon record, may never be produced to effect; the rolls of the ſaid receipts, peruſed to ſee what levies of men and money have been retourned, in purſuite of any of theſe intentes, will relieve that doubt; the other, that the ſucceſſe of theſe may be examined by ſearch of ſtories of thoſe times, wherein they were ſoe put in practice, of which I have moſt remayning with me.

The ſmooth and uſual cure of all defects and maladyes of ſtate, hath beene by parliament, except ſome few in Hen. III. Ed. II. Rich. II. and Hen. VI. tymes when ſuch remedy proved more dangerous than the diſeaſe, malignant ſpirits wearinge more power, than well compoſed tempers.

In the year 1585, by the queen's order, a letter was written, from the privy council, to William Chalderton, biſhop of Cheſter, ſignifying her intent of ſending a thouſand launces, well mounted and furniſhed, to the aſſiſtance of the Hollanders, but to prevent her kingdom being drained of war horſes, ſhe thought it beſt to purchaſe them abroad, eſtimating each horſe and furniture, at twenty-five pounds. She therefore required him and his clergy to pay for ſo many horſes as were ſettled in an annexed ſchedule.

(o) Orig. ap. Robtum Cotton. (p) Letters of Councill.

The Biſhop,	3	Edward Fleetwood, Parſon of Wigan,	1
The Dean,	1	John Caldwell, Parſon of Wynwicke,	2
The Chapter,	2	Edward Aſhton, Parſon of Middleton,	1

John Nutter, Prebendary, Parſon of Seſſon, of Anghton and Babbington - - - } 2

Richard Gerrard, Prebendary in Southwell, and Parſon of Stopport in Cheſhire - - - } 2

This money to be paid to Robert Freak, Eſq. teller of the Exchequer (q).

About the reign of King Henry VIII. lieutenants were appointed to the different countries throughout the realm, as ſtanding repreſentatives of the crown, and to them, and their deputies all military arrangements within their reſpective diſtricts were entruſted.

A conſtant apprehenſion of an invaſion from Spain, during the firſt part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, cauſed that queen to be very attentive to her internal forces, and was the cauſe of the following commiſſion, and the regulations therein contained, enacted ſolely by her own authority, with the advice of her privy council: the original is preſerved in the Harlean library, No. 6,844.

"Inſtructions for the executyon of the commiſſion directed to all the juſtices of the peace in the countie of . . . . . for generall muſters, and trayning, of all manner of perſons, hable for the warrs, to ſerve as well on horſeback as on foote.

(q) Peck's Deſiderata Curioſa, Vol. 1. During the reign of this queen, the livings of the clergy were aſſeſſed for providing armour, according to the act of Philip and Mary. Any clergymen poſſeſſing one, or more benefices, of 30l. per annum or upwards, was charged according to ſuch proportion as the temporality were charged by that ſtatute, on account of their moveable goods; clergymen having temporal lands and ſpiritual preferment might be charged according to the greateſt rate for either, but not for both. The biſhops, deans, and prebendaries, were rated among the temporality, the biſhops for lands, the deans and prebendaries for goods, from 30l. and upwards. Contributions were alſo levied on them by order of the privy council, to provide horſe for quelling the rebellion in Ireland. The biſhop of London was charged ſixty pounds, the dean of St. Paul's, 30l. See Wilkins, Concil. Vol. 4. p. 256. 341. and 358.

"The principal intent of the queen's majeſtie, as may appear by the expreſs wordes of her majeſtie's commiſſion, is to have perfect knowledge of the numbers, qualities, habilities and ſufficiencie of all her ſubjects in that countie, as by the like commiſſion ſent into all other ſhires of the realme; the like is intended from the age of ſixteen yeares upwarde, that may be founde hable to beare armoure, or to uſe weapon on horſebacke, or on foote, and out of that totall and univerſall nomber being viewed, muſtered and regiſtered to have a convenient and ſufficient nomber of the moſt hable, to be choſen and collected, to be by the reaſonable chardge of the inhabitants in everie ſhire tryed, armed and weaponed, and ſo conſequentlie taughte and trayned, for to uſe, handle and exerciſe their horſes, armure, ſhott and other weapons, both on horſebacke, and on foote, for the ſervice and defence of her majeſtie, her crown and realme, againſt all attempts, both inward and outwarde: for which purpoſe althoughe her majeſtie doubte not, but that according to the ſpeciall truſt repoſed in you, and for that the kynde of ſervice at this tyme, tendeth onlie for contynuaunce of the publick peace, whiche by Godd's goodneſs, the realme now enjoyethe more than any other in Chriſtendome dothe; you will carefullie and ſpedilie ymploie your whole underſtandinges, labours, and powers, without any reſpect of chardges, or paynes, to execute the commiſſion in all poyntes tending univerſally to ſo good an ende. Yet to thentent you may the more redely, effectuallie and uniformly proceed herein, her majeſtie hath, with the advice of us, of her counſaill, ordeyned that theſe articles followinge ſhould be conceived in writing, and ſent unto you, and others authoriſed by like commiſſion, in other partes of the realme, as inſtruccyons or memorialls to direct you the more orderlie in the executyon of the ſaid commiſſion; not therebie ſecludinge you from ſuche other manner of proceedings as maye beſte tende alſo to the more ſpedie or more effectuall execution of the ſaide commiſſion, ſo as the ſame be not manifeſtalie repugnant to theſe inſtructyons. And furdermore conſidering that this kind of ſervice requireth the attendance and labour of verie manie perſons according to the quantitie of the ſheire, and as the uſual diviſions of the

ſame mai ſeme to require ſeveral aſſemblies, in ſonderie places, and yet the direction of the whole ſervice to be uniformly ordered, oughte properly for avoiding of confuſion to apperteyne to the care of ſome fewer in nomber, beinge partlie for their degrees and callinge of more reputacyon, and partlie for their knowledge in ſuche kynde of marſhall ſervices moſt hable to direct the ſame, therefore her majeſtie hath ordeyned A, B, C, D, E, &c. ſhoulde take the principall care of thexecutyon of this commiſſion, and of the contents of theſe inſtructyons; and that you and the reſt of the juſtices of the peace of that ſheire doe, notwithſtanding your beſt endeavours as nede ſhall require, and as you ſhalbe appoynted to farder the ſayde ſervice in your ſeveral diviſions, and be in all reaſonable thinges aidinge and aſſiſtinge the reſt, to whome this ſpeciall care is comyted. And for that you, that be afore ſpeciallye named to have this ſpeciall care, may, perchance not be reſident within that countie at all times requiſite, for thexecutyon of this commiſſion; therefore it is our intent, (notwithſtanding the abſence of ſome few of you, ſo the moſt parte be not abſent out of the ſheire, that you the reſt beinge within the ſheire ſhall proceede in the sayde commiſſion according to theſe inſtructyons, in like caſe as if you were all there preſent as you are named. And in caſe the more parte of you, ſo above ſpeciallie named, ſhall be abſent out of that ſheire, at the tymes requiſite to execute this commiſſion, then you the reſte, ſhall ſo certifie us with your opynions who were mete to ſupplie the rooms of the perſons abſent, whereupon directions ſhalbe given accordinglie, for ſupplie of thoſe defects. And conſidering it may ſeme inconvenient, to call men to ſuche generall muſters, before the ſeaſon of the yeare ſhalbe more apte thereto, for fayreneſs of weather, and yet the benefit of this ſervice requireth all good expedition, conſideringe the ſtate of matters in other countries, neare to this realme; therefore it is left to the diſcrecyon of you the commiſſioners, ſpeciallie named, to begyn with theſe muſters, at ſuche tyme as you ſhall finde mete, and to contynewe your travells therein as you

A choice of ſpeciall men to take the chief care of the commiſſion.

The greateſt part of the ſpecial commiſſion to proceed in abſence of others.

Beginning the muſters, referred to the commiſſioners direction.

ſhall finde mete, for ſeaſonableneſs of weather and eaſe of the people to be muſtered; and yet nevertheleſs you maie aſſemble your ſelfes and conſider your commiſſion and theſe inſtructyons, and deviſe upon the manner of the execution, and by your precepte cauſe all perſons to be warned to prepare themſelves, and their armour and weapons in readyneſs to be muſtered, whenſoever theie ſhalbe called; and generallie to cauſe all things to be don that maie convenientlie be don without any notable trouble to the people, by reaſon of the ſeaſon of the yeare; ſo as when tyme ſhall come to mete for the muſters to be made openlie in the fieldes, you may finde all thinges in the better redyneſs to haſten the ſervice.

To aſſemble and prepare things ready for the muſter.

The Articles of the Inſtructyons.

Precepts of ſummons to all perſons to appere.

It is neceſſarie that by your precepte to the conſtable of the hundreds, or other officers thereto requiſite and uſuall, all hable perſons from ſixteen upwards, which are within the lymetts of this your commiſſion in any pariſh, hamlett or village, be ſummoned to appere at daies and places, certain and mete for the muſters, ſo none beinge hable of any degree be forborne, to be warned and called to the ſame general muſters, otherwiſe than in ſome ſpeciall caſes hereafter ſhalbe remembred. And therefore, it ſhalbe well don, to commande in your precepte that the names and ſurnames of all perſons in everie pariſhe, aperte hable to bear armour or to uſe weapons, as above is ſaide, be ymmediatelie collected and put in writing, by the ſaide conſtables of the hundreds or other like officers, uſed in ſuch caſes; namyne in the ſaide writinge or note, everie houſeholder by himſelf, with his ſonnes, ſervants, prentices, journeymen or any other ſojourners or indwellers remayninge in their houſes, being hable to weare armure or uſe weapons mete for the warres. And that the ſaide houſeholders be charged to bringe all the ſaide perſons by name, with their armour and weapons at ſuche ſeveral tymes and places, as ſhalbe thereto lymited. And ſo after the returne

to the commiſſioners of the ſaid writinge, conteyning theire names, the ſaid commiſſioners ſhall call for the perſons, and proceed to the muſters of them, and regiſter the names of ſuch as ſhall appear, with notes of their armour and weapons; and when ſome ſhall not have armour or weapons mete there, it ſhalbe noted to what kinde of ſervice for the warres, everie of the ſaide perſons ſhall ſeme mete, wherein is meant, not to omytte to note what number of them maie ſerve for laborers or pioners, and who are alſo carpenters, ſmythes, or ſuch like artificers, ſo as there maye be ſome uſe had of their habilities for ſervice of theire countrie, as cauſe ſhall require, though theie ſhall nott have armor. And of ſuche as ſhall not appere, having ben warned, to make a ſpeciall note and cheke, and to examyne dulie the cauſes of their abſence, and according to reaſon to allowe or punyſhe, and redreſſe the defaultes, that no forberinge be had of any without verie evident neceſſarie and lawfull cauſe, but that the parties being abſent at one tyme, upon reaſonable cauſe maie yet at ſome other tyme appere, to be viewed, muſtered, and regiſtered as others of the like condycion ſhalbe; and becauſe it maie ſeme mete, that the houſeholders in all places ſhoulde not be compelled to bring all their ſervants, or indwellers and hable perſons, at one tyme from their dwelling houſes, it ſhalbe well therefore, that in the warrants to the aforeſaid conſtables or other officers, it maie be expreſſed, that theie conferre with the houſeholders, upon the makinge of theire firſt bookes of names, to bringe as manye as maie reaſonablie be ſpared at the firſt daie, and thereafter to appoint theire appearance; wherein the commiſſioners maie alſo, as theie ſee cauſe, direct the order how many ſhall come at the firſt tyme, and howe manye at other tyme; and yet that the writing contayne trulie the names and ſurnames bothe of them that ſhall appeare at the firſt daie, and of them that ſhall remayne at home, and the houſeholders to be charged by the commiſſioners or otherwiſe to bring or ſende the reſt of the perſons at ſome other daie, to be by them lymited, to be viewed, muſtered and uſed, as hereafter ſhall appere theie oughte to be, ſo as all the nombers of the perſons hable maie at ſeverall tymes be viewed and

muſtered; or if contynuance of ſickneſs ſhall deteyne any perſon from acceſs to the muſters, during this commiſſion, yet the name of ſuche perſon ſhalbe certified and regiſtered with a note of his habilitie to ſerve, when his ſickneſſe ſhall ceaſe, and of his furnyture to ſerve according to his degree.

Prelates, lords of parliament, privie counſellors exempted from perſonal appearance.

ITEM, it is to be underſtood, that no houſeholder of any degree, except the prelates and lordes of parliament, and others of the privie counſail (the certain nomber whereof is alreadie well knowen), ſhalbe forborne, if he be hable for helthe or ſtrengthe to come himſelf to thoſe muſters; and as for all other inferior perſons eccleſiaſticall, beinge not lordes of parliament, whoſe vocation is to attend perſonallie upon their miniſterie and cures, and for the juſtices of the one bench or other, or ſuch other hed officers of any of her majeſties courtes of record, occupienge judiciall places; it is ment that as well the ſaide eccleſiaſticall perſons, as the ſaide juſtices and other judiciall officers, ſhall not be compelled to appere at thoſe muſters, but ſhall ſende them hable ſervants and houſehold men, at ſome convenient and ſeverall tymes and places, to be viewed, muſtered and regiſtered as others are or ſhalbe, with their armour and weapons, ſo as there maie be nevertheleſs a ſeveral muſter book made of all the houſeholde ſervants of the ſaide clergie aparte. And as for the ſervants of the ſaide judges and judiciall officers, with all their furnyture of armour and weapons to be added to the muſters of the layitie, according to their ſeveral dwellinge places. And as for any houſehold ſervants of any of the prelates and lordes of parliament, or of any of the privie counſail, becauſe the ſaid prelates for their perſons are to be ſpared, and the perſonal ſervices of the ſaide lordes temporall, or counſaillors are to be directed by ſpeciall commandment of her majeſtie, about her perſon, or otherwiſe accordinge to their callinges; there is another ſpeciall order appoynted aparte from her majeſtie to the ſaid prelates, lordes and counſaillors, to certifie in writinge to her majeſtie, the numbers and names of their houſehold ſervants mete to ſerve with them, being their lordes and maſters,

Houſehold ſervants, eccleſiaſtical perſons and judges.

with the furnyture alſo of theire horſes, geldinges, armour and weapons, which theie have or oughte to have in readynes, or will encreaſe for her majeſties ſervice, and for all others that are not houſehold ſervauntes, or dalie attendauntes, to anie of the ſaide temporall lordes of parliament or counſaillors, and yet havinge their dwellinge and proper houſeholdes in that ſhire, pretending that theie doe belonge to any of the ſaide lordes temporall or counſaillors as retaynors, ſuche ſhalbe ſummoned in like caſe as others ſhalbe at theire dwelling houſes to appeare, and ſhalbe muſtered and charged accordinge to theire habilities to be furniſhed with armour and weapons, and ſhalbe chargeable to repair therewith to all muſters, and to reſorte to any ſervice within the ſheire, as any other of the ſame ſheire ſhalbe charged, upon calling for to the defence of the ſea coaſte or invaſion of the realme. And yet there ſhalbe a particular note and regiſter kept of the perſons beinge ſo retayned, and theire dwellinge places, and in what ſorte theie do pretend to be retayned by their lordes and maſters. And the commiſſions ſhall forbear to make entrie of anie ſuche, ſo knowen to be lafullye reteyned by their lordes and maſters, into any ſpeciall companyes and bands of the reſt of the ſoldiers to be appoynted for that country. But to be chargeable as is aboveſaid onlie to reſorte with the reſt of their neighbours and pariſhioners in warlike manner to the defence of theire countrie at all tymes, when theie ſhall not be called out of the ſaide countrie by commandment of theyre lorde or maſters ; in which caſe in reſpect of the ſervices to be done perſonallie to their lordes and maſters as cauſe ſhall requier, the ſaide perſons, ſo lafullye reteyned, ſhalbe excuſed duringe the tyme that theie ſhalbe abſent upon the commandement of the lordes and maſters.

Servants retayned by lords of parliament and counſaillors.

ITEM, the commiſſioners ſhall upon the firſt muſters conſider particularlie all the imperfeccyons in the perſons appearing, and in the armures, weapons and ſuch like, and ſhall give particular inſtruccyons and chardge how to remedie the ſame by ſome tymes therunto to be ſpedalie lymitted, and ſhall appointe certaine perſons in the mean tyme within everie

Ympeſfeccions of men and their furniture to be reformed in the firſt muſters.

hundred or other diviſion, to ſee to, and give order for the reformacyon thereof againſt the tyme of the nexte muſters.

Item, where alwaies of verie ancyent tyme there hath been and ſtill are a nomber certain of ſoldiers furniſhed of armure and weapons, to be founde of the comon chardge of everie towne or pariſhe, over and beſides ſuche particular perſons as are by the late ſtatutes chargeable, by reaſon of their own private poſſeſſions or goods to finde ſoldyers, armure and weapons.

The commiſſioners ſhall do well upon the regiſtringe of the ſaide generall muſters to cauſe ſpeciall entries to be made aparte of the ſaide nombers found by the pariſhes in the muſter books diſtincte from the others, that therbie it maie appeare how manye are of one ſorte, and howe many of the other. And for the more encreaſe of hable men to be furniſhed with armour and weapon, the commiſſioners ſhall cauſe the meaner ſorte of freeholders, franklyns, fermors or merchants, beinge not of ſufficient valewe of freeholde or of goods to have one whole furniture of armour or weapons, to be treated withall by good perſuaſion, and for the love of their countrie to be induced to joyne together by two or three or more, in the proviſion of a furniture, either of a pikeman, archer, or harquebuſier, to ſerve as occaſion ſhall requier. And furdermore they ſhall perſuade all manner of riche ffarmours and freeholders to keep in their houſe perſons mete for archerie and ſhott, leſt when the ſaid farmours and freeholders ſhall for their owne expence offer to finde other to ſerve in their ſteade as ſoldiers, by hiringe them againſt the daie of muſters, theie doe nott ſeeke for ſuche perſons dwellinge out of their houſes, for ſuche borrowinge of men to ſarve muſt not be ſuffered, but that either theſe kepe ſuche hable men in their houſes to be alwaies ready, or els that theie be compelled to ſerve in theire owne proper perſons when neceſſitie ſhall requier.

Item, that after the commiſſioners ſhall have don theire uttermoſte in procuringe of theſe generall muſters in ſuche ſorte as none be ſuffered to be abſent, that is hable to carrie armure or weapon, otherwiſe than afore is lymitted; and that the full nombers ſhalbe knowen

of all hable perſons and their qualities, and that the quantities of armure and weapons ſhalbe alſo ſeene and conſidered in everie diviſion; the ſaide commiſſioners with good deliberacyon ſhall make choice of perſons meteſt to be captaynes and petty-captaynes, not forbearinge any under the degree of a lorde of parliament, to tacke chardge of certaine nombers according to their qualities, ſo as concyderation be had, that perſons of moſte worſhippe, creditt and valewe, be appoynted to take chardge of more or leſſe nombere, accordinge to theire degrees, that is to ſaie, ſome of the beſt worſhipp to have chardge of 200 or 300, and that others of meaner degrees and values in livinge, doe take chardge under them, of everie of the ſaide hundrede aparte; and that there be alſo, with conſent of the captaynes, a charge made of the ſkilfull and experte perſons, to be lieutenants of everie hundred, and neceſſarie officers to governe and lead the ſaide bandes. In choice whereof, ſpeciall regarde alſo ſhalbe had, that no perſons being knowen, or havinge given manifeſt cauſe to be ſuſpected as unwillinge to ſerve the queen's majeſtie and the realme, have any truſt of chardge or leadinge of men comytted to them.

Item, becauſe the trayninge and exerciſe of a multitude of people, in their arm ou and weapons, and namely archers and harquebuſiers, may ſeme coſtlie and chardgeable, and that it ſhall not ſeme neceſſarie in many places, to have the whole nombers of the hable people, to be armed and weaponed. Therefore the ſaid A, B, C, D, &c. with the aſſiſtance aforeſaid, ſhall therein uſe theire diſcrecyons, after theie ſhall have made a generall muſter of the nombers of the whole ſheire, and ſhall conſider and determyne, what were, or maie be a convenient nomber in everie parte of the ſheire, to be collected out of the totall nomber, mete to be ſorted in bandes, and to be trayned and exerciſed in ſuch ſorte, as maye reaſonablie be borne by a common chardge of the whole countrie, and thereof, and alſo of the reſt of the whole nombre, theie ſhall ſpedilie certifie the queens majeſties privie counſail in a briefe manner, notynge holie the nombres, wherebie to have theire opynions concerninge the lymitation of the ſaid nombers to be ſelected, ſo as the ſame beinge ſo allowed, or other-

wife altered, there may thereupon be a direction to the commiſſioners to putt the ſame in execucyon, and the chardges alſo, for the trayninge of the ſaid nomber, ys to be conſidered, that being reaſonablie allotted by the diviſions of the ſchire through all the pariſhes, it may be as eaſie a chardge as reaſonablie maie be borne, and yet ſo neceſſarie a thinge it is to be procured, as without that helpe, the reſt will ſerve to ſmall purpoſe; wherein it is to be remembered, that it is not ment to have a contynuance of any ſuche chardge, but now at the begynninge, ſome reaſonable allotment wolde be made to beare the chardges of them that ſhalbe occupied under the commiſſioners in the muſtringe and trayninge of the ſaide bandes of ſoldiers that ſhalbe ſo ſelected out of the toatal nomber muſtered, and alſo to paye for the powder that neceſſarilie ſhalbe ſpent in the ſaide exerciſe, beſide other neceſſarie chardges, to be imploied by ſome allowance upon the ſoldiers themſelves, that ſhalbe trayned, for ſome helpe and reliefe to them, in reſpect of the tyme theie ſhall ſpende, in reſortinge to their muſters, attendinge upon their exerciſes, to be uſed; and in taxatyon of any ſuch ſomes of money regarde woulde be had to ſpare as much as maie be, the poor huſbandman, the cotager and artiſan, and to chardge ſuch chieflie as be riche and not mete to ſerve in theire own perſons, and where any ſtrangers ſhalbe reſident, beinge not naturall borne ſubjects, it ſhalbe reaſonable to chardge them accordinge to their powers, conſideringe theie are nott perſonallie to be uſed in ſervice as others are.

Chardges for trayninge.

Item, there ſhalbe regarde had howe to divide and diſtribute the uſe of the weapons, in the ſortinge of the bands, that there maie be in everie hundred footmen, at the leaſt, fortye harquebuſiers and twenty archers, if ſo it mai be convenientlie procured; and to that end, the ſaid commiſſioners ſhall uſe all good perſwaſions, and ſhall give ſome good example in the countrie, by exerciſe in games and matches, to encreaſe thoſe two weapons, foreſeyenge, that the archers maie be men of ſtrengthe, and ſo the more hable to ſhoote in the longe bowes; and becauſe it is not laſull for any perſon, but ſuch as by the ſtatute are thereto licenſed, to ſhoot in any handgonne, or

harquebuſs, her majeſtie is pleaſed, that all ſuch as ſhalbe appoynted by the commiſſioners to be harquebuſiers, to uſe their ſaide weapons without daunger of the lawes, ſo as theie do nott uſe the ſame otherwiſe than others may do that are by the ſtatute licenſed; and for the manner of the trayninge and exerciſe of the ſaide ſelected nomber, the ſaid commiſſioners alſo ſhall uſe theire diſcrecyone, for choice of tyme and places mete and convenient for ſuch aſſemblies, in everie ſeveral diviſion of the ſhire, for the more eaſe of the people, and that the aſſemblies be nott greater, in any one place and tyme, than is convenient; and ſpeciallie to foreſee that no publique aſſemblies, nor exerciſe of weapons, be had for this purpoſe, but that there be at the ſaide place and tyme, two juſtices of the peace, at the leaſt, lymitted to be preſent, or elſe one of the ſpeciall commiſſioners here before named, ſo as bothe good order may be uſed for the ſaid exerciſe, and that no other unneceſſarie nombers of people reſorte thereto, but ſuch as are to be exerciſed and trayned, or other neceſſarilie attendinge upon them, or thereto licenſed by the commiſſioners; and ſpeciallie to ſee that the peace be dulie kept, or otherwiſe that the ſharpeſt and ſpeedieſt punyſhment be uſed without delaye, that can lefullie be upon the breakers of the peace at any ſuch aſſemblies; and it be alſo ordered that no ſoldier do come to any ſuch aſſemblie, but ſuch as ſhalbe appoynted by their captayns or officers, or with the knowledge and permiſſion of the commiſſioners.

Peace to be kept in the aſſemblies.

Everie band to be muſtred.

ITEM, when the nombers of the ſelected hable men ſhall be knowen, and howe many ſhall be furnyſhed with armur and weapon, and the ſame diſtributed to the captaynes and leaders, everie captayne ſhall have a ſpeciall roll made in writinge, of the names and ſurnames of the perſons, and theire dwellinge place, lymitted to his chardge and leading, ſubſcribed by the ſpeciall commiſſioners, or one of them; and as any of the ſoldiers or officers ſhall either dye, or ſhall upon juſt cauſe, remove to ſome other dwellinge, out of the ſheire or the lymitt of the diviſion where his muſter place ys appoynted, which he ſhall nott do before knowledge given to the

captayne ; then the captaine ſhall give notice thereof, to his ſuperior captayne, if he have any, or elſe to one of the ſpeciall commiſſioners, ſo as the roome may, by warrant from one of the commiſſioners, be ſpedilie ſupplied, and an hable man armed and weaponed may be provided, and his name entered into the place of the former roll.

Preſervation of armour and weapons. ITEM, the commiſſioners ſhall alſo appoynte ſome good order, how the armour and weapons lymitted to ſerve, ſhalbe kept to contynue ſerviceable, and ſhall appoynte ſpeciall men in every hundred or wapentake, to be named ſurveiors of the armour and weapons that ſhall belonge in commune to the pariſhes and townеſhipps, both for the ſafe kepinge of the ſame, in the cuſtodie of honeſt perſons, and for the kepinge thereof alwaies furnyſhed, cleane and readie for ſervice ; and it may alſo be appoynted, that the ſame ſurveior in everie hundred, may from tyme to tyme in good reaſonable ſorte repayer to the houſes of all other perſons chargeable to have armour and weapons, to ſee that the ſame be dulie and clean kept, ſo as at the tyme of the muſters, theie maie be perfectlie redie and without defecte : and if the ſaid ſurveiors ſhall herein fynde any default, theie ſhall from tyme to tyme advertiſe ſome of the ſpeciall commiſſioners to provide remedie for the ſame.

The reſt beinge not ſelected to be perfectlie trayned. ITEM, the reſt of the totall nombers, not being, as above ys ſaide ſelected, and putt into ſuch bands to be trayned, ſhall nevertheleſs be reduced into certen bandes of hundreds, under mete captaynes and officers, ſo as they maie be in readines alſo for a generall ſervice, when of neceſſitie theie ſhalbe called, with armour and weapon for defence of the countrie, and to be alſo muſtered and arrayed before their captaynes, in preſence of two of the juſtices of peace at the leaſt, fower ſeveral tymes in the yeare, at places thereto appoynted, without any chardge to be bourne of any common collection, for the exerciſing of them, otherwiſe then voluntarilie themſelves or their captaynes ſhall aſſent unto, or ſhall procure. And becauſe in the choice of the nombers to be trayned and exerciſed, diverſe of the ſoldiers inhabiting in many townes, ſhalbe forborne and not appoynted to be of the trayned

nomber, and yet the ſervice of the perſons choſen and trayned doth appertayne to the weale of the hole ſhier, there ſhalbe conſideracion had in the collection of the chardges, to mayntayne the ſaid trayninge and exercife; that everye towne and pariſhe of the ſheire, and inhabitants thereof be ratablye chardged, without bourdonynge ſome more than other, otherwiſe than theire habilities ſhall requier. And thus farre ys ſufficient for ſo much as concernethe the muſteringe, trayninge and exerciſinge of the footmen, within that countie. And if there ſhalbe any towne corporate, or other place priviledged, that ſhall pretend to have by eſpeciall grante, avaylable in law, exemption from appearaunce to muſter before any other commiſſioners, then ſuche as be juſtices or officers of the ſaide townes or places; in ſuch caſes upon the ſhewinge to you the ſpeciall commiſſioners of ſuch grauntes, and of the uſage thereof, if it ſhall appere that their claymes of ſuch exemptions are good and reaſonable, you ſhall forbere to entermeddle with the inhabitants thereof, and ſhall chardge them that ſpedilie theie do make ſuite to the lords of the privie counſaill, for a ſpeciall commiſſion to take the like muſters of the ſaid inhabitants as of others, within the bodie of the countie; and if you ſhall underſtand, that theie ſhall make delaye ſo to do, you, the ſpeciall commiſſioners, ſhall thereto certifie her majeſties counſaill, that in ſuch caſe you ſhall enter and take muſters of them.

Chardges for trayning to be borne by the moſt able.

Finallye, where in the beginninge of theſe inſtruccyons it is ordeyned, that you A, B, C, D, E, F, ſhall take eſpeciall care of the executynge of the commiſſion; yet for your more caſe in devydinge of yourſelves accordinge to the places of your reſidence, you ſhall do well to order, that in everie ſuch diviſion, the reſt of the juſtices of peace, accordinge to their habilities and underſtandings, maie be ſo appoynted to aſſiſt you, and, as cauſe ſhall requier, to join with you, and in meaner poyntes of ſervices, to ſupplie alſo your roomes; for otherwiſe the burden of the ſervice will prove too great and troubleſome.

Articles for Furniture of Horſemen.

ITEM, becauſe one of the beſt ſtrengthes to be required for defence of the realme, and that which is thoughte to be moſte decayed and ymperfecte, and moſt neceſſarilie to be increaſed, is the furniture of horſes and horſemen within the realme, it ſhalbe well conſidered by the ſaide A, B, C, D, &c. preſentlie upon the receipte of the commiſſion, and without delay, by good and adviſed conferences amongſt themſelves upon theire firſt metynge, howe manye perſons within the ſhire, in every hundred and diviſion, in reſpect of theire true, juſt, and reaſonable clere yerelie valours of their landes and poſſeſſions or fees, or of the clere value of their goods, are by the lawes and ſtatutes of the realme, chargeable to fynde and have in readynes, horſes or geldinges bothe for launces and for light horſemen, with armour and weapons mete for the ſame; wherein is to be remembered, that the lawes do expreſslie preſcribe the chardge and nomber of the ſaide horſes, or geldinges, to be accordinge to the juſt value of everie perſons landes and fees, and of their goodes; and nott (as a common ſuppoſityon is made) that the ſaid values of landes, fees and goods, ſhould be accompted accordinge to the common and eaſy taxacyons uſed for the payment of ſubſidies. And therefore, thoughe the ſaid taxations for the payment of ſubſidies, it is ſene by experience of her majeſties clemencye and goodneſs, that theire hath not byn uſed any better inquiſycion of the furder values of any perſons for their landes or goods, to encreaſe her majeſties ſubſidie, as in reaſon might be, ſpeciallie where there appeareth great partialities in the ſaid taxacyons; yet, in this ſpeciall caſe, wherein conſiſteth a matter of ſuche weighte for the ſervice, ſuretie and defence of the whole realme, yea, the particular defence of every ſpeciall perſon, her majeſtye fyndeth it moſt neceſſarie and juſte, to have a furder regarde, and not to ſuffer the intencyons of ſo neceſſarie and reaſonable lawes to be in that wiſe fruſtrated, to the weaknes and danger of the realme, as it is like it ſhoulde be, if everie perſon chargeable to fynde horſes ſer-

viſable ſhoulde be no furder charged, than accordinge to the common eaſie values aſeſſed by the ſeſſions of the ſubſidies, whiche her majeſtie verilie ſuppoſeth, no good ſubjects being hereof dulie warned will thinke reaſonable, where theſe are in dede well knowen otherwiſe more hable by their landes, fees and goods to anſwer a greater nomber of horſes and geldinges; for ſo alſo by experience of former muſters of horſemen in ſondrie partes of the realme it hathe bin well ſene, that a great nomber of worſhipfull and honeſt well diſpoſed gentlemen, for love of their country, have had in readines more horſes or geldinges for ſervice furniſhed, than the rate of the valews of theire lands or goods certified for ſubſidies, have preſcribed, and yet none of them have therebie byn the more chardged towards the payment of any ſubſidies, neither in reaſon oughte to be, but doe rather deſerve to be favored in all other manner of chardges, and to be eſteemed the better and more naturall ſubjects. And therefore, the ſaide A, B, C, D, &c. &c. after that they have amongſt themſelfes conſidered, and well peruſed the nomber and ſtate of the poſeſſioners reſident within that ſheire, whom they ſhall thinke to be indede hable in land, fees or goods, accordinge to the rates as by the laws ys ordeyned, ſhall make a book thereof, and conſequentlie ſhall ſend particular precepts to every of them, to prepare and put in readyneſs, ſuch nomber of horſes and geldings for ſervice, as they oughte to have by the ſtatutes and lawes of the realme; with ſpeciall requeſt in the ſaide precept, to encreaſe the ſaide nomber as farre forth, as their habilites may reaſonablie extende, without regarde to their values as theie be aſſeſſed in any ſubſidie books; and of the nomber that willinglie they will offer to find and have in readynes, to commande them to make anſwere by a day to be lymitted, which woulde be ſpedie as may be; and upon receipte of the ſame anſwers, if the ſaide A, B, C, D, &c. ſhall thinke that any of the ſaide parties have not yelded to ſuch a nomber as they ſhall thinke reaſonable they oughte to do, they ſhall commande them to appeare before them, and there ſhall uſe all the beſt perſwaſions that they can, to induce them to increaſe the nomber and furniture, whereunto if thei ſhall not agree, they ſhall immediatelie

Precepts to warn all men chargeable to finde horſes.

Certificates of thoſe unwillinge to finde horſes.

certifie their names with their own offers, and the nombers whiche the ſaide commiſſioners ſhall have lymited to them, with a note of their values in ſubſidies, and what the commiſſioners ſhall conceive them to be more in value.

And as to the reſt that ſhalbe conformable to the mocyons of the commiſſioners, it ſhalbe ordered, that they may be lymited a reaſonable tyme to have the ſaide horſes and geldinges in readynes to be ſene and muſtered. And the ſaide commiſſioners ſhall at ſome convenient place and tyme, as ſoon as the ſame maye be, take the muſters of all the ſaide horſes and geldinges, and of ſuch mete perſons as ſhalbe appoynted to ſerve uppon them, with theire whole furniture of armour and weapons, accordinge to theire ſeveral degrees and habilities: and in treatinge with any perſons for encreaſe of the nombers of horſes and theire furniture, the ſaid commiſſioners ſhall let them knowe, that theire ſhalbe a ſeverall regiſter booke made of the horſes or geldinges, which theie ſhall kepe, accordinge to their values taxed in the ſubſidie bookes, and another book aparte contaynynge the reſt, which theie ſhalbe content to furniſhe as an encreaſe of theire good will which theie beare to the ſervice of theire countrie, ſpeciallie as this tyme nowe requireth; and for the further probacyon of them to this encreaſe, they maie be perſuaded, that it ſhalbe ordered, that the nombers of horſes and geldinges ſo encreaſed above the value rated by the ſubſidie books, ſhall not be uſed or ſent abroad to ſervice, but when the owners thereof themſelves ſhalbe ſent to ſerve, or any other by their conſent and agreement, upon great, urgent and generall cauſe for the neceſſarie defence of the whole realme. And of the conformities of ſuch as ſhall in this ſorte agree to an encreaſe, the ſame ſhalbe certified to her majeſtie and her counſaill, to the intent theire good diſpoſytions may be knowen and thankfully allowed. And as to the recuſants, beſides that certificates ſhalbe made as above is expreſſed, it ſhalbe declared to them, that thereupon the quenes majeſtie muſt be forced to cauſe a due inquiſition and extent to be made, accordinge to the order of her lawes, of theire full values both of landes and goods; and thereupon if their trewe valews ſhalbe found by inquiſityon, it is likely

Certificates of perſons conformable to finde horſes.

that their burden ſhalbe far greater by order of the lawes, than by the commiſſioners ys lymitted, beſides the forfeiture of the penalties incurred for the tyme paſſed, and beſide the evill accompte and eſtymacyon to be made of their backwardnes ; and if uppon ſuch motion theie ſhall not be made conformable to ſuche reaſonable conditions as the commiſſioners ſhall thinke mete, then the ſaid commiſſioners ſhall in dede without delaye make certificate as is above ſaid, whereupon preſent order ſhalbe taken to proceed to due inquiſityon accordinge to thorder of the law, without any other favour than lawe ſhall permytte.

Inquiſition ſhall be made of the values of the recuſants.

And becauſe there is no one thinge at this tyme more neceſſarie to be regarded than the encreaſe to the ſtrength of the realm by havinge of horſes and geldinges mete for ſervice, the ſaide commiſſioners ſhall furdermore cauſe an inquiſityon to be dulie made throughe that ſheire of the ſtatute made in the 27th yeare of the reigne of King Henrie theighthe for breeding and encreaſe of horſes, geldinges and mares; and that after theſe have don their endeavours in this ſervice by encreaſing the nombers, and in muſterynge and remedyinge the defects of furnitures, they ſhall there of aparte make a full certificate in writinge, contayninge the particular name of everie perſon, with theire dwellinge place, that ſhalbe lymeted, and ſhall aſſent to keepe any horſe or geldinge, with the nomber of the ſaide horſes and geldinges, and with the kinde of weapons, be it launce, or lighthorſemens ſtaffe, or caſes of dagges, accordinge to the qualities of the perſons, and how manye of the ſame are already in readynes, and have ben viewed and muſtered, and by what tyme the reſt ſhall or may be ſo, as her majeſty maye underſtand the ſtrengthe of her good ſubjects in this kynd of ſervice, and theie therefore receive thancks accordinge to their good willes for the ſame ; and likewiſe theie ſhall make certificate of the nombers of mares that are, or ought to be kept by the ſaide ſtatute of the 27th of Hen. VIII. and what tyme ys lymeted for the ſupplie of thoſe that do want. And conſiderynge it is likely that many ſhalbe found willinge either of themſelves, or by perſwaſion, to finde and kepe horſes and geldinges for the ſervice of the realme, and yet cannot preſentlie provide the

27th Hen. VIII. for encreaſe of horſes.

ſame for any reaſonable pryce, or that many ſhalbe both willing and hable to kepe, or have in convenient readynes, more horſes or geldinges in the ſomer tyme, than theie can in the wynter, the commiſſioners ſhall uſe theire diſcretyions to lymitte reaſonable tymes for them, whiche can nott preſentlie provide horſes or geldinges, to provide the ſame; and alſo ſhall lymett, as cauſe ſhall requier, a diverſitie of nombers to be in readynes, in reſpect of the tymes of ſomer and wynter, ſo as by all good meanes, the nomber of the horſes and geldinges ſerviceable, maie be made as greate in both tymes as reaſonably may be, and that in the regiſteringe of the ſaid nombers, it maie appeare how many of encreaſe to be had in the ſomer, with the qualities of the horſes or geldinges, how the ſame ſhalbe ſerviceable.

Reaſonable tyme to provide horſes.

And where percaſe it may be, that ſondrie merchaunts and others of greate wealthe in goods, dwellinge in corporate, or markett townes, beinge of ſuche values, as in good reaſon, theie oughte to be chardgeable with findinge of horſes or geldings, and yet by reaſon of theire dwellinge in ſuch corporate or markett townes, and havinge nott lands in other places, wherebye to ſuſteine the chardges of the ſaide horſes, theie can nott without greater chardge than ſhalbe by them reaſonablie borne, fynde the ſame in the ſaide towne, the ſaide commiſſioners ſhall confer with them into what other reaſonable chardge, the ſame may be converted, that is, either to have in readynes, ſome harquebuſiers, or to contrybute reaſonablie ſome porcyons of money towardes the chardges of the muſters in the ſaide towne, or near the ſame; and yet before theſe ſhall conclude ſo with the ſaide marchauntes or townſmen, for the alteracyon or converſion thereof, theie ſhall certifie their opynions to the counſaill, to thend the ſame may be either allowed or altered.

W. Burghley, E. Lyncoln, T. Suſſex.
R. Leyceſter, W. Mildmay,
F. Knollys, T. Smith,

N. B. This was ſubſcribed by the council the laſt day of February, 15th of Eliz. 1572, the returns and muſters in conſequence thereof are given in the appendix.

THE preſent mode of recruiting our armies, is by engaging volunteers, who are inliſted to ſerve for an indefinite time, that is, till they ſhall be diſcharged. Sometimes, particularly towards the end of a war, ſoldiers are engaged for a certain time, commonly three years, to which is frequently annexed the additional clauſe of, "or during "the war." Much might be ſaid for inliſting ſoldiers for a ſtated time (r), but then it ſhould be, at leaſt, ſix or ſeven years. This mode of inliſting men for a limited time, was practiſed at a period when the Britiſh army was in the zenith of its glory, under the command of the victorious duke of Marlborough, and was authoriſed by ſeveral of the mutiny acts paſſed in the reign of Queen Anne: the clauſe from one of them, whereby this mode of inliſting is directed, may be ſeen in the note below (s).

PRESSING for ſoldiers was practiſed much in its preſent form in the time of Queen Elizabeth, as we may learn from the admirable portrait of its abuſes exhibited by Shakſpear: it has ſince been ſeveral times occaſionally authoriſed by acts of parliament; but is in itſelf but a

(r) THE idea of engaging in a profeſſion for life, has prevented many young men from inliſting, who would have ventured an eſſay of five or even ſeven years, and there is little danger of a good ſoldier requiring his diſcharge at the expiration of that time; the charms of a freſh bounty on one hand, and an unwillingneſs to leave his old comrades and connections on the other, would ſcarcely fail to procure a freſh engagement, particularly if ſome little douceur or honorary diſtinction was granted to ſoldiers on their ſecond engagement.

(s) PROVIDED always, and it is hereby enacted, that every perſon now being in her majeſty's ſervice in the land forces, and who has been ſo for the ſpace of three years, ſhall be at liberty, if he think fit, to demand his diſcharge from the colonel of the regiment to which he ſhall belong; as alſo, that every perſon who ſhall enter himſelf as a volunteer, or be liſted in her majeſty's ſervice, after he ſhall have continued therein during the ſpace of three years, ſhall be at liberty, if he think fit, to demand his diſcharge, in the like manner, ſuch ſoldier giving to ſuch colonel three months' notice at the leaſt of his deſiring ſuch diſcharge; and ſuch diſcharge ſhall be granted, gratis, in writing, under the hand of ſuch colonel, who is impowered and required to give the ſame accordingly. Any thing herein contained to the contrary notwithſtanding. Mutiny act, 12 Anne, 1714.

bad expedient, and in general timidly, partially, and improperly executed (t).

The army, as it ſtands at preſent, may date its origin from the reſtoration ; though ſome of the eſtabliſhment, formed by Charles II. was taken from corps raiſed during the civil wars ; for inſtance, the firſt regiment of foot, and the Coldſtream regiment of guards, which laſt came with General Monk from Scotland.

The royal regiment of horſe-guards, commonly called the Oxford blues, is among the firſt on this eſtabliſhment. It does not derive its name from the city of Oxford ; but from Aubrey, Earl of Oxford, who was its firſt colonel, in 1661. The two troops of horſe-guards, which Charles embodied about the ſame time, and of which the privates were all gentlemen, have been ſome years aboliſhed, and in their ſtead have been ſubſtituted two fine regiments of cavalry, ſubject to military diſcipline, like the reſt of the army, which are called the 1ſt and 2d regiments of life-guards.

The regular army, eſtabliſhed by Charles II. conſiſted at firſt of very little more than 5000 men, including garriſons abroad. It is curious to trace the large military force now on foot from ſuch ſmall

(t) An act for impreſſing ſoldiers took place in 1779, when all the thieves, pickpockets and vagabonds in the environs of London, too lame to run away, or too poor to bribe the pariſh officers, were apprehended and delivered over as ſoldiers to the regiments quartered in the very towns and villages where theſe banditti had lived and been taken. Theſe men being thus ſet at large in the midſt of their old companions and connections, immediately deſerted, whereby the whole expence, by no means an inconſiderable one, was thrown away : nor did the ſoldiers of the regiments on which they were impoſed, take the leaſt pains to prevent their eſcape, or to retake them ; as they juſtly conſidered being thus made the companions of thieves and robbers, a moſt grievous and cruel inſult, and loudly complained of it as ſuch, to their officers. Indeed it ſeems to have been a very ill judged meaſure, tending to deſtroy that profeſſional pride, that eſprit du corps which ought moſt aſſiduouſly to be cultivated in every regiment. The profeſſion of a ſoldier has long ceaſed to be lucrative, if it ever was ſo. If it is likewiſe made diſhonorable, where ſhall we get ſoldiers on whom we may depend ? when the exigencies of the times make it neceſſary to take ſuch men into the ſervice, they ſhould at leaſt be ſent to regiments quartered in a diſtant part of the kingdom, where they and their characters are equally unknown, or divided among the regiments on foreign ſervice.

beginnings. In 1684 the ſtanding army amounted to 8000 men; that on the Iriſh eſtabliſhment had been by the ſame time augmented to 7000. During the two ſucceeding reigns the army was much increaſed, the nation being then engaged in continental wars. Under George I. in 1717 the forces voted by parliament amounted to 16,000 men. The foreign wars and the internal diſturbances during the following reign cauſed a conſiderable augmentation of the ſtanding army. In 1746, the troops on the Britiſh eſtabliſhment conſiſted of two royal troops of horſe-guards, two of horſe-grenadier-guards, one royal regiment of horſe-guards, four regiments of cavalry, ten of dragoons, three regiments of foot-guards, and thirty regiments of foot.

EVERY ſucceſſive war has increaſed the eſtabliſhment of the army, in proportion to our acquiſition of territory abroad. At the concluſion of the American conteſt, the forces were reduced to about 40,000 men for Great Britain and Ireland, conſiſting of two troops of royal horſe-guards, two of grenadier-guards, one royal regiment of horſe-guards, four regiments of cavalry, nineteen of dragoons, three regiments of foot-guards, and ſeventy-three marching regiments of foot; beſides the royal regiment of artillery, and thirty-ſix independent companies of invalids (*).

---

* THE preſent eſtabliſhment of the army for Great Britain and Ireland is (November, 1799) as follows:

Two regiments of life-guards.
One regiment of royal horſe-guards (blues).
Seven regiments of dragoon-guards.
Twenty-nine regiments of dragoons.
Three regiments of foot-guards, } one having 4, one 3, and ſeveral 2 battalions.
Ninety-two regular regiments of foot, }
Five battalions of artillery in England.
One invalid ditto.
One battalion of Iriſh artillery.
A corps of royal engineers.
Thirty-ſix independent companies of invalids.
Twelve Weſt-India regiments.
One regiment of mounted riflemen.
Six troops of horſe-artillery.
A corps of infantry for New South-Wales.
Ditto for Jamaica.
Ditto for Upper Canada.
Ditto for Minorca
Ditto for Jerſey.
A Scotch brigade in the Eaſt-Indies.
Thirty-one regiments of fencible cavalry.
Forty-four regiments of fencible infantry, and
Six corps of proviſional cavalry (embodied).

CHAPTER V.

Of the different Kinds of Troops, their Arms offenſive and defenſive, their Organization and Appointments.

THE cavalry of our ancient Engliſh armies ſoon after the conqueſt, conſiſted of the knights, or men at arms, and hobilers; the infantry of ſpear and bill men, croſs-bow men and archers (u).

THE men at arms derived that appellation from being completely armed de cap-à-pied, or from head to foot; they were chiefly compoſed of the tenants in capite, holding by military ſervice, or their ſubſtitutes, ſometimes called ſervientes.

THE defenſive armour of a man at arms, was a hauberk of double mail, compoſed of ringlets of iron linked together like a net (x), this covered the body, and to it were joined a hood, breeches, ſtockings and ſabatons or ſhoes of the ſame conſtruction; the hands and arms were alſo defended by gauntlets and ſleeves of mail.

IN France the hauberk was armour peculiarly appropriated to perſons poſſeſſed of certain eſtates or ſeigneuries called fiefs d'haubert, and might not be worn by perſons of an inferior degree (y).

(u) IN garriſons the men at arms occaſionally ſerved on foot. Anno 1442, Thomas Hoo was retained by K. Henry VI. for the defence of the city of Mante, for which purpoſe he was to keep conſtantly fifty men at arms on horſeback, twenty men at arms on foot, and two hundred and ten archers ſufficiently armed, mounted, arrayed, and cloathed. P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 226.

(x) SOMETIMES, but not commonly, men at arms wore habergeons made of plate mail, formed of ſmall round plates of iron, laid one over the other like ſcales of fiſh.

(y) THE hauberk was the proper armour of a knight; an eſquire might wear a ſhirt of mail over his gambeſon, but might not uſe the hood, breeches, hoſe, nor ſleeves of mail. See Father Daniel's Hiſt. de la Mill. Franc. tom. 1. p. 393 and 394. An extract from an old

N. C. Goodnight sculp

NORMAN SOLDIERS.

COMMONLY under the hauberk, though ſometimes over it, was worn a looſe garment called a gambeſon, which deſcended as low as the knees; it was ſtuffed with wool or cotton, and quilted; the uſe of it was to deaden the ſtrokes of the ſword or lance, which, though they did not divide the mail, might, without the interpoſition of the gambeſon, ſeverely bruiſe the body; under or between the hauberk and gambeſon, a breaſt plate of forged iron, called a plaſtron, was occaſionally put on; over which all men of family wore ſur-coats of ſatin, velvet, or cloth of gold or ſilver, richly embroidered with their armorial bearings (z).

BY a ſtrap, hung over the neck, the men at arms carried a ſhield made of wood, covered with leather, bound or ſtrengthened with iron or braſs, having handles on the inſide for braſing it, which was the term then in uſe, to expreſs the putting it over the left arm (a). Theſe ſhields were for at leaſt a century after the conqueſt of a triangular form, pointed at the bottom, and a little convex in the direction of their breadth.

THE helmets worn by the men at arms were of different forms (b),

---

old regulation for tournaments, quoted by Du Cange in his ſeventh diſſertation on the hiſtory of St. Louis, thus deſcribes the armour of an eſquire; Item, the harneſs of an eſquire ſhall be ſimilar to that of a knight, except that he ſhall not have the hoſe of mail, nor coif of mail over his bacinet, but a hat of Mont Alban; nor ought he to have ſleeves of mail: in all other points he may arm himſelf like a knight.

(z) ONE may judge by all this how our knights were loaded, when they had all their arms, for they had beſides their ordinary clothes, the gambeſon, which of itſelf muſt in ſummer have been very hot, being ſtuffed with wool or cotton, above this was their coat of double mail, and conſequently of an extraordinary weight. Princes and certain great lords had over all their coats of arms, which held the place of the paludamentum of the ancient Roman captains, and was in figure like a dalmatick without ſleeves, and deſcending to the knees; it was charged with the eſcutcheons, or armorial bearings of the wearer, and often was of cloth of gold or ſilver, rich furrs, or cut velvets. But Fauchet has forgot in his deſcription, another ſpecies of defenſive armour which was worn under the gambeſon; this was a plaſtron of iron. P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 388.

(a) FROM the French word Bras. Arm.

(b) SPECIMENS of every ſort here mentioned may be ſeen in the great ſeals of our kings and ancient barons.

ſome conical or pyramidical, with a ſmall projection called a naſal, to defend the face from a tranſverſe ſtroke; ſome cylindrical, covering the whole head down below the chin, with apertures for ſight and breath; and others in which the face was totally uncovered. Helmets with bevers and vizors do not ſeem to have been in uſe till the middle of the 14th century, about which time, the hauberk was exchanged by many of our men at arms for plate armour, ſo called from being formed of plates of iron (c).

On the creſts of their helmets, kings (d) frequently wore their crowns, earls and dukes their coronets, generals or other officers of rank either their armorial cogniſances, or any other device they thought proper; this was done to make them look larger and more terrible to their enemies, and to render themſelves conſpicuous to their officers and ſoldiers.

To this liſt of defenſive armour may alſo be added the war ſaddle, whoſe arcon of bows of ſteel, covered the rider as high as the navel.

The knights of the three or four reigns next ſucceeding the conqueſt, commonly wore the pryck ſpur, which had only a ſingle point, after which the rouelle, or wheel ſpur, came in faſhion; ſome of theſe rouelles were near ſix inches in diameter.

Thus enveloped and loaded with ſuch a number of weighty incumbrances, it is by no means wonderful, that in the midſt of ſummer, in the heat, duſt and preſs of an engagement, men at arms ſhould be ſuffocated in their armour, an event which we learn from hiſtory has ſometimes happened; beſides the inconveniency ariſing from the

(c) P. Daniel, vol. 1. p. 396.

(d) In Bab. Cott. Tiberius, E. VIII. is a manuſcript, written about the time of Henry VIII. wherein among divers military arrangements, is one entitled the Order of a Kynge, if he entered to fyghte. The kynge, arrayed in his own coat of armes, muſt be on horſeback, on a good horſe, covered alſo with his armes: the kynge muſt alſo wear a crown upon his headpiece. Henry V. wore his crown at the battle of Agincourt, part of it was cut off by the duke of Alençon, with a ſtroke of his ſword. King Richard III. wore his crown at the battle of Boſworth, which was, according to Rapin and others, after his death, found in the field of battle by a ſoldier, who brought it to the Lord Stanley.

heat, a man thus ſwathed up like an Ægyptian mummey could have but ſmall powers of action. Indeed in a charge of cavalry very little exertion is required on the part of the rider, the ſucceſs chiefly depending on the ſtrength of the horſe. All that the ancient knights had to do, was to keep their ſeats, and direct their lances; but how they were able to uſe the ſword or mace to any effect, ſeems incomprehenſible (e), though indeed, this in ſome meaſure accounts for the ſmall number of knights ſlain in many engagements between cavalry only, in ſome of which we read not one knight was killed; probably, as ranſom was ſo great an object with ſoldiers of thoſe days, they rather wiſhed to capture than to kill their adverſaries; for this purpoſe therefore they endeavoured to unhorſe them, as a knight when overthrown was immoveable, and lay on the ſpot till remounted by his friends, or ſeized by his enemies.

The offenſive arms of a horſeman, or man at arms, were a ſword, or ſwords (f), a lance and a ſmall dagger, called a miſericorde, either from its being mercifully uſed in putting out of their miſery perſons deſperately wounded, or from the ſight of it, being apt to cauſe thoſe againſt whom it was drawn (commonly knights unhorſed and lying on the ground) to cry, miſericorde, mercy or quarter. Men at arms alſo frequently carried iron maces, ſuſpended at their ſaddle-bowe.

The horſes of the men at arms, were ſcarcely leſs encumbered with armour than their riders; their faces, heads and ears were covered over with a ſort of maſk, ſo contrived as to prevent their ſeeing

(e) King James I. obſerved in praiſe of armour, that it not only protected the wearer, but alſo prevented him from injuring any other perſon.

(f) The ancient knights frequently carried two ſwords, one in a belt by their ſide and the other fixed to their ſaddle-bowe. In the Speculum Regale, written about the 12th century, among other directions for the arming of a horſeman, are thoſe: "let him have two ſwords, one in his belt and the other hanging to his ſaddle-bowe, with a war-knife." P. 406. In a military treatiſe attributed to Guillaume de Bellay, it is ſaid, men at arms ſhould have their ſword of arms at their ſide, the eſtoc (a long ſharp-pointed ſword) at one bowe of their ſaddle, and a mace at the other.

right before them, in order that they might not be terrified from charging or ſhocking with vigour: this maſk was called a chafron or ſhafront. Frequently from the centre of the forehead projećted an iron ſpike, reſembling the horn given to that fabulous animal an unicorn; their necks were defended by a number of ſmall plates connećted together, called a criniere, or manefaire; they had poitrinals for their breaſts, croupieres and flancois for covering their buttocks and flanks, reaching down to the hocks; all theſe pieces were generally of iron or braſs, though ſometimes of cuir-bouillié, i. e. jacked leather. Occaſionally they were covered all over with mail, or linen ſtuffed and quilted like the gambeſon and adorned with rich embroidery. Horſes thus covered, were called barded, and corruptly barbed horſes: they were alſo frequently ſtiled covered horſes (g).

To prevent their horſes from being fatigued under all their own incumbrances, and the enormous weight of their riders, and to preſerve their vigour for the charge, the men at arms had commonly hackneys for riding on a march, and did not mount their war horſes till they were certain of coming to ačtion; a circumſtance which has frequently occaſioned them to be ſurpriſed and defeated, before they could mount their chargers and form. Barded horſes were in uſe in our armies, at the time of King Edward VI.

When plate armour came into general uſe, which, as has been before obſerved, was about the middle of the fourteenth century (h), the different pieces for a man at arms, were theſe; a cloſe helmet, having a viſor to lift up and let down, or one with a viſor and bever, both revolving on the ſame pivots (i). When theſe were cloſed the air was admitted through apertures made alſo for ſight, and other

(g) Barde', in old French, ſignifies covered.

(h) It is not to be ſuppoſed that before that time plate armour was unknown; hiſtory affords us plenty of inſtances to the contrary; but probably, it was in the earlier periods too dear to be generally worn: there are ſtill many ſpecimens of Roman plate armour in the muſeums of the curious.

(i) The viſor was opened to obtain a leſs obſtrućted ſight, and the bever, to enable the wearer to converſe more freely, and to eat or drink; their uſe is pointed out by their names.

A HORSEMAN'S ARMS, ARMOUR, & ACCOUTREMENTS.

S. Goodnight sculp.

ſmaller perforations oppoſite the mouth and noſtrils. The neck and throat were defended by a gorget, or hallercet; the body by a cuiraſs, formed of two pieces hooked together, denominated backs and breaſt pieces, from the parts they covered; to the back was joined, a gard de reines, or culet; the arms were covered with braſſarts, called alſo avant bras, and corruptly vambraces, the hands by gauntlets, the ſhoulders by pouldrons, the thighs by cuiſſarts, and the legs by iron boots, called greaves, and ſometimes by boots of jacked leather. Under all theſe, was worn a jacket of thick fuſtian or buff leather; ſhields ſeem to have been left off by the cavalry before this alteration.

PLATE armour was, ſome time after its introduction, made of a prodigious thickneſs; Monſieur de la Noue, in his fifth military diſcourſe, ſays, that to guard againſt the violence of harquebuſſes and pikes, the men at arms loaded themſelves with anvils, inſtead of covering themſelves with armour; it was alſo ſo cloſely fitted as to make it difficult to penetrate the joints with the miſericorde, or dagger. Father Daniel quotes from Philip de Comines, an inſtance of this at the battle of Fornoue, under Charles VIII. where a number of Italian knights who were overthrown, could not be ſlain on account of the ſtrength of their armour, till broke up like huge lobſters, by the ſervants and followers of the army, with large wood-cutters' axes; each man at arms having three or four men employed about him (k).

ABOUT the time of Queen Mary, the appellation of men at arms, ſignifying the heavy-armed cavalry, ſeems to have been changed to that of ſpears and launces, and afterwards to cuiraſſiers.

THE armour of a lancier was much the ſame as laſt deſcribed; their offenſive weapons were, a lance of ſixteen or eighteen feet long, a ſword and petrenels (l); the laſt were ſomewhat longer than the piſtols then in uſe.

(k) HIST. de la Mil. Fr. vol. i. p. 396.

(l) THE preſident Fauchet, the French antiquary, who lived at the time of Francis I. and died in the reign of Henry IV. ſays, within theſe twenty or thirty years, the name of

The cuiraſier was alſo armed cap-à-pie, and had under his armour a good buff coat; his offenſive arms were a ſpit ſword, with a ſharp point, piſtols, or petrenels, his ſaddle and bit ſtrong, and the reins of his bridle ſtrengthened with an iron chain to prevent their being cut.

Hobilers, were a ſpecies of light horſemen chiefly calculated for the purpoſes of reconnoitring, carrying intelligence, haraſſing troops on a march, intercepting convoys, and purſuing a routed army; the ſmallneſs of their horſes rendering them unfit to ſtand the ſhock of a charge: they ſeem alſo to have been occaſionally like the original dragoons of the French (from whom we borrowed both the name and eſtabliſhment of thoſe troops), who, Father Daniel ſays, were rather conſidered as infantry mounted on horſeback for the ſake of moving with celerity, than cavalry fit to charge in the line.

---

petrenel has been given to a weapon between the harquebuſs and piſtols, having a ſtronger and more ſudden wheel; it is thought this weapon was the invention of the bandouliers of the Pyrennean mountains. Nicot, who was his contemporary, in his dictionary thus deſcribed the petrinel; it is, ſays he, a ſort of harquebuſs, ſhorter than the muſquet, but of a greater caliber; which, on account of its weight, is carried in a large ſhoulder belt, and when fired, is reſted on the breaſt of the perſon who diſcharges it; whence it is called the petrinel, or poitrinal. The piſtol was of more ancient date, it derives its name from having been made at Piſtoya in Spain; Sir James Turner ſays, the piſtol was invented firſt by Camillo Vitelli, an Italian, when Ferdinand of Arragon reigned in Spain, Charles VIII. and Lewis XII. in France, Henry VIII. in England, and James V. in Scotland, not above one hundred and fifty years ago, and conſequently more than two hundred years after the German monk had found out gunpowder. The harquebuſs is of older date. The bore of the piſtol long ago was made for twenty bullets in one pound of lead, but it being found that the ball entered not eaſily, generally they caſt one pound of lead into four and twenty piſtol balls; the half of the weight of the powder ſerves, if it be good, if not, they take two thirds; as for one pound and a half of lead, one pound of powder; but if it be fine, half will ſerve, as for two pounds of lead, one pound of powder: the barrel of the piſtol may be two foot for the longeſt, ſixteen inches for the ſhorteſt. The French uſe locks with half bends; and ſo do for the moſt part the Engliſh and the Scots; the Germans, rore or wheel works; the Hollauder makes uſe of both. If the chamber of a piſtol be loaden three times the diameter of her bore with powder (which is eaſily meaſured by her rammer), ſhe hath her due charge, but all horſemen ſhould always have the charges of their piſtols ready in patrons, the powder made up compactly in paper, and the ball tied to it with a piece of packthread.

Some, among whom is Bailey (m) derive the term hobiler from a Daniſh word, ſignifying a mare, not conſidering that any conſiderable number of mares, could not have been ſuffered in an army where the men at arms were chiefly mounted on ſtoned horſes, and that beſides in the days of chivalry it was conſidered as a degradation for any knight, or man at arms, to be ſeen mounted on a mare (n): moſt probably they borrowed their name from the hobbies, or ſmall horſes on which they rode: hobbies are defined by Johnſon and others to be ſmall Iriſh horſes.

(m) See his dictionary, hoblers, or hobilers (hobelarii) erant milites gregarii levi armatura & mediocri equo, ad omnem motum agili. Sub Edwardo III. in Gallia moventes dicti (ut reor) vel ab iſtius modi equo, an hobby appellato, vel potius a Gal. *hobille tunica.* Tabulæ claſſes deſcribentes in exercitu ejuſdem Edwardi Caletam obſidientes, anno 1350, ſic habent. Sub Comite Kildaræ banerets 1, knights 1, eſquires 28, hobilers 27, &c. Theſe were light horſemen, or certain tenants, who by their tenure were bound to maintain a little light nag, for certifying an invaſion, or ſuch-like peril, towards the ſea ſide, as Portſmouth, &c. of which you may read, 18th Ed. III. ſtat. 1. c. 7 and 25. ejuſdem ſtat. 5. cap. 8. and Cambden's Brit. fol. 272. Duravit vocabulum uſque ad ætatem Hen. VIII. ſays Spelman, Gentz d'armes & hobelours. See Prin's Animadv. on the 4th inſt. f. 307. Hobeleries. Rot. Parl. 21. Ed. III. Sometimes the word ſignifies thoſe who uſed bows and arrows, viz. pro warda maris tempore guerræ pro hoberariis ſagittariis inveniendis, &c. Thorn, anno 1364. So in the Monaſticon. Pro munitione & apparatibus hominum ad arma, hobelariorum ſagittariorum, Cowel, edit. 127. Cunningham's Law Dictionary. Camden ſays, in the paſſage above quoted, p. 273, "In old times there were ſet horſemen at parts, in many places, whom our anceſtors called hobelers, who, in the day ſhould give notice of the enemies approach."

(n) In a writ to the biſhop of Durham, A.D. 1324, 18 Ed. II. directing him to raiſe within his dioceſe, the greateſt number, and moſt valiant men at arms, hobilers and footmen he can poſſibly, there is the following exception to mares: Des hobelours convenablement apparaillez montez a chivaux autre qe jumentz. Rymer.

Colembiere ſays, if any one preſented himſelf at a tournament, under falſe proofs of nobility, he was then condemned to ride upon the rail of the barrier bare headed, his ſhield and caſque were reverſed and trodden under feet, his horſe confiſcated and given to the officers of arms, and he was ſent back upon a mare, which was deemed a great ſhame, for a true knight would anciently have been equally diſhonoured by mounting a mare, whether in time of war or peace; even geldings, ſo much eſteemed at preſent, were baniſhed from among them.

It is commonly ſuppoſed that the eſtabliſhment of hobilers did not take place, till the reign of Edward III. This is evidently a miſtake, for they are mentioned as part of the Britiſh army that attended King Edward II. into Scotland, in the year 1322 (o): the name ſeems totally loſt, about the latter end of the reign of Henry VIII. or Queen Mary, theſe troops being then diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of demy launces and light horſe.

The arms and appointments of a hobiler as directed by King Edward III. were, a horſe, a haqueton, or armour of plate, a bacinet, iron gauntlets, a ſword, knife and a lance (p). Sometimes archers were mounted on light horſes, whence they were ſtiled hobiler archers: theſe frequently occur in hiſtory.

The arms, both offenſive and defenſive, of a demi launce or light horſeman, are thus deſcribed by Markham (q).

"The ſecond troop of horſe were launciers, or demy launciers, they were armed at all pieces, from the head to the knee, like the gentlemen at arms, and their offenſive weapons were a launce, a caſe of ſhort piſtols, a battle axe, ſword and dagger, ſtrong horſes, well ridden for the field, armed with a ſteel ſaddle, headſtall, raines, bitt, breaſtplate, crooper, trappings, girtes, ſtirrops and leathers.

"The third ſort of ancient horſemen, were called light horſe, and they were armed for defence with burgenets or ſteel caps, gorgets, curats, or plate coats, gauntlets or gloves of mail: for offenſive arms they had a ſlender chaſing ſtaffe, a ſingle piſtol, and ſometimes a caſe, a ſword, and dagger. Their horſes were nimble light geldings, fair trotting and well ridden: the furniture for the horſe was a headſtall and raines, a bitt, a morocco ſaddle, pettrell, crop-

(o) Titulus de Denariis ſolutis diverſis comitibus, baronibus et aliis pro vadiis ſuis & hominum ſuorum ad arma & hobelariorum tam in guerra Scotie quam in munitionibus caſtrorum in marchia Scotie & Anglie a primo die Maii, anno quintodecimo, uſque ſeptimum diem Julii anno Regni ejuſdem ſexto, decimo finiente tempore Rogeri de Waltham tunc cuſtodis et Roberti de Baldok tunc contrarotulatoris garderobe MS. in Bib. Tho. Aſtle Ar.

(p) Yelverton MS. in the ſame library.

(q) P. 34. In the Souldiers Accidence, publiſhed A.D. 1645.

per, light trappings, and other neceſſaries ſuitable; the men to be handſome yeomen or ſerving men, light timbred and of a comely ſhape, where it ſkills not much for the tallneſſe or greatneſſe of body, but for the height of ſpirit, and the goodneſſe of the inclination; in which little David (many times) puts downe the greateſt Goliah."

The ſame author then proceeds to deſcribe the cavalry of his time: "Thus (ſays he) for your knowledge, not your example, I have ſhewed you the ſeveral compoſitions and armings of horſemen, according to the ancient times, when the bow and the hargobus had the firſt place, and the muſket, and other fiery weapons, lay obſcured. But to come to theſe our preſent times, wherein the uttermoſt ſtrength of the fire is found out and explained, and to ſhew you that which you muſt only imitate and follow, you ſhall know that all our horſe-troopes are reduced to one of theſe three formes.

"The firſt and principall troop of horſemen, for the generality, are now called cuiraſiers, or piſtoliers, and theſe men ought to be of the beſt degree, becauſe, the meaneſt in one of thoſe troops, is ever by his place a gentleman, and ſo eſteemed. They have for defenſive armes, gorgets, curats, cutaſes, which ſome call culets, others the guard de reine, becauſe it armeth the hinder parts, from the waſte to the ſaddle crootch, then pouldrons, vambraces, a lefthand gauntlet, taces, cuiſſes, a caſke, a ſword, girdle and hangers. For offenſive armes, they ſhall have a caſe of long piſtols, firelocks (if it may be), but ſnaphaunces where they are wanting; the barrels of the piſtols would be twenty-ſix inches long, and the bore of thirty-ſix bullets in the pound, flaſk, priming box, key and mouldes; their horſes ſhould be ſtoned and of the beſt races, faire trotting and well ridden for the wars, that is to ſay, being able to paſſe a ſtrong and ſwift cariere, to ſtop cloſe, to retire at pleaſure, and to turne readily on both hands, either in large rings or in ſtrayt, eſpecially the turn called terra, terra; the horſe ſhall have a ſaddle, bridle, bitt, pettrell, crooper, with leathers to faſten his piſtols and his neceſſary ſacke of carriage, with other neceſſary things according to the forme of good horſemanſhip; the ſecond ſort (of which many troopes of horſe are com-

pounded) are called hargobuſiers or carbines, theſe men ought to be the beſt of the firſt inferior degree, that is to ſay, of the beſt yeomen or beſt ſerving men, having active and nimble bodies, joyned with good ſpirits, and ripe underſtandings; theſe men ſhall have for defenſive armes, gorgets, curats, cutaſes, pouldrons, vambraces, and a light head-piece, wide ſighted, and the bevers to let downe upon bars of iron; for offenſive armes, he ſhall have an hargobus of three foote three inches long, and the bore of twenty bullets in the pound, with flaſke, priming box and moulds, or inſtead of theſe, cartalages, which will ſerve either for this, or any other piece on horſebacke; alſo a good ſword, and other accoutrements according to his place. His horſe ſhall be either a faire ſtoned trotting horſe, or a luſty ſtrong guelding well ridden, he ſhall be armed with a morocco ſaddle, bridle, bitt, pettrell, and crooper, with the reſt before ſhewed neceſſary to his place.

"The laſt ſort of which our horſe troops are compoſed are called dragoons (r), which are a kind of footmen on horſebacke, and do now indeed ſucceed the light horſemen, and are of ſingular uſe in

(r) According to P. Daniel, tom. 2. p. 498, dragoons are of French origin, and were invented by Charles de Coſſé, Mareſchal de Briſac, when he commanded the army of that nation, in Piedmont, ſometime about the year 1600: he ſuppoſes they were called dragoons, from the celerity of their motions, and the rapidity with which they ravaged a country, thereby reſembling the fabulous monſter of that denomination. Sir James Turner ſeems much of the ſame opinion: "For what they got the denomination of dragoons (ſays he), is not ſo eaſy to be told, but becauſe in all languages they are called ſo, we may ſuppoſe, they may borrow their name from dragon, becauſe a muſketeer on horſeback with his burning match, riding a gallop, as many times he doth, may ſomething reſemble that beaſt, which naturaliſts call a fiery dragon." The oldeſt regiment of dragoons in the Engliſh army is the Scotch greys, who were raiſed 19th Nov. 1683.

Capt. Cruso, in his Military Inſtructions for the Cavalry, publiſhed A.D. 1632, ſays there are two ſorts of dragoons, the pikeman and the muſketeers; the pikeman is to have a thong of leather about the middle of his pike, for the more commodious carrying it. The muſketeer is to have a ſtrap or belt faſtened to the ſtock of his muſket almoſt from one end to the other, by which (being on horſeback) he hangeth it at his back, his burning match and the bridle in the left hand.

ANCIENT DRAGOON

all actions of warre; their armes defenſive, are an open head-piece with cheeks, and a good buffe coat, with deepe ſkirts; and for offenſive armes, they have a faire dragon, fitted with an iron worke to be caryed in a belt of leather, which is buckled over the right ſhoulder, and under the left arme, having a turnill of iron with a ring, through which the piece runnes up and downe; and theſe dragons are ſhort pieces of ſixteen inches the barrell, and full muſquet bore, with firelocks or ſnaphaunces (s); alſo a belt, with a flaſke, pryming box, key and bullet bag, and a good ſword: the horſe ſhall be armed with a ſaddle, bridle, bitt, petterell, crooper, with ſtraps for his ſack of neceſſaries; and the horſe himſelf ſhall be either a good luſty gelding, or a nimble ſtoned horſe. Theſe dragoons in their marches are allowed to be eleven in a rank or file, becauſe when they ſerve, it is many times on foote, for the maintenance or ſurprizing of ſtrait wayes, bridges or foords, ſo that when ten men alight to ſerve, the eleventh man holdeth their horſes: ſo that to every troope of an hundred, there is an hundred and ten men allowed."

A MANUSCRIPT in the Harleian library, marked No. 6008, and entitled, A Brief Treatiſe of War, &c. &c. by W. T. in the year of our redemption 1649, on the ſubject of dragoons, has the following paſſages: "As for dragooniers they are to be as lightly armed as may be, and therefore they are onlie to have as followeth, calivers and powder flaſkes. I would alſo have each dragoonier conſtantly to car-

(s) THE piece here mentioned ſeems to have been a kind of carabine, or blunderbuſs, which is thus deſcribed by Sir James Turner, p. 137. "The carabiners carry their carabines in baindileers of leather about their neck, a far eaſier way than long ago, when they hung them at their ſaddles; ſome inſtead of carabines carry blunderbuſſes, which are ſhort hand guns of a great bore, wherein they may put ſeveral piſtol or carabine balls, or ſmall ſlugs of iron. I do believe the word is corrupted, for I gueſs it is a German term, and ſhould be *donnerbucks*, and that is thundering guns, *donner* ſignifying thunder, and *bucks* a gun." Lord Orrery in his Treatiſe on the Art of War, propoſes that every regiment of cavalry ſhould conſiſt of ſeven troops, ſix of heavy-armed horſe, and one of dragoons; an idea that was afterwards adopted, by the attaching a light troop to every regiment of dragoons.

rye at his girdle, two ſwyn feathers, or foot palliſados, of four feet length and a half, headed with ſharp forked iron heads of ſix inches length, and a ſharp iron foot, to ſtick into the ground for their defence, whereas they may come to be forced to make reſiſtance againſt horſe."

When the bayonet was firſt introduced, the uſe of it was chiefly confined to the dragoons and grenadiers (t).

After the revolution and diſbanding of the army in 1698, the Engliſh cavalry conſiſted of the life-guards, horſe-grenadier-guards (u), horſe, and dragoons, till the year 1746, when a regiment of light dragoons was raiſed, chiefly in the county of Nottingham, and the duke of Cumberland appointed colonel of it (x); the ſame year the third and fourth troops of horſe-guards were diſbanded, and three regiments of horſe reduced to the pay and ſervice of dragoons, but as ſome compenſation, they were gratified with the honorary title of dragoon-guards, and precedency of all other dragoons."

In the year 1755 a light troop was added to each regiment of dragoons, and ſeveral regiments of light dragoons have been ſince

---

(t) The bayonet is much of the ſame length as the poniard; it hath neither guard nor handle, but only the haft of wood eight or nine inches long; the blade is ſharp-pointed and two-edged, a foot in length, and a large inch in breadth. The bayonet is very uſeful to dragoons, fuſileers and ſoldiers, that are often commanded out on parties; becauſe that when they have fired their diſcharges, and want powder and ſhot, they put the haft of it into the mouth of the barrel of their pieces, and defend themſelves therewith as well as with a partizan. Engliſh Military Diſcipline, &c. printed for Robert Harford, 1680, p. 13. As late as the year 1750, dragoons were armed with iron ſcull caps, which they carried at their ſaddle bow.

(u) The grenadier-guards were firſt raiſed as grenadiers to the troops of horſe-guards, in imitation of the grenadier companies annexed to the regiments of infantry.

(x) The warrant for raiſing this regiment was dated 8th Sept. 1746; it was diſbanded in 1748 or 1749. Upon the raiſing of this regiment, the printer of the London Evening Poſt obſerved, that formerly our cavalry reſembled giants mounted on elephants, but this regiment was like monkies upon lean cats. For this and ſome other unhandſome reflections on the corps, they deputed one of their officers to give him ſome proper correction, which he moſt faithfully and ably adminiſtered: the expences of the proſecution were paid by a regimental contribution.

Horse Guard

Light Dragoon.

raiſed. The gallant behaviour of one of them in Germany (y), their general utility, and the ſmartneſs of their appearance, has of late brought them into ſuch eſtimation, that ſeveral old regiments of dragoons have obtained leave to change their heavy black horſes, for others of a lighter breed, not conſidering that as they now occupy the place of cavalry, there being but one regiment of horſe on the Engliſh eſtabliſhment, they ſhould not riſque that ſuperiority the ſtrength, ſize and weight of their horſes have hitherto given them over the cavalry of every other nation. Light troops are extremely uſeful on divers occaſions, but it is the heavy horſe only that are fit to charge in the line.

THE band of gentlemen penſioners was a corps of cavalry inſtituted by King Henry VIII. for an honourable body guard, and to form a nurſery for officers of his army and governors of his caſtles and fortified places. The orders and regulations in the note below for raiſing and governing it, approved of, and ſigned by that king, will beſt deſcribe what he intended it ſhould be (z).

(y) THE 15th regiment of light dragoons. This corps when firſt completed, is ſaid to have conſiſted chiefly of taylors; if ſo, they demonſtrated that Sir John Hawkwood was not the only inſtance in which the vulgar joke on their profeſſion has proved a falſity.

(z) THIS curious manuſcript is preſerved in the Cottonian library, it is written on five ſmall quarto leaves of indented vellum, marked Titus, A xiii. N. 24.

CERTAIN ordinances and ſtatutes deviſed and ſigned by the king's majeſtie for a retinewe of ſperes or men of arms, to be choſen of gentlemen that be commen and extracte of noble blood. With a forme of their othe.

HENRY R.

'FORASMOCHE as the king oure ſouveraine lorde, of his greatt nobleneſſe, wiſedom and prudence, conſidreth that in this his reame of England be many yong gentlemen of noble blod, whiche have non exerciſe in the feate of armes, in handling and renying the ſpere and other faits of werre on horſebacke, like as in other reames and cuntreys be dailey practiſed and uſed, to the greate honor and laude of theim that ſoo dothe, his highnes hath ordeyned and appointed to have a retynue daily of certaine ſperes called men of armes, to be choſen of gentlemen that be comen and extracte of noble blod, to thentent that they

As there is no date to thoſe regulations, it is uncertain when they were made, but from divers concurrent circumſtances, there are good

---

ſhall exerciſe the ſaid feate of armes, and be the more mete and able to ſerve theire prince, as well in tyme of werre as otherwiſe, and to have good wages to leve ŭpon accordingly.

And to thentent alſoo, that every of them ſhall knowe howe to order and demeane themſelfs, his highnes hath made, ordeyned and eſtabliſhed certaine ordenances and ſtatutes followinge.

Furst, Evry of the ſaid gentlemen ſhall have his harneys complete and all other habiliments mete and neceſſary for him, with twoo double horſes at the leeſte for himſelf and his page, convenient and neceſſarye for a man of arms; alſo his couſtrell, with a javelyn or demy-launce, well armed and horſed as it apperteyneth. And they ſhall obeye, in everye condicon, the captaine that ſhall be ordeyned and deputed by the king's highnes, or his deputie lieutenante, to have the rule, conduite, and gov'nance of themm, in all things that thei ſhall be commanded to doo on the king's behalf.

Itm. That they ſhall make their abode in ſuche places as the king's grace ſhall appoint theim, or the ſaid captaine, or the deputy lieutenante in the king's name, whedder it be in places nigh his perſon, or elſewhere, upon pain for every ſuch defaulte to loſe ſix dayes wages.

Itm. Evry of the ſaid ſperes and couſtrellys ſhall, at every time, cary with theim thire horſes, harnys, and other habiliments of werre as thei have, and ſhall muſter with, not lacking, at any time, pece or parcel of theire ſaid habilyments of werre, nor horſes, upon payne of loſing ſix dayes wages for every ſuche daye and tyme as he ſhall be founden in defaulte, being afore commaunded by the king, captaine, or lieutenante.

Itm. In likewiſe that non of the ſaid ſperes nor couſtrells ſhall in no wiſe departe oute of the place, where they be aſſigned to make theire ſaid abode, withoute the ſpecial licence of the king our ſouvraine lorde, or of theire ſaid captaine, or deputie lieutenante: and to ſuche as licenſe ſhall be granted unto by the king's grace, or the ſaid captaine or lieutenante, and the daye appointed theim for their returne not to faille, withoute lawfull excuſe of ſickneſſe or otherwiſe duely proved, upon paine of the loſſe of double theire wages for every daye, as thei ſhall faille in comying after the ſaid daye to them lymited and aſſigned.

Itm. That evry of the aforeſaid men of armes ſhall furnyſhe and make redy twoo good archers, well horſed and harneſſed, and to bring theim to muſter before the king's grace, or ſuche perſones as his grace ſhall appointe, within a moneth at the fartheſt after the daye that they ſhall be commanded ſoo to doo by the king's grace, or theire captaine or lieutenante, and not to faille ſoo to doo, upon paine of loſing their romes, and their bodies to be ponyſhed atte the king's pleaſure.

Itm. If any of the ſaid archers after they be admitted, fortune to dye, the ſaid ſperes ſhall not admitte any other in theire place, but ſhall name oon mete perſon for that rome

of

reaſons to ſuppoſe they were compiled, and the corps formed in the year 1509, the firſt of that king's reign; what was the original

---

of archer unto the king's highnes, and bring him to his preſens, to be admitted at his pleaſure, or els to the ſaid captaine or lieutenante.

Itm. For the wages and ent'teyning of the ſaid ſperes and archers, the king's highnes hath ordeyned and appointed, that every ſpere ſhall have and receive for himſelf, his couſtrell, his page, and his two archers, thre ſhillings and foure pens ſtrlings by the daye, to be paid by hands of the treaſourer of the king's chambre, whiche is appointed by the king's highnes to paye them the ſame. And ſuthermore the ſaid ſperes ſhall receive theire ſaid wages for them and for theire archers at thend of every moneth.

Itm. The king's pleaſure is, that the ſaid lieutenante ſhall have for the wages and entertaining of himſelf, his cuſtrell, page, and ſix archers, ſix ſhillings by the daye, to be payed in like manner as the ſaid ſperes ſhall be.

Itm. The king's grace woll that the ſaide captaine or lieutenante, with ſuche other pſones as his grace ſhall appointe, ſhall evry quarter of the yere, as it ſhal be the king's pleaſure, ſee the muſters of the ſaid men of armes and theire company, if any of them lakke horſe, harneys, or if any of theire ſaid horſes and harneys be not ſufficient as they ſhould be: if thei be not, that they be commanded by the foreſaid captaine or lieutenante, to provide for ſuche as ſhal be good and ſufficient, upon raiſonable daye, by the ſaid captaine or lieutenante to be appointed. And ſuche as ſoo be founden in defaulte, that the ſaide captaine or lieutenante, ſhall reſtrain his wages in the hands of the ſaid treaſourer of the chambre, till he be ſufficiently apparelled of ſuche thinges as he ſoo ſhall lakke, and thus the ſaid captaine or lieutenante to doo upon payne of the king's diſpleaſure, and loſing of his rome.

Itm. To thentent that the ſaid ſperes ſhall alwayes be in the more arredynes (readineſs), with theire retynue, and ſuche horſe and harneys, and other things as ſhal be neceſſarye in that behalf, the king's pleaſure is, that the ſaid ſperes ſhal be redy always to muſter befor the ſaid captaine or lieutenante at ſuche tyme or tymes as they ſhal be by them commaunded ſoo to doo.

Itm. It is the king's commaundement, that the ſaid ſperes and theire companye ſhall obſerve and kepe good rule and gov'nance, and nothynge attempte againſte the king's ſubjects, contrarye to his lawes; and that thei duely and truely content and paye in redy money for vittals and all other neceſſaries, that thei ſhal take for themſelfs, theire ſaid ſervants and horſes, upon payne to be poniſhed after the king's pleaſure. And if any of theim ſhall be founde three times culpable in any ſuch defaults, then he or thei to be deprived of his rome, and his body to be poniſhed at the king's pleaſure.

Itm. It is the king's pleaſure and commaundement, that none of the ſaid ſperes ſhall preſume to take his lodging by his owne auctoritie, but be ordered theirin, and take ſuch lodging,

number is not there mentioned; moſt of the chronicles fix it at fifty.

---

lodging, as by the king's herbergiers (harbingers) for that purpoſe deputed, ſhall be appointed unto theim, upon ponyſhement aforſaid.

ITM. It is the king's pleaſure and commaundement, that non of the ſaid ſperes ſhall geve wages unto any archer, couſtrell, or page of any other ſpere, nor to reteigne him as his ſrvante, excepte he be put to him by his own maſter, being oon of the ſaid ſperes.

The OTHE.

I SHAL be true and faithfull ſubjecte and ſervante unto oure Soverine Lord King Henry VIII. and to his heirs, kings of England, and diligently and truely give myn attendance in the room of one of his ſperes; and I ſhall be reteyned to no man, pſone, ne pſones of what degree or condicon ſoever he be, by othe, lyvree, bagge [badge], promiſe or otherwiſe, but oonly to his grace, without his eſpeciall licence. And I ſhall not hereafter knowe or here of any thing that ſhal be hurteſull or prejudiciall to his moſt royal pſon, ſpecially in treaſon, but I ſhal withſtand it to th' utermoſt of my power, and the ſame, with all diligence to me poſſible, diſcloſe to the king's highnes, or to the captaine of the ſaid ſperes, or his deputie lieutenante, or ſuch others of his counſaile as I ſhall know woll diſcover the ſame unto his grace. I ſhall not leye to pledge, ne putte awaye ſuche horſe and harneys, as I now have muſtered with before the king, to any pſone or pſones, ne put oute of ſervice any archer, cuſtrell or page, that I have nowe with me, onles I have before ſhewed cauſe reaſonable ſoo to doo, to the king, or the ſaid captaine or his deputie lieutenante in his abſence: nor I ſhall knowe of any of my company in likewiſe to leye to pledge or put away any horſe, harneys, or archers, but that I ſhall ſhowe the ſame to the king's grace, his ſaid captaine, or deputie lieutenante, in as brief tyme as I conveniently maye. I ſhall alſo truely and faithfully to my power obſerve and kepe from this daye forwards, all and evry article comprized in a boke aſſigned with the king's hand, and all manner of ſtatutes and ordinances in the ſame and in evry of theim conteined. On this I ſhall be obeyſaunte unto my captaine or deputie lieutenante, and the commaundements I ſhall obſerve and kepe at all tymes, ſoo the ſame be or concerne the ſervice of the king's grace. And all ſuch cauſes ſecrete as ſhall be ſhewed unto me by the king's grace, the ſaide captaine, or deputie lieutenante, I ſhall keep counſaill, without diſcov'ring of the ſame to any pſone or pſones till I be commaunded. I ſhall diligently give my attendaunce with my retynue upon the king's grace, in ſuch wiſe as I ſhall be commaunded and appointed by the ſaid captaine, or his ſaid deputie lieutenante; and not abſente or departe from the courte without licence of the king or of the ſaid captaine or his deputie lieutenante, in his abſence, by the ſpace of foure dayes. And alſo all ſuche horſe, harneys, and other habiliments of werre, as I nowe have muſtered with before the king's grace, the ſaid captaine or deputie lieutenante, be my own

proper

This eſtabliſhment being, it is ſaid, found too expenſive, the corps was diſbanded, a ſhort time after its inſtitution, and before the year 1526 revived on a ſmaller pay; it is mentioned that year in the houſehold ſtatutes made at Eltham, under the deſcription of the band of gentlemen penſioners, their preſent title; when the corps ſtood thus:

A captain with the ſalary of - - -	200 marks
A lieutenant - - - - - - - - -	100 pounds
A ſtandard bearer (a) - - - - -	100 marks
Fifty gentlemen penſioners, each (b) -	46l. 13s. 4d.
A clerk of the checque - - - - -	40 pounds
A harbinger (c) - - - - - - - -	18 pounds

About this time they appear to have done duty on foot in the court, probably armed with their battle-axes. Towards the latter end of his reign, King Henry indulged them with permiſſion to do their duty by quarterly attendance, half the band waiting at one time; for which favour each of them was to furniſh an additional great horſe (d); they were nevertheleſs all obliged to attend at the

---

proper goods and non other man's: nor alſo I ſhall not muſter at any tyme before the king's grace, the ſaid captaine or deputie lieutenante, with any archer, couſtrell or page, but oonly with ſuche as I have reteyned with me to ſerve the king's highnes for the ſame entent. And thus I ſhall well and truly obſerve and kepe, and ſerve the king in the ſaid rome of oon of his ſperes: ſo help me God and theis holy Evangelies.

(a) According to Doctor Chamberlayne's Angliæ Notitia of the year 1672, the band had two ſtandards, one St. George's croſs, the other, four bends; but in the latter the colours of the field and charge are not mentioned.

(b) This ſeems a ſingular ſum; but as it is the amount of 70 marks, the common mode of reckoning at that time when wages did not often run per diem, probably on account of this diminution in their wages, a leſs retinue might be required of them. Hollingſhead ſays, fol. 1574, they were only bound to ſupply two horſes, or, optionally, one horſe and a gelding of ſervice.

(c) Neither the ſtandard bearer, clerk of the checque, nor harbinger, are mentioned in the original ordinance.

(d) Item, in conſideracion whereof, whereas now they are bounden to the findinge of two

four principal feaſts of the year, Chriſtmas, Eaſter, Whitſuntide, and Allhallowtide. King Henry VIII. was attended by the band at the ſiege of Boulogne, and after its ſurrender, they made part of the cavalcade at his triumphal entry into that place. In the ſucceeding reigns of Edward VI. Mary and Elizabeth (e), they were occaſionally muſtered with the other forces of the kingdom, and frequently performed their military exerciſes before the court.

During Cromwell's protectorſhip, this corps was ſuſpended, but was embodied again ſoon after the reſtoration.

King James II. in the firſt year of his reign gave a new ſet of orders to the band, differing much from thoſe of Queen Elizabeth and King Charles I. Some of the moſt remarkable may be ſeen in the note underneath: the band at that time conſiſted of forty gentlemen in ordinary, and eighty extraordinary (f).

---

two greate horſes only, they ſhall each one from henceforthe, keepe three horſes furniſhed accordingly. Theſe orders were iſſued, when Sir Anthony Brown was captain of the band. See Curialia, No. 2, p. 25.

(e) From ſome articles made for the government of the band, it appears, that in this reign there was a table allowed to the gentlemen in waiting, as well as to the officers; this was relinquiſhed in the reign of King Charles II. on their pay being raiſed to its preſent amount, which took place, A.D. 1670: part of the fund for that augmentation aroſe from the reduction of the band from fifty to forty.

(f) Art. 3. If we or the captain of the ſaid band ſhall think fit to remove any or all of the forty gentlemen penſioners in ordinary now of the band, thoſe who have bought their places, that ſhall be ſo removed, ſhall receive half pay during their lives reſpectively, and thoſe that ſucceed in their places the other half, and after their death the whole.

Art. 11. The ſaid gentlemen penſioners in ordinary being required by their inſtitution every of them to be well and ſufficiently provided and furniſhed with three great horſes for himſelf and his ſervants, with arms and all other habiliments to the ſame appertaining, the performance whereof our late brother King Charles II. was pleaſed to diſpenſe with till he ſhould think fit to require the ſame; it is our pleaſure, that from henceforth the forty gentlemen penſioners in ordinary, and the eighty gentlemen penſioners extraordinary, ſhall each of them be ſufficiently furniſhed with a caſe of piſtols, a broad ſword, an iron back, breaſt, and head piece, with proper furniture and accoutrements to the ſame appertaining, to be ready therewith, within two days warning, to be given to them by their captain, lieutenant, or ſtandard bearer, on failure whereof the gentlemen penſioners in ordinary to forfeit ten

days

During the rebellion in 1745, when the king ſignified his intention of ſetting up his ſtandard on Finchley common, the gentlemen of the band had notice to hold themſelves in readineſs to take the field, with their ſervants, horſes, and arms.

The captain of this corps carries an ebony ſtaff, with a gold head, which, on his appointment, he receives from the king, without any

---

days wages, for the firſt default, and for the ſecond default to forfeit a month's wages, and for the third default to be clearly expulſed and put out of the room of a gentleman penſioner in ordinary, and to loſe his whole quarter's wages. And every gentleman penſioner extraordinary, who ſhall fail to be furniſhed and provided with horſe and arms as aforeſaid, and to be ready therewith, within two days notice, to be given him by his captain, lieutenant, or ſtandard bearer, ſhall be clearly expulſed, and put out of the room of a gentleman penſioner extraordinary.

Art. 12. Every gentleman penſioner in ordinary ſhall alſo ſufficiently furniſh and provide himſelf with three great horſes, with piſtols, ſwords, iron backs, breaſts, and head-pieces, with proper furniture and accoutrements to the ſame appertaining, for himſelf and two ſervants, whenever we ſhall think fit to require the ſame, to be ready therewith within fourteen days notice, to be given unto them by their captain, lieutenant, or ſtandard bearer, under the penalty for every default to be chequed, or expulſed clearly, and put out of the room of a gentleman penſioner as aforementioned.

Art. 15. The captain of the band ſhall have a due regard that ſuch gentlemen penſioners in ordinary, and gentlemen penſioners extraordinary, whom he ſhall appoint to do the duty of corporals, ſub-corporals, file-leaders, and adjutants to the band, ſhall henceforth always be ſuch of the gentlemen as ſhall have the moſt knowledge and experience in military diſcipline, without having regard to the ſeniority of admiſſion into the band.

Art. 16. The habits, arms and cloathing of the gentlemen penſioners in ordinary, and of the gentlemen at arms, or penſioners extraordinary, ſhall be ſuch as we or their captain ſhall appoint.

Art. 18. The trumpeters of our houſehold attending on the ſaid band, when they are under arms, ſhall, on every ſuch attendance, henceforth be mounted upon white horſes.

Art. 21. The gentlemen penſioners in ordinary, and the gentlemen at arms, or penſioners extraordinary of the ſaid band, ſhall be advanced to be commiſſioned officers in our army, preferably to all other perſons whatſoever.

The idea of providing for the gentlemen penſioners in the army was reſumed by the earl of Lichfield, when captain of the band, in the preſent reign; he propoſed giving companies to a certain number of them, but ſome difficulties ariſing concerning rank, the matter dropped. An idea was lately ſuggeſted of filling up the vacancies in the band, from the half pay of the army and navy.

other commiſſion, but is ſworn into his poſt by the lord chamberlain in perſon, by virtue of the king's warrant; the lieutenant and ſtandard bearer have ſimilar ſtaves of ebony with ſilver heads, which they likewiſe receive from the king, as inveſtitures in office, after which they are ſworn by the clerk of the cheque, who, ſince the year 1737, has alſo carried an ebony ſtaff, with a head partly ſilver and partly ivory, but leſs ornamented than thoſe of the other officers. The uniform of this corps is ſcarlet, richly laced; the clerk of the cheque wears an officer's uniform. The gentlemen carry pole-axes, an elongated kind of battle-ax. Five of them, who are on the quarterly rota, now appear every levé day and drawing-room day, in the preſence chamber, and ſtand to their arms when any of the royal family paſs through. When the king goes to chapel and other like times of ceremony, the whole quarterly guard of twenty, appear under arms. By a petition preſented to the houſe of commons in the year 1782, it appears that the office of gentleman penſioner has been generally purchaſed at the price of a thouſand guineas, in confidence of being permitted to ſell it again with the approbation of the captain. The ſalary, after the various deductions to which it is ſubjected, with the purchaſe of the uniform, is reduced to about ſeventy-ſix pounds per annum. Theſe are the general outlines of the eſtabliſhment of this corps, conſidered in their military capacity; a very particular account of them in every reſpect is given by Mr. Pegge in the ſecond number of his curious and uſeful work, ſtiled Curialia, from which the preceding account is chiefly collected (g).

The infantry of this country, at, and ſome time after the conqueſt, not being the poſſe comitatus, were formed of the yeomanry, vaſſals, dependants of the feudal tenants, and afterwards of indented ſoldiers; moſt of theſe in the earlier periods were defenſively armed, with a kind of iron ſcull-cap, named a bacinet from its ſimilarity to a baſon, and a coarſe leathern or linen doublet, ſtuffed with cotton or wool,

(g) The militia cavalry have been deſcribed under the article of the poſſe comitatus.

called an acketon, or hoqueton, and ſometimes a jack (l); from the verſes quoted below, it ſeems as if Engliſh jacks were not famous for the elegance of their make (m). Such men as wanted theſe appointments, were returned under the denomination of NAKED foot (n), and received an inferior pay. The weapons chiefly uſed by the infantry were the lance, ſword, and dagger, the giſarme, battle-ax, pole-ax, black or brown bill, mallet, morris-pike, halbert, and pike. The archers had the long and croſs bow, which after the introduction of fire arms were gradually ſuperſeded by the hand-gun, harquebuſs, muſket, caliver, and firelock, as was the pike by the bayonet. Of theſe the lance was the moſt ancient; it was uſed by the Anglo-Saxons, both horſe and foot; thoſe uſed by the latter, and by the Engliſh after the conqueſt, were ſhorter and ſtronger in the ſtaff than thoſe borne by the cavalry; indeed, Father Daniel tells us, that when the men of arms diſmounted to fight on foot, they cut off part of the ſtaves of their lances, to make them more manageable; if any dependance may be placed on illuminated manuſcripts, the lances of the infantry were, according to their repreſentations, about nine feet long. Sometimes the lance-men carried targets or bucklers.

(l) IN the wardrobe account of the wages paid the army raiſed to go againſt the Scots, A. D. 1322, 15 Ed. II. the original of which is in the library of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq; are the following entries. De Com. Norf. Ricardo Warin, Johanni Dacre, Henrico de Norton, & Johanni Plaice centenariis pro vadiis ſuis, 436 pedites, cum aketon & bacinet, &c.——De Com. Suff. Witto de Ryhall & Henrico Poer centenariis pro vadiis ſuis, & 240 peditum cum akton & bacinet, &c. This frequently occurs.

(m) Cetoit un purpoint de Chamois
Farci de Boure ſus et ſous
Un grand vilain Jaque d'Anglois
Qui lui pendoit juſqu'aux genous.

Coquillart, dans ſon livre des droits nouveaux, quoted by P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 240, &c.

(n) COM. Lincoln, Jordano de Blackeneye ductori peditum de Keſtevene, in Comitatu Lincoln pro vadiis 100 peditum nudorum, &c. De Com. Norhpt. Edmundo de Lekenore, Stephano Scott, Thome de la Huſſe, & Johanni Jewel, centenariis pro vadiis ſuis & 440 peditum nudorum de comitatu Northampt. &c. *Wardrobe Acct.* 1322.

The giſarme is ſo variouſly deſcribed, that its form remains doubtful; it is, however, moſt probable, that it was ſomewhat of the bill kind (o). It is directed by the ſtatute of Wincheſter to be provided and kept by perſons poſſeſſed of leſs than forty ſhillings land, and is deſcribed among the inferior weapons.

Of the battle-ax there are various ſorts and forms, ſome calculated for being uſed with one hand, and ſome with both; the latter were chiefly carried by the foot, and were commonly put into the hands of ſtrong and active men.

The battle-ax was alſo conſidered as a royal weapon, and was borne as ſuch, at the funerals of Henry VII. and Queen Mary, and ſolemnly offered up at the altar, with the helmet, gauntlets, and creſt.

This weapon is by the French called hache d'arms. Richelet, in his Dictionary, thus deſcribes it: "an offenſive arm, ſometimes made like a common ax, except that it has a longer handle, and that the blade is broader, ſtronger, and ſharper; it had formerly a great handle like

---

(o) This weapon is alſo called giſaring and by Fleta ſiſarmes. Du Cange in his Gloſſary renders it by ſecuris, and derives it from the geeſum of the Gauls; La Combe in the Supplement to his Dictionary of old French, defines the term giſarme, to ſignify a ſort of lance or pike; Bailey calls it a military weapon with two points or pikes; Strutt, I know not from what authority, has, in his Horda Angel-cynnam, repreſented the giſarme as a battle-ax on a long ſtaff, with a ſpike projecting from the back of the ax. This weapon is mentioned in the ancient poem of the battle of Flodden Field.

Some made a mell of maſſey lead,
Which iron all about did bind,
Some made ſtrong helmets for the head,
And ſome their *griſly giſarings* grind.

The Reverend Mr. Lamb, editor of that poem, has the following note on this paſſage: Giſarings, halberts, derived from the French guiſarme, a kind of offenſive long handled and long headed weapon; or, as the Spaniſh, *viſarma*, a ſtaff that hath within it two long pikes, which, with a ſhoot or thruſt forward, come forth. An ancient ſtatute of William King of Scotland, "de venientibus ad guerram," ch. 23, ſaith, "Et qui minus quam quadraginta ſolidos terræ, habeat *gyſarum*, quod dicitur hand-bill, arcum et ſagittam." And a ſtatute of Edward I. "Et qui miens a de quarante ſols de terre, ſoit jure a fauchions, *giſarmes*, &c."

Every knight
Two javelins ſpears, or than *giſarm* ſtaves. *Gavin Douglas.*

that of a pertuiſan, with a large iron at the end, in form like the cutting knife of a ſhoemaker, well ſharpened, but much bigger and broader. The horſe guards of the king's houſehold have a ſcymeter, a battle-ax, a fuſil, and a pouch filled with grenades. Battle-axes are uſed in ſorties, and in breaches to prevent an eſcalde."

In a manuſcript account of the armour and weapons in the different arſenals and armouries of this kingdom, taken in the firſt of Edward VI. (p) among thoſe in the armoury at Weſtminſter, are four battle-axes parcel guilt, with long ſmall ſtaves of braſſell, garniſhed with velvet white and green and ſilke; theſe probably were intended for the king, or ſome great officer. Battle-axes are, as has been before obſerved, ſtill carried by the gentlemen penſioners, the guards of the lord lieutenant of Ireland.

The pole-ax differs very little from the battle-ax, except in name; ſome derive its appellation from that kind of ax being much uſed in Poland, and ſay, that its true name is the Poliſh-ax; ſome again deduce it from its ſuppoſed uſe, which was to ſtrike at the head or poll; and others ſay it is called a pole-ax, from being fixed on a long pole or handle. In the manuſcript juſt now quoted we meet with a variety of pole-axes, as ſhewn in the note (q).

It ſeems likely, that both battle-axes and pole-axes were in later times more uſed for the ſtate guards of princes and generals, than for the common purpoſes of war.

The black, or, as it is ſometimes called, the brown bill was a kind of halbert; the cutting part hooked like a woodman's bill, from the back of which projected a ſpike, and another at the head. The denomination of black or brown aroſe from its colour; the one from a black varniſh, with which this weapon was frequently covered, the

(p) This curious manuſcript is the property of Guſtavus Brander, Eſq; of Chriſt Church, Hants.

(q) Poleaxes with gonnes in th' endes XXVI. Poleaxes without gonnes, II. Short poleaxes playne C. Two hand poleaxes IV. Hand poleaxes with a gonne and a caſe for the ſame oone. Poleaxes gilte, the ſtaves covered with cremyſyne velvet, fringed with ſilke of golde IV.

other, from its being often brown with ruſt. Bills were not only borne by ſoldiers, but alſo by ſheriffs' officers, attending executions, and watchmen; with theſe it was no uncommon practice to chalk the edges, which gave them the appearance of having been newly ground.

In a manuſcript written during the reign of Queen Elizabeth (r), the duty of captaines of halbartes or bill men is thus defined: "Captaines of halbarts or blacke billes, cheifleye thoſe halbartes bearinge corfeletts gardinge the enſignes, wearinge ſwordes and daggers, meryteth more wages then others bearinge blacke bills, uſuallye called the ſlaughter or execution of the battaile, alwaies readie and attentive to their enſignes, as well by ſecrett commandements as by ſounde of the dromme, never to departe from the ſame till it bee brought into y^e^ place of good ſafetie."

In the armies of King Henry VIII. Mary and Elizabeth, there were a great number of bill-men, as may be ſeen in different accounts of the muſters of thoſe times. In an extract from the certificate of muſters for the county of Stafford, made A.D. 1569, 11 Eliz. (s) the pariſh of Yoxhall was thus divided: "Pikemen 3, bilmen 5, harquebuz 9, unable men 29." And of two hundred men raiſed in Lancaſhire, 1584, for the Iriſh ſervice, eighty are, by the queen's letter to the ſheriff, directed to be furniſhed with calivers, forty with corſlets, forty with bows, and forty with halberts, or good black bills (t): beſides the arms here ſpecified, it was ordered that all the ſoldiers ſhould be furniſhed with ſwords and daggers (u). Bills were alſo much uſed at ſea, as is ſhewn by the account of the navy of that reign, where, under

(r) Treatise of martial Diſcipline by Ralphe Smithe, dedicated to the Lord Burrowes and Sir Chriſtopher Hatton, in my poſſeſſion.

(s) In the Lib. Tho. Aſtle, Eſq.

(t) Peck's Deſiderata Curioſa, vol. i.

(u) Ibid.

the article of furniture, the different kinds of arms and weapons are ſpecified (x).

(x) *The names of her Majeſtie's Shippes, with the Number of Men and Furniture requiſite for the ſetting forth of the ſame.*

E. Codice Antiq. MS. Penes Sam. Knight, S. T. P.

I. *TRYUMPH.*

1. Menn 780 : whereof

Marriners - - - -	450
Gonners - - - -	50
Souldiers - - - -	200

2. Furniture.

Harquebus - - - -	50
Bowes - - - -	50
Arrowes, ſheeves of, - -	100
Pikes - - - - -	200
Corſlets - - - -	100
Marriners - - - -	200
3. Burthen - -	1000

II. *ELIZABETH.*

1. Menn 600 : whereof

Marriners - - - -	300
Gonners - - - -	50
Souldiers - - - -	200

2. Furniture :

Harquebus - - - -	200
Bowes - - - -	50
Arrowes, ſheeves of, - -	100
Pikes - - - - -	280
Bills - - - - -	170
Marriners - - - -	200
3. Burthen - -	900

III. *WHITE BEAR.*

1. Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

IV. *VICTORY.*

1. Menn 500 : whereof

Marriners - - - -	330
Gonners - - - -	40
Souldiers - - - -	160

2. Furniture :

Harquebus - - - -	200
Bowes - - - -	40
Arrowes, ſheeves of, - -	80
Corſlets - - - -	80
Marriners - - - -	160
3. Burthen - -	800

V. *PRIMROSE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

VI. *MARY ROSE.*

1. Menn 350 : whereof

Marriners - - - -	200
Gonners - - - -	50
Souldiers - - - -	120

2. Furniture :

Harquebus - - - -	125
Bowes - - - -	30
Arrowes, ſheeves of, - -	60
Pikes - - - - -	100
Bills - - - - -	120
Corſlets - - - -	50
Marriners - - - -	160
3. Burthen - -	600

VII. *HOPE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

VIII. *BONAVENTURE.*

1. Menn 300 : whereof

Marriners - - - -	160
Gonners - - - -	30
Souldiers - - - -	110

2. Furni-

The mell, maule, or mallet of arms, was a weapon formerly uſed by both the Engliſh and Scots. In the memorable combat fought in

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	110
Bowes	30
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	60
Pikes	90
Bills	100
Corſlets	50
Marriners	100
3. BURTHEN	600

IX. *PHILIP AND MARYE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

X. *LYON.*

1. MENN 290: whereof

Marriners	150
Gonners	30
Souldiers	110

2. Furniture and Burthen as the two laſt.

XI. *DREADNOUGHT.*

1. MENN 250: whereof

Marriners	140
Gonners	20
Souldiers	80

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	80
Bowes	25
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	50
Pikes	50
Bills	60
Corſlets	40
Marriners	80
3. BURTHEN	400

XII. *SWIFTSURE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

XIII. *SWALLOWE.*

1. MENN 200: whereof

Marriners	120
Gonners	20
Souldiers	60

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	75
Bowes	25
Arrowes, ſheeves of.	50
Bills	60
Corſlets	30
Marriners	70
3. BURTHEN	350

XIV. *ANTHLOPE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

XV. *JENNETT.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the two laſt.

XVI. *FORESIGHT.*

Men and Furniture as the three laſt.

BURTHEN	300

XVII. *AIDE.*

1. MENN 160: whereof

Marriners	90
Gonners	20
Souldiers	50

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	50
Bowes	20
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	40
Pikes	40
Bills	50
Corſlets	20
Marriners	50
3 BURTHEN	240

XVIII.

Bretagne, in the year 1315, between thirty champions on the part of the Engliſh and the like number on that of the French, one of the

XVIII. *BULL.*

1. Menn 120: whereof

Marriners	10
Gonners	10
Souldiers	40

2. Furniture.

Harquebus	35
Bowes	15
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	30
Pikes	30
Bills	40
Corſlets	20
Marriners	40
Burthen	160

XIX. *TIGER.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

XX. *FAULCON.*

1. Menn 80: whereof

Marriners	60
Gonners	10
Souldiers	20

2. Furniture:

Harquebus	24
Bowes	10
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	20
Pikes	20
Bills	30
Corſlets	12
Marriners	24

3. Burthen.

XXI. *AIBATES.*

1. Menn 60: whereof

Marriners	30
Gonners	10
Souldiers	10

2. Furniture:

Harquebus	16
Bowes	10
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	20
Pikes	20
Bills	30
Corſlets	12
Marriners	24
3. Burthen	80

XXII. *HANDMAYD.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the laſt.

XXIII. *BARKE of BULLEN.*

1. Menn 50: whereof

Marriners	30
Gonners	10
Souldiers	none

2. Furniture:

Harquebus	12
Bowes	10
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	20
Pikes	15
Bills	20
Marriners	30
3. Burthen	60

XXIV. *GEORGE.*

1. Menn 50: whereof

Marriners	40
Gonners	10
Souldiers	none

2. Furniture.

Harquebus	12
Bowes	10
Arrowes, ſheeves of,	20
Pikes	15
Bills	20
Marriners	30

The

Engliſh champions, named Billefort, was armed with a leaden mallet weighing twenty-five pounds(y). Father Daniel, in his Hiſtory of the French Army, quotes the manuſcript Memoirs of the Marquis de Fleurange, in the library of the King of France, to prove that the Engliſh archers ſtill uſed mallets in the time of Louis XII. who began his reign in the year 1515, and died in 1524. In the ancient poem of the Battle of Flodden, leaden mallets are ſeveral times mentioned; from the following deſcription there given, it ſeems as if the head of the mell was entirely of lead, hooped round at the ends with iron:

Some made a mell of maſſey lead,
Which iron all about did bind.

Ralph Smith, in his directions for equipping an archer, gives him a mawle of lead, of five feet long, and a pike with the ſame, hanging by a girdle with a hook: this deſcription, though ſomewhat obſcure, ſeems as if he meant that the handle of the mell ſhould be five feet long, the end armed with a pike or ſpike; but how ſuch a weapon could be worn hanging at a girdle, is not eaſily conceived, as, if carried obliquely, it would be likely to wound the legs of the ſoldiers in the rear of it; probably it was worn at the back, hung by a hook fixed in the centre of its handle, with a loop or ſome other contrivance to keep it nearly perpendicular.

Father Daniel has engraved one of theſe mallets, which, in form, exactly reſembles the preſent wooden inſtrument of that name, except that its handle is ſomewhat longer. In Mr. Brander's MSS. among

---

The ſum of all others, as well merchant ſhippes as others, in all places of England of an hundred tunns and upwards - - - - - 135

The ſum of all barkes and ſhippes of 40 tunne and upwards to an 100 tunne - - - - - 656

There are beſides, by eſtimation, 100 ſail of hoyes: alſo of ſmall barkes and fiſhermen, an infinite number of —— through the realme cannot be leſſe than 600 beſides London.

Peck's Deſiderata Curioſa, lib. ii. p. 22.

(y) Hist. de Bretagne par Dargentré, Liv. vi. p. 393.

the different ſtore-houſes at Calais, there named, one of them is called the malle chamber: in it were then eight hundred and eighty leaden mallets. There is alſo an entry of two hundred mallets in a ſtore-houſe at Berwick. This weapon ſeems to have been of French extraction: it was once in ſuch eſteem in that kingdom, that in an inſurrection which happened in Paris, on account of ſome new taxes in the beginning of the reign of Charles VI. when the populace forced open the arſenal, they armed themſelves chiefly with mallets, whence they were ſtiled mailliotins. Perhaps their choice was guided by the conſideration, that the uſe of the mallet requires very little more than ſtrength and reſolution, not conſidering that in the melée which ſometimes attended the ancient method of fighting hand to hand, an awkward man would be as likely to knock down his friend as his enemy.

MALLETS were however tremendous weapons in the hands of ſtrong active men, ſuch as are deſcribed in this poem to have wielded them:

Two Scotch earls of an ancient race,
One Crawford called, the other Montroſs,
Who led twelve thouſand Scotchmen ſtrong,
Who manfully met with their foes
With leaden mells and lances long (z).

THE mells ſeem at this battle to have been mixed with the bill and morris pike men, for ſo theſe lines import:

Then on the Engliſh part with ſpeed
The bills ſtept forth, and bows went back;
The Mooriſh pikes and mells of lead
Did deal there many a dreadful thwack.

THE morris or Mooriſh pike was a weapon much in uſe in the ſixteenth century, both by ſea and land: ſome derive its name from Maurice, Prince of Naſſau, whom they ſuppoſe the inventor of it; but this is certainly an error, as that weapon frequently occurs in deſcrip-

(z) V. 74.

tions of battles fought in the reign of King Henry VIII. particularly that of Flodden, which happened in the year 1513, fifty-four years before Prince Maurice was born. Indeed in the poem on that engagement, it is called the Mooriſh pike, which ſeems to be its true name.

It is beſides mentioned by Sir Ralph Smith, in his Military Treatiſe before quoted; he ſays, the men bearing it ſhould be completely armed, their ſituation and ſervice being peculiarly dangerous, wherefore, as well as on account of the extraordinary price of their armour, they ought to have extraordinary pay.

The halbert differs very little from the bill, being like it conſtructed both for cutting and thruſting. The blade of a halbert conſiſts of three parts, the ſpear, the hatchet, and the flook or hook. The firſt is intended for thruſting or charging in battle; the ſecond for cutting; and the third for pulling down works made of faſcines, in an attack on trenches, or other temporary fortifications. Some halberts are called ſword-blade halberts, from the part deſigned for puſhing being formed like the blade of a ſword. This weapon is ſaid to have been invented by the Switzers; the pope's guard of that country ſtill carry it. Monſieur de Belay, a French military writer, ſpeaks of it as a very late invention. I have been told by a Switzer, that the ancient manner of uſing this weapon was to tell off the front rank of halberdiers alternately into puſhers and ſtrikers; ſo that while one half charged with their ſpears, the others ſtruck and cut with the hatchets of their halberts.

Halberts were commonly borne by the guards of the great officers of the army, and alſo by a ſet of choſen men, appointed to protect the colours; at preſent they are only carried by ſerjeants of the battalion companies in the infantry (a).

(a) Your halbardier ſhould be armed in all points like your pike, onely inſtead of the pike, he ſhall carry a faire halberd, that is, ſtrong, ſharpe, and well armed with plates of iron, from the blade at the leaſt two feet downeward upon the ſtaffe, and fringed or adorned according to pleaſure; and theſe halberds doe properly belong unto ſerjeants of companies, who by reaſon of their much employment are exeuſed from armes: otherwiſe in the day of battaile, or in the battaile, they are for guard of the enſigne, or matter of execution; and then to be armed as aforeſaid. *Markham's Souldier's Accidence*, p. 4.

The pike was a ſpecies of ſpear or lance, ſolely appropriated to the infantry. In the form as laſt uſed it was of no great antiquity. Father Daniel ſays, that pikes are not mentioned in the hiſtories of France before the reign of Louis XI. Pikes were introduced into France by the Switzers (b).

(b) In a military treatiſe, tranſlated by Paule Ive, gent. and publiſhed A.D. 1589, from the French of Monſieur William de Bellay; there is, p. 26, this account of the pike: "But let us paſſe further to ſpeake of the pike, of which although the Switzers have not been the inventors, yet have they at the leaſt brought it again into uſe, for that they being poore, and deſirous to live at libertie, were conſtrained to fight againſt the princes of Germany, who being rich, and of great power, did maintaine many horſſemen, which the ſaid Switzers could not do; and therefore making their warres afoote, they were conſtrained to runne unto the ancient manner, and out of it to chooſe ſome armes, wherewith they might defend themſelves from the enemies horſemen, which neceſſitie had made them either to maintaine, or to find out againe the orders of times paſt, without which pikes, footmen are wholly unprofitable; they tooke therefore pikes as weapons not only fit for to withſtand horſemen, but alſo to vanquiſh them: by the help of which weapon, and through the truſt they have in their own good order, they have taken ſuch a boldneſſe, that fifteene or twenty thouſand of their men dare enterprize upon a whole world of horſſmen, as they have made proofe at Navare and at Marignan, although the one battaile fell out better on their ſide than the other. The examples of the vertue that theſe people have ſhewed to be in them for their feates of arms afoote, have cauſed ſince the voyage of King Charles VIII. other nations to imitate them, ſpecially the Germains and Spanyards, who are mounted unto the reputation that we do hould them of at this day, by imitating the orders that the ſayd Switzers do keepe, and the manner of armes they do carry. The Italians afterward have given themſelves unto it, and we laſtly: but we are ſo farre off, that we ſhall never be like unto them for order, except we do make the uſe of theſe weapons to be of more eſtimation amongſt us, then it hath bin hitherto, ſo mutch there is alſo, that they can learne us no other point; we muſt therefore take paines to get this order, or if it be poſſible, to find or fraime a more ſure, by the meanes whereof we might defend ourſelves, and excell other nations. And to do this, we muſt arm our ſoldiers well, to the intent that they may be leſſe in daunger of blowes, and the harder to be overthrowne: principally thoſe that ſhould ſerve in the firſt fronts of the battailes; and alſo all others, if it were poſſible, every man according unto the weapon that he doth carry. The armes that we muſt carry muſt be theſe: firſt of all, the corſlet complete with the taſſes downe to the knee, hoſe of male, a codpeece of yron, good vambraces, and gauntlets or gloves of male, and a good head peece, with the ſight almoſt covered. The other harneſſe for the body muſt be a ſhirt or jerkin, with ſleeves and gloves

Markham, in the Souldier's Accidence, gives a deſcription of the manner in which a pikeman ſhould be armed : " Next (ſays he) he (the captain) ſhall ſee that every man be well and ſufficiently armed, with good and allowable armes ; that is to ſay, all his pikemen ſhall have good combe-caps for their heads, well lined with quilted caps, curaces for their bodies of nimble and good mould, being high pike proof ; large and well compact gordgetts for their neckes, fayre and cloſe joyned taches, to arme to the mid-thigh ; as for the pouldron or the vantbrace, they may be ſpared, becauſe they are but cumberſome. All this armour is to be rather of ruſſet, ſanguine, or blacke colour, than white or milled, for it will keepe the longer from ruſt.

These ſhall have ſtrong, ſtraight, yet nimble pikes of aſh wood, well headed with ſteel, and armed with plates downward from the head, at leaſt foure foote, and the full ſize or length of every pike ſhalbe fifteene foote beſides the head.

These pikemen ſhall alſo have good, ſharpe, and broade ſwords (of which the Turkie and Bilboe are beſt), ſtrong ſcabbards, chapt with iron, girdle, hangers, or bautricke of ſtrong leather ; and laſtly, if to the pikeman's head peece be faſtened a ſmall ring of iron, and to the right ſide of his back peece (below his girdle) an iron hooke, to hang his ſteele cap upon, it will be a great eaſe to the ſouldier, and a nimble carriage in the time of long marches.

By the regulations in the act of the 13th of Charles II. a pikeman was to be armed with a pike of aſh, not under ſixteen feet in length (head and foot included) with a back, breaſt, head peece and

---

gloves of male, and a head peece with the face uncovered. The weapons muſt be theſe : a ſword of meane length, neither wholly after the manner of the Frenchmen, nor altogether like unto the Almaigns : for the wearing of it too lowe doth greatly trouble a ſouldier. The ſhort dagger alſo is one of the moſt neceſſarieſt weapons, wherewith in a preaſe a man may better help himſelf than with a ſword. The pike, a halberd, and amongſt many halberds, ſome pertuiſans are alſo called weapons. The target may not be called a weapon, notwithſtanding it is a very good peece."

An Officer of Pikemen.

ſword (c). The talleſt and ſtrongeſt men were generally ſelected for the pike, and in France their pay was ſomewhat greater than that of the muſketeers.

The general introduction of the bayonet ſuperſeded the pike, the uſe of which was aboliſhed in France, by a royal ordonnance, iſſued in the year 1703, with the advice of the Mareſchal de Vauban, though contrary to the opinion of Monſieur d'Artagan, afterwards Mareſchal of France, under the name of Monteſquiou. The exact period when pikes were laid aſide in England, I have not been able to diſcover: it, however, certainly took place about the ſame time as in France; a book of the exerciſe of the foot, publiſhed by the royal command in 1690, has the exerciſe of the pike, which proves it was not then laid aſide; and the Gentleman's Dictionary, publiſhed in 1705, deſcribes it as a weapon formerly in uſe, but then changed for the muſket, ſo that the alteration muſt have taken place ſome time between the years 1690 and 1705 (d).

(c) *The Prices of a Pikeman's Armour and Pike as eſtabliſhed by the Council of War*, 7th *of* Charles I.

	l.	s.	d.
The breaſt	0	5	6
The back	0	4	6
The taſſets	0	5	0
The comb'd head piece lyned	0	4	6
The gorgett lyned	0	2	6
Total	1	2	0
If the breaſt, back and taſſets be lyned with red leather, the price will be	1	4	0

Price of the Pike.

	l.	s.	d.
The ſtaffe	0	2	6
The head	0	1	8
Socket and colouring	0	0	4
Total	0	4	6

(d) Pikes are the arms carried by pikemen, who uſed formerly to be the third part of the company, but they are now turned to muſquetteers. The pike is made of a point of iron, in form of the leaf of an apricot tree, called the ſpear, about four inches long, and broad in the middle, from whence it runs to a point: the ſpear has two branches or plates of iron, to fix it to the ſtaff, of about a foot long, and ſtrong enough to reſiſt the ſtroke of a broad ſword. The ſtaff or ſhaft of a pike is about thirteen or fourteen feet long, made of a ſlip of aſh, very ſtraight, about an inch and a quarter thick at the greateſt end, which is ſhod with braſs or iron, ſharpened to a point, to ſtick in the ground. *Gentleman's Dictionary*, Part ii.

The long bow was firſt introduced here, as a military weapon, by the Normans, who at the battle of Haſtings too fully demonſtrated its utility and excellence, as they are ſaid to have been, in a great meaſure, indebted to it for the ſucceſs of that day.

It is not to be ſuppoſed that the Engliſh were ignorant of the bow and its uſes; they undoubtedly knew and uſed it in the chace, but had not then admitted it into their armies.

It is probable that the Conqueror, ſenſible of the importance of archery, encouraged and commanded the practice of it; for in a ſhort time we find that art much cultivated, ſo that the Engliſh archers formed a very conſiderable part of the national infantry, and were univerſally conſidered as ſuperior to thoſe of moſt other countries.

To preſerve this ſuperiority by conſtant practice ſeems to have been the ſtudy of many of our kings, divers ſtatutes enforcing it having been enacted, even long after the invention of fire-arms; and a number of laws, ordonnances and regulations made, for procuring a conſtant ſupply of good bow ſtaves, for furniſhing the counties diſtant from London with bowyers, ſtring makers, fletchers and arrow head makers, and for guarding againſt the frauds and neglects of thoſe artificers.

To enforce the practice of archery, it was enacted by a ſtatute of the 33d of Henry VIII. that every man under the age of ſixty not labouring under ſome bodily incapacity, eccleſiaſtics and judges excepted, ſhould uſe the exerciſe of ſhooting in the long bow, and keep in their poſſeſſion, bows and arrows. The fathers, governors, and maſters, ſhould inſtruct and bring up their ſons and youths under their charge in the knowledge of ſhooting; that every man having a boy or boys in his houſe, ſhould provide for each of them, of the age of ſeven years, and until he arrived to that of ſeventeen, a bow and two ſhafts, to induce him to learn and practiſe archery; if a ſervant, the coſt of the bow and arrows might be deducted out of his wages; and that after ſuch youth had arrived at his ſeventeenth year, he ſhould then buy, and conſtantly keep a bow and four arrows. That if any parent or maſter, having a youth or youths under ſeventeen years of

age, ſhould ſuffer any one of them to want a bow and two arrows for one month together, he ſhould for every ſuch neglect forfeit 6s. 8d. and every ſervant above ſeventeen years of age, and under ſixty, who received wages, neglecting to furniſh himſelf as here directed, for every default ſhould forfeit 6s. 8d. Juſtices of aſſize of gaol delivery, juſtices of the peace and ſtewards of franchiſes, leets and law days, had power to enquire reſpecting the obſervance of this law, and to puniſh perſons wanting bows and arrows, as here directed.

That the young archers might acquire an accurate eye, and a ſtrength of arm, none under twenty-four years of age, might ſhoot at any ſtanding mark, except it was for a rover, and then he was to change his mark at every ſhot, under the penalty of four pence, for every ſhot made contrary to this regulation. It was alſo enacted that no perſon above the ſaid age ſhould ſhoot at any mark that was not above eleven ſcore yards diſtant, under pain of forfeiting for every ſhot ſix ſhillings and eight pence.

The inhabitants of all towns and places were directed to make up their butts againſt a day aſſigned, and to maintain and keep them in repair under penalty of 20s. for every month they were wanting: they were alſo commanded to exerciſe themſelves with ſhooting thereat on holydays, and all other convenient times (e).

To ſecure a proper ſupply of bow ſtaves, merchants trading from places whence bow ſtaves were commonly brought, were obliged to import four bow ſtaves for every ton of merchandize, and that in the ſame ſhip, in which the goods were loaded (f); they were alſo bound to bring in ten bow ſtaves of good and able ſtuff, with every ton of Malmſey or Tyre wine (g). To encourage the voluntary importation, bow ſtaves of ſix feet and a half long or more, were excuſed the pay-

(e) So jealous were the Engliſh of other nations acquiring a ſkill in archery, that by the 33d of Henry VIII. aliens were forbidden to ſhoot with long bows, without the king's licence, under penalty of forfeiting their bows to any perſon who would ſeize them.

(f) 12th Edw. IV. under penalty of 6s. 8d. to the king for each bow ſtave deficient.

(g) 1ſt Rich. III. under penalty of 13s. 4d.

ment of any duty: and the chief magiſtrates of the different ports were authoriſed to appoint proper and ſkilful perſons to examine the bow ſtaves imported, and to ſee that they were good and ſufficient (h).

To prevent a too great conſumption of yew, which was the beſt wood for bows, bowyers were to make four bows of witch-hazel, aſh, or elm, to one of yew, and no perſon under ſeventeen years of age, unleſs poſſeſſed of moveables worth forty marks, or the ſon of parents having an eſtate of ten pounds per annum, might ſhoot in a yew bow, under a penalty of ſix ſhillings and eight pence (i).

That every man might be able to furniſh himſelf with thoſe inferior bows on the ſhorteſt notice; every bowyer dwelling in the cities of London or Weſtminſter, or the borough of Southwark, was always to have in his cuſtody fifty good bows of elm, witch-hazel, or aſh, well and ſubſtantially made and wrought, upon pain that every of the ſaid bowyers, who for the ſpace of twenty days ſhould not have the number of bows of thoſe materials, ready made and fit to be ſold and uſed, ſhould for every bow wanting of that number, forfeit 10s. one half to the queen, and the other half to any armourer, fletcher, or maker of bow ſtrings, that would ſue for it.

The prices of bows were occaſionally regulated by acts of parliament, from whence we learn, that the price of bow ſtaves had increaſed from 2l. to 12l. the hundred, between the reigns of Edward III. and the 8th of Elizabeth, though this is ſaid to have been partly effected by the confederacy of the Lombards.

In the reign of Edward III. the price of a painted bow was 1s. 6d.

(h) This ſeems to ſhew that our ancient bows were at leaſt ſix feet long. A gentleman of the ſociety of archers, who has made the properties of the long bow his particular ſtudy, ſays, that the beſt length for a bow is five feet eight inches from nock to nock; and that of an arrow two feet three inches. We however in ancient poems read of arrows a cloth ell long.

(i) It has been ſuppoſed that yew trees were originally planted in church-yards, in order to furniſh bow ſtaves; but it is more probable, that they being evergreens, are planted there as an emblem of the immortality of the ſoul, which, though the body is dead, ſtill exiſts. See *Bourn's Antiquities of the Common People*, ch. iii.

that of a white bow 1s. a ſheaf of arrows if "acerata," or with ſteeled points, 1s. 2d. if non acerata, blunt or unſteeled, 1s.

In the 24th of Edward IV. no bowyer might ſell a yew bow to any of the king's ſubjects for more than 3s. 4d. and in the 38th of Henry VIII. the price of a yew bow, for any perſon between the ages of ſeven and fourteen years, was not to exceed 12d.

The bowyers were beſides to have by them inferior bows of all prices from 6d. to 12d. The price of a yew bow of the tax called elk, to any of the king's ſubjects, was limited to 3s. 4d. In the 8th of Elizabeth, bows of foreign yew were directed to be ſold for 6s. 8d. the ſecond ſort at 3s. 4d. and the coarſe ſort, called livery bows, at a price, not exceeding two ſhillings each, and bows of Engliſh yew at the ſame. A clauſe of a former act, directing the bowyers of London and Weſtminſter to make four bows of different wood for one of yew, was repealed, with reſpect to thoſe artificers dwelling in thoſe places, on their repreſentation that the citizens of London would purchaſe none but yew bows.

Aliens might not convey, ſell, nor exchange any bows or arrows to parts out of the king's obeiſance, without his ſpecial licence, under pain of forfeiture of the ſame, or the value thereof, and impriſonment, till they had paid ſuch fine as ſhould be impoſed on them, by two juſtices of the peace, or find ſurety for the payment (k). All bow-ſtaves brought into the kingdom were to be ſold open, and not in bundles, to the intent that the buyers might know their qualities (l).

Arrows were made of different kinds of wood, but, according to Roger Aſcham, aſh was the beſt. Their heads were of the beſt iron, pointed with ſteel; for this purpoſe, the ſlooks of anchors were ſometimes uſed (m). Arrows were armed with iron heads of different forms

(k) Stat. 33 Hen. VIII. chap. 9. (l) Ibid.

(m) The ſheriff of Norfolk being ordered, 42 Ed. III. to provide a certain number of garbs or ſheaves of arrows headed with ſteel, for the king's uſe, is directed to ſeize all the ſlooks of anchors (omnes alas ancarum) neceſſary for making the heads. *Swinden's Hiſt. Great Yarmouth.*

and denominations; ſome were barbed, which rendered it impoſſible to draw them forth from the wound, without laceration; they were feathered with part of a gooſe's wing (n). Arrows were reckoned by ſheaves; a ſheaf conſiſted of twenty-four arrows. They were carried in a quiver, worn on the right ſide, or at the back. This ſerved for the magazine; arrows for immediate uſe were often worn in the girdle.

By an act of parliament, made 7th of Henry IV. it was enacted, That for the future, all the heads of arrows and quarrels ſhould be well boiled or braſed, and hardened at the point with ſteel; and that every head of an arrow or quarrel ſhould have the mark of the maker; workmen offending againſt this act, were liable to a fine and impriſonment, at the king's will; and the juſtices of the peace in every county in England, and alſo the mayors, ſheriffs, and bailiffs of cities and boroughs, were authoriſed to enquire concerning all makers of arrow-heads, and to puniſh defaulters.

In order that the diſtant counties might be furniſhed with the neceſſary artificers for making bows and arrows, bowyers, fletchers, ſtring-makers, and arrow-head-makers, not being freemen of London, might be ſent, by the appointment of the king's council, the lord chancellor, lord privy ſeal, or one of them, to inhabit any city, borough, or town within the realm, that was deſtitute of ſuch artificers. Any of theſe workmen, being duly warned, neglecting to repair to the places directed, were liable to a penalty of 40s. for every day's neglect, and contrary abode (o). For the foreign garriſons of caſtles in the time of Edward II. one artificer, ſtiled artillator, was appointed (p).

(n) Many inſtances occur in our ancient records, where the ſheriffs of different counties are directed to find feathers from the wings of geeſe for arrows.

(o) 33d Hen. VIII. ſec. 8.

(p) Item ordinatum eſt, quod ſit unus artillator qui faciat balliſtas, carellos, arcos, ſagittas, lanceas, ſpiculas; & alia arma neceſſaria pro garriſonibus caſtrorum. *De Officio Seneſcalli Aquitani*, quoted by *F. Daniel*, vol. i. p. 196.

The range of a bow, according to Neade, was from ſixteen to twenty ſcore yards; and ſo quick were the ancient archers, or ſo ſlow the muſketeers, that he ſays, an archer could ſhoot ſix arrows in the time of charging and diſcharging one muſket.

The force with which an arrow ſtruck an object at a moderate diſtance, may be conceived from an inſtance given by King Edward VI. in his journal, wherein he ſays, that an hundred archers of his guard ſhot before him, two arrows each, and afterwards all together, that they ſhot at an inch board, which ſome pierced quite through, and ſtuck into the other board, divers pierced it quite through with the heads of their arrows, the boards being well ſeaſoned timber: their diſtance from the mark is not mentioned (q).

In ancient times phials of combuſtible compoſition for burning houſes or ſhips were fixed on the heads of arrows, and ſhot from long bows (r). Neade ſays he has known by experience, that an archer may ſhoot an ounce of fire-work upon an arrow, twelve ſcore yards. Arrows with wild-fire, and arrows for fire works, are mentioned among the ſtores at Newhaven and Barwick, in the 1ſt of Edward VI (s).

Chaucer, in his prologue to the Canterbury Tales, thus deſcribes an archer of his time:

> And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene
> A ſhefe of peacock arwes bright and kene
> Under his belt he bore ful thriftily,
> Well coude he dreſſe his takel yewmanly,
> His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe,
> And in his hand, he bare a mighty bowe,

(q) See *K. Ed. VI. Journal in Burnet's Hiſt. of the Reformation.*

(r) Missimus igitur ſuper eos ſpicula ignita. *Mat. Paris*, p. 1090. And, p. 1091, Et phialas plenas calce, arcubus per parva haſtilia ad modum ſagittarum ſuper hoſtes jaculandas. Arrows of this kind were uſed by the Romans, and called falarica and mallioli.

(s) In Mr. Brander's MSS. Where, in the armoury at Weſtminſter, there is alſo an entry of "two longe bowes of ewghe to ſhote ſtones in, with caſes of lether to them."

A not-hed hadde he, with broune viſage,
Of wood crafte could he wel all uſage;
Upon his arme he had a gai bracer (t),
And by his ſide a ſword and a bokeler,
And on the other ſide a gai daggere
Harneiſed wel, and ſharp as pointe of ſpere:
A criſtofre on his breſt of ſilver ſhene,
An horn he bare, the baudrik was of grene,
A foreſter was he ſothely as I geſſe.

The dreſs of our ancient archers is given in ſeveral chronicles. Fabian (u) ſays the yomen hadde at thoſe dayes their lymmes at lybertye, for theyr hoſyn were then faſtened with one point, and theyr jackes were longe and eaſy to ſhote in, ſo that they mighte drawe bowes of great ſtrength, and ſhote arrowes of a yerde longe; and according to Caxton (x), the yeomanry hadde theyr hoſen terven or bounden bynethe the knee having long jackys. But every man hadde a good bowe, a ſheaf of arrowes and a ſword.

The following deſcription of an archer, his bow and accoutrements, is given by Ralphe Smithe.

Archers of Long Bows.

Captains and officers ſhould be ſkilfull of that moſt noble weapon, and to ſee that their ſoldiers according to their draught and ſtrength, have good bowes, well nocked, well ſtrynged, everie ſtringe whippe in their nocke, and in the myddes rubbed with wax, braſer, and ſhuting

(t) A bracer ſerveth for two cauſes; one to ſave his arme from the ſtrype of the ſtringe, and his doublet from wearing, and the other is, that the ſtringe gliding ſharplye and quicklye off the bracer, may make the ſharper ſhot. A ſhooting glove is chiefly to ſave a man's fingers from hurting, that he may be able to bear the ſharp ſtringe to the uttermoſt of his ſtrength. *Roger Aſcham.*

(u) Vol. ii. p. 172.

(x) Polychron, book viii. chap. 13.

glove, ſome ſpare ſtringes trymed as aforeſaid; every man one ſheſe of arrowes, with a caſe of leather defenſible againſt the rayne, and in the ſame fower and twentie arrowes, whereof eight of them ſhould be lighter than the reſidue, to gall or aſtoyne the enemye with the hail ſhot of light arrowes, before they ſhall come within the danger of their harquebuſs ſhot. Let every man have a brigandine, or a little cote of plate, a ſkull or huſkyn, a maule of leade, of five foote in lengthe, and a pike, and the ſame hanging by his girdle, with a hóoke, and a dagger; being thus furniſhed, teach them by muſters to march, ſhoote and retire, keepinge their faces upon the enemys. Sumtyme put them into great nowmbers, as to battell apperteyneth, and thus uſe them often times practiſed, till they be perfecte; ffor thoſe men in battell, ne ſkirmiſh can not be ſpared; none other weapon maye compare with the ſame noble weapon.

The bow maintained its place in our armies long after the introduction of fire-arms, and many experienced ſoldiers have been advocates for its continuance, and even, in ſome caſes, preferred it to the muſket (y). King Charles I. granted two commiſſions under the great ſeal, for enforcing the uſe of the long bowe; the firſt in the 4th year of his reign (z); but this was revoked by proclamation, four years afterwards, on account of divers extortions and abuſes committed under ſanction thereof. The ſecond, an. 1633, in the 9th year of his

(y) The long bow might on ſome occaſions undoubtedly at this time be uſed with great advantage, particularly againſt cavalry: a few horſes wounded by arrows left ſticking in them would probably become ſo unruly as to diſorder a whole ſquadron; beſides the ſight and whizzing of the arrows before the heads of thoſe horſes they did not hit, would keep them in a conſtant ſtate of terror and reſtiveneſs. Nor would a flight of arrows falling on a battalion of foot fail of a conſiderable effect, independent of the men they killed or wounded, as when ſhot with an elevation they would be viſible almoſt from the time they left the bow, and it would require a more than ordinary exertion of courage to refrain from looking at them, and endeavouring by ſome movement to avoid them; this, by engroſſing the attention of the men, would prevent their acting with vigour againſt a battalion oppoſed to them; archers could act in the rear of a battalion of infantry, and even of a ſquadron of cavalry.

(z) To Timothy Taylor, John Hubert, Henry Hubert, Gentlemen, and Jeffery Le Neve, Eſq. *Rymer.*

reign, to William Neade and his ſon alſo named William, wherein the former is ſtiled an ancient archer, who had preſented to the king a warlike invention of the pike and bow, ſeen and approved of by him and his council of war; wherefore his majeſty had granted them a commiſſion to teach and exerciſe his loving ſubjects in the ſaid invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his trained bands to learn and practiſe; and the juſtices and the other chief magiſtrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to uſe every means in their power to aſſiſt Neade, his ſon, and all perſons authoriſed by them, in the furtherance, propagation and practice of this uſeful invention. Both the commiſſion and proclamation are printed at large in Rymer (a). At the breaking out of the civil war, the earl of Eſſex iſſued a precept, dated November, 1643, "for ſtirring up all well-affected people by benevolence, towards the raiſing of a company of archers for the ſervice of the king and parliament." And in a pamphlet printed anno 1664, giving an account of the ſucceſs of the Marquis of Montroſe againſt the Scots, bow men are repeatedly mentioned.

To protect themſelves againſt the attacks of cavalry, our archers carried each of them one or two long ſtakes, pointed at both ends; theſe they planted in the earth, ſloping before them, the points preſented to the height of a horſe's breaſt. In the 1ſt of Edward VI. three hundred and fifty of theſe were in the ſtores of the town of Berwick, under the article of archers' ſtakes; there were alſo at the ſame time eight bundles of archers' ſtakes in Pontefract caſtle (b).

(a) This exerciſe was printed, A.D. 1625, under the title of the Double-armed Man, with figures repreſenting the motions. From the preface it appears, that Nead cauſed a ſoldier to perform this exerciſe before the King, and petitioned him to give orders for its being practiſed in the artillerie gardens of London and Weſtminſter; to which the King anſwered, "That it were meeter for them to practiſe it of their own accord:" he nevertheleſs was afterwards prevailed on to iſſue the requeſted orders. This exerciſe, with the explanatory figures, will be given under the article of the exerciſe of the pike.

(b) Mr. Brander's MSS.

Stakes of this kind were ordered by the earl of Saliſburye, in the wars of Henry V. in France (c).

To the many laws, ordonances and regulations iſſued for the ſupport of archery, may be added the inſtitution of the artillery company, which was incorporated by the patent of Henry VIII. in the year 1537, to Sir Chriſtopher Morris, Knight, maſter of the ordnance, Anthony Knevett and Peter Mewtes, gentlemen of the privy chamber, overſeers of the fraternity or guild of St. George, granting licence to them to be overſeers of the ſcience of artillery, videlicet, for long bows, croſs bows, and hand guns; and the ſaid Sir Chriſtopher Morres, Cornelys Johnſon, Anthony Anthony, and Henry Johnſon to be maſters and rulers of the ſaid ſcience of artillery, during their lives; and to them and their ſucceſſors for ever, being Engliſhmen or Deniſons and the king's ſervants, authority to eſtabliſh a perpetual fraternity or guild, and to admit all honeſt perſons whatſoever, as well ſtrangers as others, into a body corporate, having perpetual ſucceſſion, by the name of maſters, rulers, and commonality of the fraternity or guild of artillery of long bows, croſs bows and hand guns, with the uſual powers granted to corporations of purchaſing lands, and uſing a common ſeal. This ſociety might elect four under maſters, either Engliſh or ſtrangers of good character, to overſee and govern the company, and to have the cuſtody of their property, real and perſonal; theſe might be choſen annually. The fraternity were alſo authoriſed to exerciſe themſelves in ſhooting in long bows, croſs bows and hand guns, at all manner of marks and butts, and at the game of the popymaye (d), and other game or games, as at the fowle

(c) For to make ſtakes againſt a battayle or journey. Alſoe that every captayne doe compell their yeomen, every man in all haſte to make him a good ſubſtantiall ſtake of a xi feete in lengthe for certain tieings (tidings) that lords have heard, and in payne to be puniſhed as hereto belongeth." *MSS. of Mr. Petyt's in the Inner Temple, entitled Collectanea*, vol. i. p. 509, & ſeq.

(d) So in the Charter: undoubtedly the popinjay. Maitland ſays the croſs bow makers uſed to exerciſe themſelves in ſhooting at the popinjay or artificial parrot, in a field called Taſſet

and fowles, as well in the city of London and ſuburbs, as in all other places whereſoever, within the realm of England, Ireland, Calais, and the Marches of Wales, and elſewhere within the king's dominions, his foreſts, chaſes and parks, without his eſpecial warrant reſerved and excepted, as alſo game of heron and pheaſant, within two miles of the royal manors, caſtles and other places, where the king ſhould fortune to be or lie, for the time only.

The maſters of this corporation were authoriſed to keep long bows, croſs bows, and hand guns in their houſes, and their ſervants to carry the ſaid weapons, when and where ordered by their maſters, which ſervants carrying ſuch croſs bows or guns might not ſhoot at any ſort of fowl, under penalty of paying the forfeiture according to the act. No other fraternity of this ſort might be formed or kept in any part of England without the licence of theſe maſters and rulers. The patent alſo permitted them to uſe any ſort of embroidery, or any cogniſance of ſilver they ſhould think proper, on their gowns and jackets, coats or doublets, and to uſe in them any kind of ſilk or velvet, ſatin or damaſk (the colours of purple and ſcarlet only excepted), and alſo to have on their gowns or other garments all ſorts of furrs, not above that of Martyns, without incurring the penalty of any act or proclamation reſpecting apparell (e).

Taffel Cloſe, in London, from the number of thiſtles growing there; this was afterwards hired by the Artillery company, and is called the Old Artillery Ground. The exercife of the popinjay was an ancient amuſement in France, as is ſhewn by the following paſſage: L'exercife du papegaye ou papegault, que l'on fait encore aujourd'hui dans quelques villes de France, ou il y a des prix propoſez pour celui qui tirera le mieux, eſt un reſte de l'ancien exercife, qu'on faiſoit faire aux Bourgeois. Et je crois que cet exercife en quelques endroits eſt auſſi ancien que l'inſtitution de la milice des communes, & de la juriſdiction des maiſons de ville, qui furent inſtitutiée ſous le regne de Philippe I. quatriéme Roi de la premire race ainſi que je l'ai dit ailleurs. *P. Daniel Hiſt. de la Mil. Fr.* tom. i. p. 379.

(e) Many ſumptuary edicts were in former times publiſhed by proclamation, regulating the materials, colours and decorations of the garments to be worn by different ranks of people; among the trimmings, furs of different animals made a very diſtinguiſhing part, and were particularly appropriated.

The maſters and rulers of this fraternity were exempted from ſerving on any inqueſt within the city of London or any where elſe within the realm: and the king further granted, that if any of the fraternity ſhooting at a known and accuſtomed butt, having firſt pronounced or ſpoken the uſual word Fast (f), ſhould after that happen by miſchance to kill any paſſenger, he ſhould not ſuffer death, nor be impeached, troubled, or impriſoned for it. The patent was directed to be made out under the great ſeal, without the payment of any fees to the king, his heirs, or the hanaper, and was paſſed the 29th of Henry VIII (g).

Another patent was granted by King James I. in the 3d year of his reign, A.D. 1605, to the lord mayor of London, the lord Elleſmere, lord chancellor of England, Thomas earl of Dorſet, high treaſurer, Thomas earl of Suffolk, chamberlain of the houſehold, Charles duke of Devonſhire, maſter of the ordnance, Robert earl of Saliſbury, principal ſecretary, with divers judges, knights and gentlemen for the encouragement of the artillery company, and the maintenance of archery and artillery within the realm of England.

In this patent, after reciting the national utility of this company, it is ſtated that divers perſons for their own gain and advantage have plucked up the ancient marks uſed in ſhooting, raiſed the banks and hedges, and deepened the ditches, thereby preventing the neceſſary communications in the fields, anciently appropriated to this exerciſe, contrary to the ancient cuſtoms of London, ſtatutes, proviſions and proclamations, whereby there is a danger that many perſons being deprived of their uſual amuſements, might haunt and frequent unlawful games; wherefore the commiſſioners, or any ſix of them, were empowered to ſurvey the grounds near the city of London, where the archers had been accuſtomed to ſhoot, and to cauſe them to be

(f) Fast, i. e. ſtand faſt, a notice not to move till after the perſon giving ſuch notice had made his ſhot.

(g) This charter is printed in a brief hiſtorical account of the artillery company, by Mr. Blackwell, adjutant and clerk to the company, anno 1726.

reduced to the ſtate in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King Henry VIII. by calling before them the owners and occupiers of thoſe lands, where any alterations had been made ſince that period, to be proved by oath, by ſuch honeſt and lawful men as they ſhould deem competent witneſſes, and ordering the ſaid owners and occupiers to do the neceſſary work, at their own coſt and charges. Any perſons reſiſting, refuſing, or neglecting to obey thoſe orders, were to be puniſhed with fine and impriſonment to the king's uſe. In this patent the coat of arms they now bear was granted them.

A SIMILAR commiſſion was granted by King Charles I. in the 8th year of his reign, A.D. 1633, wherein the grounds uſed for archery were directed to be reduced to the ſtate in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King James I. (h).

IN the year 1638, the company performed an exerciſe of arms at Merchant Taylors Hall, before the lord mayor, court of aldermen, and many other eminent citizens, ſo much to their ſatisfaction, that in teſtimony thereof, they made a preſent to them of the ground they now enjoy, to ſerve them for a military field of exerciſe; it was then called the Artillery Garden. The company was alſo enriched by many gifts and legacies. Anno 1641, Charles prince of Wales (afterwards King Charles II.) the duke of Bavaria, and James duke of York (afterwards King James II.) entered themſelves members of this company.

IT received ſome interruption during the civil wars, and had no exerciſe from 1643 to 1656, at which time it was again revived, many citizens entering themſelves members of it.

IN 1644, the duke of York was appointed captain general of the company, and exerciſed it; the ſame year, the dukes of Monmouth,

---

(h) UNDER theſe clauſes, a cow-keeper, named Pitfield, was, ſo late as 1746, obliged to renew one of the ſhooting marks which he had diſplaced, on which the artillery company cut the following inſcription, viz. *Pitfield's Repentance:* and the Hon. Daines Barrington, in his ingenious treatiſe on archery, publiſhed in the 7th volume of the Archæologia, ſays, he is informed that Mr. Scott, the great brick-maker, hath been under the neceſſity of making his ſubmiſſion on a like occaſion.

Albemarle, and Ormond, the earls of Sandwich, Manchester, Anglesea, and the Lord Craven, became members of it.

After the revolution, King William, in the year 1689, restored the company to the right of annual elections of its officers, which in the two preceding reigns had been interrupted from political motives; he also declared himself captain general, appointing his grace the duke of Norfolk his deputy, during his absence abroad. On the accession of Queen Anne, she appointed her royal consort, Prince George of Denmark, to be captain general (i).

In the year 1719, his majesty ordered that all the commission and staff officers of the city trained bands should become members of the artillery company, and exercise with them at all convenient times, in order to qualify themselves the better for their respective stations. It was also ordered, that the abovementioned officers should not fail to to make their appearances at the three annual marches or exercises of the said company, unless hindered by some extraordinary business, and in such case, that they should provide some other person to appear in their stead: since which, no person can have a commission in the trained bands from the court of lieutenantcy, unless he produces a certificate, that he is a member of the artillery company. On the 30th of May, 1722, his majesty caused the company to march in review before him in St. James's Park, and was pleased to make them a present of five hundred pounds*.

Although both long and cross bows have for many years been laid aside, the company still continues to exercise in the artillery ground. His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales is captain general; there is also a president, vice president, treasurer, colonel, lieutenant

---

(i) Archery seems at this time to have been totally laid aside by the company, who exercised themselves in the use of the musket and pike.

* The artillery company still subsists; but the city trained bands have been abolished. Instead of those irregular corps, the city of London now furnishes, for the defence of the country, two regiments of militia, on the same footing with the other militia corps of the several counties.

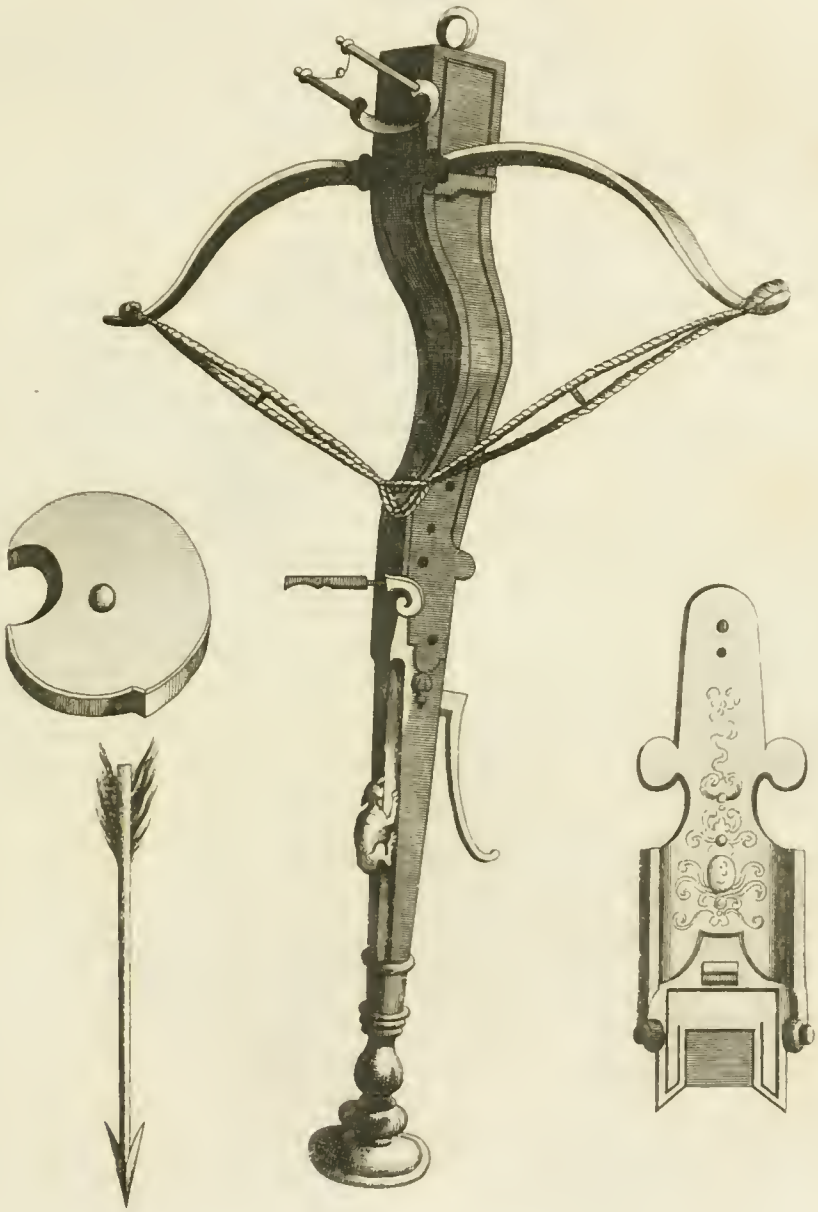
colonel, and major (uſually choſen from the court of aldermen or other ſubſtantial citizens), with an adjutant, engineer, ſurgeon, chaplain, clerk, ſergeant major, drum major, and meſſenger.

The croſs bow, or arbaliſt, called in Latin arcus baliſtarius, or baliſta manualis, and in French arbalèt, is ſaid by ſome to be of Sicilian origin; others aſcribe its invention to the Cretans. It is ſuppoſed to have been introduced into France by the firſt cruſaders, and is mentioned by the abbé Suger in the life of Louis le Gros, as being uſed by that prince, in the beginning of his reign (k), which commenced in the year 1108.

Verstigan ſeems to attribute the introduction of this weapon into England to the Saxons under Hengiſt and Horſa, but cites no authority in ſupport of that ſuppoſition. In a print repreſenting the landing of thoſe generals, the foremoſt of them is delineated with a croſs bow on his ſhoulder, and others are ſeen in the hands of the diſtant figures of their followers, landed and landing from their ſhips; of this print he ſays, "and becauſe theſe noble gentlemen were the firſt bringers in, and conductors of the anceſtors of Engliſhmen into Britaine, from whence unto their poſterity, the poſſeſſion of their countrey hath enſued, I thought fit here in pourtraiture to ſit down their firſt arrivall, therewithall to ſhewe the manner of the apparell which they wore, the weapons which they uſed, and the banner or enſign firſt by them ſpred in the field." Some writers ſay, William the Conqueror had croſs bows in his army at the battle of Haſtings. The Genoeſe were reckoned ſkilful in the uſe of this weapon; a great number of them were in the French ſervice at the battle of Creſcy.

The effects of this weapon were deemed ſo fatal and cruel, that the uſe of it was forbidden by the ſecond Lateran council, in 1139, under the penalty of an anathema, as hateful to God and unfit to be employed among Chriſtians; which prohibition was confirmed by Pope Innocent III. It was nevertheleſs introduced into our armies by

(k) P. Daniel Hiſt. de la Mil. Fr. tom. i. p. 425.



Crosse Bow.

King Richard I. who being ſlain by a dart ſhot from one of them, at the ſiege of the caſtle of Chaluz in Normandy, his death was conſidered as a judgment from Heaven, inflicted upon him for his impiety. Notwithſtanding this example, the croſs bow continued to be much uſed by the Britiſh troops, and in the liſt of the forces raiſed by King Edward II. againſt the Scots, the croſs bow men make the ſecond article in the enumeration of the different kinds of ſoldiers of which it conſiſted (l).

The croſs bow kept its footing in our armies even ſo late as the year 1572, when Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with King Charles IX. of France, engaged to furniſh him with ſix thouſand men, part of them armed with long bows, and part with croſs bows. And in the attack made by the Engliſh on the iſle of Rhee in 1627, ſome croſs bow men were, it is ſaid, in that army.

Cross bows were of different kinds, ſome called latches, and ſome prodds. The bow was commonly of ſteel, though ſometimes of wood or horn; the ſmaller bows were bent with the hand by means of a ſmall ſteel lever, called the goat's foot, from its being cloven or forked on that ſide that reſted on the croſs bow and cord; the larger were bent with one or both feet, put into a kind of ſtirrup: ſome were alſo bent with a machine called a moulinet.

Cross bows not only diſcharged arrows, but alſo darts called quarreaux, from their heads, which were ſquare pyramids of iron, corruptly named quarrels; theſe were ſometimes feathered (as the term was) with wood or braſs: croſs bows alſo ſhot ſtones or leaden balls.

According to Sir John Smith, in his Inſtructions and Obſervations, &c. p. 204, a croſs bow would kill point blank between forty and ſixty

---

(l) Titulus de vadiis tam peditum, baliſtariorum, lanceatorum, & ſagittariorum Angliæ, Walliæ, & Vaſcon; quam quorundam hominum ad arma et hobelariorum, retentorum ad vadia domini regus Edwardi, filii regis Edwardi, in guerra Scotiæ et alibi, a primo die Maii, anno quinto decimo, uſque ſeptimum diem Julii, anno regni ejuſdem ſexto decimo, finiente tempore. Rogeri de Waltham tunc cuſtodis, et Roberti de Baldok tunc contra rotulatoris garderobæ. *MSS. in the Library of Tho. Aſtle, Eſq.*

yards, and, if elevated, ſix, ſeven, and even eight ſcore yards; the range indeed depended on the ſize and ſtrength of the bow; but the diſtances here given are ſuch as a common croſs bow would carry.

Monsieur de Bellay, in the treatiſe before quoted, ſpeaks highly of the croſs bow, which he prefers to the harquebus, and ſays it would kill an hundred or two hundred paces (m); probably he here meant only military paces, of two feet, or two feet and a half.

Cross bow men were dreſſed, and otherwiſe armed, much in the ſame manner as the archers, and like them were frequently mounted on horſeback.

The invention of gunpowder and its application to artillery and ſmall arms, did not produce that ſudden change in the art of war, or weapons, that might, on a firſt conſideration, be expected. Mankind, in general, have an almoſt ſuperſtitious reverence for old profeſſional cuſtoms, which they ever relinquiſh unwillingly, and ſlowly, adopting improvements by degrees only. This ariſes, not only from a ſtrong prepoſſeſſion in favour of opinions they have been taught all their lives to conſider as uncontrovertible, but becauſe improvements tend to ſhew that the riſing generation is wiſer than their forefathers and ſeniors, a poſition old men will never willingly allow; this diſlike to innovations is peculiarly found in old ſoldiers, becauſe by adopting new weapons, and conſequently a new exerciſe, the old and expert ſoldiers find themſelves in a worſe ſtate than new recruits; as they have not only a new exerciſe to learn, which after a certain age is no eaſy matter, but alſo the old one to forget: for the truth of this obſervation, I appeal to every military man, who has ſeen any alteration made in the ordinary routine of duty or exerciſe.

This was the caſe, with reſpect to changing the long bow for the harquebuſs; to prove it a number of inſtances might be produced, which muſt occur to every reader of ancient military books; it likewiſe is ſtrongly marked by a letter written by Camden, tranſcribed in the

(m) Book i. p. 26.

note below (n). Indeed many of the ancient ſoldiers were much divided on that ſubject, nor does it appear that the government of thoſe days had formed any decided opinion upon it, as the ſtrongeſt ſtatutes for enforcing the practice of archery were enacted after the introduction of fire arms: and ſo indifferent were our rulers under Queen Mary to the introduction of them, that in her ordonnance reſpecting armour and weapons, the alternative is left to the choice of the people, whether they would find a long bow and ſheaf of arrows, or a harquebut, in every caſe where they were by law charged with the latter. This national backwardneſs to a general adoption of fire arms muſt ſtrike every perſon, when it is ſhewn how long hand

(n) CAMDEN to Sir Ed. Cecil.——Honourable Sir. The propoſition you make is oute of the reache of my profeſſion, and not of antiquitie, but of late memorie; by reaſon of Sir Rob. Cott.'s abſence I can imparte nothing from him as yet, and for my owne obſervation it is very ſlender, onely I remember, that after Captain Morgan in the yeare 1572 had firſt carried to Fluſhing 300 Engliſh, and had (perſuaded) procured Sir Humphrey Gilbert to bring over more, and to be coronell of the Engliſh there, a new militarie diſcipline was ſhortly after brought in, and the new marche by ſome that had ſerved the duke of Alva, and entertained eſpecially by the important inſtance of Sir Roger Williams, although ſtrong oppoſition was then againſt it, by Captaine Pykeman, and afterward by Captaine Reade, ancient leaders, and Sir William Pelham, who were ſcornfully tearmed by the contrary parte, Saincte George's ſouldados; and Sir John Smith, who had ſerved under the conſtable Momorancy twice in Hungary, att Penon de Veliz and Malta, yea, and under Dalva, encountered with his penne againſt the newe Diſcipline, and did writght much which was never publiſhed. This in haſt, untill I may (cann) happen upon Sir Robert Cotton, I thought good to imparte to your lſp. to whom I wiſh all happye ſucceſſe to the encreaſe and compliment of your honor.

THIS letter, which is in the Cott. Lib. Julius F. 6, fol. 441, is not ſigned, and by the corrections here marked, ſeems to have been a foul copy; probably the perſon who marked it as Cambden's knew his hand. One of the treatiſes written by Sir John Smith, and here mentioned by Camden, was printed in London, 1ſt May, 1590, in quarto; it is entitled, "Certain Diſcourſes written by Sir John Smythe, knight, concerning the formes and effects of divers ſorts of weapons, and other very important matters militarie, greatlie miſtaken by divers of our men of warre, in theſe daies, and chiefly of the moſquet, the caliver, and the long bow, as alſo of the great ſufficiencie, excellencie, and wonderful effects of archers, with many notable examples and other particularities, by him preſented to the nobilitie of this realme, and publiſhed for the benefit of this his native countrie of England."

guns were known and introduced here, before the uſe of them became general.

FIRE-ARMS diſcharged by hand were firſt called hand canons, hand culverines, and hand guns; they afterwards acquired the appellations of hackbuts, harquebuſſes, muſkets, and calivers, and laſtly their preſent name of firelocks. Various are the opinions and accounts, reſpecting their origin, and the time and place where they were firſt uſed. The chief of theſe are given in the note (o). Hand guns

---

(o) FATHER DANIEL has collected the following particulars reſpecting the different kinds of fire-arms. "The preſident Fauchet ſays, that the firſt of our hiſtorians who has ſpoken of theſe canons and hand culverines which I have before mentioned, is Monſtrelet, whoſe hiſtory begins in 1400, and terminates in 1467, that is to ſay, a little beyond the time, in which that of Philip de Comines begins. Fauchet is right: but there are hiſtorians as ancient as Monſtrelet, as for example, Juvenal des Urſins, who likewiſe mentions them.

IT appears to me, that theſe culverines or hand canons, which were fired on little carriages, were what we now call the arquebus à croc (arquebus with a hook) or ſomething very like it. They were ſince called the arquebus with a hook, upon account of a little hook, caſt with the piece; they are placed on a kind of tripod, as may be ſeen in the repreſentation; they are of different lengths, and for caliber, between the ſmalleſt canons and the muſket; they are uſed in the lower flanks, and in towers pierced with loop-holes, called murderers.

A LONG time afterwards the name of arquebus was given to a fire-arm, the barrel of which was mounted on a ſtock, having a butt for preſenting and taking aim: this was at the ſooneſt about the end of the reign of Louis XII. It became in time the ordinary piece borne by the ſoldiers. This is the moſt ancient arm mounted on a ſtock. We have the epocha of that invention in the authors of the time in which I place it: for Fabricius Colonne, in Machiavel's Dialogues upon the Art of War, ſpeaks of this arm as a new invention of his time: "The harquebus, ſays he, which is a weapon newly invented, as you know, and very neceſſary for the preſent time." The author of the Military Diſcipline attributed to the Seigneur de Langei, ſays the ſame. "The harquebus, ſays he, has been invented within theſe few years, and is very good:" he wrote under the reign of Francis I. This arm a good deal reſembled our preſent muſquetoons in the ſtock and barrel, but they had wheel locks. If we believe Luigi-Collado, in his Treatiſe of Artillery, printed at Venice, in the year 1586, they only began in his time to uſe the wheel lock in Germany. *Nell' Alemagna etiandio fu ritrovata l'inventione de gl' archibugi da ruota.*" The beſt arquebuſes were made at Milan, as Brantome ſays in his eulogy on M. de Strozzi.

MONSIEUR DE BELLAY ſays, that one of the firſt occaſions where it was made uſe of, was in the year 1521, when Pope Leo X. and the Emperor Charles V. confederated againſt France,

were firſt introduced into this kingdom; in the year 1471, when King Edward IV. landing at Ravenſpurgh in Yorkſhire, brought

---

France, and their troops beſieged Parma, which was defended by the marquis de Foix. At that time, ſays he, were invented harquebuſes, which are fired on reſts, thoſe before carried by the harquebuſiers, both horſe and foot, were much lighter.

From harquebuſes came piſtols or piſtolets, with wheel locks, the barrels of which were only one foot long, being the harquebuſe in miniature. It is thought that theſe arms were called piſtols or piſtolets, becauſe the firſt were made at Pitoye in Tuſcany. I think I have remarked in our hiſtories, that the Germans made uſe of them in France, before the French; and the horſemen who carried them in the time of Henry II. were called *piſtoliers*. Monſieur de la Noue, in his eighteenth Military Diſcourſe, confirms what I ſay: In the mean time, ſays he, we muſt give the honour to the Reitres, of having firſt brought piſtols into uſe, which I think are very dangerous when properly uſed. They are mentioned as early as the year 1544, under the reign of Francis I. I have ſeen one at Chantilli, which is all iron except the ramrod.

Another arm was afterwards made, a medium between the harquebuſe and piſtol, it was called a petrinal or poitrinal, this we learn from the preſident Fauchet, who lived under Francis I. and died under Henry IV. "Within twenty or thirty years, ſays he, they call petrinals like inſtruments the mean between harquebuſes and piſtols, having a very ſtrong and quick wheel; and it is believed that this arm is the invention of the bandouliers of the Pyrenean mountains."

Nicot, who was of the ſame time, thus deſcribes a poitrinal in his Dictionary: "It is, ſays he, a ſpecies of harquebus, ſhorter than the muſket, but of a greater calibre, and on account of its weight is carried in a broad baudrick worn over the ſhoulder, and reſted on the breaſt of the perſon who carries it, when he fires it, wherefore it received its name. The poitrinalier is the ſoldier who carries and uſes the poitrinal." This arm is mentioned in the relation of the ſiege of Rouen by Henry IV. in 1592.

After the harquebuſes came muſkets; they were made in the time of Francis I. for in the ſame cabinet of arms at Chantilly, there is one marked with the arms of France, and the ſalamander, which was the device of that prince. Neverthelefs, if we will believe Brantome, it was the duke d'Alva who firſt brought them into uſe in the armies, when during the reign of Philip II. he went to take upon him the government of the low countries in the year 1567; but that only means, he brought them more into faſhion than they were till that time, and that till then they were rarely uſed, at leaſt in the field. He ſays then in his elogy on Monſieur de Strozzi, colonel general of the French infantry under Charles IX. that it was that officer who introduced the uſe of the muſket into France; by this is to be underſtood the common uſe of it.

Pistols with a ſimple ſpring, inſtead of the wheel formerly made uſe of, fuſils and muſketoons, all theſe are modern and well known; but I know not the inventors; it is

with him, among other forces, three hundred Flemings armed with "hange gunnes (p):" this is fifty years before the date generally aſſigned for their introduction; Mr. Anderſon and divers other writers placing that event in the year 1521, at the ſiege of Berwick (q).

THERE is reaſon to believe that this innovation in the ancient military ſyſtem was not generally approved of by the Engliſh, or was not

---

the workmen themſelves who have improved upon theſe arms, and rendered them more ſimple. I have been aſſured, that in 1658, the uſe of wheel locked piſtols was not then aboliſhed.

I SHALL remark likewiſe upon the article of muſkets, that the Spaniards of the time of Philip II. cauſed them to be made of a very great calibre, and ſuch that a ſtrong and vigorous foot ſoldier might carry them, but that they were ſo heavy that they could not be preſented, without the aſſiſtance of ſtaves ſhod and pointed at the bottom, and which they fixed into the earth, and made uſe of a fork that was at the top, as a prop to ſuſtain the end of the muſket: they made uſe of them not only in ſieges to fire over the walls, but alſo in battles: theſe large muſkets carried to a great diſtance, and by the ſize of their balls made terrible wounds: but ſince, on account of their weight, they have left off uſing them in the field, and they are only uſed in ſieges. Harquebuſes and piſtols with wheel locks are at this time very little known, and rarely to be found, except in arſenals and in the cabinets of arms, where ſome of them are preſerved out of curioſity: I muſt therefore explain what this wheel was which gave movement to all the ſprings. It was a little ſolid wheel of ſteel, fixed againſt the plate of the lock of the harquebuſe or piſtol; it had an axis that pierced it in its centre; at the interior end of this axis which went into the lock, a chain was faſtened, which twiſted round it on the wheel being turned, and bent the ſpring by which it was held: to bend this ſpring a key was made uſe of, into which the exterior end of the axis was inſerted. By turning this key from left to right, the wheel was made to revolve, and by this movement a little ſlider of copper, which covered the pan with the priming, retired from over it; and by the ſame movement the cock, armed with a flint like the cock of a fuſil, was in a ſtate to be diſcharged on pulling the tricker with the finger, as in ordinary piſtols; the cock then falling on the wheel, produced fire, and communicated it to the priming.

(p) IN the XLIX yere of King Henry VI. cam King Edward with the Lord Haſtings, the Lord Say and IX.C. Engliſche men, and III.C. Flemings with hange gunnes. *Leland's Collect.* vol. i. p. 721. Probably the word *hange* is an error of either the tranſcriber or printer, and ſhould have been *hand*.

(q) ANDERSON'S Hiſt. of Commerce, vol. i. p. 351. The muſket is mentioned as a weapon of the infantry in Poland in the year 1475. "Quilibet peditum habeat baliſtam vel bombardam." *Lit. Caſmerii* III. an. 1475. Leg. Polon. tom. i. p. 228. Theſe are generally aſſigned to the year 1520. Add. to vol. i. and ii. of Warton's Hiſt. of Poetry.

productive of any very ſtriking effects, ſince we ſcarcely hear any mention made of fire-arms, till they occur in the ſtatute of the 33d of Henry VIII. when it was enacted, that no hand guns ſhould be uſed of leſs dimenſions than one yard in length, gun and ſtock included, which ſhews that the early hand guns were of a much ſmaller length than thoſe afterwards made; probably their calibre was in proportion, in which caſe they would do but little execution on men moſtly armed: this perhaps may, in ſome meaſure, account for their being ſo ſlowly adopted. The piece called the haquebut or hagbut was ſtill ſhorter, for by the ſame ſtatute, it might not be under three quarters of a yard long, gun and ſtock, as before, included. This piece is by ſome writers ſuppoſed to owe its name to its butt being hooked or bent, ſomewhat like thoſe now uſed, the butts of the firſt hand guns being, it is ſaid, nearly ſtraight. There were likewiſe ſome pieces called demi haques, either from being leſs in ſize, or from having their butts leſs curved. A ſort of piſtol, called a dag, was alſo uſed about the ſame time as hand guns and haquebuts. Piſtols were ſo called from being made at Piſtoya, in Tuſcany. After ſome time, the haquebut obtained the name of harquebus, which is by Fauchet derived from the Italian words "arca bouza," or the bow with a hole. It does not appear that the harquebuſe was originally confined to any particular length or bore. All theſe pieces, namely, the hand gun, hackbut, harquebuſe, and dag, were at firſt fired with a match, and ſome of them afterwards with a wheel lock; the former, by means of a ſpring let down a burning match upon the priming in the pan; and the latter was a contrivance for exciting ſparks of fire, by the friction of a notched wheel of ſteel, at the bottom of the pan, which with a quick revolution grated againſt a flint; the ſpring which turned this wheel was wound up, or, as the term was, ſpanned, with an inſtrument called a ſpanner, ſomewhat like the key of a clock.

The machinery of the wheel lock is deſcribed by Father Daniel in the note, p. 154.

The inconſiderable execution done by pieces of ſmall calibre probably cauſed the introduction of the muſket, which was a long, heavy

piece, carrying large balls, and on account of its ſize and weight fired on a kind of fork, called a reſt; the reſt continued in uſe for a conſiderable time, but on certain occaſions, being found unwieldy and inconvenient, a lighter kind of piece was introduced, generally known by the name of the caliver (r), which was fired without any ſuch aſſiſtance. But before the entire diſmiſſion of the reſt, divers attempts were made to convert it to a defence againſt cavalry, whilſt the muſketeer was loading, by arming it with a projecting ſpike from one of the prongs of the fork, ſerving for the head, or part on which the muſket was laid: or by encloſing a tuck in the ſhaft of the reſt, which

(r) The caliver was a lighter kind of matchlock piece, between a harquebuſe and a muſket, and fired without a reſt. The following explanation of its name is given by Edmund York, an officer who had ſerved in the low countries, and was employed by Queen Elizabeth to regulate the militia of London, at the time the kingdom was threatened with a Spaniſh invaſion. "I remember (ſays he) when I was firſt brought up in Piemont, in the countie of Briſacks regiment of old bandes, we had our particular calibre of harquebus to our regiment, both for that one bullet ſhould ſerve all the harquebuſſes of our regiment, as for that our colonel ſhould not be deceived of his arms; of which word calibre, came firſt that unapt term, we uſe, to call a harquebus a caliver, which is the height of the bullet, and not of the piece. Before the battle of Mountgunter, the princes of the religion cauſed ſeveral thouſand harquebuſſes to be made all of one calibre, which was called harquebuſe du calibre de Monſieur le Prince; ſo, I think ſome man, not underſtanding French, brought hither the name of the height of the bullet of the piece, which word calibre is yet continued with our good canoniers." *See Maitland's Hiſt. of London, in Art. Artillery.*

Sir John Smith, in his Confutation of Capt. Berwick, MS. *Bib. Harl.* No. 4685, thus explains the word Caliver: "It is ſuppoſed by many, that the weapon, called a caliver, is another thing than a harquebuſe; whereas in troth it is not, but only a harquebuſe, ſavinge that it is of greater circuite or bullet, than the other is of; wherefore the Frenchman doth call it a peece de calibre; which is as much to ſaie, a peece of bigger circuite." Pecke, in his Deſiderata Curioſa, has preſerved the price of a caliver and its accoutrements, as paid by the ſheriffs of Lancaſhire, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, anno 1584, for the uſe of the recruits raiſed for the Iriſh ſervice, which was, the caliver, furniſhed with flaſke and touche boxe, laces and moulds, thirteen ſhillings and ſixpence. In an eſtimate, made the 18th of James I. anno 1620, of the expences of a royal army of thirty thouſand men, intended to be ſent into the Palatinate, a caliver, with bandaleers, is valued at 14s. 10d. The price of a new muſket, as ſettled the 7th of Charles I. was 15s. 6d., a reſt 10d. For a new bandalier, carrying twelve charges, a primer, a priming wire, bullet bag, and a ſtrap or belt, two inches broad, 2s. 6d.

W. C. Goodnight sculp.

A Soldier of the time of K. James I.st armed with a Caliver.

on opening a ſmall valve, ſprung out; reſts thus armed were called the ſwines or Swediſh feathers, and were contrivances preceding the uſe of the bayonet (s).

The harquebuſes, or ſoldiers bearing harquebuſes, were often armed with morions, or ſteel hats, called pots, cuiraſſes conſiſting of backs and breaſts, and taſſets covering their thighs. Theſe ſuits are known in the tower by the name of harquebuſe armour.

When hand guns firſt came into uſe, not only balls, but alſo ſteel quarrels, and wooden arrows, called ſprites, were diſcharged from them: of the effects of the laſt Sir Richard Hawkins gives a very wonderful account, which I own I do not comprehend any more than Lord Verulam's reaſoning on it, and have therefore tranſcribed both paſſages verbatim et literatim, for the judgment of my readers. "In this diſcourſe, Generall Michael Angell demanded for what purpoſe ſerved the little ſhort arrowes which we had in our ſhippe, and thoſe in great quantitie: I ſatisfied him that they were for our muſkets. They are not as yet in uſe among the Spaniards, yet of ſingular effect and execution, as our enemies confeſſed; for the upper worke of their ſhippes being muſket proofe, in all places they paſſed through both

(s) The Swediſh, or ſwine's feather, is mentioned by ſeveral ancient military writers, particularly Ward, Turner, and the duke of Albemarle. "Muſket reſts (ſays Turner) were uſed a long time, and in ſome places are yet, to eaſe the muſketeers in diſcharging their guns, and when they ſtood centinel; but in the late expeditions in moſt places in Chriſtendom, they have been found more troubleſome than helpful; a muſketeer in any ſudden occaſion, not being able to do his duty with muſket, ſword, and reſt, eſpecially if you give him a Swediſh feather to manage with them. Bokeler, the engineer, ſpeaks of an inſtrument that might ſerve for both reſt and feather, and ſuch, perhaps, would be very uſeful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all reſts are, like a fork on the one ſide, whereof he would have an iron, of one foot and a half long, ſticking out, ſharply pointed; theſe planted in the van or flanks where you expect the charge, as the Swediſh feathers uſed to be, will ſufficiently palliſade and defend muſketeers from horſe, and upon them they may lean their muſkets when they give fire." *Turner's Pallas Armata*, p. 176. The duke of Albemarle, in his Obſervations upon Military and Political Affairs, printed anno 1671, recommends the arming muſketeers and dragoons with muſkets having ſwine's feathers, with the heads of reſts faſtened to them.

ſides with facilitie, and wrought extraordinary diſaſters, which cauſed admiration to ſee themſelves wounded with ſmall ſhott, where they thought themſelves ſecure, and by no means could find where they entered, nor come to any ſight of any of the ſhott. Hereof they proved to profit themſelves after; but for that they wanted the tamp-kings, which are firſt to be driven home, before the arrow be put in, and as then underſtood not the ſecret, they rejected them as uncertaine, and therefore not to be uſed; but of all the ſhot uſed now adayes, for the annoying of an enemie in fight by ſea, few are of greater moment for many reſpects, which I hold not convenient to treat of in publique (t)." Thus far Sir Richard Hawkins. My Lord Verulam, taking the fact for granted, endeavours to account for it on philoſophical principles. "The Turkiſh bowe (ſays he) giveth a very forcible ſhoot, inſomuch as it hath been known, that the arrow has pierced a ſteel target, or a piece of braſs, two inches thick: but that which is more ſtrange, the arrow, if it be headed with wood, hath been known to pierce through a piece of wood of eight inches thick: and it is certain, that we had in uſe at one time for ſea fight, ſhort arrows which they call ſprights, without any other heads ſave wood ſharpened; which were diſcharged out of muſkets, and would pierce through the ſides of ſhips, where a bullet would not pierce. But this dependeth upon one of the greateſt ſecrets in all nature; which is, that ſimilitude of ſubſtance will cauſe attraction, where the body is wholly freed from the motion of gravity; for if that were taken away, lead would draw lead, and gold would draw gold, and iron would draw iron, without the help of the loadſtone. But this ſame motion of weight or gravity (which is a mere matter of motion, and hath no affinity with the form or kinde) doth kill the other motion, except itſelf be killed by a violent motion; and, in theſe inſtances of arrows, the motion of attraction, by ſimilitude of ſubſtance, beginneth to ſhew itſelf. For a particular deſcription of the ancient muſketeer, the reader is referred to Appendix, No. 1.

(t) *Voyage to the South Seas*, A.D. 1591, p. 164, ſec. lxvi.

A SMALL anonymous military treatiſe (u) printed in the year 1680, ſays the fuſil or fire-lock was then in uſe in our army, eſpecially among the fuſileers and grenadiers; in all likelihood the appellation of fuſileers was given to thoſe troops who were armed with fuſils; in that caſe the date of the oldeſt regiment of that denomination will give ſome little direction toward finding their firſt introduction.

PERHAPS the fuſileer regiments were originally a ſort of grenadiers, as like them they wear caps, and have no enſigns (x).

THE uſe of cartridges, which ſeems to have taken place about the ſame time as the firelock, introduced the cartridge-box inſtead of the bandeleers. This was a very conſiderable improvement, as the ammunition was not only more commodiouſly and ſafely carried, but by uſing cartridges, a ſoldier was enabled to fire at leaſt three times the number of ſhot he could diſcharge when loading from his bandeleers, which were beſides ſubject to many inconveniences and objections. Their imperfections are fully ſtated by lord Orrery (y).

(u) ENGLISH Military Diſcipline, or the Way and Method of exerciſing Horſe and Foot, printed for Richard Harford, p. 19.

(x) FUSILEERS are foot ſoldiers armed with fuſees with ſlings to ſling them. There are four regiments in our army, which have always been called fuſileers, and go by the name of the Engliſh, Scotch, Iriſh, and Welſh fuſileers; but now we have none but fuſileers abroad, for the pikes are quite laid aſide. The firſt deſign of fuſileers was to guard the artillery, for which end the regiment of Engliſh fuſileers, now commanded by Sir Charles O'Hara were firſt raiſed. To ſupply the want of pikes, and to ſecure themſelves againſt horſe, the fuſileers uſed to carry turnpikes along with them, which in a camp were placed along the front of a battalion, and on a march were carried by the ſoldiers, each carrying one of the ſhort pikes, and two, by turns, the ſparr through which they are thruſt, ſo that they were quickly put together. *Gentleman's Dictionary.* According to Millan's Succeſſion of Colonels, the 7th regiment, or royal Engliſh fuſileers, were raiſed, June 11th, 1685; the 21ſt regiment, or royal North Britiſh fuſileers, 23d Sept. 1679; the 23d, or royal Welſh fuſileers, 17th March, 1688; but there is no Iriſh regiment bearing the appellation of fuſileers.

(y) "I AM alſo (ſays he) on long experience, an enemy to the uſe of bandeleers, but a great approver of boxes of cartridges; for then but by biting off the bottom of the cartridge, you charge your muſket for ſervice with one ramming.

"I WOULD

THE inſtitution of grenadiers originated in France, from whence we borrowed it; they were, as their denomination imports, ſoldiers trained to the art of throwing hand grenades, in the attack of trenches or the covert way.

FATHER DANIEL ſays the firſt grenadiers in the French troops were placed in the king's regiment, in the year 1667, when there were four of them in each company, and that in the year 1670, the king united them into one company, the command of which he gave to M. de Riotor, who was the firſt captain of grenadiers.

"I WOULD have theſe cartridge boxes of tin, as the carabines uſe them, becauſe they are not ſo apt to break as the wooden ones are, and do not in wet weather, or lying in the tents, relax.

"BESIDES, I have often ſeen much prejudice in the uſe of bandeleers, which being worn in the belts for them, above the ſoldiers' coats, are often apt to take fire, eſpecially if the match-lock muſket be uſed; and when they take fire, they commonly wound and often kill him that wears them, and thoſe near him: for likely if one bandeleer take fire, all the reſt do in that collar: they often tangle thoſe which uſe them on ſervice, when they have fired, and are falling off by the flanks of the files of the intervals, to get into the rear to charge again. To which I ſhall add, that in ſecret attempts in the night, their rattling often diſcovers the deſign, and enables the enemy to prevent it; and in the day time on ſervice, eſpecially if the weather be windy, their rattling alſo too frequently hinders the ſoldiers from hearing, and conſequently obeying, the officer's word of command, which muſt be fatal when it happens: whereas the cartridge boxes exempt thoſe who uſe them from all theſe dangers and prejudices: they enable the ſoldiers on ſervice to fire more expeditiouſly; they are alſo uſually worn about the waſte of the ſoldier, the ſkirts of whoſe doubelet and his coate, doubly defend them from all rain that doth not pierce both; and being worn cloſe to his body, the heat thereof keeps the powder dryer, and therefore more fit to be fired in ſervice.

"BESIDES all this, whoever loads his muſket with cartridges, is ſure the bullet will not drop out, though he takes his aim under breaſt high, for the paper of the cartridge keeps it in; whereas thoſe ſoldiers which on ſervice take their bullets out of their mouths (which is the nimbleſt way) or out of their pouches, which is ſlow, ſeldom put any paper, tow, or graſs, to ram the bullet in; whereby if they fire above breaſt high, the bullet paſſes over the head of the enemy; and if they aim low, the bullet drops out ere the muſket is fired; and 'tis to this that I attribute the little execution I have ſeen muſketeers do in time of fight, though they fired at great battalions, and thoſe alſo reaſonable near.

"IT might alſo do well, if the ſoldiers tyed their links of match about their middle, and under their coat and doublets, inſtead of tying them to their bandeleer belt, or collar, for by that means the match would be kept dryer, and fitter for ſervice in the time of action."

N. Goodnight, fecit

INFANTRY

I HAVE not been able to diſcover the time, when grenadiers were firſt introduced into the Engliſh army: Smith, in his Military Dictionary, ſays they were firſt known here in the year 1685; but in this he is greatly miſtaken; as in a liſt of the army, publiſhed in the year 1684 (z), we meet with grenadier companies to moſt of the regiments of infantry; they were armed with muſkets and bayonets, without ſwords, and wore caps.

GRENADIERS, at their firſt inſtitution, were not confined to the infantry; for to each of the three troops of horſe-guards, a corps of ſixty-four grenadiers, with two drums, four hautbois, two corporals, two ſerjeants, and two lieutenants, were attached. Theſe corps were armed with harquebuſes and bayonets, and diſtinguiſhed by caps and looped clothes (a), but had no captains, being then conſidered as parts of the troops of guards to which they were annexed: they appear to have been afterwards formed into two troops; the firſt, October 4th, 1693; the ſecond on the 27th of May, 1702. The command of them were given to the earl of Cholmondeley, and W. Lord Forbes.

IN a book of exerciſe (b), publiſhed by authority in the year 1686, the grenadiers appear to have been armed with fire-lock, or ſnaphance muſkets, ſlings, ſwords, daggers, and pouches with grenades; they had alſo hatchets, with which, after firing and throwing their

---

(z) A GENERAL and complete Liſt Military of every commiſſion officer of horſe and foot, now commanding his majeſtie's land forces of England (excepting the unregimented companies), as alſo the proper diſtinctions of their cloathings, badges of honour, and colours of each troop and regiment. The names of the chief officers of the ordnance, and other officers belonging to the army, &c. &c. as eſtabliſhed at the time of the review upon Putney Heath, the 1ſt of October, 1684, &c.

(a) THIS diſtinction is mentioned in the old grenadier ſong:

Come let us fill a bumper, and drink a health to thoſe,
Who wear the caps and pouches, and eke the looped clothes.

(b) AN Abridgement of the Engliſh Military Diſcipline, printed by eſpecial command, for the uſe of his majeſtie's forces, 1686.

grenades, they were on the word of command "fall on," to ruſh upon the enemy. The practice of ſcrewing the dagger into the muzzle of the piece, is alſo there directed; it likewiſe appears that they then loaded with cartridges, and that the match-lock and fire-lock or ſnaphance, were both then in uſe, the exerciſe for both being laid down in that book.

In another book of exerciſe, publiſhed alſo by royal authority, in the year 1690 (c), the match-lock exerciſe and the uſe of the bandileers are ſtill retained, but the grenadiers appear to have been armed with fire-locks, and to have uſed cartridges; their daggers are here ſtiled bayonets, but were ſtill ſcrewed into the muzzles of their pieces. Bayonets were ſolely appropriated to the grenadiers and dragoons. The hatchet is not mentioned in this book.

I have in vain endeavoured to aſcertain the preciſe time when the bayonets of the preſent form were firſt adopted here; that improvement, as well as the original invention, is of French (d) extraction.

(c) The Exerciſe of the Foot, with the evolutions according to the words of command, as they are explained; as alſo the forming of battalions, with directions to be obſerved by all colonels, captains, and other officers in their majeſties armies: by their majeſties command, 1690.

(d) Father Daniel ſays, the regular introduction of bayonets took place in France about the year 1671; the firſt corps armed with them was the regiment of fuſileers raiſed that year, and ſince called the royal regiment of artillery, but although the adoption of the bayonet is ſo recent, the idea of it had long occurred to different officers, ſome of whom had occaſionally put it in practice; among them was Monſieur de Puiſegur, in the diſtrict in Flanders, where he commanded: "For my part (ſays he in his Memoirs) when I commanded in Bergue, in Ypres, Dixmude, and Quenoque, all the parties I ſent out paſſed the canals in this ſort; it is true that the ſoldiers had no ſwords, but they had bayonets with handles of a foot long; the blades of theſe bayonets were as long as the handles, the ends of which were fitted for being put into the barrels of the fuſils, to defend themſelves, if attacked after they had fired." The term bayonet was derived from theſe weapons being firſt made at Bayonne; they were called by the French bayonets a manche, or bayoncts with handles, there are many of them in the ſmall armory in the tower of London. The modern bayonets are called bayonets a douille, i. e. bayonets with ſockets.

The following anecdote reſpecting that weapon was communicated to me by Lieutenant Colonel Maxwell, of the 30th regiment of foot, who had it from his grandfather, formerly lieutenant colonel of the 25th regiment of foot.

In one of the campaigns of King William III. in Flanders, in an engagement, the name of which he had forgot, there were three French regiments, whoſe bayonets were made to fix after the preſent faſhion, a contrivance then unknown in the Britiſh army; one of them advanced againſt the 25th regiment with fixed bayonets; Lieut. Col. Maxwell who commanded it, ordered his men to ſcrew their bayonets into their muzzles to receive them; thinking they meant to decide the affair point to point; but to his great ſurpriſe, when they came within a proper diſtance, the French threw in a heavy fire, which for a moment ſtaggered his people, who by no means expected ſuch a greeting, not conceiving it poſſible they could fire with fixed bayonets; they nevertheleſs recovered themſelves, charged, and drove the enemy out of the line.

Notwithstanding this inſtance of the ſuperiority of the ſocket bayonet, it ſeems as if that invention was not immediately adopted, but that the old bayonets underwent a mutation or two, before they arrived at their preſent form; one of them was a couple of rings fixed into their handle, for the purpoſe of receiving the muzzle of the piece, like the ſocket of the preſent bayonet, by which means the ſoldier was enabled both to fire, and load his muſket, without unfixing it. The late Reverend Mr. Goſtling, of Canterbury, who was extremely inquiſitive reſpecting military affairs, told me he remembered to have ſeen two horſe grenadiers ride before the coach of Queen Anne, with their bayonets fixed by means of the rings here deſcribed.

The 42d regiment of foot differs from all the others in his majeſty's ſervice in their dreſs and appointments, their uniform being the ancient habit of the Scottiſh Highlanders, conſiſting of the bonnet, plaid, red jacket faced with blue, the Philibeg and Tartan hoſe. Their arms, beſides thoſe borne by the other regiments or infantry, namely fire-

locks and bayonets, are large baſket-hilted broad ſwords, and daggers of about eighteen inches long, called dirks (e).

This regiment was compoſed of independent companies raiſed for the protection of the country againſt robbers, thence called the highland watch; they were regimented October 25th, 1739, when John earl of Crauford was appointed colonel (f). Some of the chiefs in raiſing theſe companies had given them promiſes they were not authoriſed by government to make; among other inducements to enliſt, thus improperly held forth, it is ſaid, the men were aſſured they ſhould not go out of their own country; under the faith of this promiſe, many reputable farmers and yeomen's ſons entered themſelves as privates in the corps, who would not otherwiſe have thought of enliſting.

It being found neceſſary to ſend this regiment on foreign ſervice, it was ordered up to the environs of London, in the beginning of May, 1743, and was the fourteenth reviewed on Finchley common by General Wade.

A report having been circulated that it was deſtined to the Weſt Indies, a great uneaſineſs aroſe among the private men, which was increaſed on account of ſome ſtoppages in their pay, probably only the uſual arrears: theſe diſcontents were fomented by ſome evil-minded people, who magnified to them the unwholeſomeneſs of the country, to which they were ſuppoſed to be ordered, and terrified them with the fate of the troops on the expedition under General Wentworth.

Under the influence of theſe notions a body of one hundred and fifty of them aſſembled, on the 17th, about Hampſtead and Highgate, with their arms, fourteen cartridges each, and ſix days' proviſions, and putting themſelves under the command of a corporal of the name of

---

(e) I doubt whether the dirk is part of their regimental arms, but I remember in the year 1747, moſt of the private men had them, and many were alſo permitted to carry targets; the regiment was then on ſervice in Flanders.

(f) See Milan's Succeſſion of Colonels.

An Officer & Serjeant of a Highland Regiment.

M'Pherſon, marched off with a reſolution to return to Scotland; the remainder of the regiment was ordered for immediate embarkation.

On the news of this mutiny, a party of General Wade's horſe, commanded by Captain Ball, was ſent, by General Blakeney, after the fugitives, towards Stilton, on which they took ſhelter in Lady-Wood, four miles from Oundle in Northamptonſhire; of this Major Creed, one of the juſtices of the peace for that county, having information, on the 21ſt went to them, and endeavoured to perſuade them to lay down their arms, to which, on condition of a pardon, they ſeemed ſomewhat inclined; whereupon that gentleman engaged to write in their favour to the duke of Montague, and wrote at the ſame time to Major Otway, who then commanded the horſe ſent after them, to requeſt that he would not proceed to extremities till he had received his grace's anſwer; but the Highlanders having moved to another part of the wood, contrary to their promiſe, General Wade was applied to for further orders; and a ſquadron of General Churchill's regiment was ordered to ſurround the wood, whilſt Captain Ball endeavoured to bring them to a peaceable ſubmiſſion, which they at firſt rejected; but on finding they were ſurrounded, they ſent to deſire Captain Ball might again come to them with conditions of capitulation; but nothing leſs than an unconditional ſurrender being required of them, they abſolutely refuſed it, and declared they would defend themſelves to the laſt; but the Captain conferring with them ſeparately, M'Pherſon was prevailed upon to lay down his arms; his example was immediately followed by the reſt, and they were conducted to the tower under a ſtrong guard; a court martial was immediately appointed, and three of their leaders, Samuel and Malcolm M'Pherſon, corporals, and Farquhar Shaw, private, were ſentenced to die, and on the 18th of July were ſhot on the parade in the tower, the reſt of their comrades being drawn out to ſee the ſentence executed. The unhappy men met their fate with great fortitude, and the remainder of the mutineers were in September diſpoſed of to different foreign garriſons, thirty to Gibraltar, twenty to Minorca, twenty to the leeward iſlands, to Jamaica twenty-eight, and to Georgia thirty-eight; the laſt were allowed

to take their wives with them; theſe men marched for the places of their deſtination with the greateſt ſhew of alacrity and ſatisfaction; thus ended this unhappy affair; and, it is but juſtice to obſerve, that this regiment, by its faithful and gallant behaviour, in a variety of inſtances, has much more than effaced any ſtigma that might have fallen on it, from the error of a few deceived, brave, but ill-judging men, who conceived themſelves defrauded of their pay, and entrapped to ſerve in a foreign and unwholeſome climate, contrary to the moſt ſolemn promiſes: like juſtice alſo requires it to be ſaid, that government behaved in this inſtance with all poſſible lenity; to have pardoned all the offenders would have been a dangerous precedent: in military tranſactions, ſtrict juſtice, and even ſeverity to a few, is frequently mercy to the whole (g).

(g) This tranſaction likewiſe ſhews the danger and even cruelty of making promiſes to recruits, under any thing leſs than the greateſt certainty they will be faithfully obſerved; the contrary has more than once produced the moſt dangerous mutinies, and that even among the Highland regiments, whoſe education tends to make them more regular and ſubordinate than either the Engliſh or Iriſh; and if the cauſes of almoſt every mutiny that has happened, are diligently and diſpaſſionately enquired into and weighed, it will be found that nine times out ten, the ſoldiers, however wrong and unjuſtifiable in that mode of ſeeking redreſs, have had great reaſon for complaint, generally of the breach of ſome poſitive promiſe made them at enliſting.

Among theſe breaches of promiſe may be reckoned draughting of regiments. A country lad frequently engages in a corps, becauſe his brother, his couſin, or ſeveral of his townſmen belong to it; or perhaps becauſe the ſon of his father's landlord, or his nephew, is an officer in it; this man perhaps would not have engaged in any other corps; here probably, after ſome years' ſervice, he acquires a good character, and the confidence of his officers, and conſequently thoſe little indulgences uſually and with propriety granted to a good ſoldier; and he, on his ſide, looks upon the regiment as his brothers, and the commanding officer as his father, in ſhort, contracts that affection for the corps, which every officer and ſoldier feels for the regiment in which he firſt ſerved; how cruel, how impolitic is it then to tear him from it, and to ſend him to a regiment where his good qualities are unknown, and where he, for a long time, is no more regarded than the moſt worthleſs malingeror. The legality of this meaſure I have beſides heard diſputed, at leaſt according to the common form of our atteſtations. It has been pleaded, that an atteſtation contains a ſpecific agreement to ſerve the king

HIGHLAND SOLDIERS

THERE were during the laſt war and that of 1760 ſeveral other Highland corps, which have been reduced.

IT having been found neceſſary on many occaſions to embark a number of ſoldiers on board our ſhips of war, and mere landſmen being at firſt extremely unhealthy, and for ſome time, until they had been accuſtomed to the ſea, in a great meaſure unſerviceable, it was at length judged expedient to appoint certain regiments for that ſervice, who were trained to the different modes of ſea fighting, and alſo made uſeful in ſome of thoſe manœuvres of a ſhip, where a great number of hands were required; theſe, from the nature of their duty, were diſtinguiſhed by the appellations of maritime ſoldiers and marines.

THE preciſe time when this inſtitution firſt took place is, like many other pieces of military hiſtory, involved in obſcurity. The oldeſt corps of this kind I have been able to diſcover, ſtands the third regiment of infantry in the Liſt of the Army for the year 1684, before quoted; it there appears under the deſcription of "the Lord High Admiral of England, his Royal Highneſs the Duke of York and Albany's maritime regiment of foot, commanded by the Hon. Sir Charles Littleton, called alſo the Admiral Regiment." It then conſiſted of twelve companies, without grenadiers; the men were clothed in yellow coats, lined with red, their colours were a red croſs, with rays of the ſun iſſuing from each of its angles. This was not the preſent third regiment now diſtinguiſhed by the name of the old buffs; that regiment then ſtood the fourth on the liſt, and was commanded

---

king in one particular corps and no other; that an agreement to ſerve in the cavalry does not bind the contracting party to ſerve in the infantry or marines; nor will an undertaking to ſerve as a private ſoldier in the 19th or any particular regiment of foot, compel the undertaker to ſerve in the 20th, or any other corps but that ſpecified. It may be ſaid that theſe diſtinctions are too like the quibbles of an attorney; it is granted: but would it not be beſt to avoid every ſhadow of doubt, or means of quibble? which may be done by inſerting the power of draughting in the atteſtation. Should it be aſked, how is any corps on foreign ſervice to be otherwiſe recruited? the anſwer is, by volunteers from the different regiments at home, a meaſure never known to fail, and by which a corps gets rid of thoſe reſtleſs ſpirits, who are beſt when employed on active ſervice.

by John Earl of Mulgrave (h). Probably the admiral regiment was reduced, by which the buffs gained a ſtep in ſeniority. Nothing reſpecting it appears in Millan's Liſt.

In the reign of King William III. there were ſeveral marine regiments, particularly thoſe of Colonel Mordaunt, Colonel Thomas Brundell, Colonel William Seymour, and Colonel William Dutton Colt. By a vote of parliament, 1ſt Auguſt, 1698, three of the above-mentioned corps, namely, Mordaunt's, Seymour's, and Colt's, were put on the eſtabliſhment of the navy, and were afterwards diſbanded (i).

In the beginning of the reign of Queen Anne, ſix regiments of marines were raiſed: the following account of them is given in Burchet's Naval Hiſtory (k): "Here let me take up a little of your time by acquainting you, that her majeſty was pleaſed to eſtabliſh ſix marine regiments; but they were put on a different foot than thoſe which were thought neceſſary at the beginning, but diſcontinued before the cloſe of the laſt war; for as the ſoldiers were formerly diſcharged from the regiments, and entered on the ſhip's books as foremaſt men, when they had qualified themſelves to ſerve as ſuch; and no money allowed to the officer to procure others in their room; ſo now when any of the marine ſoldiers died, or were otherwiſe miſſing, the companies were only made full by levy money to the officers, without

(h) This agrees with Millan's Liſt of the Succeſſion of Colonels, according to which, this regiment was raiſed 31ſt of March, 1665, and J. Earl of Mulgrave, the ſecond of that name and title appears colonel, 26th January, 1684. This regiment is ſaid, by Major Dunkin, in his Military Collections and Remarks, publiſhed at New York, A.D. 1777, "to have the privilege of marching through the city of London, with drums beating, and colours flying, which the city diſputes not only with all other marching corps, but even with the king's guards, going on duty to the tower." It was called the Holland regiment, from having been, with divers others, in the ſervice of the ſtates. The ſame privilege of marching through the city, is, it is ſaid, claimed by the marines.

(i) The Journals alſo mention the Marquis of Caermarthen's, Sir Cloudeſly Shovel's, and Lord Torrington's, regiments of marines, diſbanded about the year 1698.

(k) Book 5. chap. 9. p. 615.

A Piper of a Highland Regiment.

any regard to their being a nurſery for ſeamen, which was one of the principal motives for the firſt raiſing ſuch a body of men. The charge of theſe regiments was defrayed by the navy, as being part of the men voted by parliament for ſea ſervice, and money was iſſued out from time to time, by the treaſurer thereof, by warrants from the lord high treaſurer, to a perſon particularly appointed to receive and pay the ſame; ſo that the navy board, who as well as the admiralty, were, in the former war, put to a conſiderable trouble on this account, had no other now, than the ordering the payment of money, from time to time, in groſs ſums; and that the reader may be informed what the annual charge of theſe regiments was, I have hereafter inſerted the eſtabliſhment (1); and in the next place, the rules eſtabliſhed by her majeſty for their government.

Experience hath ſhewn that theſe regiments have been very uſeful, but more eſpecially upon fitting out ſquadrons of ſhips for an immediate expedition; for as they are conſtantly quartered, when not at ſea, as near the principal ports as poſſible, namely, Plymouth, Portſmouth, and Chatham, ſo were they with great facility put on board ſuch ſhips as had moſt occaſion for them; for they were under the immediate direction of the admiralty; and the rules and inſtructions for the better government of them, ſettled by her majeſty in council, the 1ſt of July, 1702, were as follows, viz.

I. They were to be employed on board her majeſty's ſhips, as there ſhould be occaſion, and quartered (as I have already ſaid) at or as near as might be to the dock-yards, when on ſhore, to guard them from embezzlements, or any attempt of the enemy.

II. In all matters relating to their ſubſiſtence and clearings, when on board or on ſhore, they were to be paid in like manner as the land forces, and the ſame deductions to be made from them for clothing, and one day's pay once a year from each ſoldier for the hoſpital.

III. They were to be allowed an equal proportion of proviſions with the ſeamen, without deductions from their pay for the ſame.

(1) The eſtabliſhment will be given under the article of pay.

IV. And to have the ſame allowance for ſhort proviſions as the ſeamen, to be paid to them or their aſſigns.

V. Such part of the regiments as ſhould be on ſhore were to be muſtered by a commiſſary or commiſſaries, in the ſame manner as the land forces, excepting in this caſe that they, the ſaid commiſſaries, were obliged to allow at each muſter on his or their rolls, all ſuch officers and ſoldiers as ſhould appear to him or them, by authentic vouchers and certificates, to be put on board any of her majeſty's ſhips or veſſels: and that ſuch part of the aforeſaid regiment as ſhould be at ſea, might be paid whilſt they were ſo, it was directed, that the commanding marine officer with them ſhould, every two months, return to the commiſſary-general of the muſters, a perfect liſt of all the officers and ſoldiers on board each ſhip, ſigned by himſelf and all the marine officers, expreſſing the times of entry, death, and diſcharge of each man, ſo that the commiſſary might compare the ſaid liſts with the monthly books ſent to the Navy Office, and allow ſuch of the ſaid officers as ſhould appear to him fit to be allowed.

VI. To prevent confuſion, not leſs than fifteen marine ſoldiers, and with them an officer, were to be put on board a ſhip, at any one time, unleſs in caſes of neceſſity.

VII. And for the caſe of the whole, a particular paymaſter was appointed, with power to ſolicit the arrears of the regiments, and to receive all ſums of money from the treaſurer of the navy, and immediately upon the receipt thereof to iſſue the ſame to the reſpective colonels or their agents; he was alſo required diligently and carefully to adjuſt all accounts relating to the regiments, according to ſuch muſter rolls as ſhould be delivered to him by the commiſſary, or commiſſaries, and thoſe muſter rolls were to be allowed of, as ſufficient vouchers for the charges in the accounts, and for making out debentures and warrants.

VIII. To enable the aforeſaid paymaſter to keep an office, and to defray the charge thereof, and of clerks and other contingencies, he was allowed ſixpence in the pound, purſuant to the ſubſcription of the reſpective colonels, which he had power to deduct out of all monies

iſſued to him, in the ſame manner as the poundage is deducted from the land forces.

IX. For rendering ſuch part of the regiments as ſhould be on ſhore the more uſeful, her majeſty declared it ſhould be left to herſelf or the high admiral, to diſpoſe of them at ſuch places neareſt to the ſeveral dock-yards, as might be judged moſt convenient: and ſince there might be occaſion for labourers to diſpatch neceſſary works, her majeſty empowered her high admiral, or commiſſioners for executing that office, to cauſe to be employed in the aforeſaid dock-yards, ſo many of the marine ſoldiers as ſhould be judged fitting, and to make them ſuch daily allowance for the ſame, beſides their ordinary pay, as to him or them ſhould ſeem reaſonable.

And for the better regulating of theſe regiments, his royal highneſs, as lord high admiral, empowered Colonel William Seymour (brigadier, and ſince lieutenant general of his majeſty's forces) to take upon him the command of them, and not only to ſee that they were well quartered, but that the reſpective officers diligently attend their duty, and that, when ordered on board her majeſty's ſhips, the ſoldiers were ſupplied with proper ſea clothes, cheſts, and other neceſſaries.

In the war preceding the peace of 1748, there were ten regiments of marines, which were diſbanded about the year 1749; theſe were under the direction of the lords of the admiralty, and when aſhore were quartered in the neighbourhood of the docks and ſea ports.

In the year 1755 a number of companies of marines were raiſed, under the direction of the ſecretary of war: they were afterwards formed into three diviſions, and ſtationed at the towns of Plymouth, Portſmouth, and Chatham; and at each of theſe places have now convenient barracks. Theſe companies, A.D. 1761, being 130 in number, were, from the time of their eſtabliſhment, put under the immediate direction of the lords of the admiralty. At the peace many of them were reduced, and in 1770 there remained only ſeventy companies; but in the year 1782, they were increaſed to one hundred and fifty.

The marines are clothed and armed in the ſame manner as his

majeſty's other corps of infantry; their uniform is ſcarlet, faced with white, white linings, waiſtcoats, and breeches; they alſo wear caps, like thoſe of the fuſileer regiments; this cauſed them when ſerving on ſhore, at the ſiege of Belliſle (where they gained great honour) to be called by the French les petits grenadiers.

The invalids form another department of the Britiſh forces. Theſe conſiſt of ſoldiers partly diſabled by their wounds, and veterans, who from old age and length of ſervice are rendered incapable of the duties of an active campaign, but are ſtill judged fit for garriſon duty. Of theſe the 41ſt regiment was compoſed (m), and there were likewiſe, in 1782, thirty-ſix independent companies, forming the garriſons of Jerſey, Guernſey, Scilly, Portſmouth, Plymouth, Cheſter, Hull, and other forts and caſtles. Invalids have been known in this kingdom ever ſince the reſtoration of Charles II. The invalids are armed like other regiments of infantry; their uniform red, faced with blue, and plain button holes.

The fencible corps were a ſpecies of militia, raiſed for the defence of particular diſtricts, from which ſeveral of them could not by the conditions of their inſtitution be detached. The firſt of theſe corps were the fencible men of Argyleſhire, who were raiſed the 21ſt of July, 1759; their ſervice was reſtricted to the county in which they were raiſed. The adjutant and quarter maſter of this corps were the only officers entitled to half pay.

Several of theſe fencible corps, and others called provincial regiments, both foot and dragoons, were raiſed in the years 1778 and 1779, when by a clauſe in an act of parliament, their officers were declared to rank with thoſe of militia, according to the dates of their commiſſions (n); conſequently they ranked with the army as youngeſt of each degree.

(m) The 41ſt regiment was regimented 11th March, 1719: in 1782, there were ten independent companies of invalids in Ireland. The 41ſt has ſince been put upon the ſame footing with the other regiments of the line.

(n) And whereas it is neceſſary to aſcertain the rank to be held by the officers of certain corps

About the ſame time many new regiments were raiſed, ſeveral of whoſe colonels, field officers, and captains, having never ſerved before, or having no military rank, it was ſtipulated by the ſecretary of war with them, that they ſhould not be entitled to either rank or half pay after the reduction of their corps, but the enſigns, or thoſe officers who came from the half pay or out of eſtabliſhed regiments, and gained only one ſtep, were permitted to retain their acquired rank, with the half pay belonging to it (o).

These are the different ſpecies of troops, of which the Britiſh armies have at different times been formed (p); two only remain to be deſcribed, who, though originally deemed military bodies, have long ſince been conſidered as part of the ſuite of the king's houſehold; they are the ſerjeants at arms, and the yeomen of the guards.

The ſerjeants at arms were firſt inſtituted by King Richard I. in imitation of a corps of the ſame name, formed by Philip Auguſtus,

---

corps raiſed or to be raiſed, within that part of Great Britain, called Scotland, called ſenſible men, or of any other corps of men, which may be raiſed within Great Britain, wherein ſuch officers ſhall not be entitled to rank or half pay, except during the time of the actual ſervice of ſuch corps, with reſpect to the officers of the militia of that part of Great Britain called England, during the time that the officers of ſuch corps and of the militia ſhall ſerve together; be it therefore enacted by the authority aforeſaid, that the officers of ſuch corps and of the militia, of equal degree, ſhall rank according to the date of their reſpective commiſſions. Stat. 18 Geo. III. cap. 59.

(o) Divers independent companies were alſo raiſed towards the cloſe of this war and that of 1762, ſome of which were afterwards regimented. Theſe were moſtly raiſed by ſubalterns, who undertook to complete them againſt a ſtated time, and at their own expence, on condition of being appointed to the command of them. The beſt idea of theſe companies may be gathered from the definition given of them by a private ſoldier at Belliſle, during the ſiege of Palais. A number of theſe independent companies being regimented were ſent out to that place; one night in the trenches an officer overheard ſeveral of the men in high diſpute concerning the meaning of the term *independent*, in which they could by no means agree, till one of them, an old grenadier, raiſing his voice, called his comrades a pack of ſtupid fellows, for puzzling at ſo obvious a term: "You ſee what ſtuff they are (ſaid he), now it is plain they are called independents becauſe they are not to be depended upon."

(p) The royal regiment of artillery and corps of engineers will be conſidered under the article of artillery.

King of France, when on a cruſade, to guard him againſt the ſubjects of the old man of the mountain, famous for their daring aſſaſſinations.

The duty of thoſe ſerjeants originally was to watch round the king's tent in complete armour, with a mace, a bow, arrows, and a ſword, and occaſionally to arreſt traitors and other offenders about the court, for which the mace was deemed a ſufficient authority. They were called the valorous force of the king's errand, in the execution of juſtice; they held their places for life; their number was originally twenty-four, all perſons of approved worth, and not under the degree of the ſon of a knight: and afterwards the ſons of gentlemen were admitted into the body.

In the reign of Edward I. the ſerjeants at arms were allowed two marks for winter, and the ſame for ſummer robes. Their pay in that of Edward II. was twelve pence per diem, when they attended on horſeback, and eight pence when they attended without a horſe.

In a MS. of the expences of Ed. III. in the 21ſt year of his reign, there is the following entry of the "Sergeauntes at armes, with their retinew. Standard-bearers 4, ſergeauntes 67, men at armes 3, archers of horſe 7, archers on foote 9 (q)."

Their allowance, when abſent from court on the king's affairs, was 12d. each by the day; and under another head (r) they appear charged at 26s. 8d. each for winter, and 20s. for ſummer. They were beſides entitled to certain fees from perſons arreſted; theſe were in proportion to their rank and degree.

(q) The title of this MS. runs thus: "Here enſue the rates of wages, of peace and warre, expences, neceſſaryes of officers, and other charges concerning the houſehold of the prince of noble memory, Edward III. as well in tyme of peace as warre; and alſo the number of ſoldiers, as well by land as ſea, and ſhippes retayned in the warres of the ſaide kinge, as by the parcells of the accompte of Walter Wentwayt, treaſurer of the ſaid houſehold, from the 21ſt day of Aprill, in the 18th year of the raigne of the ſame kinge, unto the 24th day of December, in the 21ſt year of the ſame kinge's raigne."

(r) "Rates of wages in time of peace, fees of banneretts, and bachelors of the king's houſe, robes, and all other places, officers, miniſters, and ſervauntes of the ſame, and lyveries of mens ſervauntes, intitled Calciatura, beſides all wages in manner as followeth."

According to the orders given by Thomas of Lancaſter, conſtable at the ſiege of Caen, Sept. 3d, 1417, a ſerjeant at arms was to appear in the king's preſence, with his head bare, his body armed to the feet with the arms of a knight riding, wearing a gold chain with a medal, bearing all the king's coats, with a peon royal, or mace of ſilver in his right-hand, and in his left hand a truncheon (s).

In the 7th of Hen. VII. they were ordered to attend the army (t).

The number of this corps has varied exceedingly. In the reign of Edward IV. they were reduced to four; in that of Edward VI. they were increaſed to twenty-two; and in the ſucceeding reign to twenty-three; but by King James I. retrenched to ſixteen; at preſent there are only eight (u).

The yeomen of the guard were raiſed by King Henry VII. in the year 1485. Rapin, who calls them archers, ſays they were inſtituted on the day of his coronation, which was the 30th of October, and that they then conſiſted of fifty men, to attend him and his ſucceſſors for ever; a precaution which, in all appearance, he thought neceſſary at that juncture.

By the firſt regulation, every yeoman of this band was to be of the beſt quality under gentry, well made, and full ſix feet high.

Their numbers have varied in almoſt every reign, and formerly conſiſted of a certain number in ordinary, and an indefinite number extraordinary; and in caſe of a vacancy in the former, it was ſupplied out of the latter number (x).

Their dreſs is that which was worn in the reign of King Henry VIII. and which on many occaſions was put on by that king: it conſiſts of a ſcarlet coat reaching down to the knees, garded with garter blue velvet, and rich badges of the roſe and crown on their breaſts

---

(s) Bib. Harl. No. 297, fol. 254.

(t) Vide Raſtall, chap. 3.

(u) Moſt of the writers againſt ſtanding armies commence that eſtabliſhment with the ſerjeants at arms.

(x) Miege's New State of England, A.D. 1703, and Chamberlain.

and backs; their breeches are alſo ſcarlet garded with blue velvet; their caps are of black velvet, with broad round crowns, adorned with ribbons of the royal colours, viz. red, white, and blue; one half of them formerly carried bows and arrows, the other half harquebuſes; both had large ſwords by their ſides. Chamberlain ſays, the harquebuſes have been diſuſed ever ſince the reign of King William (y).

In the reign of King Edward VI. this corps was very numerous, for in his journal, publiſhed in Burnet's Hiſtory of the Reformation, he ſays, "there muſtered before me, an hundred archers, two arrows apiece, all of the guard;" and afterwards, "ſo it was appointed there ſhould be ordinarily one hundred archers, and one hundred halbertiers, either good wreſtlers, or caſters of the bar, or leapers or runners, all tall men of perſonage."

In the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the yeomen attending her in her different progreſſes were occaſionally mounted; a print of one of them on horſeback is given in the work (z)

In the reign of Queen Anne half this band were armed with harquebuſes (a), the other half with partizans, and both with ſwords; they had then wages and diet allowed them (b), their duty was to wait upon the queen in her ſtanding houſes, forty by day, and twenty by night. At St. James's they waited in the firſt room above ſtairs, called the guard chamber. It is alſo their duty to attend the ſovereign abroad by land or water.

(y) Present State, A.D. 1735. In Rymer there is a grant made by King Charles I. June 3d, 1642, to Thomas Clarke, of the office of taylor for the making and fitting of the clothes for all and ſingular the yeomen of the guard, during life.

(z) This print is copied from a work entitled Diverſarum Gentium Armatura Equeſtris. Ubi fere Europæ, Aſiæ, atq; Africæ equitandi ratio propria expreſſa, et Amſtelodami impreſſa in ædibus Nicolai Johanni Viſcheri, 1617. This yeoman is called Reginæ Angliæ fatelles ferentarius, probably from being without defenſive armour.

(a) Chamberlain ſays, A.D. 1705, "one half of them of late bear in their hands harquebuſes:" how to reconcile this with the aſſertion in note (y) I know not.

(b) In a MS. of the expences of the royal eſtabliſhment for the year 1727, the charges of the table of the yeomen of the guard was 273l. 15s.

A Yeoman of the Guard, attending Queen Elizabeth on a Progress.

At preſent this corps conſiſts of a captain, lieutenant, and enſign, four exons, a clerk of the checque, two meſſengers, and an hundred yeomen, eight of whom are called uſhers. Six are called yeomen hangers, and two yeomen bed goers. The pay of the captain is 1000l. per annum, the lieutenant 500l. and the enſign 300l. The exons 150l. each, the clerk of the checque the ſame. Each of the uſhers 49l. 11s. 3d. each hanger and bed goer the like pay as the uſhers, and every other yeoman 39l 11s. 3d.

CHAPTER VI.

Of the Method of arranging and muſtering the Troops.

IN ancient times, when an army was to be raiſed, either for foreign ſervice, or to guard againſt invaſions or domeſtic inſurrections, the feudal tenants and the poſſe comitatus being aſſembled in their proper diſtricts, they were inſpected by certain provincial officers, termed arraitores, in Engliſh arrayers. Two or more were commonly appointed by the king's commiſſion for each county. It was the duty of theſe arrayers not only to inſpect the ſoldiers, and ſee that they were able-bodied and fit for ſervice, but alſo that they were properly armed, accoutred, and otherwiſe appointed, according to the ſtation and nature of their ſervice. They were likewiſe to arrange both the cavalry and the infantry into their proper bodies, equivalent to the preſent diviſions of troops, ſquadrons, companies, and battalions*.

---

* The Britiſh army, when it takes the field, is ſtill divided into brigades, and thoſe brigades into battalions, ſquadrons, companies, and troops (reſpectively in the infantry and the cavalry). The French have lately made a different diſtribution. Their infantry is divided into half brigades, each half brigade conſiſting of three battalions, and each battalion of nine companies. A company of artillery is attached to each half brigade, for the management of its field-pieces. The half brigades are either of the line, or light infantry; each battalion of thoſe in the line has its company of grenadiers, and each battalion of light infantry one of carabineers.

Each company is compoſed of:

Captain	1	Brought over	8
Lieutenant	1	Corporal or Fourier	1
Under-Lieutenant	1	Corporals	8
Serjeant Major	1	Grenadiers, fuſileers, or carabineers	96
Serjeants	4	Drummers	2
	8		115

A battalion conſiſts (including officers) of - - 1036 men.
A half brigade, with its ſtaff and company of artillery, of 3225

The ancient cavalry was divided into ſmall bodies called conſtabularies, from their being commanded by officers ſtiled conſtables; this we learn from a writ of the 18th of Edward III. 1324 (c); how many men a conſtabularie conſiſted of, is not there ſaid; but in a ſimilar order of John king of France for dividing the French foot, a conſtabularie is ſtated at twenty-five or thirty men (d).

In a MS. account of the pay of the army of K. Edward I. in the library of the Antiquarian Society, as well as in one printed by Brady reſpecting the reign of Edward III. it appears that theſe conſtables received the ſame pay as eſquires, ranked with them in the army (e), and probably had in common with them, under certain circumſtances, the right of diſplaying a pennon of their arms (f). The title of conſtable applied to the commanders of ſmall bodies of men, occurs as early as the reign of King John. It was alſo given to naval officers (g).

The next diviſion ſeems to have been that arranged under a banner, and commanded by a banneret, a rank originally conferred on ſuch only as by their eſtates were enabled to bring a certain num-

---

(c) "Ita quod omnes armis ſufficientibus muniti, videlicet equites in conſtabulariis & pedites in centenis & vintenis arraiati prompti ſint & parati." *Rymer*, tom. 4. p. 78.

(d) "Discribitur ſtatutum Johannis Regis Franc. quo ſtatuitur ut in poſterum, tous pietons ſoient mis par conneſtablies ou compagnies de 25 ou 30 hommes, & que chaque conneſtable prenne double gages, & que les mareſchaux pour les gens d'armes, & les maitres des Arbaleſtriers pour pietons aſſiſteront aux monſtres deux foix le mois." *Du Cange.*

(e) Domino Roberto de Barton clerico aſſignato ad vadia peditum veniencium de com. Northumbr. uſq; Berwic ſuper Twedam ad proficiend. cum rege in exercitu ſuo verſus Stryvelin pro receſſu caſtri regis ibidem, pro vadijs IIII^or. conſtabular. cum equis coopertis, et 392 ſagittar. peditum de eodem com. per unum diem, videl^t. 15 diem Decembr. quo die viſus factus fuit, de eiſdem apud Twedemuth, cuilibet conſtabular. per diem 12d. cuilibet vintenar. par diem 4d. et cuilibet alii pediti per diem 2d.

(f) The pennon was the proper enſign of a bachelor or ſimple knight. Du Freſne ſhews that even eſquires might bear pennons, provided they could bring a ſufficient ſuite of vaſſals into the field.

(g) Et LXXVII. Walenſibus peditibus & VII. conſtabulariis eorum, et 4 archeriis equitibur, qui miſſi fuerunt in Norweiam XXVII. l. & 14 d. de liberatione ſua de 1 menſe per breve regis. Mag. Rot. 3. I. Rot. 11. b. Ductores et conſtabularii navigii regis. Hoved. P. 2. p. 666. n. 10. temp. R. I.

ber of vaſſals into the field; for in the petition for that rank, ſuch ability was always premiſed (h), and the uſual mode of conferring that promotion was cutting or tearing off the point of the pennon of the candidate, and thereby rendering it ſquare, perhaps in alluſion to the command it conferred, which was that of a ſquadron, ſo denominated from being a ſquare body, conſiſting of as many rank as files. Father Daniel quotes two different regulations, reſpecting the number of vaſſals neceſſary to be brought into the field by a petitioner for the rank of banneret: the firſt was twenty-five men at arms, each attended by two horſemen, in all amounting to ſeventy-five men; the ſecond at leaſt fifty men at arms, accompanied as before, making together one hundred and fifty men; taking then an hundred for the medium, that number forms a ſquare of ten in each face, and is the loweſt eſtimation of our preſent ſquadrons. Ancient writers deſcribing the ſtrength of the cavalry in different armies, eſtimate them according to the number of pennons and banners.

ALTHOUGH the bands of cavalry were only divided into conſtabularies, knights might act as intermediate officers, between the conſtable and banneret, commanding two conſtabularies under their pennon.

(h) FROISSART thus recites the petition of John Chaundos to the black prince and Don Pedro, king of Caſtile, for the dignity of banneret, juſt before the battle of Naſars. "Monſeigneur. Veez cy ma banniere je la vous baille par telle maniere qu'il vous plaiſe la d'evelopper, & que anjourduy je la puiſſe lever, car (Dieu mercy) Jay bien de quoy en terre & heritage pour tenir eſtate ainſi come appartient á ce."

A BANNERET was originally one entitled to diſplay his ſtandard in the field. "When a bachelor (ſays the Ceremonial) has long followed the wars, and has land ſufficient to have gentlemen for his vaſſals, and to accompany his ſtandard, he may lawfully raiſe his banner, and not otherwiſe; for no man ought to diſplay his banner in battle, if he has not at leaſt fifty men at arms, with all the men, archers and croſs bow men appertaining to them; and if he has them, he ought at the firſt battle at which he is preſent, to bring a pennon of his arms to the conſtable or mareſchal, or the king's lieutenant in the army, requeſting to bear a banner, which if granted, he muſt call the heralds for witneſſes, when the general or chief officer will cut off the tail of the pennon. Bannerets are mentioned in our hiſtories as early as the time of King Edward I.

Father Daniel ſays, that in France the bannerets formerly commanded the different bodies of cavalry (i) under the counts and dukes.

The denomination of captain and lieutenant, applied to officers commanding ſmall bodies of men, equivalent to our troops and companies, was ſcarcely introduced into our armies before the reign of Henry VII. and VIII. where we find them borne by the officers commanding the yeomen of the guard and the band of gentlemen penſioners, and their occaſional repreſentatives. We likewiſe read of captains and petty captains in acts of the 4th and 5th of Philip and Mary againſt deſertion: probably the former meant a colonel, or one commanding a corps, band, or regiment; the latter the captain of a company (k).

In the liſt of the army employed at St. Quintin's, A.D. 1557, the cavalry was divided into troops of an hundred private men, commanded by a captain, lieutenant, and ſtandard bearer, having each a ſurgeon, a harbinger (ſimilar to a quarter maſter), a chaplain, a trumpeter, and a ſmith. This liſt is among the firſt where a body of cavalry is diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of a troop (l).

In an eſtimate for a royal army, made anno 1623, when it was intended by King James I. to recover the palatinate, the cavalry were

---

(i) Le titre de capitaine a l'egard des Officers de l'armée, excepté le general, ne fut gueres en uſage dans les temps les plus reculez de notre ancient milice Francoiſe ceaux qui commandoit ſous les comtes & les ducs aux temps de la premiere & de la ſeconde race, étoient les viguiers, les centeniers, &c. depuis l'inſtitution de la chevaliere un peu avant Philippe Auguſte, c'etoient les chevaliers bannerets avec ce titre de banneret, qui commandoit les diverſes brigades de gendarmerie. Le titre de capitaine commence a etre en uſage dans le ſignification qu'on y donne aujourdhui, quand nos rois outre les troupes de leur vaſſaux, donnerent des commiſſions a quelque ſeigneurs pour lever des compagnies de gendarmes. Ces ſeigneurs prierent le titre de capitaine de ces compagnies comme on le voit par un ordonnance du Roi Charles V. de laquelle j.ai parlé ailleurs. *P. Daniel*, tom. 2. p. 58.

(k) The term regiment was not then in uſe, being in all likelihood borrowed from the French, whoſe bands were, according to Father Daniel, firſt formed into regiments in the year 1562. Sir James Turner, whoſe book ſtiled Pallas Armata was publiſhed A.D. 1683, ſays, the term regiment was not then an hundred years old.

(l) No. 6848. Harl. MS.

to conſiſt of independent troops of an hundred men each, commanded by a captain, lieutenant, cornet, and quarter maſter, three corporals, and two trumpets(m).

The Engliſh infantry, from the time of Edward I. and probably from that of the conqueſt, to the reign of Henry VII. was divided into thouſands, hundreds, and twenties; anſwering to our regiments, companies, and ſquads; this appears from a variety of writs and commiſſions for aſſembling the national forces on different occaſions, wherein they are conſtantly directed to be arranged in thoſe numbers.

The ſquads of twenty were commanded by officers thence ſtiled vingtners; the companies or hundreds by centenaries, but the title of the officer preſiding over thouſands, is not mentioned in any liſt I have ſeen.

In a liſt of the St. Quintin's army before mentioned, the companies of infantry then conſiſted of an hundred private men; their officers were a captain, lieutenant, and enſign, a ſerjeant, a harbinger, and drummer to each company.

In the army deſigned for the palatinate, the infantry was computed by regiments; each regiment to conſiſt of thirteen companies; the colonel's company to have 192 private men, four (n) gentlemen, four corporals, two ſerjeants, and two drummers; the other companies only one hundred and forty-four privates, three gentlemen, three corporals, two ſerjeants, and two drummers. The commiſſioned officers to each company, a captain, lieutenant, and enſign. But more of the officers in the next chapter.

The different bodies, both cavalry and infantry, being aſſembled and thus arranged, were then to march to the place of general rendezvous, uſually appointed as near the place of embarkation, or part

---

(m) No. 5109, Harl. MS.

(n) Gentleman of a company is he who is ſomething more than an ordinary ſoldier, hath a little more pay and doth not ſtand centinel; in French he is called Appointé, and with the Germans, he is called Gefreuter, they march and watch with arms, they go common rounds and patrouilles, and near an enemy they are to be the forlorn centinels whom the French call perdus. *Sir J. Turner, Pallas Armata*, p. 218.

of the kingdom likely to become the ſcene of action, where on their arrival they were to be muſtered (o).

It is needleſs to enquire into the antiquity of muſters, ſince they muſt have exiſted from the firſt time an army was aſſembled; without a muſter it could not be known whether the feudal tenants or others liable to furniſh ſoldiers, had provided their due number, nor could a general otherwiſe know the true ſtrength of his army, the ground they would occupy, the quantity of proviſion and forage neceſſary for their ſubſiſtence, and that of their horſes, nor the money required for paying them.

The object of a muſter was not only to aſcertain the number of men and horſes, but likewiſe to examine their armour and weapons. In the ordinances of war made by K. Henry V. the office of a commiſſary of muſters is mentioned, and his power and duty thus deſcribed: "It is our will, that every captain of our army, without any fraud or reſerve whatſoever, ſhall make a muſter or ſhew of all his ſoldiers, as well men of arms as archers, fully and perfectly, according to their aſſigned number, before us or our commiſſaries, as often as the ſaid captain ſhall by us or our ſaid commiſſaries, be duly and legally required. Alſo that the captains ſhall ſhew only their own ſoldiers, with whom they have agreed for the expedition, and no others, under pain of perpetual reprobation (p) and the loſs of their wages for the ſaid expedition. We alſo prohibit any one from retaining in his ſervice any ſoldier, ſervant, or boy (q), who was lately in

(o) The term muſter is derived from the barbarous Latin muſtrum & monſtrum, or the old French monſtre, a ſhew or exhibition.

(p) Perpetual reprobation was a perpetual diſqualification to ſerve, or what in modern terms is expreſſed by "rendered incapable of ſerving in any military office." Captain here meant the commanding officer of a body of men, and not the regimental officer of that denomination.

(q) The boys following an army were in the Latin of thoſe days called Garciones, they were the ſervants of the ſoldiers. In father De Aquino's Military Dictionary, Garcio is explained to be a camp ſervant, one who fetched water for the ſoldiers: theſe boys were by the French termed goujats, and according to Richelet were the ſervants of foot ſoldiers; but Boyer calls them, the ſervants of horſe or foot ſoldiers.

the ſervice of another, without the conſent and permiſſion of his prior captain or maſter. We moreover direct and command, that all our commiſſaries in the aforeſaid muſters do diligently enquire after, and ſee that the ſoldiers ſhew their proper arms, without fraud, and this we would have more eſpecially obſerved reſpecting the bowes and arrows; and, if neceſſary, it is our will, that on this article our commiſſaries may compel the captain or maſter to anſwer upon oath."

In Rymer we meet with many more ancient directions for muſters, ſome of them as old as Edward III. but none of them ſo fully deſcribe the duty of the commiſſary as that here cited; it was therefore ſelected in preference to the others, ſome of which are given in the note (r).

Certificates of theſe muſters were frequently ordered to be ſent to the king and council, and ſometimes to the great wardrobe, under the ſeals of the comm ſſioners or commiſſaries.

The method of muſtering the troops in the reign of Queen Elizabeth differed very little from that directed by King Henry V. The duty of a muſter maſter is thus defined by Ralph Smith. "The muſter maſter, takinge the muſter, muſt have a ſpeciall eye and regarde unto thoſe officers appointed the leading of men, that they bee

---

(r) A. D. 1343, 16 Ed. III. a commiſſion was granted by that king to Oliver de Ingham, ſeneſchal of Gaſcony, and Maſter Walter de Weſton, the king's treaſurer for the army in that duchy, whereby on account of divers miſmanagements of the king's money, they are directed that before the wages of the men at arms are paid, they do make diligent ſcrutiny, that they have their due appointments of horſes and armour according to ancient uſage; and that there might be no deceit in the article of numbers, they are commanded with the conſtable and mareſchal of the army to cauſe frequent muſter to be made, one at leaſt in every month; and at the ſame time to inſpect the number and equipment of the armed men: That payment ſhould be made for the effective only, without favour; and to avoid the frauds which frequently happen in the reſtoration of horſes, all thoſe which, according to the cuſtom of war, were to be appreciated, ſhould immediately on their arrival be valued, and marked with ſome particular mark, by which they might again be known. *Rymer.*

In the year 1415, Richard Redman and John Strange were appointed to take the muſter of the forces of Thomas Duke of Clarence, going abroad with the King, and to certify the numbers of the men at arms, armed men, and archers, under their ſeals." *Ibid.*

men of ſervice, and not choſen without great experience, alſo ſober and of good counſaile; and to ſee that the ſouldiers be furniſhed with armour and weapons as followethe, commandinge them to bee obediente and truely to keepe all ſuch lawes and ordenances, as by the ſaid lord lieutenante and his counſaile ſhalbe commanded, ſette downe and appointed bye his authoritie; likewiſe he is to ſee howe everye captaines bande is furniſhed, and thereof to make a booke to the treaſurer, that paymente bée made to the coronalls and captaines, according to the nomber of ſouldiers under every of their bandes."

The following method of calling the roll at a muſter is the ſame as now practiſed. "At every muſteringe or aſſemblinge, the captaines bill ſhalbe called by the clarke, every man anſwearinge to his own name, marchinge foorthe as he is called, that noe man unto twoe names make anſwere; yf any ſouldier bee ſicke or hurte, being not ſerviceable, paye him his wages, give him his paſporte, ſend him home, furniſhe his roome with an hable ſouldier; yf any helthfull ſouldier abſente himſelf at ſuch tymes, let him be puniſhed as in the ſtatutes is mentioned, to the example of the reſt."

The following regulations were laid down for the muſter maſter, in the lawes and ordinances of warre, eſtabliſhed by the earl of Northumberland, lord general of the armie and fleet of K. Charles I. 1640.

"I. No muſter maſter ſhall wittingly let any paſſe in the muſters, but ſuch as are really of the troop or company preſented, upon pain of death.

"II. All captaines ſhall cauſe their troops and companies to be full compleat; and two dayes after the generall muſtering, they ſhall ſend to the lord generall a perfect liſt or roll of all the officers of their troops and companies, and likewiſe of all the troopers and ſouldiers that are in actuall ſervice, putting down diſtinctly on the head of each man his monethly pay.

"III. The like roll or liſt ſhall the captains ſend to the lord generall, and to the treaſurer of the armie upon every pay day, during the ſervice, with a punctuall expreſſion at the bottome of the ſaid roll,

what new troopers or ſouldiers have been entertained ſince the laſt pay day, in lieu of ſuch as are either deceaſed or caſſeer'd (s), and likewiſe the day whereon they were ſo caſſeer'd and entertained.

" IV. Which ſaid liſt or roll ſhall be ſubſcribed not onely by the captain, his lieutenant, and cornet, or enſeign, but alſo by the ſergeants and corporals reſpectively; who ſhall declare upon their oaths, that the troopers and ſouldiers inrolled in the ſaid liſt, are reall and actuall troopers and ſouldiers, of the reſpective troops and companies; and whoſoever ſhall be convicted of falſehood in any of the premiſes, ſhall be puniſhed with death.

" V. No muſter maſter ſhall preſume to receive or accept of any roll to make the muſters by, but the forementioned rolls, upon paine of the loſſe of his place, and other puniſhment at diſcretion.

" VI. No man ſhall preſume to preſent himſelf to the muſter, or to be enrolled in the muſter rolls by a counterfeit name, or ſurname, or place of birth, upon paine of death *."

(s) Casseer'd, from the French word caſſé, diſbanded, diſcharged; this word did not originally mean diſcharged with ignominy, as it now generally does. " Caſſer. En parlant de ſoldat, c'eſt déſarmer un ſoldat à la tête de la campaigne, ou du regiment, et le remercier de ſon ſervice, mais en parlant d'officier c'eſt le faire remercier de la part du Roi, par un commiſſaire des ſervices qu'il a rendus et le renvoir." *Richlet.* This word is now written caſhier'd, which has cauſed an opinion that it had ſome relation to caſh or money.

* Great abuſes having crept into the practice of muſtering the troops half-yearly, ſo that the real effective ſtrength of the army could never be exactly aſcertained, a new regulation has taken place, in virtue of which the ſeveral regiments and corps are muſtered every month by the regimental paymaſter, and detachments of regiments in the reſpective diſtricts in which they are ſtationed by an officer called paymaſter of the diſtrict. Theſe have ſuperſeded the commiſſaries of muſters; and the pay-liſts and muſter-rolls of the army are thus made to tally with each other. The following is the affidavit made by the diſtrict paymaſter, when detachments are muſtered by him.

I —— —— do ſwear, that on the —— of —— I muſtered the ſtaff of the —— diſtrict and the recruiting parties of his majeſty's regiments hereafter ſpecified, viz.

Party of the —— regiment of ——, ſtationed at ——, under the command of —— ——

ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto
ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto
ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto
ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto, &c.

at

At or immediately after the muſter, another important buſineſs took place: this was the appreciation of the horſes of the cavalry; in which the marſhal and ſome other officers appointed for that purpoſe ſet a certain price upon each horſe, which the king was to pay to the owner, in caſe ſuch horſe was either ſlain or incurably lamed in ſervice; this payment appears in our ancient records under the Latin title of Reſtauratio (t), or the French one of Reſtour. In order to make this valuation with the greateſt exactneſs and impartiality, the clerk of the marſhal was to act the part of an appraiſer in behalf of the proprietor, in oppoſition to an officer called the king's clerk: the marſhal ſat as judge or umpire between them; this particular we learn from a manuſcript reſpecting the rights of that office, as claimed by Thomas de Brotherton (u). Sometimes this appreciation was

---

at which time I ſaw ſuch commiſſioned and non-commiſſioned officers, privates and recruits, as are borne on the foregoing muſter-rolls and pay-liſts of the ſaid detachments, excepting ſuch of them as are therein ſtated to be abſent; and that to the beſt of my knowledge and belief, after the moſt careful inveſtigation, the reaſon of abſence ſpecified oppoſite to the reſpective names on the ſaid muſter-rolls and pay-liſts are the true and actual reaſons thereof.

I do further ſwear, that all the names ſet down in the foregoingrolls and pay-liſts have been paid by me, to the reſpective perſons, and for the reſpective ſervices therein ſpecified, in ſtrict conformity to the king's regulations.

(t) Of this word Du Cange gives the following explanation and inſtance, in the treaty made between Philip the Fair, king of France, and William, earl of Hainault, 28th October, 1314. "Li dui mareſchal de France, ou li un d'aus, ou aucuns prudhoms a ce commis, priſeront et eſtimeront loialement per leurs ſermens les chivals morts, et les chivals de nos gens; et nous en fera nos dis Sires plain retour ſelonc leur priſe. Et le dit mareſchal ou cil qui le priſé devroit ſere, entendent tant que aucun cheval feuſſe mort ou perdu, ſi rendroit nos ſires devant dit, de valeur des chevals par priſe de bon Gent. Et infra Aſquiex li Roi nos Sires priera gages et retors. Occurrit paſſim in compatos Theſaurariorum Guerram. Huc etiam pertinet vetus charta, apud Ughellum in Epiſcopis Teatinis. Quod ſi miles dextrarium aut loricam in obſequio illo perdiderit, mihi Goffridus vel ſuus hæres reddere debet, et tamdiu ei nullam debeo facere ſervitium.

(u) Et enſi doit le mareſchal, eſtre preſier des chivaux q ſerront apreſiez, et ſon clerk doit eſtre contreplaſdour encontra le clerc nre, Se le Roy. Brotherton's Claims. Nero, D. vi. Bib. Cott.

made by ſpecial commiſſioners appointed for that purpoſe, and in France by a ſort of jury upon oath. None but the war horſes or charges were appreciated. Baggage horſes were not included in that regulation. Blount mentions a tenant in capite, who held lands on the condition of ſerving King Edward II. in his wars, with a horſe not to be appreciated (x). The accounts of theſe appreciations were frequently ordered to be given in at the great wardrobe.

Rymer, in his Fœdera, has a variety of inſtances of this appreciation; ſome as old as the reign of Henry I. where, in ſeveral agreements between that king and the Earl of Flanders, for furniſhing troops, it is ſtipulated, that reſtauration of horſes ſhall be made to the earl in the ſame manner as is done by the king to his own ſubjects (y).

In the account of Roger de Waltham before cited, we meet with the particulars of a reſtauration made the 15th of Ed. II. as follows: "Nicholas Deſpenſay had reſtour for two of his horſes, viz. one forrell killed in the king's ſervice at York, in the month of May, in the 15th of the ſaid reign, and one bay killed as aforeſaid, at Fellerham, on the 15th of September, 4l." A number of ſimilar entries follow, which ſeem to ſhew that 40s. was the ſum generally allowed for an ordinary troop horſe (z).

"To Edward, Earl of Arundel, on account of two of his horſes appreciated in the ſaid war, one for his knight, Robert de Swinburn, and another for the Lord John, extraneous another of his knight's, which died in harneſs, in the king's wars, on the ſaid day, 16l. 14s. 4d.

(x) Pasch. 14. Edw. II. Dorſ. Blount, 31.

(y) See other agreements in the ſame Collection, tom. 2. p. 265, A.D. 1284, et A.D. 1295. The laſt was an agreement made 23 Edw. I. with the Duke of Brabant for two thouſand horſemen, armed with iron, to ſerve for half a year, for which 160,000 livres Tournois was to be paid for all demands, except the horſes of arms, which were to be replaced as uſual, and the king of England to cauſe them to be valued.

(z) A sort of reſtoration of horſes is ſtill made in our armies, there being, as I am informed, an allowance to the regimental ſtock purſe, and officers of the cavalry, of 15l. for each officer's charger, or private troop horſe ſlain in battle; the like allowance is made to the contractors

"AYMER DE VALLENCE, Earl of Pembroke, for reſtauration of two of his horſes appreciated in the Scottiſh wars the preſent year; the one a ſorrel, for John de Freville, his retainer or ſervant, and the other a brown bay, for John de Berne, his ſervant, dead in the king's ſervice, in the month of Auguſt; by a valuation made of them by Thomas de Cheſter and Godrick his clerk, at Newcaſtle upon Tyne, the 19th September, when theſe men appreciated them at 10l."

---

contractors for furniſhing horſes to draw the artillery, for every horſe that actually dies in harneſs.

ACCORDING to recent regulations, the following indemnifications are allowed to officers, whoſe horſes have been killed or taken by the enemy, or ſhot for the glanders.

CAVALRY.

Heavy dragoons, or horſe, 1ſt charger	47	5	0
Light dragoons, - - - 1ſt ditto	36	15	0
Heavy or light ditto, - - 2d ditto	31	10	0
Quarter-maſter's horſe	29	8	0

INFANTRY.

Field officer's charger	31	10	0
Adjutant's ditto	31	10	0
Captain and ſubaltern's horſes, each	18	18	0
Battalion horſes, both cavalry and infantry, each	18	18	0
General officer's 1ſt charger	47	5	0
Ditto ditto 2d ditto	31	10	0
Staff officers' horſes, each	18	18	0

AID-DU-CAMPS, brigade-majors, and other ſtaff officers, whoſe ſituation requires their keeping good horſes, receive as the light dragoons.

CHAPTER VII.

Of the Staff, Field, and Regimental Officers of different Ranks; with the ſucceſſive Alterations to the preſent Time.

FIRST among the ſtaff officers of our ancient armies ſtood the high conſtable, who was the ſupreme commander of the army next the king; and his authority, in ſome caſes, even ſeemed to claſh with that of royalty, inſomuch that it was deemed too great to be entruſted to any ſubject, and was therefore by Henry VIII. laid aſide.

THE title of conſtable is by ſome etymologiſts derived from Comes Stabuli, the earl or chief officer of the king's ſtables; others deduce it from the Saxon terms koning-ſtable, the king's ſtay or hold. If it was at firſt a civil office, it ſoon became a military one, ſignifying the commander of an army.

THE firſt conſtable of England is ſaid to have been created by the Conqueror (a), and the office was afterwards held by the Bohuns, earls of Hereford and Eſſex, in conſequence of their being poſſeſſed of certain manors (b), whence it came to the Staffords and dukes of Buckingham as heirs general; but Edward, Duke of Buckingham, being attainted of high treaſon, anno 13th of Henry VIII. the office became forfeited to the crown, and ſince that time has been only granted occaſionally (pro hac vice) to be exerciſed at a coronation, or ſome other great public ſolemnity.

BY ſtatute the high conſtable of England had cognizance of all things appertaining to war and arms, and abroad ſat as ſupreme

(a) JACOBS's Law Dictionary.

(b) THE manors of Harlefield, Newmarket, and Whitenhurſt.

judge on all trials, as well for military offences as other matters of litigation, between ſoldiers or the followers of the army, in which he was aſſiſted by the earl marſhal, three or more doctors of the civil law, and a clerk, whoſe duty it was, like the preſent judge advocate, to proſecute all military delinquents.

He was alſo at home a ſupreme judge in all matters of honour and diſputes reſpecting armorial bearings, taking precedence of the earl marſhal, even in what was denominated his own court.

In a return made by the officers of the exchequer to King Edward I. on being ordered by him to ſearch their records for the fees uſually received by the high conſtables, they ſtate, that having conſulted a book of the conſtitutions of Henry II. and other authorities, they find, that the conſtables of England ought and were accuſtomed to receive, by virtue of their office, two pence out of every pound paid by the king to his ſtipendiary troops, with the army, or elſewhere, on his ſervice; and alſo that he was entitled to the ſame deliveries for his ſubſiſtence as the chancellor and ſeneſchall; which was, when they eat abroad, five ſhillings a-day, with one dominical (c), and two ſalted ſemnels (d), two quarts of claret (e), and one of ordinary or houſehold wine (f), with wax and other candles but if they eat in the palace, they were to receive only 3s. 6d. a-day, two ſalt ſemnels, one quart of houſehold wine, and a ſufficiency of candles (g).

Over and above theſe allowances, the high conſtable had divers other privileges and emoluments; the latter ſhall be mentioned under the head of pay.

Besides the high conſtable of England, other conſtables were ſome-

(c) Dominical ſimnel, a better ſort of biſcuit made for Sundays and holidays.

(d) An inferior kind of ſimnel, mixed with ſalt; this, by miſtake, is printed in Rymer, ii ſolidos, inſtead of ii ſalata.

(e) Vino claro, claret.

(f) Et unum ſextarium de vino expenſali; which is thus explained by Du Cange, vinum expenſabile, quotidiana potus in uſus domeſticorum; vin de depenſe, noſtris vulgo boite, vel. bouvande.

(g) For this return, ſee Rymer, Fœd. tom. 2. p. 191. Madox's Hiſt. of Exchequer.

times appointed to command the king's armies, perhaps when particular circumſtances prevented the high conſtable from attending; or, they might be his deputies, when more armies than one were raiſed and employed. An inſtance of this is found in Rymer, in the 26th year of the reign of King Henry III. when William de Cantilupe, the younger, John de Gray, Philip Baſſet, and Paul Peyvur, were appointed by that king to command his army in Poictou (h).

The rights, privileges, and power of a high conſtable of France are ſtated at large by Father Daniel, and will be found in No. 2 of the Appendix.

The mareſchal, or marſhal, was the officer next in command to the conſtable *.

This office is as old as the conqueſt; there were two marſhals created by William the Conqueror, Roger de Montgomery and William Fitzoſborne. It was conferred, for ſeveral generations, on the family of the Clares, earls of Pembroke; after which, reverting to the crown, it was held by different great perſonages, till the 25th Henry VIII. when it was granted to Thomas Howard, Duke of Norfolk, and his heirs male for ever, with power to execute it by deputy; ſince which it has with ſome interruptions ariſing from attainders, and other conſequences of civil diſſenſions, continued in that family.

Besides the earl marſhal, it appears that other marſhals have occaſionally been appointed to command our armies, perhaps for the ſame reaſons as were ſuggeſted reſpecting the conſtable †.

(h) Rymer's Fœd. tom. 1. p. 410. tom. 1. p. 173.

* Some derive the term mareſchal from the two Saxon words, mar, march, or marach, *equus*, and ſcalch, *præfectus*; that is to ſay, that the office of marſhal was formerly the ſuperintendency of the king's horſes, like that of the conſtable, but ſubordinate to it.

† King Henry VII. albeit there was an earl marſhal of England in being, appointed Sir Robert Willoughby, Lord Brooke, to be marſhall of his army or hoaſt, in the eighth year of his reign; and gave authority to Sir John Digby, knight, marſhall, and Sir Robert Clifford, to uſe marſhall law againſt rebelles, in the twelfth year of his reigne. Hiſtorical Anecdotes of the Howard Family, p. 171.

THE following liſt of droits and fees claimed and enjoyed by Thomas de Brotherton, ſon of King Edward I. in virtue of his office of marſhal of England, is preſerved in the Britiſh Muſeum, written in the old French (i).

(i) COTTON, MS. Nerv. D. VI. An Engliſh copy is printed in the Hiſtorical Anecdotes of the Howard Family, p. 151. ſaid there to be truly copied out of a book, written in the time of King Henry VIII. alſo in the Cotton collection; as this copy is, in ſome articles, fuller than the French, and differs in others, it is here given.

" FIRST, The mareſhall, by authority and power of his office, ought to have the foreward in every field, and to have it by the king's aſſignment.

Of the number of ſoldiers. THE mareſhall ought to appoint the number of the noblemen, of what arms, and of all the chiefeſt in battaile, and other routs, and of all archers.

Of the appointment of lodgings. THE mareſhall, with his officers, and lawful deputies, when they ride out, to appoint lodgings for every eſtate after their degrees.

Of the mareſhall's watch. THE mareſhall ought to be abroad in the field, untill the other be lodged, for many conſiderations; and ought not to come to his own lodging, untill the carriages be come into the ſaid field.

Of the watchinge banner. THE mareſhall to have borne before him a watchinge banner, whereby every captain ſhall know him by the ſame.

Of the mareſhall's courts. THE mareſhall ought to have all the courts and leetes holden under him, and in the name of the mareſhall of England.

Of ſuch caſtles as be taken in time of warre, within the reade. THE mareſhall ought to have, when he maketh any roade, all manner of beaſts that have no horns, and all the horſes unſhodd, and all hoggs, and other gelded beaſts.

What he ſhould have of every buyer and ſeller; and of ſuch as ſet up lodgings. THE mareſhall ought to have of every merchant, buyer, or ſeller of any thing amongſt the hoſt, every week, foure pence; and of every one that ſetteth up lodgings, foure pence.

How he ought to have all forfeitures. THE mareſhall ought to have all forfeitures of harnys, of ſuch as be miſdoers, either by day or night.

How he ought to ſett price, and have aſſize of ale and beer. THE mareſhall ought to ſett price of all wyne and ale, and have aſſize thereof; and alſo to ſett price of all other victuals that are ſold in the hoſt; alſo, he ought to have, of every barrel of ale or beere ſold in the hoſt, one penny.

How he ſhall have all new pelfrey. THE mareſhall ought to have all ſuch towns as are taken and given up without compoſicion, all the harneys, hole clothes that be new, all manner of veſſels, coats, ſheets, coverletts, feather bedds, table clothes, towells, with all other things of pelfrey to his advantage.

How the conſtable and mareſhall ſhall watch. THE conſtable and mareſhall ſhall ordeyne and deviſe the manner of watching, and the mareſhall to ſett the watch, and the conſtable to

THESE are the uſages that Thomas de Brotherton claimed to uſe, by his office of marſhalſey.

---

viſit them, and to give them the watch word; and all theſe things muſt be obſerved at the ſiege of a town, or a caſtle, or when they remove, whither ſoever it be.

How they ought to watch in the king's campe or hoſte. THE conſtable one night, and the mareſhall another night, ſhall make certain watch, to ride out for to ſcoure, and aſſure the hoſt; alſo to take all ſtrangers out of the hoſt; and as for the conſtable and mareſhall, they ought not to watch nightly, but in default of others.

How the mareſhall admitteth all the king's ſervants in warres. THE mareſhall, and the clerke of the kinge's wardrobe, ought to receive all the ſervants that ſhall come to ſerve the king, by XL daies: and after they have ſerved out that terme, they ought not, nor may not depart from the hoſt, until he or they have a letter of teſtification from the conſtable or mareſhall, witneſſing that they have done their ſervice.

For priſing of horſes. THE mareſhall, or his deputies and officers, ſhall prize the horſes that ſhall be ſold. Alſo, the mareſhall's clerke, when any plea ought to be pleaded, ought to make plea againſt the king's clerke.

The ordering of the king's battaile. THE mareſhall ought to be with the conſtable before the king, at the ordering of the battailes; and he ought to have in his companie, all manner of men of warre, as well footmen as horſemen, as the conſtable hath; and thereby he may the better deviſe to lodge all the hoſt, and the ſcouts to the ſafeguard of the hoſt.

How the pleas belong to the conſtable and mareſhall. ALSO, when the battailes be ordeyned, the ſteward ought not in any thing to inter-meddle with the pleas that be in the hoſt, but only the conſtable and mareſhall; of which the conſtable ſhall have the fines, and the marſhal the amerciaments and forefeitures of them that have deſerved juſtice, and the profits of them that be commanded to priſon.

What the mareſhall ſhall have of every artificer. THE mareſhall ſhould have of every merchant, armorer, taylor, barber, and of every man that buyeth and ſelleth in the field, every Saturday, in and for aſſigning of them their places for keeping of their ſhopps, four pence; and in likewiſe he ſhall have, if the ſaid perſons ſojourne but only two or three daies in one place.

For the mareſhall's court. ALSO, no order ought to be made without the conſtable and mareſhall, and in every company ought to be a knight, or an eſquire, under the high conſtable and mareſhall, to appoint their lodgings, and to clayme their fees, and the mareſhall ſhall have, as is aforeſaid, all the gelded beaſts, horſes, and ſuch other beaſts as have no horns; and the conſtable hath been accuſtomed to have all the ſhorne beaſts, or ſuch as have uſed to be ſhorne; and all colts and other beaſts, as maires, ſheep, and goats, and hoggs, except ſuch as have been gelded, to be free and common to all them that may get them; and likewiſe, be all manner of beaſts, when they be brought into the field and cried havoke, then every man to take

Also, It is right, that the conſtable and mareſhall ſhall have the number of the armed men, and the names of every one embodied, and under arms, as alſo of the archers; and when they ride forth, the conſtable and marſhall ſhall aſſign their quarters; firſt, as is reaſonable, to the van guard, and every other battaile to remain in the field till the preceding one is quartered; when they are lodged in tents or pavilions, the white banner ſhall be the rear guard of the whole; and no carriage to remain behind it.

When an inroad takes place, the conſtable ſhall have, out of the plunder taken, all the beaſts without horns, all the unſhod horſes, and hogs; the marſhall ſhall have all the caſtrated beaſts.

Item, The conſtable ſhall have of every merchant or ſutler, buying or ſelling in the army, 4d. and for a barrel 1d. and ſhall have the aſſize of all things ſold, wine or beer.

Item, He ſhall take of every proſtitute, 4d. a week; and from thoſe who erect lodges or ſtalls, the marſhall ſhall have four pence.

Item, The conſtable ſhall have all the forfeitures of armour, of thoſe who miſbehave, day or night; and alſo in towns taken and ſurrendered at diſcretion, he ſhall have the armour, and all the entire or uncut cloth.

Item, The marſhall ſhall have all the veſſels of ſilver, cotes, feathers, ſheets, coverlets, table cloths, towels, and other kinds of pelf.

Item, The conſtable and marſhall ſhall order the maner of thoſe

---

take his part, if the time therefore be convenient, and that the ſame may be done without prejudice of the hoſt.

For priſoners that eſcape and be taken againe. Also, if it fortune any priſoner to be taken in warre, and the ſaid priſoner eſcape out of the hold of him that took him, and if he fortune to be taken by the watch, they ſhall bring him to the mareſhall, and the mareſhall ought to have the proffit of his ranſome, for he is taken as an eſtraye.

Of every homager armed. If any do homage armed, or on horſebacke, the mareſhall ſhall have the horſe, with all the harneys.

Of the mareſhall's court. And at ſuch times as the king is in warre, then ought the conſtable and mareſhall to hold the courts, and the mareſhall to have the amerciaments and forfeitures of them that break the commandements of the conſtable and the mareſhall."

who watch, and the marſhall ſhall cauſe them to make themſelves ready at the hour of eating. The marſhall ſhall poſt them, and the conſtable viſit them, and give them the watch word; and theſe things ſhall be done at the ſiege of town or caſtle; and when the army is in tents or pavilions, the conſtable one night, and the marſhall another, ſhall cauſe certain perſons to ride abroad, to protect the army from marauders belonging to it; and the conſtable and marſhall ſhall not watch, but on default of others.

ITEM, The conſtable ought to have from the army, horſes for himſelf and ſuite; and the marſhall, and a clerk of the king's wardrobe, ought to receive all the perſons who come to ſerve the king for forty days, who, when they have performed their ſervices, cannot depart from the army, untill they have letters from the conſtable and marſhall, teſtifying, that they have duly performed them: and the marſhall ought to appreciate the horſes, which are to be prized; and his clerk ought to act as counter pleader, againſt the clerks of our lord the king.

ITEM, The marſhall ſhould be at the ordaining of the battailes before the king and council, reſpecting their arrangement into conſtableriers; and he ought, as well as the conſtable, to have a roll of all the men of arms in the army, and of all the infantry, to be the more able to appoint the watches, ſentinels, and ſcouts, for the ſafety of the army; and when the battailes are arranged, the ſeneſchal ought not to meddle with the pleas in the army, which belong only to the conſtable and marſhall, of which the conſtable is to have the fines, and the marſhall, the amercements and forfeitures of all thoſe condemned, and the profit of all thoſe committed to priſon.

THE marſhall ſhall have of every merchant that follows the army, of every armourer, taylor, ſutler, barber, or cook; and from every man that buys and ſells in the army; and from every proſtitute, every Saturday they ſojourne there; and of every one keeping a ſhop, 4d.; and in the ſame manner at every removal of the army, after their ſojourning two or three days; and the marſhall ſhall have all the gelded beaſts taken by the ſoldiers of the army in any inroad,

and no parties to go forth on any enterprife, without the permiffion of the conftable and marfhall; each party fhould have a knight, or in his place, an efquire, to quarter them, that is to fay, the marfhall fhall have all the caftrated beafts and the conftable all the colts, thefe are the fees of the conftable and marfhall; the mares belong to thofe that can take them, and the fhod horfes to the conftable.

ITEM, All the fheep and hogs belong to fuch private foldiers of the army as can take them; and when they come into the army, and havock is cried, every one may take his part.

ITEM, If a prifoner is taken in the feat of war, and fhall efcape from the cuftody of him who took him, and is retaken by the guard, they fhall take him to the marfhalfea, when the marfhall fhall have the advantage of his ranfome, he being a kind of eftray.

THESE are the principal rights and privileges of the marfhal, confidered as a military officer; he had divers others in virtue of his duty about the king's court, which are alfo fpecified in the anecdotes before mentioned; and as fome of them are of a very fingular nature, and ftrongly mark the barbarity of the manners of thofe times, they are tranfcribed in the note (k).

AT prefent the earl marfhal is not confidered as a military officer.

(k) THE marfhalfey is a ferjeantry granted to the Earl of Norfolk in fee, who when he cannot perfonally execute the office, may appoint a knight, but with the king's confent. If the knight marfhall fo appointed, do make any default, the earle marfhall fhall not be amerced as earle, but only as fervitor.

HE hath a vierge to be carried before the king, when upon the fpace about the king, whereſoever he be in England, conteining twelve miles (leucarum) is called the vierge.

IN warre he is not bound to keep watch, but every night fhall place the watch, and difcharge them in the morning; he fhall go out with the forragers, with banners diſplaied for their protection.

HE fhall fee execution done upon the judgments of the king's ſtewards within the vierge.

HE fhall have the charge of the prifoners.

HE fhall have all fpotted beafts, or of divers colours; and of every pound of that fee, he fhall pay two pence to the king.

THERE is aſſigned unto him one clerk, and one ſerjeant, for keeping of them that are attached.

IT

NEXT in order to the marſhal, was the maſter of the ordnance, but this was no farther back than the firſt year of the reign of King Richard III. when " Rauf Bigod was appointed to the maſterſhip of the ordnance, during life, with an hundred marks fee for himſelf, and the wages of 6d. per diem for a clerk, and 6d. for a yeoman, to be paid out of the iſſues of the manors of Kyrton and Lyndeſay in Lincolnſhire, with the knight lyvery of houſehold (l). This is the firſt maſter of the ordnance I have been able to find on record; the clerk of the ordnance is mentioned in Rymer as early as the 5th of Henry V. (m).

IT does not appear that the Engliſh had any particular officer preſiding over their projectile machines or artillery, previous to the invention of gunpowder and cannon (n), although in France they were under the direction of an officer ſtiled the grand maſter of the croſs

---

IT is their charge to keep the vierge from harletts.

THE marſhall ſhall have of every common harlett, within the limits of the houſe, four pence the firſt daie.

IF ſhe be found againe, ſhe ſhall be forbidden, before the ſteward, not to enter into the king's houſe, nor the queene's, nor their children.

IF the third time ſhe be found, ſhe ſhall be impriſoned or abjured the court.

IF ſhe be found the fourth time, her private parts ſhall be ſhaven.

IF the fifth time, her upper lip ſhall be cut off.

AND it was wont, that the marſhall had belonging to the court, ſeventeen ſingle women, that ſhould ſweere to the knight marſhall, that they knew no more common women but themſelves following the court, no thief, no meſell, but they ſhould utter it to the mareſhall, and they ought to ſerve the court, and no other.

(l) No. 433. Harl. MS. p. 105.

(m) WHERE a writ is directed to John Louth clerke of the ordnance, and John Benct of Maidſtone, maſon, reciting that a ſufficient number of maſons and labourers had been aſſigned for making ſeven thouſand ſtone ſhot for guns of different ſorts, with a ſufficiency of ſtone for the ſame, as well in the quarries of Maidſtone or elſewhere, as ſhould be moſt for the benefit of the ſervice.

THE workmen to be kept till the whole war completed, and men to be impreſſed for the carting, boating, or other carriage of the ſaid ſtones.

(n) MACHINES for ſhooting ſtones and darts, uſed in ſieges before the invention of fire arms, were called artillery.

bowes, an office of great antiquity in that kingdom, at leaſt as old as the reign of St. Louis, who died anno 1270. From this and the little mentioned in our public records reſpecting theſe machines, it ſeems they were not very numerous in our armies, but that they had and uſed them in ſieges, we learn from a variety of hiſtorians.

Besides the grant to Rauf Bigod before mentioned, there occur in the ſame reign and manuſcript divers others reſpecting the ordnance, which though not immediately in point to our preſent ſubject, yet as they ſerve to ſhew the very low ſtate of that eſtabliſhment in its infancy, I ſhall here tranſcribe in the note below (o).

From this ſlender beginning, the office of maſter of the ordnance ſoon grew into great importance, as may be ſeen by the

---

(o) To Richard Warmyngton th' office of the artillerie within the town of Calais, with the wages of 12d. by the day, and 6d. for a yeoman under him for life.

John Stoke th' office of clerk of th' ordonnance within England or elſewhere, for tyme of his life, with the wages of 6d. by the day, to be received of the lordſhips of Wrytell, Havering, Boyton, Hadleighe, Rayleighe, and Rochford in Eſſex, and of the manors of Tunbrugge, Penſhurſt, Middleton, and Marden in Kent.

William Tempill th' office of yeoman of th' ordonnance for life, with wages of 6d. by the day, to be received out of the lordſhips as above.

To Richard Garnet the office of ſerjeant of the king's tents for life, with wages of 12d. per diem for himſelf, and 4d. per diem for a yeoman under him, and 100s. for a houſe to lay the tents in; 46s. 8d. for his robes; 13s. 4d. for his yeoman's robes, to be taken from the the iſſues of the lordſhips of Wrytell, Havering, Boyton, Hadleighe, Rayleighe, and Rochford, in co. Eſſex, and the lordſhip of Tunbrugge, Penſhurſt, Middleton, and Marden, in co. Kent, by the hands of the receyvours.

John Atkynson kep. of the armour, in the tower, or elſewhere, within England for life, with fee of 6d. per diem, to be received as above.

To Henry Grey the younger ſquier, the king hath confirmed unto him th' office of the keeping of the armoury within the tower of London for term of his life, with the wages and fees accuſtomed to be received by fee farm of Norwiche.

Vincent Tentler, armourer; the king hath confirmed unto him to be his armourer during his life, with 20l. fee by the hands of the treaſurer and chamberlain of the exchequer.

Sir John Donne, knight; th' office of ſerjeant or maſter of the armoury within the tower of London, during his life, with wages of 12d. for himſelf, 6d. for a yeoman, and 3d. for a gowne, by the hands of the ſheriff of London and Midd. of the iſſues, &c. this laſt grant was in the 3d, all the reſt in the 1ſt, of K. Richard III.

eſtabliſhment for the expedition to St. Quintin's, in the year 1557, given in note (p) from a manuſcript in the Britiſh Muſeum.

An ancient manuſcript in the Harleian Collection, marked No. 4685, entitled "The Order of a Campe or Army Royall, with the Dutie of every Officer belonging to the ſame, per B. Con Milit. 1518," deſcribes the duty of the maſter of the ordnance in the field, in theſe words:

First, it is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, after that he hathe recyved his charge at the councelles handes, he muſt firſte of all, in anie wife before he ſhall goe fowrthe to the campe, ſe that they lacke no kynde of munition or ſuch other neceſſaries whiche apperteine to the ſaid Mr. of th' ordonnance.

And there are apperteyninge to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, a leyvetenent and certaine clerkes, which are all in wages.

Also the ſayd Mr. of th' ordonnance muſt alſo firſte of all receyve the ordonnance, ſhotte, corne powder, ſerpentine powder, match and all other munitions, as fire-workes, bowes, arrowes, ſtrings, pikes, billes, halbertes, harquebuſſes, qualivres, launces, light horſemen's ſtaves, javelins, and bore ſpeares.

And further the ſaid Mr. of th' ordonnance muſt recyve all kinds of neceſſaries, that is to ſaie, ladders, ladles, and ſpunges, for artillerie,

---

(p)

	Per Diem. l.	s.	d.
The maſter of th' ordynance	1	6	8
His lieutenant	0	13	4
Maſter of the carriages	0	10	0
The trenche maſter	0	5	0
A chaplain	0	1	0
A clerke of th' ordynance	0	2	0
Two clerkes	0	2	0
A ſurgeon	0	1	0
Sixe boweyers	0	6	0
Sixe fletchers	0	6	0
Three carpenters	0	3	0
Three ſmythes	0	3	0
Three guyders of th'ordonnance	0	4	0
Twelve carriages	3	0	0
A drumme	0	1	0
A phife	0	1	0
A hundreth and twentie ſymyres	1	5	0
Ten halberdyers	0	10	0
Hacquebutters on horſeback for the lieutenant	0	6	0
Mr. gonner	0	3	4
Twelve gonners	0	16	0

See No. 6844, *Harl. MS.*

mattocks, ſpades, ſhovells, pick-axes, crowes of iron, cart wheeles for ordonnances, carriages for ordonnance, axeltrees, hand-axes, axeltrees for ordonnances, windoſes for the defence of ordonnance, cart traces, with all kind of cart wares, as ropes, creſſed and creſſettes, lights, lanthorns, candell and linkes, with all other neceſſaries, whiche muſte be foreſene, that there be no lack before their goinge on.

Further yt is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, after he comes into campe, and the provoſt marſhall hathe appointed the grownde moſt mete and neceſſarie for the artillerie, then muſt the aforeſaide Mr. of th' ordonnance cauſe the ſaide ordonnance to be brought to the ſaide place appointed, there to be placed to the moſt advantage.

Item, the ſaid Mr. of th' ordonnance muſt cauſe the ſaid munition to be brought to the place appointed and mete therefore, which muſt be trenched about, for the danger of fyre; and the aforeſaid Mr. of th' ordonnance muſt charge ſome diſcreet man withe watch, yf it ſtande in neede.

Also the ſaid Mr. of th' ordonnance muſt ſe that there be attendinge on the office of ordonnance, certaine artificers, as carpenters, wheele wrights, ſmithes, bowyers, fletchers, maſons, and ſuche other neceſſarie men, mete and convenient therefore.

The ſaid Mr. of th' ordonnance his office is, that yf there be any capteine that lacketh munition for his ſoldiers, the ſaid capteine ſhall come to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and he muſt commande the clerke of th' ordonnance to deliver ſuche munition as he lacketh; providinge alwaies that the clerke of th' ordonnance do take a bill of the captaine's hand, or of his lyvetenment, for the ſaide munition, and at the paye daye the clerke ſhall deliver the ſaide bille unto the treaſurer, that he maye ſtaye ſo much monye in his handes as ſhall anſwer the queen for the munition ſo delivered.

Furthermore yt is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance that if the enemye and yowe joyne battaile, the grownde beinge appointed by th' officer of the field, where the battaile ſhall be pytched, to repaire to the field, there to ſee th' ordonnance planted to the moſt

advantage; and yf occaſion ſhal be given, to remove the ſaid artillerie, as ſhall ſeme good to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and in anye wiſe to be circumſpect that the Mr. gonners do their duties belonging thereto."

ANOTHER, and ſeemingly a more ancient manuſcript, late the property of Mr. Anſtis, has ſeveral curious particulars reſpecting the power and perquiſites of the maſter of the ordnance, intermixed with the duty of the provoſt marſhal of the artillery, under the following head:

"THESE be the AUTHORITIES and POWER that the PROVOSTE MARSHALL and his LIEFTENANT have in the Juriſdiction of the Artillerie.

FIRSTE, the provoſte marſhall hath none authoritie to bear his ſtaffe nor his lieftenante within the juriſdiction of the artillerie, withoute licence of the provoſte of the artillerie, but to lett his ſtaffe before the artillerie gate, as the antient cuſtome is in the realms of France, Spayne, Portingale, Naples, &c. &c. Cicellie and Levant.

ITEM, if there be anie perſon found in the artillerie, charged with a cryme, ſoe muſt the provoſte of the artillerie deliver him out of the artillerie unto the provoſte marſhall or his lieftennents, reſervinge allwayes that the ſaid provoſte of the artillerie ſhall keepe for himſelfe all thoſe goods and clothinges belonging to the foreſaid "crymeneux dedely patient (q)."

ITEM, all thoſe of the ſmall artillerie, as ſerpentines, courtoux, bombardes, are bounden and muſt forth with eache of their maſter gunners and other gunners, at the commandement of the originall maſter gunner, uppon the payne and correctinge of the chief maſter of the artillerie and his counſell.

ITEM, that all the carpenters are bounden to be by their (r) mantells and workes in the artillerie, as well in the fields as els wheare, that is, in anie buſines to doe, upon payne to abide the correctinge of the ſaid maſter and his counſell.

(q) So in the original.

(r) PROBABLY mantlets.

Item, the maſter of the artillerie ſhall doe crie with ſound of trumpett, within his juriſdictione of the artillerie, with his provoſte, that all maſter gunners, courtoux, ſerpentines and all other beinge of the ſame offices, that each man ſhall keepe the ordinances made by the great maſter of the artillerie, every man ſeverlie keepinge his place, his peece, and their fire and powder; and their ſervants and boies ſhall diligentlie watch upon their maſters, and abide by them, to ſee what they have need of, or anye thinge ſhoulde lacke, as is powder, ſtones, pellets, neceſſarie unto them where they lie, uppon the paine to abide the correction of the maſter of the artillerie, lieftenment, or provoſte.

Item, the provoſte ſhall goe with the lieftenment of the kinge or prince of the armie, with the conſent and licence of the great maſter of the artillerie, to make place, as is accuſtomed to be done of olde, and that they ſhall take footemen enough to make a place to ſhote, and diche it as apparteyneth, within the which they may bring in their waynes and cartes with powder and other neceſſarie thinges, and ſoe thereuppon to depute and ordeigne VI. or VII. men deputed or aſſigned by the maſter of the artillerie to the defence of the ſame, upon the payne to be corrected as is aforeſaid.

And wheareas the maſter of the ordinance is committed and made by anie kinge, prince, or captaine generall, and by their counſell, is admitted and charged with the gunners in towne or in field, their ought no man without commandement of the ſaid prince, lieftenment, captaine generall, and the ſaide counſelle, to put noe gunner, in or out the ordinance, without the licence of the ſaid maſter, or the lieftennent, for his diſcharge.

Item, all other waynes and cartes that bee laden ſhalbe ſett in good ordinance, as it hathe been of olde and antient cuſtome to be, on paine as is aforeſaid.

Item, that all the mantells and timber worke, baſiliſques, water milles, and other inſtruments belonginge to the ſieged towne or caſtell, the which ſhalbe brought ſoe ſecretlie by night and darknes as is poſſible to be done.

Item, the gentlemen deputed to give attendance upon the maſter of the artillerie, to govern any bombards or cannon, ſhall not doe nothinge, otherwiſe then is ordeyned by the ſaid maſter of the artillerie, uppon payne to abide the correction of the ſaide maſter.

Item, that all ſervants and officers that have to doe under the authoritie of the maſter of the artillerie, and in his abſence, his lieftennent and officers, as his chappeleyne, receivor, comptroller, provoſtes, and clerkes, maſter gunners of cortolles or ſerpentines, and all other ſervants, as waggoners, carters, their ſervants, with other, ſhall keepe and fulfil all ſuch ſtatutes as are ordained by the great maſter of the artillerie and his counſell, lieftennent, and provoſte, upon payne to be corrected to the example of all other.

Item, as a towne is wonne, whether it is by aſſalt, per force, ſubtile practiſe, or by anie other manner given up, be it towne, caſtell, pyle, church, or baſtile, or fortreſſe, the chief maſter of the artillerie, or his lieſtennent, ſhall ordayne, that the maſter gunners and their companie ſhall have the beſt bell within that place ſoe wonne, or the churchwardens ſhall appoynt or compound with the great maſter of the artillerie and his counſell; and that to be reported by the provoſte of the artillerie, and given knowledge to the lords and rulers of that place ſoe wonne, with the comons of the ſame, what that the maſter of the artillerie, his counſell and maſter gunners, and their companie have determined and ordeyned, by a convenable and reaſonable eſtimacion, to ſee and knowe if the lordes and commons will hold the ordinance and appoyntment made (s).

(s) In France this perquiſite belongs to the grand maſter of the artillery, "Le grand maître a encore une privilege dont il n'eſt point fait mention dans ſes proviſions; c'eſt que quand une ville ou fortereſſe a laiſſé tirer le canon, les cloches des égliſes, les utenſils de cuivre & autre metail lui appartiennent, & doivent être rachetées d'une ſomme d'argent par les habitans, à moins que dans la capitulation on ne convienne du contraire.

Ce droit pourroit bien avoir été accordé au grand maître de l'artillerie en de dommagement d'un autre qu'avoit le grand maître des arbalêtriers, auquel a ſuccedé le grand maître de l'artillerie, & qui eſt ainſi exprimé dans un ancien regiſtre que j'ai cité ailleurs. "*Que ſe ville,*

ITEM, that all the butchers of the artillerie ſhall flea their beaſts without the precinct of the artillerie, and that they grave and burie the filth of thoſe beaſts in the yearth, without the artillerie, upon payne to be, &c. &c.

ITEM, that all the horſes and other beaſtes that be killed, or die one their own death, being carrion, the provoſt of the artillerie muſt convey them out of the parke of artillerie, for becauſe of infection, uppon the payne to be corrected by the maſter and his counſell, or his lieftennent.

ITEM, the provoſt of the artillerie ſhall have his right of the victuallers within his juriſdictione, in likewiſe as the provoſte marſhall hath in the greate armye by eſtimatione."

HAVING here given the general outlines of the duties and privileges

---

ville, fortreſſe ou chateau eſt pris, a lui appertient toute l'artillerie quelle que ſoit qui trouvée y eſt." *P. Daniel* Hiſt. de la Mil. Franc. tom. 2. p. 526. Something like this perquiſite to the grand maſter of the croſs bowes, was allowed by King William III. to the commanding officer of artillery in Ireland, as is ſhewn by the following warrant: William R. Whereas by our royal warrant bearing date the 25th day of February, in the 4th year of our reign; we did authorize and empower the lieut. general and principal officers of our ordnance, to pay to our truſty and well beloved colonel, John Whynant Goor, the ſum of five hundred pounds, in conſideration of ſeveral broken and unſerviceable braſs ordnance, &c. found in the towns reduced during the war in our kingdom in Ireland, being a perquiſite belonging and apertaining to the ſaid colonel Goor, and were by him delivered into our magazines for our future ſervice; and whereas the ſaid coll. Goor hath not yet received any part of the ſaid five hundred pounds, by reaſon it was to be paid out of ſuch moneys as ſhould be appointed for payment of the arrears of the train in Ireland, which payment we have not yet thought fit to direct; we are therefore out of our Royal favour to the ſaid colonel Goor, graciouſly pleaſed to direct you to cauſe the ſaid ſum of five hundred pounds, to be paid out of the moneys appropriated to the office of our ordnance on account of land ſervice, and for ſo doing, this ſhall be as well to you as to the auditor of our inqueſt a ſufficient warrant. Given at our court at Whitehall, this 14th day of February 1693, in the ſixth year of our reign.

By his majeſty's command,

J. TRENCHARD.

To our right truſty and well-beloved couſin and counſellor Henry Viſcount Sidney, maſter general of our ordnance, &c. Memorandum. The maſter general of the ordnance, his ſignification upon the above ſaid warrant, dated the 19th day of February, 1693-4.

of the ancient maſters general of the ordnance, I ſhall conclude the article with a liſt of the maſters general of the ordnance from its firſt inſtitution to the preſent time, reſerving the modern regulations reſpecting this office for the article of artillery.

Succession of Masters General of the Ordnance.

Rauf Bigod	2 June,	1483,	for life
Sir Richard Gyleford	——	1485,	
Sir Chryſtopher Morres, Knt. was maſter	29 H.VIII.	1537,	
Sir Francis Flemynge, Knt.	——	1547,	
Sir Philip Oby, Knt.	——	1548,	
Sir Edword Brag	——	1553,	
Sir William Pelham	——	1558,	
Ambroſe Dudley, Earl of Warwick	——	1587,	
Robert Devereux, Earl of Eſſex	29 Mar.	1596,	
Charles Blount, Earl of Devon, ſtiled general of the ordnance	10 Sept.	1603,	during pleaſure
George Carew, Earl of Totneſs	27 June,	1609,	ditto
Horatio, Lord Vere	5 May,	1617,	for life
Sir Richard Morriſon	26 Aug.	1623,	ditto
Sir Thomas Stafford	——	1628,	ditto
Mountjoy Blount, Earl of Newport	2 Sept.	1634,	ditto
Sir William Compton	22 Jan.	1660,	ditto
John, Lord Berkely	21 Oct.	1664,	during pleaſure
Sir John Duncomb, Knt.	ditto,		ditto
Sir Thomas Chicheley, Knt. firſt called maſter general of the ordnance	ditto,		ditto
Thomas Chichely	4 June,	1670,	ditto
Sir John Chicheley	23 Jan.	1679,	ditto
Sir William Hickman			
Sir Charles Muſgrave			
George Legge, Lord Dartmouth	28 Jan.	1681,	ditto
Frederick, Duke Schomberg	28 Apr.	1689,	ditto

Henry Sidney, Viſcount Sidney, afterwards Earl of Romney - -	28 July,	1693,	during pleaſure
John Churchill, Earl of, and afterwards Duke of Marlborough -	29 June,	1702,	ditto
Richard Savage, Earl of Rivers -	10 Sept.	1711,	ditto
James, Duke of Hamilton - - -	5 Sept.	1712,	ditto
John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough	4 Oct.	1714,	ditto
William Cadogan, Earl of Cadogan	22 June,	1722,	ditto
John Campbell, Duke of Argyle and Greenwich - - - - - - -	3 June,	1725,	ditto
John Montagu, Duke of Montagu	30 May,	1740,	ditto
Charles Spencer, Duke of Marlborough	——	1755,	ditto
John Ligonier, Viſcount, afterwards Earl Ligonier - - - - - - -	30 Nov.	1757,	ditto
John Manners, Marquis of Granby	——	1763,	ditto
George Townſhend, Viſcount Townſhend - - - - - - -	——	1772,	ditto
Charles, Duke of Richmond - -	——	1782,	ditto
Charles, Marquis Cornwallis - -	13 Feb.	1795,	ditto

In ſmall armies, and after the diſuſe of the office of high conſtable, the officer commanding in chief was ſtiled captain general. This was the caſe in the liſt of the army ſent to St. Quintins, before quoted; where next in ſucceſſion to the captain general, ſtands the lieutenant general, and the high marſhall occupies only the third place in order and command.

The ſtaffe and ſuite, &c. of the captaine general were, a ſecretary, another for the Frenche tongue, two ſurgeons, a trounche man (t), ten carriages, for tranſportinge his baggage, two trumpetters, a drum, a phife, and thirty halberdiers for his guard.

The ſtaffe and ſuite of the lieutenant general, were a chaplaine, a

(t) Probably a truncheon man, or tipſtaff, commonly attendant on perſons of high rank, as well military as civil in order to clear the way, in proceſſions, &c.

ſurgeon, a trouncheman, three carriages, a trumpetter, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE highe mariſchall had a maſter of the campe, a chaplain, a ſurgeon, three carriages, a trumpetter, a drum, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE next officer in rank in this army, was the generall of the horſemen, his ſtaff, a lieutenant, a chaplain, a ſurgeon, four commiſſaries, his trumpetter, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE infantry was commanded by an officer ſtiled captain general of the footmen, and had a lieutenant, a ſerjeant major (u), ſix wyfflers (x), a chaplain, a ſurgeon, three carriages, a drum, a phife, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE duties and powers of the maſter of the ordnance having been deſcribed, and thoſe of the captain and lieutenant general differing

---

(u) SERJEANT major here ſeems to mean a general officer, afterwards called ſerjeant major general; ſerjeant major commonly meant, in the language of thoſe times, the office now ſtiled major.

(x) WYFFLERS are commonly underſtood to mean a ſort of fers, yet from the following paſſage in an ancient MS. late in the collection of Mr. Anſtis, they ſeem to have been concerned in drilling of the men; this manuſcript is anonymous, but from the hand writing, ſeems of the time of Queen Elizabeth, "*A charge for every wyffler*" ffyrſte, that they inſtructe the ſowldyers how they ſhall carry there weapons.

SECONDLY, to ſhow what ſpace betwixte rancke and rancke, 1 betwixte every gunner, twiſe the length of his gunne, and betwixte every rancke of archers, as moche ſpace as he may goe his bowe by thend and to reche to his foer goer. Betwixte every rancke of pykes, half the pyke length, that thende of his pyke may be within a foote of his fellowe, he that goeth before hym. And betwixt every bill man, the lengthe of hys weapon; and they ſhall not tomotche, neither ſtay to drincke, and that when any rancke is laſt behynd to haſt the follower; and yf the followers cannot conveniently overtake the foregoers, that one whyffler call to another before hym, to ſtay the whole armye, that all may goe together; and in any wyſſe, when they ringe be a makeinge, which beginneth as ſone as the fyrſt rancke ys entered the fylde, that then every whyffeler doo greate diligence to keepe men together in order, and that one rancke doe not lagge behynde another at the entry of the ringe, and likewiſe within the ringe, that every rancke follow inſtantly and directly his foregoer, and that the ſhowlder of one man to be from another, that they may eaſily handell there weapons for to fight; and when they ſtand to ſtay, that every man ſtayeth, a pyke, to ſet up his pyke on hys ſhoulder, and that the hand that holdeth the pyke ſett the bought of his elbow out warlycke, and the other hand to be ſett under his ſyde; elles upon the hylte of his ſworde, and likewiſe the bill.

very little from thoſe of the conſtable and marſhal; we come next to general of the horſemen.

The offices of generals of the horſemen and footmen require no particular explanation, except that their duties were generally reſtricted to their different ſervices; the generals of cavalry rarely interfering with thoſe of the infantry, or thoſe of the infantry with the cavalry(y). Nor did officers of the ſame rank always command according to their ſeniority(z). In ſome inſtances the command between the officers of the ſame denomination was thus ſettled. In the field the officers of cavalry commanded thoſe of the infantry of the ſame rank, and vice verſâ in garriſon, the infantry commanded their equals in the cavalry, without any reſpect to the dates of their appointments.

In the reign of King James II. the officers of the cavalry took rank on detachment according to the dates of their commiſſions, but thoſe

(y) The title of general is not of very ancient date in the Engliſh armies, as we do not find it till about the reign of Henry VIII. after which we meet with the term captain general of the horſemen, and captain general of the footmen, in armies commanded by perſons bearing only the title of general. The ſame army ſometimes had a captain and lieutenant general, and alſo a captain general of the horſemen or foot. An inſtance of this occurs in the army ſent to St. Quintins.

(z) See an inſtance in Rymer, 34th of Eliz. A.D. 1592. In ſome regulations reſpecting two thouſand footmen, and one hundred horſe, to be ſent from the Low Countries into France, wherein is the following paſſage: "And becauſe it ſtandeth with ſome good order, that all the ſeveral captains with their bands, may orderlie take their voyage, with one conſent, and agree amongſt themſelves, conſidering, as they are captaines, they will everie of them accompt themſelves equal one with another; Sir Robert Sidney and you ſhall let them know, that it is thought convenient that Sir John Pooley, Knt. ſhould take the charge of the ſhipping of all their forces, and that they ſhall for their paſſage, and during the time untill they ſhould land, be adviſed by him, as we doubt not but he will perform the ſame diſcreetly to their contentation; and at their landing, Sir John Pooley ſhall have knowledge of her majeſty's pleaſure from hence, under whoſe commandement both he himſelf and all the reſt ſhall there ſerve in France." From this it is evident, that it was not then the practice for the oldeſt officer to command on detachments, where there were ſeveral of equal rank; had it been ſo, there would not have been any occaſion for the regulation here cited, in favour of Capt. Pooley.

of the infantry on like occaſion commanded according to the ſeniority of the corps to which they belonged; ſo that a captain or any other officer of the firſt regiment, though but juſt appointed, would have commanded a captain, or other officer of like rank with himſelf, of ten years ſtanding, in the ſecond or any other corps. For this regulation, ſee the note below (a).

The ſerjeant major general, ſometimes denominated ſerjeant major of the camp or field, was what is now called major general, as ſerjeant major of a regiment formerly ſignified the officer now ſtiled major. The duty of this officer is thus laid down in the ſame manuſcript with that of the maſter of the ordnance.

"The Office of the Serjeant Major in the field or campe, with the Duties thereunto belonging, viz.

Ffirst of all the ſerjeant major of the campe ys to receive at the handes of the high marſhall the whole nomber of footmen, that be in the armye, and beinge ſo receyved he muſt divide the weapons ſeverallie, that he may perfectlie knowe what nomber he hathe of everie kinde of weapon, and ſo to ſet the order of the battaills accordinglie.

Item, the ſaid ſerjeant major muſt receyve commandement from the leyvetenent generall, and he muſt put in order of battaile all the battaile aforeſaid, as he is appointed to do, by the ſaid leyvetenent, his commandement, in uſe.

Ffurther yt ys the office of the ſerjeant major, that yf the enemie drawe ſo near unto yower armye, that the battaile is appointed, then is it moſt mete and convenyent, that the ſaid ſerjeant major repaire to the highe mariſhall, to attend on him when he goeth to viewe the field,

(a) Upon detachments or parties, all officers of horſe are to command according to the dates of their commiſſions, and all officers of foot according to the ranks of their regiments, and not according to their commiſſions; but all lieutenants and enſigns of the ſame regiments, upon ſuch detachments or parties are to command among themſelves, according to their commiſſions, and not to the rank of their companies. *Abridgment of the Engliſh Military Diſcipline*, publiſhed by authority, 1680.

where he intendeth the battayle ſhalbe pytched, and he to take viewe of the grownde of advantage for ſettinge the battayle, and that beinge done, to return and make reporte to the lord leyvetenent generall, howe he hathe ſurveyed the grownde, and the moſt advantage thereof; and to make declaration what order he thinketh moſte mete and convenient to ſet the battaile in. And if it be the aforeſaid leyvetenent's pleaſure, the ſaid lord generall being therewith well content that it ſhalbe ſo don.

The ſerjeant major muſt then repare alſo unto the ſaid field, there to ſet the order of the battaile to the moſt advantage according to the ground. And ffirſt of all, he muſt divide his weapons, and appoint everie ranke withe weapons moſt convenient according to order; that being done, and the battailes beinge ſet, and everie weapon placed in everie rank moſt convenient, then muſt the ſaid ſerjeant major ſe that the kinge's ſtandard be placed in the middeſt of the mayne battaile, and the mariſhall's enſigne in the right hand of the kinge's ſtandard, and the treaſurer's enſigne on the left, and to appoint three or foure other enſignes, as the ſerjeant major ſhall thinke goode, for the furnyſhinge out of the ſaid rank. Alſo the ſaid ſerjeant major muſt appoint certaine drumes and phifes to attend on the aforeſaid enſignes.

Also the ſaid ſerjeant major muſt appoint ſix ranks of halbertes, that is to ſaie, three rankes to be placed before the kinge's majeſtie's ſtandarde, and other three ranks behinde the ſtandard, of the moſt talleſt, and beſt armed, that can be found in the whole battaile, for the garde of the kinge's majeſtie's ſtandard:

The aforeſaid ſerjeant major muſt alſo appoint the reſidewe of the enſignes, everie of them in the places, as the ſaid ſerjeant major ſhall thinke moſt mete. That beinge done, and all the battailes in good order, the weapons with their drumes, enſignes and phyffes accordinglie, then muſt the ſaid ſerjeant major appoint unto everie capteine their ſpeciall places within everie battaile; ſome in the fore part of the battaile, ſome in the myddeſt, ſome in the ſydes of the ſaid battaile, and other ſome in the hindermoſt part of the ſaid battaile, as he ſhall think meteſt.

ITEM, the ſaid ſerjeant major muſt alſo ſe that the ſhotte be placed within the wynges of every battaile, for the impalement and garde of the aforeſaid battailes; and the ſaid ſerjeant major muſt alſo appoint certaine capteins to have the charge of the ſaid ſhotte, and leadinge of them.

ALSO the ſaid ſerjeant major muſt appoint the forlorn hope in his order before the front of the battaile, and to charge certain capteynes with the leadinge of them.

IT is alſo the office of the ſaid ſerjeant major to ſerve with his own perſon in the fore front of the battail, and to lead the battail."

THE treaſurer, ſometimes called the high treaſurer of the army, was an officer of great truſt as well as authority, ſomewhat like that of the paymaſter general of the preſent time, but inveſted with more power. The duties of this office as deſcribed by Ralphe Smith are: "Alſoe you oughte to chuſe unto you a highe treaſurer, which is an office of great reputation, and therefore he oughte to be a man of greate wiſedome, experte in martiall affaires, for that hee is to ſpeake his opinion in all offices, as well concerninge other offices as his owne, otherwiſe committed to his chardge; the payment of all highe officers, namelye, captaines and corronells: likewiſe he ſhall receive from the generall the true nomber of horſemen and footmen within the army, and to make a perfitte booke every moneth, how much is due unto everye officer and ſouldier; hee is to conferre with the maſter of the ordenance, for the ſtoring of munition of all ſorts; and likewiſe with the maſter of the victualls; and to ſee that he be well furniſhed thereof at all tymes. All other thinges which oughte dulie to be obſerved and performed by him, the which I do not make relation hereof, butt refer it to wiſer heads." Another military treatiſe (b) ſays of this officer, "He is ſtill the king's counſell, eſpecially that you tearme martiall, and is to give his opinion in all proceedings of the army, and ſometimes may deny diſburſements though the generall command the ſame. His office extends to take account of the muſters, and to booke the

(b) THE Military Art of Trayning, &c. London, 1620.

companies; whereby the prince or generall may ſtill know the ſtrength of the camp, and he himſelf know how to diſcharge the ſouldier. He is alſo to conferre with the maſter of the ordnance about the ſpending of powder and proviſion of munition; yea, all inferior officers, as the provoſt maſter, muſter maſter, commiſſaries, undertakers for victuall and apparell, pay maſters, captaine of the pioners, carriage maſters, and ſuch like, are all ſubject to his particular examination, by way of placing and diſplacing as he ſeeth juſt occaſion."

The high harbinger was the quarter maſter generall of former times; his office is very minutely deſcribed in the manuſcript before quoted(c).

"The Office of the Harbinger in the field or campe, with the Duties thereunto belonginge, videlicet.

Ffirst, the harbinger, after that he is appointed unto his charge, ought to reſort to the lord lieutenant general, to enquire of him the names of all the officers of honor and counſeillors, belonginge to the armye, and alſo all other meane officers apperteyninge to the ſame, that he may appoint lodgings for them accordinglie. Alſo, he muſt know of the ſaid lord lieutenant generall, the place where the armye ſhall aſſemble to be muſtered; and thither muſt he repaire, callinge before him the cheefe rulers of the towne, declaringe unto them that he is come to provide lodginge for the lord lieutenant generall and the armye; and to charge the ſaid rulers, that they ſend ſome of their officers, to bringe him to everie houſe in the towne that is hable to make any lodginge, that he may take a note what beddes they make within the towne, or ſubberbs of the ſame, and to command them to provide victualls ſufficient for ſuche ſouldiers as they do lodge, upon prices reaſonable; and after that he has divided his lodgings, and made his booke of them, he muſt firſt appoint for the lord generall, the chiefe lodgings, and next after him his two lordes lieutenants of the fore and rear wards; the maſter of the ordinnance, and all other meane officers,

(c) No. 4685. Harl.

to be lodged as near to the counſaile as he convenientlie maie, that they may be readie to attend uppon the lord lieutenant generall, when they ſhall be called for: and after he hathe lodged the lord lieutenant generall and the counſaile, he muſt reſerve certain of the beſt lodgings for the captaines and men of worſhip that ſerve in the field, deliveringe to every man's ſervant that cometh for a lodginge for his maſter, one billet, naminge therein the lodginge for him, and what number of beddes are appointed for him, whiche billet he muſt enter into a booke for his remèmbrance.

The ſaid harbinger oughte to have alſo ſome under him, and he ſhould deliver to everie of them a booke, devidinge the lodginges in the towne in four partes appointinge to everie clerke one part of the towne to make lodgings in, whiche clerkes muſt appoint no lodginges but ſuch as the harbinger appointeth by billet.

And their office ys to ſe that no man take any lodginge in their quarter, but where they be aſſigned; and yf they do, and will not be avoyded, then muſte they reſort to the highe mariſchall, who may remove them; the harbinger muſt alſo make ſtreight commaundement, that no houſeholder, upon paine of impriſonment, doe take into his houſe anie man to lodge without billet from him, upon paine of anſweringe to the ſame.

Farther the ſaid harbinger and his ſervants muſt give their attendance upon the high mariſhall, when he goeth to viewe the ground where the camp ſhalbe pitched. And after that the highe mariſhall hath appointed the ground for the camp, then the provoſt mariſchall maketh the deviſion of the quarters of the camp, aſſigning a place for the market, or place of aſſemblie, and the ſtreetes for the ſame; and the harbinger being made privie thereunto muſt remaine upon the ſame grounde, readie to anſwer all ſuche as come before, to knowe where they ſhall pitche their tentes and diſcharge the carriages.

Also for that every man ſhall knowe where to pitche their tentes, and to be lodged in ſuch place as they marche in; that is, he that marcheth in the waward to be placed there; and in the battailes, the harbinger ought to have one of his clerkes to give attendance, to

aſſign the places appointed, and one other being the fourthe clerke ſhall attend on and uppon the grownd appointed for the horſemen likewiſe, to ſet them in order for their lodginges. And the cheefe harbinger ſhall have ynough to doe, to ſe all theſe thinges done accordinge to his direction: and his office is to amende ſuche faultes as he ſhall finde done contrarie to his order; and if he be letted ſo to doe, then muſt he complaine to the highe mariſhall, which ought to reforme the ſame."

THE provoſt marſhall or chief provoſt of the army, ſeems to have been formerly an office of much greater rank and authority than it is at preſent. This we learn from the manuſcript quoted in the preceding article, and according to the detail of the duties of that office, there laid down, in ſeveral inſtances bordered on thoſe of the quarter maſter general; a tranſcript of that article is here given.

"The OFFICE of the PROVOST MARSHALL in the fielde or campe, with the DEWTIES thereunto belonginge.

FFIRST, yt is the office of the provoſt marſhall to receyve at the handes of the highe mariſchall the whole nomber bothe of horſemen and footemen that are in the armye, to the ende, the ſaid provoſt mariſhall maie bothe order and appointe the campes accordinge to the nombers.

ITEM, the ſaid provoſt mariſhall, after that the highe mariſhall hathe appointed the grownd where the campe ſhalbe, then muſt the provoſt marſhall divide the ground into ſeverall quarters, appointinge to everie battaile their quarter, and to everie capten their ſeveral grownds within the quarters of the ſaid battaile.

THE provoſt marſhall muſt alſo when he maketh the campe, appoint within the ſaid campe, a large market place of aſſemblie, and to appoint certaine ſtreetes in the ſaid campe, between the quarters of everie battaile, and to appoint the leyvetenent generall's place, giving him the place of honor in the fielde.

FFURTHER, that the ſaid provoſt mariſchall muſt give ſtraight commandement, that no man pitch anie tente near unto the ryng of the

ſaid campe by ſome ſcore foote at the leaſt; and everie captaine, after they be encamped, ſhall command that their carriages ſhall go to the impalement of the ſaide campe.

Also the ſaid provoſt marſhall muſt give commandement to the captaine of the pyoners, to appointe certain of his labourers to entrench the ſaide campe or place of aſſemblie.

And further the ſaid provoſt mariſhall muſt appoint in the ringe of the campe, grownd of advantage for th' artillerie mete and convenient.

And further the ſaid provoſt mariſhall muſt ſe all watches to be ſet himſelfe, and alſo give to everie watche their charge, with the watche worde, then muſt he twiſe or thriſe in the night himſelf goe to ſcarche them, that goode watche be kepte, and that everie man doe his dutie accordinglie.

Also the ſaid provoſt mariſhall muſt appoint within the market place or place of aſſemblie, within the aforeſaid campe, a place for the munition, not neare the danger of fire.

And the aforefaid provoſt mariſhall muſt cauſe it to be trenched about, and to give charge and commandement unto the Mr. of th' ordinnance, and he ſhall command and appoint ſome diſcreet honeſt man to have the charge of the watch thereof.

Item the ſaid provoſt mariſhall muſt appoint near unto the place where the municion is ſet, a place convenient for the maſter of th' ordonnance, with the office of th' ordonnance.

If it chance that the enemy and you joyne in battaile together, then is the office of the provoſt marſhall to ſerve in his owne perſon with the footmen, in the rank with the ſerjeant major.

The provoſt marſhall alſo ought to ſee all proclamations to be proclaimed with the harrald at armes, and the trompetter, in the lorde leyvetennente generall his name.

Item, the ſaid provoſte mariſchall muſt likewiſe gyve ſtreighte commandement that after the watch be ſet, and the watche piece ſhotten off, there be no maner of noyſe in the campe, but that all men be at quiet.

Moreover, the tipſtaves of the ſaid provoſt mariſchall ought to ſe

that good order be kept within the aforeſaid campe, that there be no brawlinge nor fightinge within the ſaid campe, but forthwith the ſaid tipſtaves to bringe them that ſo offend unto the mariſhalſie, and there to be puniſhed at the direction of the ſaid provoſt mariſchall."

At preſent the chief duties of the provoſt marſhall of an army are: the keeping of all priſoners, particularly thoſe confined for great offences, apprehending deſerters, marauders, or ſoldiers ſtraggling beyond the limits of the camp: at night, by his rounds or thoſe of his deputies, preventing any diſturbances among the petty ſuttlers in the rear, and apprehending all ſoldiers out of camp after gun-firing; cauſing the butchers to bury all their offal; alſo to kill all glandered horſes, and to bury them, and all others dying in the camp, in order to prevent infection. To enable him to perform thoſe duties, the provoſt martial has a ſerjeant's, and ſometimes a ſubaltern's guard; and occaſionally to give him the more authority, has the rank of captain; beſides which, he is permitted to make out a contingent bill, for his fees for executions, and other expences attending his office. A very curious one of Affarias Van Velthoven, a Dutchman, provoſt general in Ireland, under King William III. is preſerved in the Muſeum, which in one campaign amounted 307l. 10s. (d). This being thought an enormous charge, ſome perſons were authoriſed to enquire into it; what was their report does not appear, but there is the king's order for paying the bill. As a matter of curioſity, ſeveral ſpecimens of his charges are given in the note (e), with ſome of the evidences

(d) No. 6844, Harl. MS.

(e) Account of the Charges and Disbursements done by the Provoſt General Velthoven, concerning the priſoners, who by order of his Excellency and by the High Counſel of Warr are acquitted, as alſo of thoſe that are executed in order of the ſentence.

Kilkenny, 9th of June, (1691.) Hane bene ſend in areſt by order of his excellency the Lord of Sgravemore, two perſons, named Thomas Traſſi and Philip Wodli, being both raperies, and remained in the areſt until the 11th of Feb. when the ſame in purſuance of the ſentence and approbation of the Lord of Sgravemore in Kilkenny, hane bene puniſhed with the rope to death,

brought to invalidate them. His eſtabliſhment was a lieutenant, a ſub-lieutenant, a ſcrivener or clerk, an executioner, eight horſemen for his

---

	l.	s.	d.
amounts for 33 daies diet, from the 9th of January untill the 11th of Feb. at 6d. a day, is for both of them - - - - - - - - -	1	13	0
For extraordinary treats, after the ſentence of death of the patients as otherwiſe, each one ſix ſhillings, is together - - - - - - -	0	12	0
Paid unto the thre ſervants that hane ſit up with and ſerved the patients, after the ſentence of death, accordinge to cuſtome, half-a-crowne a day, is for two days and a night - - - - - - - - - - - -	0	15	0
For the reading of the ſentences - - - - - - - - -	0	2	6
Unto the executioner, for hanging and takeing downe, as otherwiſe, ten ſhillings apiece, is together - - - - - - - - - -	1	0	0
For the ladder, ropes, and bolts - - - - - - - - -	0	3	0
For the locking and unlocking of each, 2s. 6d. - - - - -	0	5	0
For aſſiſting in the execution according to cuſtom for me - - - -	0	10	0
For the liftenent - - - - - - - - - - - -	0	4	0
Paid for burying unto the ſervant, 2s. 6d. each - - - - -	0	5	0
Dec. 19th. Hane bene ſend in areſt by the Collonel Floid, John Gerritſe, drummer, and John Wright, ſouldier, under do. regiment, under the company of Capt. Perſon, deſerters, and remained until the 13th of Feb. when the ſame by the ſentence of the high counſel of warr and the approbation of the General Ginkel ſhould haine bene puniſhed to death, but John Gerritſe has got his freedom with diceing under the gallows, but John Wright has puniſhed with the rope unto death: for 57 daies diet, from the 19th of December to the 13th of February, at 6d. a day, amounts to - - -	2	7	0
N. B. Charges of execution as before.			
Feb. 25th. Brought in arreſt William Waters for a repery, and do. remained to the 5th of March, after he had ſeverely bene whipped with rods, without Kilkenny, accordinge to his ſentence, upon the 28th day of February.			
For 9 daies diet, from the 25th of February to the 5th of March, at 6d. a day, is - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	0	4	6
For reading of the ſentence - - - - - - - - -	0	2	6
For whipping - - - - - - - - - - - -	0	5	0
For locking and unlocking - - - - - - - - -	0	2	6
Feb. 26. Made by order of the Lord of Sgravemore, a new gallows without Kilkenny.			
Paid for wood for the ſame - - - - - - - - -	1	15	0
For making and erecting the ſame - - - - - - - -	0	15	0

For

guard, a priſon, a priſon keeper, with four ſervants; he was likewiſe allowed two waggons with eight horſes, for the carriage of ſick

---

	l.	s.	d.
For the ladders and bringing - - - - - - - - - -	0	3	0
For - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	0	2	0
March 20. By order of the Lord General ordered to be brought into a rome, and there given them notice of their death, the following ſoldiers of the regiment of the Earl of Naſſaw, having bene abroad upon partie, and not done their dutie, namely Abraham de Vlieger, Peter de Moy, Hery Cornraed, Caſper Willem Hager, Pieter Etterſon, Jacus Slim, Benedictus Moet, and have accordingly to the ſentence the next day plaid at dice, and the lot for to dye is fallen upon Caſper Willem Hager, but have afterwards bene pardoned, and on the 23d acquitted.			
Their ordinary diet was ſent to them from their regiment, but for their extraordinarys after their condemnation to death, 2s. 6d. each is - - -	0	17	6
For five ſervants that waited on them after their condemnation to death, at 2s. 6d. a day, for two days and one night is - - - - - -	1	5	0
For locking and unlocking, 1s. each, is - - - - - - -	0	7	0
Liſt of the ſervants of the executioner concerning the horſes in the late camp, as alſo by the head quarters and the particular regiment are buried, as alſo ſome dead bodies in Athlone, and before Limericke buried.			
Jan. 4th, Buried horſes, 7.			
In all buried horſes 102, at 2s. 6d. each.			
January 24. Buried before Athlone, 7 men.			
For each 2s. 6d.			
July 31. Buried before Athlone, 30 men.			

Theſe are particular articles extracted from the bill, and often occur in it: the objections againſt it were theſe.

OBJECTIONS againſt Aſſarias Velthoven's ACCOUNT of DISBURSEMENTS hereunto annexed.

	l.	s.	d.
That he gives no particulars how he laid out the 60l. he owns by his firſt article to have received, yet charges the ſame again in fol. 32. - - -	60	0	0
Overcharged the 9th of June - - - - - - - - - -	47	0	0
From 3d June, 1691, to 2d November following, charges 6d. apiece, 1669 days, 41l. 14s. 6d. when he allowed them but one ammunition loaf for 2 days, which (when he pays Mr. Perrara for) will coſt him 3¾d. apiece, overcharged - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	27	13	9

That

prifoners, with carters to drive them. As Velthoven was a foreigner, it will account for the extraordinary bad Engliſh in which his bill is written.

That he chargeth for extraordinary treats to 26 perſons after ſentence of death paſſed upon them, 7l. 16s. whereas he gave ſome only one pot of beer, ſome had a pot of beer, and two pounds of meat and bread, and ſome nothing at all, at 1s. a head, which is far more than they coſt him, is 1l. 6s.—overcharged - - - - - - - - - - - - - - l. s. d. 6 10 0

Feb. 25th. He chargeth for 3 days diet of 68 officers, 30l. 12s. whereas all the meat coſt him but - - - - - 0 3 6
The beer at 3d. a pint - - - - 0 17 0
The cheeſe at 6d. per lb. - - - 0 8 6
The biſket at 1d. per piece - - - 2 11 0
4 0 0 } overcharged - 26 12 0

He charges for watching condemned perſons, but inaſmuch as where one watched, he ſets down two, and where two he chargeth four or five, and when one night, ſometimes a night and a day, or two nights; if he pays the men (which as yet he hath not) it will coſt him 3l. 10s.—overcharged - 7 0 0

7thly. He charges for executing 24 men, as paid by him 12l. when he pays the executioner, it will coſt him but 6l.—overcharged - - - - - 6 0 0

8thly. He chargeth for whipping 3 men, paid by him 15s. if he pays the executioner, it will coſt him but 7s. 6d.—overcharged - - - - - 0 7 6

9thly. When one or more are executed, he is allowed to charge 10s. for himſelf, for his day's attendance, and no more, as appears by his own account, fol. 14, where he chargeth but 10s. for executing 5 perſons.

On the 13th of February, 1691, John Langton and John White were both hanged, fol. 3, he chargeth

	l.	s.	d.
For himſelf - - - - -	0	10	0
For his lieutenant - - - -	0	4	0
For watching - - - -	0	10	0
For reading the ſentence - -	0	2	6
For ladder - - - - -	0	1	0
	1	7	6

Fol.

THE ſcowt maſter was another ancient ſtaff officer, whoſe duties are deſcribed in this manuſcript, in the following words.

---

	l.	s.	d.
Fol. 4. He chargeth them all over again for John White, ſaving that he ſays, 15s. for watching, whereby he puts clear into his pocket - - -	1	12	0
11th. For the new gallows he bought for 1l. 5s. he overcharged my Lord Sgravemore 1l. and received of him for the ſame 2l. 5s. yet now chargeth 2l. 5s. to the king's account for them, whereby the king is wronged -	3	5	0
For burying men and horſes, he chargeth 12l. 15s. but did not pay it.			
He chargeth for burying a man, who according to his ſentence was left hanging on the gallows. N. B. Another paper reſpecting theſe charges, ſays, the men charged as buried were thrown into the river. He is there alſo charged 9l. for a lined tent, given to a lady of pleaſure.			

He chargeth for extraordinary treats of ſeven ſoldiers of the Earl of Naſſaw's regiment, after condemnation, 17s. 6d. he only gave them 7 quarts of beer, which coſt him - -	l.	s.	d.
	0	1	2
Small beer - - - - - - - - - -	0	0	6
More ſtrong beer, a pint apiece - - - - -	0	0	7
More ſtrong drink - - - - - - - - -	0	0	6
	0	2	9

Beſides what is undiſcovered, there is overcharged - - - - -	217	18	9	

J. HOFFELINGH,
JOHN GOEDART.

JOHANNES HOFFELINGH, native of the Hague in Holland, aged 34 years, or thereabouts, maketh oath, that about the beginning of the month of October, Ao. Dni, 1691, Aſſarias Van Velthoven, the Dutch Provoe being in the camp before Limerick, in Ireland, gave one of the beſt horſes in his troop to his ſon John Chriſtian Van Velthoven, cadet in another company, making his trooper ſerve on foot. That in the month of November following, the ſaid Van Velthoven gave Mrs. Mary Valentine (his lady of pleaſure) one tent lyned with blew, and four very good harneſſes for waggon horſes belonging to their majeſties. That the ſaid Van Velthoven bought very bad horſes for his troopers, one whereof coſt him but three pounds, another two guineys, and another but two cobbs, or nine ſhillings and ſixpence, inſomuch, that if they had occaſion to ride five or ſix miles in one day (leaſt they ſhould founder) ſaid Velthoven would often cauſe them to lite and walk on foot in their jack boots, to their no ſmall fatigue.

THAT whilſt the army was before Limmerick, and many died for want of bread, the ſaid Velthoven, under pretence he had many priſoners in his cuſtody, ſent for great quantitys of bread

" The OFFICE of the SCOWT MASTER in the fielde or camp, with the DUTIES belonging to the ſame.

FFIRST, the office of the ſcout maſter is, that he attend upon the highe mariſhall when he goeth to viewe the ground, where he intendeth to campe. Then muſt the ſaid ſcowte maſter both view and ſee in what ſort he may ſet the ſcowte, that when the trumpet ſoundeth to the watche at night, then muſt the ſaid ſcowt maſter

---

bread from the king's ſtores, wherewith (to ſave charges) he cauſed his whole troop of horſes to be fed, yet at the ſame time brought their majeſties a Dutch guilder a day to account, for the keeping of each horſe in his troop, giving as a reaſon for his knowledge, that he the deponent was under lieutenant to ſaid Aſſarias Van Velthoven, and privie to the premiſes.

J. HOFFELINGH.

Sworne before the Commiſſioners of accompts, the 27th day of September, 1692.

ZYRACH GOUT, one of the troopers in his troop, alſo ſwears, that although the ſaid Velthoven received money from their majeſties in 1690, for the purchaſe of new boots and piſtols for his troop, he bought ſuch old ones, that the piſtols were unſerviceable, and the boots obliged to be new footed on their arrival in Ireland, for which he obliged his troopers to pay.

JOHN GOEDART alſo confirmed the former evidence, and further accuſed Velthoven of ſwapping away one of the beſt horſes of his troop with one Capt. Young, for one ſo very old, that he was left behind in Ireland, as unſerviceable, and alſo that before the ſaid Van Velthoven went to Ireland, he kept three men for ſeveral months, ready for a falſe muſter; that he received pay for a clerk, and an allowance for his horſe, 37 guilders ten ſtivers for the firſt, and a guilder a day for the horſe, and kept neither. This deponent was his upper lieutenant. His ſervant John, borne a Polander, alſo on oath, confirmed theſe accuſations, and added ſeveral inſtances of his changing and ſelling the horſes, furniture, &c. and alſo accuſed him of leaving in Dublin, with a couſin of Mrs. Valentine, a large portmanteau full of iron bars, chains, fetters, and other things uſeful for ſecuring of priſoners, one other tent lined with blue, and the harneſs for four waggon horſes, all which belonged to their majeſties.

IN Van Velthoven's anſwer to theſe charges many he denies, for ſeveral he pleads cuſtom in Holland, and reſpecting Mrs. Valentine, he ſays the irons in queſtion were ſent to Holland by miſtake, but that he has more irons with him than he received from the king, out of which he will make them good; with reſpect to falſe muſters, he never was muſtered himſelf, nor his company.

repaire to the tent of the generall of the horſemen, there the ſaid generall or his lieutenant ſhall appoint certaine horſemen that attend on the ſcowt, to be in the ſcowt that night. Ffurthermore, the ſaid generall muſt in anie wiſe gyve ſtraight commandement unto the ſaid ſcowt maſter after the relief be ſounded, that they ſhall not, upon paine of deathe, ſtirre from their charge before the ſcurriers be come into the field to take their places, and then they may depart.

Also the ſaid ſcowt maſter, when the trumpet ſoundeth the relief of the watch in the morninge, muſt repair unto the lieutenant of the horſemen, there to receive at his hands ſuche horſemen as the ſaid lieutenant ſhall appoint to be in the ſcurrage that daie.

Item, it is the office of the ſcowt maſter, when he cometh into the field to ſet and appoint the ſcowrage, he muſt appoint ſome to the high hilles, that are thereaboutes, to viewe and ſe if they can diſcover any thinge.

Also the ſaid ſcowte maſter muſt appointe one other companie of ſcuragers, to ſearche and viewe every valley thereabouts, that there be no enemies laid privilie for the anoyange of the ſaid campe, and if they do diſcover anie, they are to advertiſe the ſcowt maſter; and he muſt either bring, or ſend worde to the high mariſchall of their advertiſement, with ſpeed.

The ſaid ſcowt maſter muſt alſo contynuallie, bothe daie and night, be in the fielde himſelf, or appoint ſome diſcrete honeſt man, whom he may truſt in his abſence, to foreſee that bothe the ſcowte in the night ſeaſon, and ſcurriers in the daie, may do their duties that appertene to their charge; for there lieth a great charge of yt, as much as the life of the ſcowt maſter is wurthe, if any thinge happen amiſſe: and the ſaid ſcowte maſter muſt contynuallie bringe advertiſement of all thinges that the ſcowriers here or ſe."

"The Trench Maſter (ſays Markham) hath command over all the pyoners, in all their works, and by his directions (i.e. the maſter general of the ordnance) ſeeth all manner of trenches caſt up, whether it be for guard and incloſing of the campe, or for other particular annoyance to the enemye, or for the building of ſconces, or other

defence or offence, as directions ſhall be given (f). This officer ſeems ſometimes to have been ſtiled 'Deviſour of the fortifications to be made.' In the liſt of the ſtaff of the Duke of Somerſet's army, employed againſt the Scots, at the battle of Muſſelborough, Sir Richard Lee, Knight, held an office ſo denominated (g).

"THE Carriage Maſter-general or waggon maſter, amongſt the Romans, was called impedimentorum magiſter, the maſter of the impediments or hinderances in the warres; for it is true, that from niceneſſe and curioſity, firſt grew the foundation of this office; he hathe ſupream authority over all waggons, carriages, ſledds and the the like, and foreſeeth that they march orderly, without cloying up the high waies, or doing foule annoyances one to the other in their marches, with a world of other obſervations which are too long to recite in that place (h)."

SIR James Turner (i), under the head of the waggon maſter, has the following curious particulars reſpecting that office.

EVERY regiment, whether of horſe or foot, ſhould have a waggon or a baggage maſter, and where the eſtabliſhment of the prince doth allow him no pay, the colonel ſhould order a ſufficient ſerjeant or corporal to exerciſe that office by turns; theſe are to ſee, that every officer's baggage, from the higheſt to the loweſt, march accordingly to the dignity and precedency of him to whom it belongs, whether it be carried on waggons, carts, or horſes; but theſe regiment baggage maſters are not to ſuffer the baggage of the regiments to march, till they have received their directions from the waggon maſter general, when and in what manner it ſhall be done. The waggon maſter general's charge is extremely toyſome, when an army marcheth, every night after the army comes to quarter, and every morning before it march, he muſt attend the major generals of the cavalry and

(f) SOLDIERS' Grammar, p. 128.

(g) SEE Patten's Account of the Expedition, printed by Richard Grafton, 1548.

(h) SEE Markham's Soldiers' Grammar, p. 128.

(i) PALLAS Armata, p. 276.

infantry, and receive his orders from them, if the whole army march together; but if the cavalry march apart, then the major general of the foot gives the waggon maſter his inſtructions, particularly a liſt in what order the army is to march; for ordinarily, regiments and brigades charge by turns, and their baggage muſt march in the ſame order that themſelves do: the waggon maſter having got his liſt, he accordingly orders the regiment baggage maſters (who are obliged to wait on him every morning) to cauſe their luggage march, wherein they may not fail; for (unleſs ſome extraordinary occaſion alters it) the prince, or in his abſence, the commander in chief, his coach or coaches, with his waggons, go firſt; then the whole train of artillery behind it; the coaches and waggons of all the general officers, according to their dignity; after them the waggons of that brigade that hath the van for that day, and ſo all the reſt in order, according as the regiments or brigades march. If any waggons or baggage horſes preſs to be before theſe, behind whom the waggon maſter general has ordered them to march, he may ſafely make prize of them, owne them who will. When the waggons come to a heath, or a champaign field, the waggon maſter ſhould order the waggons to draw up, two, four, or five in rank, and to drive in that order ſo long as the ground permits them to do ſo, and this ſaves time, and makes diſpatch; and when they come to ſtrait ground, they are to fall off, by the right hand, in that order wherein they were before; the ſame courſe he is take with baggage horſes.

This baggage maſter general is allowed to have two lieutenants; ſo that if the army march three ſeveral ways (as ſometimes it doth), himſelf and his two deputies ſerve to marſhall the baggage of all the three. If the army is divided into two, or the cavalry march alone, one of his lieutenants goes along with the horſe, the other ſtays with himſelf, and he is conſtantly to be there where the general of the army and train of artillery either marcheth or quartereth.

Many times waggons are commanded to be burnt and deſtroyed; ſometimes all the women and moſt of the baggage are left behind at ſome garriſon, and fortified place, or with the body of the infantry

and artillery, when expedition calls away all the horſe, dragoons, and as many foot as are able to march luſtily. In ſome of theſe occaſions officers go fair to loſe their waggons and ſome of their moveables.

Women who follow an army may be ordered (if they can be ordered) in three ranks, or rather in claſſes, one below another; the firſt ſhall be of thoſe who are ladies, and are the wives of the general and other principal commanders of the army, who for the moſt part are carried in coaches; but thoſe coaches muſt drive according to the quality of them to whom the ladies belong, and as the baggage of their huſbands is appointed to march by the waggon maſter general. The ſecond claſſe is of thoſe who ride on horſeback, and theſe muſt ride in no other place than where the baggage of the regiment to whom they belong marcheth, but they are very oft extravagant, gadding here and there, and therefore in ſome places they are put in companies, and have one or more to command and overſee them, called in Germany Hureweibles, rulers or marſhals of the whores; I have ſeen them ride, keep troop, rank and file, very well, after that captain of theirs who led them, and a banner with them which one of the women carried. The third claſſe is of thoſe who walk on foot, and are the wives of inferior officers and ſouldiers; theſe muſt walk beſide the baggage of the ſeveral regiments to whom they belong, and over them the ſeveral regiment marſhals have inſpection. As woman was created to be a helper to man, ſo women are great helpers in armies, to their huſbands, eſpecially thoſe of the lower condition, neither ſhould they be raſhly baniſht out of armies; ſent away they may be ſometimes for weighty conſiderations; they provide, buy and dreſs their huſband's meat, when their huſbands are on duty, or newly come from it; they bring in fewel for fire, and waſh their linens; and in ſuch manner of employment, a ſouldier's wife may be helpful to others, and gain money to her huſband and herſelf; eſpecially they are uſeful in camp and leaguers, being permitted (which ſhould not be refuſed them) to go ſome miles from the camp to buy victuals and other neceſſaries (k).

(k) Formerly the ſoldiers had boys to attend them, to provide fuel, fetch water, &c. theſe were

At the long ſiege of Breda, made by Spinola, it was obſerved that the married ſouldiers fared better, looked more vigorouſly, and were able to do more duty, than the bachelors; and all the ſpite was done the poor women was to be called their huſbands' mules, by thoſe who would be glad to have had ſuch mules for themſelves. Among all theſe kinds of women in well ordered armies, there are none but thoſe who are married; if there be any elſe upon examination made by the miniſter, prieſt, or conſiſtory, they are put away with ignominy, at leaſt ſhould be, conformably to all articles of war.

But a ſtrange ſtory is writ by good authors of that famous duke of Alva, whoſe name is yet ſo hateful to moſt of the Netherlands; they ſay, at that time that he marched from Italy to the Lowe Countries, to reduce them to the obedience of his maſter, the king of Spain, a permiſſion was given to courtezans to follow his army, but they were to ride in troops with banners; they had their ſeveral captaineſſes, and alfieras or ſhe cornets, and other officers, who kept amongſt them an exact diſcipline in all points that concerned their profeſſion; they were divided into ſeveral ſquadrons, according to their quality; and that was diſtinguiſhed no otherwiſe but by the difference of their beauties, faces, and features. Thoſe of the beſt ſort were permitted only to traffick with men of the higheſt quality; thoſe of the ſecond rank with commanders of great note; thoſe of the third with officers of a lower condition; and thoſe of the fourth degree with officers who were of the meaneſt quality, and ſouldiers, whom thoſe of the other three ranks rejected. An excellent commonwealth! where it was prohibited under all grievous pains, not to ſuffer themſelves to be courted by any either above or below the rank wherein they were placed, and that was impartially done, according to the talent nature had beſtowed upon them; ſo that every common ſouldier, inferior perſon, or low officer, enſign, captain, colonel, or general commander, knew to whom

---

were called, garciones and goujats, and in the French army ſo late as the beginning of the 16th century, one of theſe goujats was allowed to every two ſoldiers: the Engliſh troops under Henry V. had a number of theſe boys.

they might addreſs themſelves, and from whom they might buy repentance; a practice which, I ſuppoſe, never had a precedent in either Chriſtian or Pagan army, and which, with an impudent face, loudly cried defyance to both religion and moral honeſty.

"The OFFICE of the CAPTEINE of the PIONERS in the fielde or campe, with the DUTIES thereto belonging.

FFIRST the office of the captaine of the pioners ys, that after he hath knowledge of the lord lieutenant what nomber of pyoners he ſhall have under his charge, he ought to take a viewe of them, and to ſe that they be hable and ſtrong men, to endure anie laboure (l).

ALSO he muſt appoint certaine capteines under him to hane the leading and government of them, whiche capteines ought to be readie at all tymes to bringe the pioners to worke where they ſhalbe appointed, and then to tarrye themſelves to ſe them worke accordinglie.

(l) PIONEERS were not formerly taken from the troops, as has been the practice of late years, but were ſturdy labourers, preſſed and equipped for the ſervice they were to perform. Several inſtances occur in Rymer of writs to the ſheriffs of different counties, directing them to furniſh miners, or other labourers, from their reſpective diſtricts.

ABOUT the time of Queen Elizabeth, ſoldiers guilty of certain offences were degraded to pioneers; this is alluded to by Shakſpeare, in the following ſpeech of Othello:

> I had been happy, if the general camp,
> Pioners and all, had taſted her ſweet body,
> So I had nothing known.

IN the ordinances of war of the earl of Northumberland, A. D. 1640, the following offences are liable to this puniſhment. "If any trooper ſhall loſe his horſe or hackney; or a footman any part of his armes by negligence or lewdneſſe, by dice or cards: he or they ſhall remain in qualitie of pioners and ſcavengers, till they be furniſh'd with as good as were loſt, at their own charge.

"IF a trooper ſhall ſpoil his horſe willingly, of purpoſe to be rid of the ſervice; he ſhall loſe his horſe, and remain in camp for a pioner.

"A REGIMENT or company of horſe or foot, that chargeth the enemy, and retreats before they come to handy ſtrokes, ſhall anſwer it before a council of warr: and if the fault be found in the officers, they ſhall be baniſhed the camp; if in the ſouldiers, then every tenth man ſhall be puniſhed at diſcretion, and the reſt ſerve for pioners and ſcavengers, till a worthy exploit take off the blot."

Item, he muſt hane to every hundred pioners one clarke, who muſt everie morninge call them by their names, to ſe whether he want anie of his nomber or no, and if he want anie, he muſt make good enquirie whether theſe that are wantinge be ſicke, deade, or ronne awaie; and as he findethe the truth, ſo to make report to the chiefe capteine thereof.

Also he muſt appoint certaine victuallers to provide victualls for them, and to bringe yt to them where they worke, which victualls muſt brought to them at ſuch hours as are appointed them to take their reſt in; and their victuallers ſhall receive victualles, and they ſhall have them brought to them when they do not worke, at ſuche place as they be commanded to bring them unto, for that they muſt alweies be kept together, to be redie at commandement.

The ſaid capteine of the pioners ought to goe withe the mariſhall when he goethe to viewe the grownd, where the campe ſhalbe pitched, that he may ſe whether the waie be eaſie and good for the great artillerie and other carriages, to paſſe or no; and if he do perceive that the waie is not good, he muſt cauſe the pioners to mend it, againſt the artillerie and carriages do come, ſo as they maye hane readie paſſage without anie ſtoppe.

Ffurther the ſaid capteine of the pioners muſt attende upon the highe mariſchall to know whether the campe ſhall be entrenced about or not, and all tymes the ſaid capteine and his pioners ought to be at the commandement of the highe mariſchall bothe daie and night, to do ſuch thinges as he ſhall think moſt convenient to command them."

The proviant maſter general was a commiſſary of proviſions; his office is deſcribed by Sir James Turner.

"Since money (ſays he) is generally ſcarce in the wars, inſomuch that ſoldiers cannot receive their wages duly, let us ſee what allowance of meat and drink (ordinarily called proviant) princes allow their ſoldiery; to furniſh which every army ſhould have a general proviant maſter; and truly I conceive him to be an officer as neceſſary and uſeful, if not more, in the fields, where moſtly our modern armies are entertained with proviant, as either a general, commiſſary, or a treaſurer: his charge is to provide victuals, corn, fleſh, wine, bread,

and beer; he hath the inſpection of them, and ſhould ſee them equally and proportionably divided to the regiments, according to their ſeveral ſtrengths; for which purpoſe he ſhould have all the rolls and liſts by him, which his ſecretaries ſhould carefully keep. He hath no power to ſell any proviant under what pretence ſoever, without the general's expreſs warrant. All mills where the army comes are under his protection, and he is obliged to protect them. He hath the ordering of all the magazines for victuals, and to him belongs the care of ſeeing the garriſons and fortified places ſufficiently provided with ſuch meats and drinks as are moſt fit to preſerve; theſe are, corn, grain and meal of ſeveral kinds, ſtock fiſh, herrings, and all other ſalted fiſhes; ſalted and hung fleſhes, eſpecially beef and bacon, cheeſe, butter, almonds, cheſnuts, and hazel nuts, wine, beer, malt, honey, vinegar, oyl, tobaco, wood and coal for firing, and as many living oxen, cows, ſheep and ſwine, hens and turkies, as can be conveniently fed; for which purpoſe, as alſo for horſes, he is to provide ſtraw, hay, and oats. This general proviant maſter hath under him a lieutenant, a ſecretary, a clerk, a ſmith, a waggon maſter, and a waggon maker, a quarter maſter, and ſome officers who are called directors.

"THERE are few princes who have not their particular eſtabliſhment for their proviant, both in field and garriſon, as well as for money; the order whereof commonly is this: they allow ſo much bread, fleſh, wine or beer to every trooper and foot ſoldier, which ordinarily is alike to both; then they allow to the officers, according to their dignities and charges, double, triple, and quadruple portions; as to an enſign four times more than to a common ſouldier, a colonel commonly having twelve portions allowed him. The ordinary allowance for a ſoldier in the field is daily, two pound of bread, one pound of fleſh, or in lieu of it, one pound of cheeſe, one pottle of wine, or in lieu of it, two pottles of beer. It is enough, cry the ſouldiers, we deſire no more, it is enough in conſcience. But this allowance will not laſt very long, they muſt be contented to march ſometimes one whole week, and ſcarce get two pounds of bread all the while, and their officers as little as they; who, if they have no proviſions of their own, carried about with them;

muſt be ſatisfied with commis-bread and cold water, as well as the common ſoldier, unleſs they have money to buy better entertainment from ſutlers. I have known captains give a very great demonſtration of their patience, and their affection to their maſter's ſervice, by ſatisfying their appetites with water, and very coarſe bread, one whole ſummer, and part of the next winter."

The cuſtom of paying by provand is highly reprobated by Sir John Smythe, who ſays it was firſt introduced in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, among the Engliſh troops ſent to the aſſiſtance of the States of Holland, his words are:

"And now in the ſame later time, when all things ſhould by all reaſon have been reduced into order and diſcipline, becauſe the nature of the war was altered from mercenary and voluntary, to princely authority; I mean the ſommer before the earl of Leiceſter went over, our ſuch men of war that had ſerved divers yeares before in thoſe parts deviſed a newe invention, never heard nor read of before amongſt men of warre, but onely upon ſome great lackes and extremities, and that was that their ſoldiers inſteade of pay with money, ſhould be paid in provand, which was bread and cheeſe, and other ſuch victuall of the beſt cheape and baſeſt ſort, and that taxed by meaſure, ſaying, that it was not convenient that their ſouldiours ſhould receive their own payes, becauſe they knew not how to lay out their money, but that they would ſpend it idly: which ſimplicity and ignorance, if it had been in them (as it was not) they and their officers by good inſtruction, ſhould have reformed the ſame. But ſuch covetous men of warre, under the pretence (as though their ſouldiours had beene either naturall fooles or children) did, contrarie to all militarie order, put the greateſt part of their ſouldiours pay into their own purſes, allowing them great ſcarcity of provand. By which means it come to paſſe, that diverſe thouſands of their ſouldiours in thoſe plentiful countries, partly by hunger and partly by evil lodging, and altogether by the ſmall care and miſuſe of our ſuch men of warre did periſh. Beſides that, great numbers of ſuch their ſicke and ſtarved ſoldiers, by order of the earle of Leiceſter, were in thoſe partes embarked and tranſported into Eſſex and Kent, and

other partes of England, to recover health; of which foreſaid great numbers of miſerable and pitiful ghoſts, or rather ſhaddowes of men, the Eſſex and Kentiſh carts and carters (that carried them) can teſtifie; of which ſcarce the fortieth man eſcaped with life.

"Also, when any of their ſoldiers, through the naughtineſs or ſcarcitie of their victuall, or by their evill lodging, or by the peſtering, or lying of two or three hundred of them together in ſome one churche, and ſo in divers churches, upon the bare pavements, or upon diverſe other diſorders and miſuſages of ſome of our ſuch men of warre, fell ſicke, our ſuch men of warre did caſſe, and diſcharge them out of their bands for dead men, turning their provand money, with all overpluſſes into their own purſes, procuring newe ſupplies of well apparelled and luſty young men out of Eugland, to the intent to ſerve their own turns, and to conſume people after people. All which marveillous diſorders of ſome of our ſuch men of warre againſt their ſouldiers, contrary to all diſcipline militarie by them practiſed and uſed, with infinite others (which to rehearſe would make a huge volume) were the occaſion that manie thouſands of the luſtieſt and diſpoſt ſort of our Engliſh people, were in thoſe warres (as it were) wittingly and willingly caſt away, beſides great numbers, that at divers times did chooſe rather to flie to the enemy, than to ſerve under ſuch cruell and diſordered chieftaines. And theſe wonderful diſorders, with innumerable others, did continue and increaſe, untill ſuch time as diverſe young noblemen lately comming to take principall charges in thoſe warres, as alſo divers knights and gentlemen of noble and of worſhipful houſes, and themſelves of great valour and woorthines, did complaine of, and diſcover thoſe moſt ſtrange and wonderful abuſes, unto the queene and to her counſell, who underſtanding thereof, did very nobly reforme and redreſſe diverſe of thoſe diſorders, taking further orders that the aforeſaid newe deviſed provand ſhould be aboliſhed, and that in ſteade thereof, the ſouldiours ſhould receive their own payes in money: which with the wiſe and worthie proceedings and courſes of the aforeſaid noblemen, knights and gentlemen, that began with great order and diſcipline, to ſerve in thoſe warres, ſome at, and others ſince, the going over of the earle of Leiceſter hath

of late greatly prevailed, and redounded to the reformation of diverſe of thoſe ſtrange inventions and abuſes, invented and brought into thoſe warres by the aforeſaide newe fantaſied men of warre (m).

The corporals of the field ſeem, by the deſcription of their duties laid down in the treatiſe entitled the Military Art of Trayning, to have been ſomething like our preſent majors of brigade; they rarely occur before the time of the Queens Mary or Elizabeth. "The corporal of the field," ſays the writer of that anonymous work, "is an office of good reputation, tho' of great paines, labour and induſtry: there are commonly four of them, of which two are alwayes attending on the marſhall or generall, as their right hands, diſcharging by their endurances the governours of the campe of many travailes, cares and watchings: they ought either to be ancient captaines, caſheer'd as we ſay in the altering and charging the liſt of the army; or experienced ſouldiers that know how to beſtowe the companies, and where to order the regiments and ambuſcadoes; but in no caſe they muſt be choſen either for favour or affection, becauſe their ſervice conſiſts in knowledge and underſtanding the ſecrets of the warre, as having the overlooking of the colonels and captaines companies, that they march in order; the informing of the quarter maſters what ſquadrons ſhall goe to the watch or other employments, the giving the alarums to the campe, as taking notice of the ſcowt maſter's direction; the acquainting the colonel of the regiment volantem, with any danger or buſines; the overſeeing of ſkirmiſhes, and ſo to certifie the mariſhall and ſerjeant major, where is any defect or neede of ſupply: and a continuall attending both night and day, as never out of employment when the enemye lodgeth neare, or any towne or place is beſieged."

Markham, in his Souldiers Grammar (n), ſays, "the forrage maſter

(m) See Sir John Smythe Proeme Dedicatorie, &c. to his booke entitled Certain Diſcourſes, written by Sir John Smythe, Knight, anno 1590. See ſome account of this writer, in Wood's Athenæ Oxonienſes; alſo Strype's Annals, vol. iv. p. 46; more of him idem, p. 296, 297, 298, 299.

(n) Page 128.

general is a principall dependant upon the lord marſhall: to this officer's charge is delivered the diſpoſing of all manner of horſe proviſions, as haye, corne, ſtraw, graſſe, forrage, and the like, and hee foreſeeth that all inferiour officers which have charge herein, do their duties truely, and that equal diſtribution be made, and no ſouldier be hindered of his true allowance, and where fault is, to ſee due puniſhment executed on the offenders." The work laſt cited likewiſe (o) gives the following detail of the function of this officer. " You have likewiſe belonging to the campe, a forage maſter, an office of great uſe and expectation, as attending on the lieutenant of the horſe, who puts him in truſt with a convoy and a trumpet, to fetch in neceſſaries, both of graſſe and ſtuffer; ſo that when all thinges are ready, as the ſound of the trumpet troopt them together, they muſt likewiſe returne by the ſound of trumpet, without ſtraggling, placing their forage horſes in the middeſt; but if every horſe carry the proviſion behinde him, then is he to foreſee that no miſchief happen by negligence or retardance."

The judge marſhal, by ſome ſtiled auditor general, and ſince called judge advocate, was an officer ſkilled in the civil, municipal, and martial laws: his office was to aſſiſt the marſhall or general, in doubtful caſes; he had a clerk who took down the proceedings. In the army ſent to St. Quintins, there were two judges, each having a clerk. A judge marſhal is alſo mentioned in the eſtimate of the army intended for the recovery of the palatinate.

Sir James Turner deſcribes the qualifications and duty of a judge marſhal in the following words. " He ought to be a grave and judicious perſon, who fears God, and hates vice, eſpecially bribery. A lawyer he ſhould be, in regard moſt articles of war have their riſe from law, and many caſes chance to be avoided in courts of war, where no military article is clear, but muſt be determined by the civil law, or by the municipal law of the prince, to whom the army belongs; and the judge marſhal's duty is to inform the court what either of theſe laws provides in ſuch caſes; ſome princes remit the whole

(o) P. 25.

juſtice of the army ſo abſolutely to the judge marſhal, that they give him power to puniſh ſoldiers who tranſgreſs publick proclamations of himſelf, without the colonel's conſent, yea, whether he will or not. The provoſt marſhal general, and all the officers of juſtice of the army, whatever name they bear, are to obey the judge marſhal's directions and orders. He may cauſe delinquents to be apprehended, and ſend them to the regiments to which they belong, with direction to the colonels to call regiment courts of war, at which he may appoint the provoſt marſhal or his deputy to be preſent, and to appeal from it in caſe any unjuſt or partial ſentence be pronounced. All complaints, whether in matters civil or criminal, are to be brought before him; and in many of them he hath power to give judgment himſelf, without any court, and in others he hath authority to oblige colonels to do juſtice, wherein if they fail, he may bring them before a general court, to anſwer for their partiality. All differences that are among merchants, tradeſmen, mark tenters, and ſutlers, who are permitted to frequent the army, or that happen between any of them and the officers and ſoldiers, are brought before him, and in them all (after due examination of the whole fact and witneſſes) he hath power to judge and give ſentence. He hath power to call together a general court of war, and to call ſuch colonels to it as he thinks fit, but herein he ſeldom acts till the general or ſelt marſhall adviſe the matter with him. Such colonels as he cites to be aſſeſſors, and do not appear, he may fine, and by the fiſcal exact the fines he hath impoſed. He is bound to examine all priſoners of war, as alſo all ſuch as frequent the army, and may be ſuſpected to be ſpies. All teſtaments, contracts, and obligations between party and party, are judged to be in force, when they are ſigned and atteſted by him. He hath power of the meaſures and weights within the army, and may order the marſhals to ſet fitting prices on all vendible things that are for back or belly. And he is to have a care that the provoſt marſhals neither wrong the ſoldiers, nor the merchants, victuallers, or ſutlers, and he is judge in any difference that may ariſe between them.

Among the Harleian manuſcripts in the Britiſh Muſeum, there

is a copy of the form of a commiſſion granted A.D. 1661, by Henry earl of Peterborough, to the judge advocate of the army employed in Africa, which, as it deſcribes the duties of that office, I have tranſcribed in the note below (p). No name is mentioned, ſo that probably it was a rough draught of the commiſſion for that appointment.

THE military ſurgeons of ancient times are very little mentioned in hiſtory; perhaps they were not in very great eſtimation (q); the ſuperſtitious abhorrence of what was deemed a violation of the dead, prevented their having an accurate knowledge of the human frame, which is only to be acquired by frequent diſſections: the practice of thoſe times ſeems to have been confined to the compoſition of certain oils, balms, and balſams, prepared with the groſſeſt ſuperſtition, and adminiſtered under the rules of aſtrology. The low ſtate of the art of ſurgery in France, even ſo late as the time of Francis I. contemporary

---

(p) HENRY, earl of Peterburgh, peere of England, lord Mordaunt, lord baron of Turvey, captain general, and commander in chief of all his majeſty's forces raiſed or hereafter to be raiſed for his majeſty's ſervice, in the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Morocco, and governor of the city of Tanjer, and of all other citties, townes, caſtles, or villages which are or ſhall at any time hereafter be reduced to his majeſtie's obedience in the above mentioned dominions.

To ..... advocate to the army. By virtue of the power and authority to me given by his moſt excellent majeſtie Charles II. by the grace of God king of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. I do hereby conſtitute and appoint you advocate as well in cauſes civil as criminall, in the army, raiſed or to be raiſed for his majeſties ſervice in the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Morocco, requiring and authoriſing you by all lawful means and by oathes of parties, to enquire of and examine all perſons accuſed, delated, ſuſpected, or defamed, for any crime or offence committed, or duties omitted, which are againſt the laws civill and ordinances of warr received or eſtabliſhed, and after all ſuch enquirey and examination, you are to purſue all ſuch offenders to a condigne puniſhment, before myſelf or a counſell of warre, appointed in purſuance of the truth (truſt) in you repoſed, and your duty to his majeſty. Given under my hand and ſeale att armes, the 12th day of October, 1661, in the 13th yeere of his majeſties reigne.

Signed, PETERBURGH.

No. 6844, Bib. Harl.

(q) THIS ſeems probable from the perſons with whom they are claſſed in the military code made at Mans, by Henry V. where under the head of the perſons ſubject to the conſtable and marſhal the medici are introduced in the following company: "Whether ſoldiers, ſhoemakers, taylors, barbers, phyſicians, or waſherwomen. See Upton de Re Militari.

with Henry VIII. may be gathered from the following note (r). How terrible muſt have been the ſtate of the military hoſpitals, and what numbers of men muſt have fallen a ſacrifice to ignorance, who under proper management might have been recovered to the ſervice of their country; but bad as the ſurgeons were, ſome were nevertheleſs neceſſary in our armies; and although the general mode of raiſing

(r) In the year of our Lord, 1536, the victorious King Fraunces ſent a great army into Piedmont to vitaile Thurin, &c.—I was at that time but a young chirurgion, and but little experienced in the art, becauſe I never had (as yet) ſeen the curation of wounds made by gun ſhot. True it is, I had read John de Vigo, his firſte booke of wounds in generall, chap. 8. where he ſaith, that thoſe wounds made by fiery engines do participate of venenoſity, becauſe of the powder, and for their curation he commands to cauterize them with the oile of elders, mixed with a little treacle. Yet nevertheleſſe becauſe I would not be deceived, before I made uſe of the ſaid boyling oile, knowing that it brought extreme paine to the patient, I obſerved the method of other chirurgeons in the firſt dreſſinge of ſuch wounds, which was by the application and infuſion of the aforeſaid oile, as hot as poſſibly they could ſuffer it, with tents and ſetons: wherefore I became emboldened to do as they did. But in the end my oile failed me, ſo that I was conſtrained to uſe inſtead thereof, a digeſtive made of the yolk of an egge, oil of roſes and terebinth. The night following I could hardly ſleep at mine eaſe, fearing leſt that for want of cauterizing, I ſhould find my patients, on whom I had not uſed the aforeſaid oyle, dead and empoyſoned; which made me riſe early in the morning to viſit them, where beyond my expectation, I found them on whom I had uſed the digeſtive medicine, to feele but little paine, and their wounds without inflammation or tumour, having reſted well all that night: the reſt, on whom the aforeſaid oile was applied, I found them inclining to feavers, with greate paine, tumour and inflammation about their wounds: then I reſolved with myſelfe, never to burne ſo cruelly the wounded patients by gun-ſhot any more. A famous chirurgion at Turin, propoſed a balm for gun-ſhot wounds as follows: two young whelps, one pound of earth worms, two pounds of the oil of lilies, ſix ounces of the terebinth of Venice, and one ounce of aqua vitæ; in my preſence he boiled the whelps alive in the ſaid oil, untill the fleſh deſerted from the bones; afterwards he took the worms, having before killed and purified them in white wine, to purge themſelves of the earth, which they have always in their bodies; being ſo prepared, he boiled them alſo in the ſaid oil, till they became dry; this he ſtrained thorow a napkin without any great expreſſion; that doone hee added thereto the terebinth; and laſtly the aqua vitæ, and called God to witneſſe that this was his balme, which he uſed in all wounds made by gun-ſhott, and in others which required ſuppuration; withall praying me not to divulge his ſecret. Treaſure of antient and modern times, being collections from Meſſrs. Francis Sanſovino, Anthony de Verdier, Loys Guyon, &c. London, 1619.

and paying them is not handed down, certainly ſome regular form of doing it muſt have exiſted.

In the wardrobe account of the pay of the army raiſed againſt the Scots, by Edward II. in the 15th year of his reign, many of the Welch corps have an officer ſtiled Medicus; but whether by that term, a phyſician or a ſurgeon is meant, ſeems doubtful, as the word medicus is ſometimes uſed for both a ſurgeon and an apothecary. None of theſe phyſicians or ſurgeons are charged to the Engliſh levies. And to the Welch they ſeem to bear no regular proportion to the number of private men; a corps of one thouſand nine hundred and ſeven men having only one, and another of nine hundred and ſixty-eight having two; the wages of all, except the two laſt named, was 6d. per diem each; thoſe which were raiſed on the king's land in Cardiganſhire had only 4d. each per diem.

In the liſt of the troops that attended King Edward III. to the ſiege of Calais, only one ſurgeon is mentioned, who ſeems to have been part of the retinue of the prince of Wales; and in the military eſtabliſhment of the 18th of the ſaid reign, as given in the accounts of Walter Wentwayt, treaſurer of the houſehold (s), there is one ſurgeon for the king's houſehold troops; four doctors, and one ſurgeon for the army of North Wales; two doctors and one ſurgeon for that of South Wales; a number by no means competent to the number of men to which they were appointed, ſuppoſing the inferior ſurgeons to have been ſtiled barbers; like the field ſhaver of the Germans, it ſeems reaſonable to expect they would ſomewhere appear on the muſter roll.

Henry V. A.D. 1415, engaged Maſter Nicholas Colnet, a phyſician, to ſerve him for one whole year, in the voyage then to be made either to the dutchy of Guyenne or France. Colnet was to bring with him three archers. If the expedition went to Guyenne, he was to have for his own wages forty marks, and twenty marks for each of his archers, for the whole year. If to France, for his own wages 1s. and for each of his archers 6d. a day, with regards.

(s) MSS. in my poſſeſſion.

In the ſame year the king engaged Thomas de Moreſtede, a ſurgeon, who contracted to bring with him twelve other ſurgeons and three archers. Moreſtede was to be paid as a man at arms, 12d. by the day, and his twelve aſſiſtants and three archers each 6d. with the uſual regard. The ſame conditions were covenanted in caſe the campaign lay in Guyenne, that were made with Colnet. Upon a petition, the king granted Moreſtede one waggon and two ſumpter horſes, for the carriage of the baggage and neceſſaries for himſelf and the twelve other ſurgeons. He likewiſe petitioned for money to buy neceſſaries for his office, but it was not granted.

The next year the king employed Moreſtede, joining with him William Bredewardyn, with the title of his ſurgeons, in a commiſſion to impreſs as many ſurgeons as they thought neceſſary for the expedition, with a ſufficient number of artificers for making their inſtruments, to be taken wherever they could be found (t).

Among the different perſons who indented in the 14th of Edward IV. to ſerve that king in Normandy and France, for one year, are the following phyſicians and ſurgeons (u).

Maſter Jacobus Fryle, king's phyſician, 2s. per diem, with two ſervants at 6d. per diem.

Maſter William Hobbis, phyſician and ſurgeon of the king's body, 18d. per diem.

Richard Felde - -	Surgeons every one at XIId. per diem.
Richard Elſtie - -	
John Smith - - -	
Richard Brightmore -	
Thomas Colard -	
Richard Clambre -	
Symon Coll - -	

(t) Rymer, tom. 9. p. 362.

(u) MS. in the library of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq; being an Abridgement of the Indentures for raiſing Soldiers for different kings, by Peter Le Neve Norrong; the original indentures are now remaining in the Paper Office.

William Coke - -	Other ſurgeons, every one at VId. per diem, for their attendance in the ſaid ſervice beyond ſea.
Richard Smythys -	
John Stanley - -	
John Denyſe - -	
Alexander Ledell -	

It is remarkable, that here are juſt twelve ſurgeons, the ſame number that appears to have been employed on the expedition under Henry V.

In the expedition to St. Quintin's, in the reign of Philip and Mary, 1557, to an army conſiſting of five hundred heavy armed horſe, five hundred light horſe, four thouſand foot, and two hundred pioneers, with officers and a train of artillery proportionable, there were fifty-ſeven ſurgeons, two of them belonging to the ſuite of the general, one to the lieutenant general, one to the high mariſchal, one to the general of the horſemen, one to the general of the infantry, and one to the maſter of the ordnance; all theſe at the daily pay of 1s. each. The remainder belonged to the corps of horſe, light horſe, and infantry, in the proportion of one ſurgeon to an hundred men; the daily pay of a ſurgeon of heavy horſe was 2s. of light horſe 1s. 6d. and of infantry 1s. No ſurgeon is charged for either the ordnance or pioneers (x).

Besides the king's pay, it ſeems as if the ſurgeons of former times, as well as thoſe of late, received a weekly ſtoppage from the private men. This may be gathered from the following deſcription of the duties of a military ſurgeon, written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth (y).

"Surgeons ſhoulde be men of ſobrietie, of good conſcience, and ſkillfull in that ſcience, able to heal all ſoares and woundes, ſpecially to take oute a pellett of the ſame All captaines muſt have ſuche ſurgeons, and ought to ſee them to have all their oyles, balmes, ſalves, and inſtruments, and neceſſary ſtuffe to them belonginge, allowinge and ſparinge carriadge for the ſame. That every ſouldier, at the paye

(x) No. 6844, Harleian MS.

(y) Ralph Smith's MS. before quoted.

daye, doe give unto the ſurgeon 2d. "as in tymes paſt hathe beene accuſtomed," to the augmentation of his wages; in conſideration whereof, the ſurgeon oughte readilie to employ his induſtrie uppon the ſoare and wounded ſouldiers, not intermedlinge with any other cures to them noyſome. Regarde that the ſurgeon bee truelye paid his wages, and all money due to hym for cures, that bye the ſame hee maye bee able to provide all ſuche ſtuffe as to him is needfull. Such ſurgeons muſte weare their baldricke, whereby they may be knowen in the tyme of ſlaughter, it is their charter in the field (z)."

In an eſtimate made anno 1620, for an army of twenty-five thouſand foot, five thouſand horſe, and twenty pieces of artillery, propoſed by King James to be ſent to the Palatinate, a number of ſurgeons are appointed, but no allowance or proviſion whatever appears in the eſtimate, for medicines or an hoſpital, although there is a very minute detail of almoſt every other neceſſary ſtore; and this ſeems the more extraordinary, as many of the moſt experienced officers of that time were called in to aſſiſt in forming the eſtimate.

The medicinal liſt appointed for this expedition were:

"In the general's trayne two phyſicians, at 6s. 8d. per diem each; two apothecarys at 3s. 4d. and two ſurgeons, each at 6s. 8d.

"Every regiment of foot conſiſted of twelve companies of one hundred and fifty men each, and had one chief ſurgeon, at 4s. per diem, and another ſurgeon to each company at 1s. per diem.

"Among the general officers of horſe is one chief ſurgeon at 4s. a day, probably to ſuperintend the ſurgeons of troops.

"To every troop, which was to conſiſt of an hundred men, one ſurgeon was allotted, his daily pay 2s. 6d.

"To the ordnance, pioneers, &c. there was allowed one barber

(z) From this paſſage it ſhould ſeem that ſurgeons formerly wore a diſtinguiſhing belt over their ſhoulders, like that now uſed by the itinerant farriers, vulgarly ſtiled ſow-gelders, in order to protect their perſons whilſt adminiſtering to the wounded in the field of battle, a circumſtance now rendered unneceſſary by the apparatus of bandages, &c. carried by ſurgeons attending a party where ſervice is expected, or in a field of battle.

ſurgeon, at 2s. per diem, and two under barber ſurgeons, at 6d. a day each."

One reaſon may be aſſigned for our ancient armies being able to do with ſo ſmall a number of ſurgeons, which is, that immediately after a battle ſuch of the meaner ſort of ſoldiers whoſe wounds ſeemed to require a conſiderable time for cure were by the general diſmiſſed, with a ſmall pecuniary proviſion to carry them home: this, according to Barnes's Hiſtory of Edward III. was done immediately after the battle of Poictiers.

Perhaps likewiſe the inferior ſurgeons, ſtiled barbers, were taken from the ranks, and therefore paid and muſtered as private men.

So much for the general and ſtaff officers of our ancient armies. We now proceed to the enumeration and deſcription of the duties of the officers attached to the ſeveral regiments and corps.

It ſeems uncertain at what time our armies were firſt divided into regiments, or rather, at what time that term was firſt introduced into our ſervice; and the ſame difficulty occurs with reſpect to the rank and title of colonel (a). Sir James Turner, who appears to be the beſt informed military writer of his time, cannot ſolve that queſtion; ſpeaking of a regiment he ſays, "I ſhall define it to be a certain number of companies joined in one body under one head. This definition agrees with all regiments of whatſoever ſtrength they be. There is not a definite number of companies ordained for each regiment; ſome conſiſting of ſix, ſome eight, ſome twelve, and ſome of twenty; but ten is now moſt ordinary, and formerly it was ſo when regiments were three thouſand ſtrong, and each company three hundred; yet I find, that in every French legion (which conſiſted of eighteen companies) there were about three hundred three and thirty men in each company, for every legion was ſix thouſand ſtrong. Nor is this word (regiment) one hundred years old, nor do I know of what language it is; in the

(a) Smith, in his Military Dictionary, ſays, regiments were firſt inſtituted in England A.D. 1660, but cites no authority for his aſſertion.

French and Italian tongues it was called a legion, and ſo it was in Latin, and he who commanded in chief over it was called colonel and colonello (b); in Spaniſh it was called a terzo (c), and its commander maiſtro del campo; in High Dutch it was called faulein, and he who commanded it, oberſter, which ſignifies ſuperior or ſupreme. But colonel is now underſtood in all languages, and the word (regiment) however barbarous it be in itſelf, hath ſuppreſt all other names and titles, and is now only uſed in all European tongues." From this aſſertion, and divers other concurrent circumſtances, we may, without being very much miſtaken, place the introduction of regiments and colonels about the reign of King Henry VIII. The ranks of lieutenant colonel, and ſerjeant major, as the office now ſtiled major was originally called, do not ſeem to have been ſo ſoon adopted, for we find both the terms regiments and colonels in Fynes Morriſon's Account of Queen Elizabeth's army in Ireland, A.D. 1600; but do not meet with thoſe of lieutenant colonel, nor ſerjeant major, as regimental officers. Nor do they appear to have been generally eſtabliſhed in the year 1591, for though a colonel general and a ſerjeant major are both mentioned in a military treatiſe, publiſhed that year by Gyles Clayton, the detail of their duties ſhew them to have been conſidered rather as general than regimental officers. We however find both theſe officers, with a deſcription of their duties, in Ward's Animadverſions of Warre, publiſhed A.D. 1639, from which it appears, there was little or no difference between the duty of thoſe officers then and at the preſent time. "The office of a colonell (ſays he) is very honourable, and a place of great conſequence in the army, wherefore he ought to bee a grave experienced ſouldier, religious, wiſe, temperate, and valiant; his

(b) The term tertio was uſed to ſignify a corps or regiment, ſo late as the civil war under King Charles I.

(c) Some derive the term colonel from the French word colonne or column, becauſe the colonel marches at the head of the column. This officer is by ſome of our ancient military writers called coronell, crownell, and by Kelly (in his book entitled Pallas Armata, publiſhed 1627) crowner; the enſign he calls handſigne.

command is not of ſo high an extent as the ſerjeant major generall's is; for his command extends no further than tenne or twelve companies, which he is to ſee well ordered, and ſtrictly governed; hee that hath his commiſſion firſt is to be accounted the eldeſt, and is to take place both in quarters, and in the march, and ſo every one ſucceſſively, according to the date of their commiſſion. He hath under his command two ſpecial officers; his lieutenant colonell and ſerjeant major: his office is, in time of warre, to ſee his regiment compleate, and to order his diviſions, and draw them into forme of battell; his place in the battell is various, according as he ſhall be commanded by the generall, but moſt uſuall, he takes his place before the right wing of his owne regiment, ordering his officers, as he ſhall have directions from his ſuperiors in authority; hee is to be forward in ſhewing good examples to his officers, that his worth and valour may not be blemiſhed; his eye is to be duly upon his owne officers and ſouldiers, to rebuke them that are negligent and cowardly, and to animate thoſe that are forward; hee ought to have all the colours of his regiment to be alike, both in colour and faſhion, to avoide confuſion, ſo that the ſouldiers may diſcerne their owne regiment from the other troopes; likewiſe every particular captain of his regiment may have ſome ſmall diſtinction in their colours, as their armes, or ſome embleme, or the like, ſo that one company may be diſcerned from another (d). Hee oughte in time of ſkirmiſhing in battell, to pry and take ſerious notice of the enemies battalias, how they are ordered, and what advantages are to be gained, which ſuddenly he is to encounter and atchieve; hee muſt be as cautelous and circumſpect in taking notice how the enemye playes his game, as himſelfe is to be wary and cunning in playing and managing his owne; hee is not to be put upon any deſperate ſervice, unleſſe he hath the command of five hundred or a thouſand ſouldiers; hee ought to be very expert in raiſing of fortifications, and in all kind of ſtratagems, in as ample a manner as the generall; becauſe many times he hath the ſole command in beleaguered towns, and in certain

(d) FORMERLY and till the reign of Queen Anne, each company had a colour.

quarters in the trenches againſt a fort beleaguered; alſo many times hee is to command divers troopes as generall in ſome kind of ſervices; hee is to have a well-governed and religious preacher to his regiment, ſo that by his life and doctrine the ſouldiers may be drawne to goodneſſe; hee is to cauſe ſo many of his regiment as are to releeve the watch, morning and evening, to be drawne in parado before the head of the quarters, where divine duties are to bee performed by the preacher amongſt them: every ſabbath day he is to have a ſermon in his tent forenoon and afternoone, and every officer of his regiment is to compell his ſouldiers that are freed from the guard to repaire thither; and that no ſutler ſhall drawe any beere in the time of divine ſervice and ſermon: hee is to have a ſpecial care to ſee ſuch dutyes performed by his officers as are given them in charge: there is no impunity or remiſſineſſe to be uſed in the warres, to any one that ſhall neglect or ſlight any duty or command: hee is to ſee that all guards, paſſages, and fortifications, wherein any of his regiment are to guard or maintaine, that it be ſufficiently guarded with ſouldiers; he ſeldome watcheth himſelfe in perſon in the campe, only in beleaguered townes hee paſſeth upon his duty: hee is to cauſe his owne drumme to beate, to prepare for the relief of the watch, morning and evening; likewiſe all the drums of the regiment are at the ſame time to beate; hee is to appoint the captaine of the watch in his regiment; the eldeſt captaine firſt beginneth, and ſucceſſively one after another, according to their antiquity; he hath only a lieutenant and enſigne, his lieutenant is titulary called captaine; hee is to have a ſufficient quarter maſter to his regiment; hee is alſo to have an under marſhall, whoſe office is to lay irons upon ſuch delinquents as ſhall be committed to his charge; hee is likewiſe to looke to all ſutlers, that no abuſe be in their exceſſive prices or ill meaſures; there are able and ſufficient ſutlers to bee provided for his regiment. The colonell is to ſit in counſell with the generall, and to adviſe accordinge to his wiſedome and experience, about all ſtate affaires: hee is to ſit in the marſhal's court, and to give his voyce for the puniſhing of delinquents; hee is to be a man free from all vices; hee is to be religious, grave, wiſe, and truly valiant.

" A LIEUTENANT colonel of a regiment is a place of high conſequence and great dignitie, being the ſecond perſon in the regiment; hee is not to be deficient in all kindes of literature, but to bee as able both in valour and experience as the colonel; in regard in the colonel's abſence, hee hath the ſole ordering of the regiment, and upon all occaſions as his colonel ſhall command, hee is to bee ready and dutifull to performe: there is much toyle and paines belonging to his office, in regard he frees the colonel's execution of his duties; hee ought, in time and cauſes of preſent perill, to give his beſt advice to his colonel, and to give him notice of every particular paſſage in the regiment; hee is not of his owne authority to act any thinge without his colonel's command; all the captaines and officers of the regiment ought to reſpect and obey his commands; hee is to ſee the regiment well ordered; the watches ſet, and the guards duly relieved; in time of battell, he is in many times commanded to draw up diviſions to charge the enemy: in beſieges hee relieves his colonel, taking his command by turnes: it is his charge to ſee to the regiment that all things are orderly performed, and that all neceſſaries be provided both for food and ammunition; hee is to ſee every captaine demeane themſelves faire to their companies, that their pay be duly diſtributed amongſt the ſouldiers; hee is to ſee their armes fixed and fitting for ſervice: every captaine is to have two powder bougets, with powder, bullet and match; hee is to command the captaines to drawe out their companies into the field, and to ſee them exerciſe them; hee is to exerciſe every company in the regiment himſelfe at his pleaſure; hee is to obſerve how every captaine clothes his ſouldiers, and to have his eare open to the complaints of poore diſtreſſed ſouldiers, and ſee them righted; hee is to take notice of all quarrels and diſputes among the officers, and endeavour to reconcile them, otherwiſe to lay his command on them, and to confine them to their lodgings untill his colonel underſtands of it; hee is to releaſe no delinquent from priſon, that is laid in by the conſent of his colonel; hee is to ſit in the marſhall's court in the abſence of his colonel; hee is to ſee the ſerjeant major order the regiment for the march, and hee is to aſſiſt

him in ordering and drawing up the diviſions into battalia; and to conclude, hee ought to be diſcreet, wiſe, valiant and religious, ſo that hee ſhould be a patterne to all the officers of his regiment to ſteere their courſes by.

"A SERJEANT major is the third and principall officer of the field; hee ought to participate of all the perfections that officers of higher authority ſhould have; his place and office doth ſomewhat correſpond with the major general's, onely his duty is tending to officiate betweene the colonel and the officers of the regiment; he is to be learned in all the liberal ſciences, he ought to have both ſpeculative and practicke knowledge in all things belonging to his profeſſion, he muſt be very civill, wiſe and diſcreet in his carriage and actions, in regard he is to manage a world of affaires of high conſequence, which may ſerve to the conſerving or ruining of the army; he is duly to attend his colonel's pleaſure, and morning, noone, and night, he is to watch upon the major generall, and to receive ſuch orders, as are by the generall of the army delivered unto him; hee is ſpeedily to certifie his colonel what the orders are, and what the general's pleaſure is, and alſo, with all celerity, to execute ſuch things as his colonel ſhall give him in charge; he is not onely to be a good ſcholler and witty, but he muſt be quick in apprehenſion, and furniſht with an able memory; he muſt have a paper book, with pen and incke, to ſet down all orders and commands, that he may not erre nor vary one tittle from what was delivered him in charge: at drums-beat he is to repair to the general's tent, and take the word of the major general, and orders for that night's proceedings; then he is to repaire to his colonel's tent, where he is to deliver him the word, and to his lieutenant colonel, with ſuch orders as he has received.

"THE ſerjeants of every company of his regiment are to repaire to him, to take the word from him, with ſuch orders as he ſhall give them, and they are ſpeedily to acquaint their captaine and other officers with it; all the inferior ſerjeants are to ſtand round about him, and he is to deliver the word very privately in the ear of the ſerjeant which ſtands at his right hand, and he is ſecretly to whiſper it in the eare of

the next, and ſo from one to another round, and the laſt man is to give it to the ſerjeant major againe, if the laſt man give it him wrong, then he muſt give it over again. He is to have them draw billets for their guards, in regard much diſputes may ariſe, becauſe many guards are more ſubject to the danger of the enemy, than ſome others are; and alſo to prevent treaſon, ſo that no officer know his guard beforehand: hee is alſo to provide powder, match and bullets, and diſtribute it among the officers of his regiment; he ought to have able officers to his owne company, becauſe hee cannot tend unto them, his employments are ſo great; hee ought to have a ſwift nagge, to carrye him about the quarters, and to viſit his guards, for his buſineſſe lyes very confuſedly in the army; hee is likewiſe to view all outward guards, both in the day time, and in the night, where his regiment hath command, every captaine is to give him the word, and from one guard to another he is to be guarded with certaine muſquetiers; hee is to inſtructe and ſhewe ſuch of his officers as are to paſſe upon watch, where to place their ſentinels and perdues; he is likewiſe to ſhew every officer whether to draw his company to join with the reſt in batalia; if the enemy ſhould give an alarme. He is to exerciſe all the companies of his regiment at convenient times.

"The office of a captaine being ſo honourable and a place of ſuch great conſequence, that it ought not ſlightly to bee conſidered of, wherefore they ought to be men of excellent quality, and of undaunted valiant reſolution; hee ſhould not be inferior in knowledge and ſkill, and in all the circumſtances and actions belonging to warre, in as profound a manner as the chiefeſt officer of the field, for he hath a charge of great importance committed into him, hee being many times called to execute the office of ſerjeant major, or lieutenant colonel; beſides hee is expoſed to all manner of danger in the warres, for no captaine but muſt leade on his men in the face of an enemy, and charge them in the teeth, which if he be not ſkilfull as well to leade them off as to draw them on, hee may be the occaſion of ſpilling much bloud; hee ought not to be a man choſen altogether for birth, meanes, perſonage, favour or affection; but for his wiſedome, civility,

valour and experience ; the unexpertneſſe of a captaine hathe beene the ruine of armies and deſtruction of commonwealths : in the time of peace, every brave fellow deſires to bee honoured with the name and charge of a captaine, but when warre approacheth, and the enemy is at hand, they quake their ſwords out of their ſcabbards, and had rather make uſe in fight of their wings then their tallents. A captaine oughte to be well ſeene and read in all the liberal ſciences, to be acquainted with hiſtory, and to have what ſpeculative knowledge that may be to joyne with their practice ; all kinde of ſtratagems ſhould be familiar with him, and nothing ſhould be wanting that might make him an accompliſhed ſouldier : a captaine ought to have regard to the due exerciſing of his ſouldiers, fitting them in all points for ſervice ; he ought to ſee his ſouldiers furniſhed with all things needful ; as armes, munition, and their weekly pay duely at the appoynted times ; hee is to be very conſcionable in delivering them their off-reckonings and apparell ; he is to paſſe very ſtrictly (if it be in time of warre) upon his watch ; being captaine of the watch, he is to command the gentlemen of the rounds to be ſet out, and to have the word given them ; if he be in the field he ſhould lead out the perdues, and ſee them viſited in due ſeaſon ; then afterwards his lieutenant and other inferior officers are to do the like. If he be in garriſon, in time of danger, hee is preciſely to go the firſt round himſelfe, being ayded with his ſerjeant and divers gentlemen, where he may viewe the ſtrength and ſufficiency of every guard, and how every officer doth diſpoſe of his ſouldiers ; hee is to take the word of every officer in his round at every corps du guard. If he be incampt in the field, then he is to goe the patroule through his owne regiment, and cauſe all ſutlers to extinguiſh their candles, and to ſuffer no drinking after the warning peece is diſcharged : if his company be two hundred ſtrong, hee is to have foure corporalls, and to divide his company into foure even parts, viz. fifty ſouldiers in a corporal-ſhip : in the time of peace and being in garriſon, one ſquadron onely watcheth, beginning with the eldeſt corporal-ſhip the firſt night, and ſo ſucceſſively, one corporal-ſhip relieving the other : in time of warre, halfe or whole compa-

nies, ſpecially being in the fielde ; no guard ſhould be relieved but once in twenty-four houres, hee is to make the choyce of the chief and ableſt ſouldiers being men of quality, to be gentlemen of his company ; they are to guard with the captaine of the watch by turns, and to walke the round aboute all the walls and bulwarkes ; they are to give the word to the corporalls at every guard ; they are to diſcover the enemy, and to ſee the ſentinells doe their duty ; which if they cannot, or miſtake it, the guard is to charge them with their weapons, and apprehend them as enemies ; the captaine is to lay out theſe gentlemen perdue upon convenient paſſages and apt places, to diſcover if the enemy ſhould ſally out ; accordinge as the place is in diſtance from the enemies trenches, ſo muſt the number of perdues be laid, one a pretty diſtance behinde the other, ſo that if occaſion bee, they maye retreate backe one to the other, and ſo give notice to the campe, that they may prepare for an aſſault: theſe are to be relieved every hour or half houre ; alſo the captaine to inſtruct his ſouldiers how to make an aſſault againſt the enemy, and alſo how to defend an aſſault: hee muſt be a good engineere, to knowe howe to raiſe all kinde of workes and trenches, and how to place his men upon the flankes to ſcowre the bulwarkes by the lyne of levell, upon a breſte worke in the campe, hee is to place betwixt every two muſquets, a pike, the muſquetiers are to give fire and fall off, and another immediately to preſent in his place, the pikes are to ſtand firme: the captain is to have his armour of proofe and a faire pike, for his offenſive and defenſive armes: hee is to have two great bougets made of dry neats leather, which will hold a hundred weight of powder apeece, to furniſh his muſquetiers withall: hee is to ſee the bandyliers filled with powder, with ſufficient match and bullets ; hee muſt ever be in readineſſe to anſwer an allarum, and the firſt that ſhall charge the enemy ; if the enemy make his approaches againſt the campe, after the captaine hathe drawne his men up to the parapet, to make reſiſtance, and being all ready to give fire, hee is to command that no man gives fire until he gives order, and to ſuffer the enemy to come in as cloſe as may bee, and then give him a brave volley of ſhot altogether in his teeth, one muſquetire relieving

the other, the pikes charging manfully and ſtedfaſtly ; at all convenient times hee is to drill his ſouldiers very accurately, ſhewing them all the poſtures of the pike and muſquet, then how to march, counter march, to double their files and rankes, the middle men to double to the front, to advance forwards, and to retreat backwards at the ſound of the drumme, to wheele about his muſquetiers, to make redy, preſent and give fire, to give fire in the front, in the reare and upon either flanke, to fall off by files and give fire, as we ſhall hereafter more largely diſcourſe of. A captaine oughte to march into the field in the front of his company, and his lieutenant in the reare ; but marching out of the fielde the captaine's place is to bring up the reare, and the lieutenant to leade the company ; the enſigne is to march before the firſt diviſion of pikes, the eldeſt ſerjeant is to bring up the next diviſion of pikes, and another ſerjeant the laſt diviſion of muſquetiers.

" The captaine ought not to doe any reall act in the warres without commiſſion from higher authority, he is to lead up the right wing of his muſquetiers, to charge the enemy, and his lieutenant the left : when a captaine makes choice of a lieutenant, or enſigne, he is to drawe his company into armes, and one of the gentlemen is to carry the pattiſen or colours, and being marched into the field, the captaine is to deliver the pattiſen or colours (in the head of the troope) to the officer he hath made choice of, commanding the ſouldiers to take notice of him, and to obey him as their officer : he is to make choice of diligent ſerjeants and vigilant corporals, a truſty clerke, and good drummes ; he ought to have one waggon at the leaſt, to carry his baggage, and to conducte ſicke ſouldiers ; hee is to be as little peſtered with luggage of his owne, or his ſouldiers, as poſſibly may be, leſt it ſhould hinder their march ; and alſo upon any ſervice be rather forward to fight for goods, than have their mindes homewards, fearing to loſe their own; he ought not to be covetous nor niggardly, but forward to gratify all good ſervices, with ſome guifts and courteſie, whereby he ſhall indeere his ſouldiers to be prodigall of their lives to doe him ſervice : he muſt be familiar and eloquent in perſuading and diſwading his ſouldiers, and to ſtirre up their valors to undergoe pain

and perill; if a ſouldier tranſgreſſe, he ought not to beate him, but to ſend him to the provoſt marſhall, to have irons laid on him; by beating of a ſouldier, a world of hatred will be ſtirred up, and happily private revenge; he ought to be very careful to keepe his ſouldiers in action, whereby idle expence of time (as drinking and playing) may be prevented, which uſually ends in quarrelling and bloud-ſhed: he is to have lanthornes and torches, ſuche as will burne in any ſtorme and tempeſt, for they may ſtand him many times in great ſtead: he is to have his tent in the head of all his troope, and to be converſant with them, ſhewing them enſamples of hardſhip; he ought always to have his colours and drumme in the field when he exerciſeth his company, as well to give the more reputation unto the action, as alſo that the uſe of them may be well knowne.

"Lastly, a captaine ought to carry himſelf in ſuch a way, that his ſouldiers may both feare and love him; too much familiarity breeds contempt, and to ſterne a carriage begets hatred; and ſo let him not over-value his life, but expoſe it to the fortune of the warre; uſing his beſt ſkill and indeavours to annoy his enemies, and to be diligent and forward in executing ſuch commands as authority injoins him, and ſo to perſiſt in a reſolution to feare nothing but infamie.

"And I will conclude with an exhortation to all noble captaines, deſiring them for their credits ſake, and for the honour of our gracious king and wellfare of our kingdome, to be more diligent in the diſciplining of their ſoldiers, and not to chop and change ſo many new men in their companies, that betweene muſter and muſter, the third part of the company are new untutored fellowes, that knowes not their right hand from their left; ſo that it is a labor in vain to inſtruct them, and they are the meanes of putting all thoſe that have ſome knowledge out of ſquare, by their awckward doings; beſides all baſe beggarly fellowes are admitted into the muſter rowle, when as the beſt and chiefeſt yeomen ought to doe their king and country ſervice in their owne perſons. Then laſtly, that every captaine would command his officers to inſtruct the pikes and muſquets whilſt the reſt are a calling over, and then eyther himſelfe or his lieutenant to exerciſe them in

groſſe all their poſtures; and cauſe them to give fire in way of ſkirmiſh; and not to goe into the towne untill all the exerciſe bee finiſht.

"A LIEUTENANT is an office of high credit and reputation, and he ought in all reſpects to bee well indoctrinated and qualified in the arts military, and ought not to be inferiour in knowledge to any officer of higher authority; for an unſkilfull captaine may better demeane himſelfe with an experienced lieutenant, then an unſkilful lieutenant can fadge with a ſkilful captaine; becauſe all buſineſſe belonging to a company is for the moſt part ordered by the lieutenant, the captaine having other imployments of greate importance, hee is to ſee the company fitted in all reſpects for ſervice; hee is the right hand to his captaine, in ayding and aſſiſting him, as well in the brunt of battle, as in peace; hee is to ſee to the fitting and furniſhing of all things neceſſary belonging to the company; hee is to keepe a perfect roule of all the ſouldiers in the company, and to obſerve that every ſquadron be compleate; hee is to view the ſufficiency and fixeneſſe of the armes, and to give order for the repayring of ſuche as ſhall be found defective: he is to order and ranke the company fit for his captaine to marche with; hee is to divide his company into foure diviſions; making two diviſions of the pikes and two of the muſquetieres; hee is to ranke the firſt diviſion of muſquets in the front, and the ſecond diviſion of muſquets in the reare of the pikes; hee is to march in the reare of the company into the field; and in marching out of the field, the captaine is to march in the rear, and the lieutenant in the front; hee is carefully to paſſe upon his duty, to ſee the ſquadrons drawne to the guards for to watch; hee is to be very carefull and diligent in exerciſing his company; either by ſquadrons upon the guards, or the whole company in the field, aſſuming fit and convenient times; hee is to lead on the left wing of ſhot in time of ſervice; in time of exerciſing, hee is to helpe order the company ſo that his captain may have the more eaſe and freedome; hee ought to be ſilent, and to cauſe ſilence in the company, during the time of his captaine's exerciſe; hee ought to bee in the reare of the company to inſtruct the ſouldiers how to act and obſerve the captaine's commands; hee ought to call over the company, and to take a par-

ticular ſurvey of every defect; hee ought to rule over the company, and take a particular ſurvey of every ſoldier in his captaine's abſence, for then hee is in abſolute authority, and the ſouldiers are bound to obey him as their chief in all reſpects; hee ought not to refuſe to bee put upon any ſervice by his captaine or colonel, or any chiefe officer of the field; alſo he is not to bee ſent upon any convoy, or to guard any paſſage without a ſufficient troope of ſouldiers; fifty or ſixty at leaſt; if leſſe, then the enſigne is of ſufficiency to command them: hee is to view his captaine thrice a day, morne, noone and night, but eſpecially in the time of warre, to ſee what hee hath to command him; hee is to take notice of what diſcords, quarrels and debates ariſe amongſt the ſouldiers of his band; hee is to pacifie them if it may bee, otherwiſe to commit them: hee is to judge and determine ſuch diſputes with gravity and good ſpeeches, and where the fault is, to make him acknowledge it, and crave pardon of the party hee hath abuſed: hee is duly to ſee the watch ſet, and to follow them to the guard, and ſee the ſentinells ſet out, and give them their charge what they are to doe: if hee bee in the field, hee is to viſit the ſentry perdues very often: he is to command the ſoldiers in a kinde of perſwaſory way, to obey their corporals and ſerjeants; wherefore hee ought to give good language, in a diſcreet and wiſe manner, to move and perſuade them, with ſome reaſons, to the obſervation and obedience of military diſcipline, diſburthening his captaine of many toyles; hee is to be careful that every ſouldier have a ſufficient lodging in garriſon, and in the field a hut: hee is alſo to take due care of the ſicke and maymed, that they periſh not for want of means or looking unto; he is alſo to take care that the futlers do not oppreſſe and rack the poor ſouldiers in their victuals and drinke; he is to ſee the company provided with all kinde of ammunition, with axes, mattockes, ſpades and the like, to build their hutts withall; theſe inſtruments are to have the marke of the gallowſe ſet on them, in token of deathe to them that ſteale them; hee is, in his captaine's abſence, to ſit in the chriſtade or marſhall's court, to define of the puniſhments which are to be inflicted upon delinquents and malefactours, their puniſhment going by moſt voyces; hee is to

ſet a guard at his captaine's tent, and likewiſe at the cullours, where hee ought to give order for fitting a place to hang up looſe armes; his hutt ought to bee in the head of the quarter upon the right hand, and the enſignes on the left, and the ſerjeants at the reare of the quarter; hee is to bee alwaies in readineſſe to anſwer an allarum, and with all ſpeed to draw his men, if they bee in garriſon, to that part or guard his ſquadron hath the watch at; if in the campe, then to the breſt-worke before their quarters, where hee is to place between each muſquet a pike, for their better defence: in garriſon hee is to bee captaine of the watch, in his captaine's ſtead, onely for the eaſe of his captaine; where hee muſt be very circumſpect upon his guard; hee is to have his enſign and his ſerjeants to attend him, hee is to goe the firſt round with a ſerjeant and two gentlemen at the leaſt to attend him, where hee is to take the word of every corporall, and to ſee that the ſentinells bee duly plact out, and to give them charge to be very circumſpect in their watches, that upon the ſight of the enemy, or the ſeeing of their matches ſparkle, or hearing their armour clatter, they preſently informe the corporalls, ſo that an allarum may be given to the towne; but hee that ſhall give a falſe allarum is to be impriſoned. The lieutenant is to go the patroule with a ſufficient guard about all the ſtreets, within the night, to prevent treaſon in the town, or to diſcover fire or ill orders, as quarrelling, &c. Hee is to march in the morning with the major of the garriſon, at the drumme beating, to the opening of the ports; hee is to be guarded with all the gentlemen of the round; in ſommer time, at watch ſet, hee is to draw his men in parrado in the market place, with all the reſt of the companies in the towne, their companies being compleate: if in the field and to goe upon ſervice, hee ought to ſee prayers read in the head of the troopes every night; and every ſabbath all thoſe ſouldiers that have not the guard, hee is to compell them to goe to their colonel's tent to heare prayers and preaching; hee is to bee religious, valiant, and wiſe; his armes is only a gorget and pattiſen.

"An enſigne, being the foundation of the company, ought to be endued with valour and wiſedome, and to equal his ſuperior officers in

ſkill, if it were poſſible; the honour and reputation both of the captaine and ſouldiers, depends upon the welfare of the colours, and contrarily there can be no greater diſhonour than to loſe them. I have read in hiſtory of enſignes, that rather than they would undergoe the diſhonour of loſing their colours, being ſo dangerouſly charged by the enemy, that either they muſt yield them up, or be ſlaine, have choſen rather to wrappe them about their bodyes, and have leapt into the mercileſſe waters, where they have periſht with their colours, moſt honourably to their immortal fames(e): After any company is caſhired, if the enſigne hath behaved himſelfe honourably, the captaine ought to beſtow the colours on him as a favour: in the abſence of his ſuperior officers, hee is punctually to ſupply their places, and to paſſe upon thoſe duties which they ſhould; whether it be to be captaine of the watch, or to bee commanded out with ſome troopes for the guarding of ſome paſſage, to prevent the enemies approaches; hee is to exerciſe his company in all their poſtures; he ought to be gallantly apparelled, with a faire ſword and brigandine; if hee be commanded to paſſe upon any ſervice with part of the company, he is not to carry his colours; alſo, if the whole company are to guard ſome dangerous out-workes, as a halfe moone or a redoubt, the company is to troope thither, and he is to leave his colours in the quarters, with a ſufficient guard over them, and hee is to take for his weapon a good pike.

"Also, every ſouldier's honour is highly engaged to defend and preſerve their enſigne, and if occaſion of neceſſity ſhould happen, they muſt not ſpare to runne upon the pikes to relieve him, as divers valiant ſouldiers formerly have done: hiſtories have eternized to their immortall fame, the honourable exploits of Capt. Morerula and his two brothers; one of them being his enſigne at the ſiege of the citie of Africa, in Barbary, in Charles the Fifth's time, when John de Vega, viceroy of Sicilia, ſcaled the walls of it; this enſigne being ſore wounded and overthrowne, his brother, being ſerjeant, ſeconded him, and recovered the

(e) Ensign Epps, at the battle of Flanders, &c.

colours, who advancing forwards like a valiant ſouldier, was ſlaine; the captaine, brother to them both, tooke up the colours, and performed the enſigne's office; who in the ſcaling of the wall, was ſore hurt, and died thereof: thus three valiant bretheren died honourably in defending their colours. If an enſigne ſhould loſe all his colours from the ſtaffe and hoſe, it is no diſhonour. When an army is drawne into batalia, the enſigne ought to ſtand out before the front of it, ſome five paces; and if the generall, or ſome other chiefe officer of the fielde paſs by, he is gently to vaile his colours, holding the butte end of his ſtaffe at his girdleſted: alſo a maxime that no ſouldier moves hat or helmet to the greateſt commander that is, but only to bow his body to him; likewiſe, in time of battell, the enſigne is to withdraw himſelfe for his ſafety into the middlemoſt ranke of the pikes; likewiſe in a march the enſigne is to march before the firſt diviſion of pikes, with his flying colours. If a kinge or great prince paſſeth by, the enſigne is to vaile his colours cloſe to the ground, with his knee bending, in token of allegiance and ſubmiſſion; every enſigne of private companies ought to obſerve how the enſigne of the right hand of the battell orders his colours, after the ſame manner hee is to order his; every ſouldier upon an allarme is ſpeedily to repaire to his colours; likewiſe not to forſake them until they be lodged; when any company ſhall march either into campe, guard, fortreſſe, or caſtle, no ſouldier ought to diſarme himſelfe, untill they ſee firſt the colours placed, and the enſigne diſarmed; likewiſe no ſooner ſhall a ſouldier ſee the enſigne take up his colours, but they ſhould arme and ranke themſelves immediately.

"No enſigne ought to diſarme himſelf upon any guard, campe, or field, untill hee ſees that with ſafety he may doe it: likewiſe an enſigne ſhould ſhew himſelfe forwardeſt with his colours in aſſaulting a fort, or entering a breach, to encourage the ſouldiers manfully to fall on to defend and make way for them: he ought to behave himſelf ſo, that he may gain the love of all the ſouldiers, whereby his owne perſon ſhall be in the more ſafetie, when he ſhall attempt any perillous exploits, for love will command a ſouldier to fight, when all things in

the world elſe cannot ſpur him forwards; and let him know that the vertue of the enſigne ſetteth forth the vertue and valour of the captaine and his whole band. I could wiſh our noble captaines would be pleaſed to be more circumſpect in their election of officers, and not to put undeſerving fellowes of baſe birth and qualitie into place of comand, which deſerves gentlemen of quality to officiate, the office of the enſigne being a place of repute and honour, doth not ſute every yeoman, taylor, or fidler; as I have knowne to one company in Eſſex, all theſe or the like mechanick fellowes have had the honour to beare the colours before a generous captaine of noble birth, whoſe name I forbeare to relate, but let it be an item to all generous captaines to make choyce of officers that are well bred and deſerving; otherwiſe they doe but diſgrace themſelves, and abuſe his Majeſtie's ſervice, and the reputation of our countrey."

Venn, in his Military Obſervations (f), is very copious in treating on enſigns or colours, their dignity, the diſgraces to which they are liable, the uſe and ordering of them, with the poſtures and flouriſhes thereunto belonging: theſe, as they contain divers curious regulations, as well as ancient cuſtoms, are laid before the reader in the Appendix, No. 3.

The officer next in command, in a company of foot, is a non-commiſſioned one, namely the ſerjeant, whoſe duty is thus deſcribed by Ward.

" A ſerjeant of a company ought to be a man of good experience, and ſufficiently inſtructed in all martial exerciſes. He ought to be learned both in writing and arithmetic; he is always to have a ſquadron-rowle about him, wherein hee ſhould diſtinguiſh every man by the armes he beares; his duty is, when the drumme beates for the watch ſetting, to repaire with his holberd to his colours, where he ought to call over particularly every ſouldier of that ſquadron, and view the fixenneſſe of their armes, and what match, bullets, and powder every man hath; he is to rancke the ſquadron; and if no

(f) Military and Maritime Diſcipline in three books, &c. by Captain Thomas Venn, publiſhed 1672.

ſuperior officer bee there, he is troope away with them to the guard, with his holberd advanced.

"HEE is to attend the coming of the major of a garriſon, or the ſerjeant major of his regiment (if they bee intrencht in the field) for the watchword; and to receive ſuch orders from him, as he hath received from the ſerjeant major generall of the army, or from the governor of the garriſon, he is to give the word to his captaine firſt, if he bee in the place, and then to each ſuperior officer, and laſtly to the corporall; the eldeſt ſerjant in a march leadeth up the diviſion of muſquetiers in the reare; in time of training, they are to looke that every man keepes his rankes and files duly, helpe order the company all the time of exerciſe: in time of warre, he is employed upon parties which are ſent out to diſcover, or to fetch in bootie and farrage; likewiſe many times to the guarding of paſſages; alſo in laying out of perdues, and viſiting them: alſo in ordering of troops that are drawne out to charge ſome part of the enemy, where he is to bring up the muſquetiers to his ſuperior officer, in good order to ſkirmiſh, and to give fire upon the enemy, and ſo orderly to leade them off againe, ſeeing them ranke themſelves fairly, and cauſing them to make ready their peeces to come up and fire againe; alſo in retreite, he ought to aſſiſt the ſouldiers diſcreetly in keeping their orders, leſt confuſion betide them; alſo in time of fight, to ſee the ſoldiers bandaliers filled ready, that no ſtay bee made, and to ſee the powder tranſported after them ſecurely; he is alſo (when his captaine is captaine of the watch) to call out the gentlemen of the round to doe their duties, and to give them the word; he ought to aſſigne every ſouldier his due and proper place to marche in, that no contention may ariſe; hee is to place the chief gentlemen in the front, on the right hand file; the next in degree to lead the left hand file, ſo placing every man according to his degree; hee ought to ſee that every corporall be a muſquetiere; hee is to fetch the powder, ſhot, and match from the magazene, and diſtribute it to each corporall, and ſo to each ſoldier of their ſquadron: hee is, at his captaine's command, to carry all delinquents to priſon, and ſee irons put upon them; if ſcarcity of victuals ſhould be in the

campe, he is to procure it from the ammunitioner of the army, leſt the company fall in want, which being procured, hee is to diſtribute it to the corporalls, and they to their ſquadrons; hee is alſo to inſtruct the drummes the true tone of beating, viz. a call, a march, a troope, a charge, an allarme, a retreite, &c. hee ought to be reſolute and forward in times of ſkirmiſhing, ſhewing worthy examples to the ſouldiers, that they might imitate him; hee ought, by his ſerviceableneſſe and care, to gaine the love of the whole company; it muſt be farre from him to be addicted to the helliſh vice of drinking, drabbing or dicing, uſing his beſt endeavours to ſhame ſuche as ſhould in that kind tranſgreſſe; alſo he is not to permit any ſouldier that is in drinke to performe any duty of charge for that time, for feare of ſleeping or quarrelling, whereby much inconveniencies may enſue; but rather ſeeke to puniſh him ſeverely, that all may take example by him, to beware of the like overſight: hee is every night at drum beating to draw billets for his guard, and accordingly to leade his ſquadron to it (g); and thus behaving himſelfe wiſely and valiantly, hee ſhall gaine honour and reputation, which will be ſteps to advance him to higher fortunes: and to define the office of a ſerjeant truly, hee is to bee the eye, eare, mouth, hand, and feet of his ſuperior officers. I could wiſh our ſerjeants of bands here in England were thus qualified, for their captaines ſakes; but I fear the blind will leade the blind, and ſo fall both into the ditch; it were happy if they would endeavour to learne to underſtand their office againſt his majeſty ſhould have occaſion to uſe them."

Sir James Turner in his Pallas Armata, p. 220, defines the duty of a ſerjeant in ſubſtance pretty ſimilar to the deſcription of it here given; but adds, that a ſerjeant hath power to correct the ſoldiers with his halbert and ſword, and commit to priſon any ſoldier.

The corporal, or more properly the caporal, is the next in rank to the ſerjeant; his title is of Italian origin, derived from capo, which

(g) If the guard bee at a port, then the ſerjant is to guard with his holbert all the day, with the ſquadron, and many times all night in times of danger.

ſignifies head, he being the capo de eſcadra, or chief of his ſquad or ſquadron. "A caporal," ſays Sir James Turner, "ought to be an experienced, vigilant, and laborious ſoldier; he hath an abſolute command of his ſquadron, neither may any in it diſobey him; if any do, the caporal may beat him with his ſword, and commit him to priſon: when a muſquet reſt was in faſhion, he was permitted to beat with it. He is to warn all his ſquadron, or a part of it (according as he receives order) to the watch, or to be ſent on party or other duties; upon the watch the corporal (having got his orders from his ſuperiors) appoints when, where, and how long each of his men are to ſtand centinel, and he is bound to teach them how they are to behave themſelves when centinels, and is to viſit them frequently; but if he finds any of them aſleep, he muſt not leave him as he found him, as an Athenian captain did (who kill'd a ſleeping centinel), but he muſt bring him to the corps de guard, and there make him priſoner till further order. The caporal is to receive the rounds at his court of guard, and take the word from them, but of this I ſhall tell you more in another place; he is alſo obliged, when he is not on the watch, to teach all that belong to his ſquadron their poſtures, and to handle their arms. So you ſee this caporal of ours hath work enough to do for all the pay or wages he gets."

THE lancepeſata, anſpeſade, or, as the preſent term is, lance corporal, was originally a man at arms or trooper, who having broken his lance on the enemy, and loſt his horſe in fight, was entertained, as a volunteer aſſiſtant to a captain of foot, receiving his pay as a trooper (h), until he could remount himſelf; from being the companion of the captain, he was ſoon degraded to the aſſiſtant of the corporal, and at preſent does the duty of that officer, on the pay of a private ſoldier (i).

(h) PERE Daniel, tom. ii. p. 71.

(i) LANCESPESATE is a word derived from the Italian, lance-ſpeſata, which is a broken or ſpent lance. He is a gentleman of no ancient ſtanding in the militia, for he draws his pedigree

DISBANDED officers, called reformado's, or reformed, ſometimes carried arms as privates, till they could be re-inſtated. Theſe gentlemen, Sir James Turner ſays, were in ſome places permitted to be without arms.

A GENTLEMAN of a company is a term that frequently occurs among our ancient military writers; theſe ſeem to have been a kind of cadets, except that they had greater pay than the private men, ariſing, as it ſeems, from ſome allowance from the captain or colonel. Sir James Turner deſcribes a gentleman of a company as one ſomething more than an ordinary ſoldier, having a little more pay, and who did not ſtand centinel.

A MILITARY manuſcript in the Britiſh muſeum (k), recommends, "that a number of wiſe and worthy ſoldiers ſhould be retained by the colonel to be gentlemen of his company, lance ſpezzates, or to ſerve for extraordinary lieutenants, whom he ſhould not only uſe and entreat well, with an advantage in their pay, but alſoe feaſt them, cheriſh them, and ſet them oftymes by courſe at his own table, and always ſhew them a courteous countenance."

THE office of drum major does not appear to have been univerſally admitted into our ſervice till about the latter end of the reign of King

---

digree from the time of the wars, between Francis I. and his ſon Henry II. kings of France, on the one part; and the Emperor Charles V. and his brother-in-law the Duke of Savoy, on the other part; in thoſe wars when a gentleman of a troop of horſe, in any ſkirmiſh, battle or rencounter, had broke his lance on the enemy, and loſt his horſe in the ſcuffle, he was entertain'd (under the name of a broken lance) by a captain of a foot company as his comerade, till he was again mounted. But as all good orders fall ſoon from their primitive inſtitution, ſo in a ſhort time our *Monſieur Lancеſpeſata* (for ſo he was called) was forced to deſcend from being the captain's comerade, and become the caporal's companion, and aſſiſted him in the exerciſe of his charge, and therefore was ſometimes called by the French, *aide caporal*. But when the caporal grew weary of the comeradeſhip of his lance-ſpeſata, he made him officiate under him, and for that, had ſome allowance of pay more than the common ſouldier. See Sir James Turner, in Pallas Armata, page 219.

(k) No. 5109. Bib. Harl. A colonel, his charge and emploiment notably demonſtrated by E. D. late commander in the Lowe Countries.

Charles I. Sir James Turner poſitively denies the exiſtence of ſuch an officer in our ſervice at the time he wrote.

"THERE is, (ſays he) another inconſiderable ſtaff officer in moſt armies, yet neceſſary enough in all regiments of foot, and that is the drummer-major, the French call him colonel drummer: hee is to receive his directions from the major of the regiment, at what hour he is to beat to the watch, when the dian, and when the tap-too, wherewith he is to acquaint the ſeveral drummers of companies and to appoint them by turns for their beatings: he is alſo to order them in what diviſions each of them ſhall beat, when the regiment marcheth; and they are to obey all his directions punctually. In ſome places he gets a third more of pay than other drummers, but here at home we acknowledge no ſuch creature."

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the drum major is mentioned by Ward (l) and Venn (m), and his duty deſcribed; poſſibly ſome regiments who had ſerved abroad, might have adopted that appointment.

EVERY company had one or two drummers, according to its ſtrength, and ſometimes a phifer, by old writers often ſtiled whifflers (n), tho' I am apt to think there was ſome ſmall difference in the inſtrument, as in the liſt of the forces ſent to St. Quintin's, both fifers and whifflers are mentioned. The qualifications of drummers and fifers are thus laid down by Ralph Smith.

(l) P. 194. (m) P. 193.

(n) IT is mentioned in this ſenſe by Shakſpeare, in Henry V. act 4. ſc. ult.

——— Behold the Britiſh beach
Pales in the flood, with men, with wives, and boys,
Whoſe ſhouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd ſea,
Which like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king,
Seems to prepare the way.

SOME derive this from the old French word, *viffleur*, but no ſuch word occurs in either Cotgrave, Laccomb, Richelet, or Boyer.

THE fife is of German origin, and called by Sir James Turner and other old writers, the *Allamaine whiſtle*.

"ALL captains muſt have drommes and ffifes and men to uſe the ſame, whoe ſhoulde be faithfull, ſecrette, and ingenious, of able perſonage to uſe their inſtruments and office, of ſundrie languages; for oftentimes they bee ſente to parley with their enemies, to ſommon theire fforts or townes, to redeeme and conducte pryſoners and dyverſe other meſſages, which of neceſſitie requireth language. If ſuch drommes and ffifes ſhoulde fortune to fall into the handes of the enemies, noe guifte nor force ſhoulde cauſe them to diſcloſe any ſecrettes that they knowe. They muſt ofte practiſe theire inſtruments, teache the companye the ſoundes of the marche, allarum, approache, aſſaulte, battaile, retreate, ſkirmiſhe, or any other callinge that of neceſſitie ſhoulde be knowen. They muſte be obediente to the commandemente of theyre captaine and enſigne, when as they ſhall commande them to comme, goe, or ſtande, or ſounde their retreate, or other callinge. Many thinges elſe belonge to their office, as in dyverſe places of this treatiſe ſhal be ſaide."

IT does not appear that drummers were at this time employed to execute the ſentences of courts martial; indeed we learn from the account of Aſſarius Velthoven, the provoſt martial, page 253, that it was the duty of that officer, or his deputies, to execute all corporal puniſhments, for which he made a charge in his contingent bill; ſo that the cuſtom of having thoſe puniſhments inflicted by the drummers, ſeems to have taken place after the reign of King William (o). From the following paſſages in Sir James Turner it looks as if every regiment was not entitled to fifers on the eſtabliſhment, but that they were paid by the captain or colonel: "with us," ſays he, "any captain may keep a piper in his company, and maintain him too, for no pay is allowed him, perhaps juſt as much as he deſerveth."

(o) SIR James Turner, p. 223, ſays, "where regimental hangmen are wanting, capital crimes muſt be puniſhed by harquebuſiers, and ſcourging muſt be converted into the gatloupe;" and further, treating of the regimental provoſt marſhal, ſays, "he is to be preſent at the execution of every ſentence; and when a ſoldier is to run the gatloupe, he is to give him the firſt laſh."

FIFES were for a long time laid aſide in our armies, and only revived about the year 1745, by the Duke of Cumberland, who introduced them into the guards; the firſt marching regiment that adopted them was the 19th, in the year 1747. Fifers were afterwards only allowed to the grenadier company; but moſt of the drummers were taught the uſe of the fife as well as of the drum.

A CLERK of a company frequently occurs in the military writers of the laſt century, but he ſeems rather to have been the ſervant of the captain, than any part of the military eſtabliſhment of the corps; at leaſt no additional payment was allowed to him over and above that of a private ſoldier. The qualifications required in a clerk of a company were integrity, ſobriety, writing a good hand, and a ſufficient ſkill in arithmetick, to enable him to keep the accounts of the company.

THESE were the officers, commiſſioned and non-commiſſioned, uſually found in a regiment of infantry, till about the middle of the ſeventeenth century; ſince which, one diſtinguiſhed by the title of a ſtaff officer (p), has been added to every battalion; this is the adjutant or aide major. Each regiment of cavalry has alſo an adjutant.

THIS officer, particularly from the term aide major, ſeems to have been borrowed from the French, and was, according to Father Daniel, not introduced into that ſervice before the year 1666. No ſuch officer is mentioned by Ralph Smith, Davis, Ward, Markham, Venn, or Sir James Turner; but we find him in the liſt of the army reviewed upon Putney Heath, in the year 1684. It is the peculiar duty of the adjutant to ſuperintend the drilling of the recruits and awkward men; to receive the orders from the brigade major, and to deliver

(p) A STAFF officer is one whoſe duty is not confined to any ſingle company, but lies equally with the whole corps, battalion, or regiment. The commiſſioned ſtaff officers of a corps of infantry are the chaplain, adjutant, quarter maſter, and ſurgeon. The ſurgeons mates (now called aſſiſtant ſurgeons), though reckoned among the ſtaff, have only warrants from the colonel. The quarter maſters of cavalry are warrant officers, except thoſe of the blues, who have the king's commiſſion. The duty of an ancient regimental quarter maſter has been deſcribed under the article of herberger; the more modern duties will occur in the article of quarters.

them out to the ſerjeants, together with the particular regimental orders given by the commanding officer. The adjutant is charged with making out all the returns, and overlooking all the executions of the ſentences of regimental courts martial. He, as well as the major, is to be on horſeback when the whole regiment is under arms. In camp and in garriſon the adjutant is to parade all guards, to ſee the men are properly dreſſed, that their arms are clean and in good order, and that they have their number of cartridges. In ſhort, there is ſcarce any duty going forwards in a regiment, without the adjutant having ſome ſhare in it. As the adjutant is an aſſiſtant to the major, in like manner he is aſſiſted by the chief ſerjeant, ſtiled ſerjeant major.

The field, ſtaff, and regimental officers of the cavalry have in part been already mentioned; I ſhall nevertheleſs, from Markham, give a deſcription of the appointments of the commiſſion and non-commiſſion officers of a troop, about the middle of the ſeventeenth century.

"Now for the arming of the ſuperior officers of theſe troopes, you ſhall underſtand that a captaine of cuiraſſiers may be armed at all peeces, cap a pe, in ſuch ſort as I ſhewed for the gentlemen at armes, only he ſhall have no launce nor battle axe, but only his piſtols and ſword; his own head, his horſe's head, and his horſe's buttocks may be plumed; he may lead his men with a white truncheon charged on his right thigh. His place is on the head of his troope before the trumpet; he hath the abſolute government of his troope, both for inſtruction and maintenance: onely he is to receive all ſpeciall orders from his collonel, his collonel from the ſerjeant major of the field, and the ſerjeant major from the marſhall.

"The lieutenant may be armed to the knee like the captaine, and his own head and his horſe's plumed; his place is the reare, and in marches he may carry a truncheon, but of a thicker ſize than that of the captaine's.

"The cornet ſhall be armed and horſt in all points both defenſive and offenſive like the lieutenant, onely inſtead of the truncheon, hee ſhall carry charged on his right thigh, his captaine's cornet, which (being a private captaine) ſhould be compounded of colour and mettal impaled,

that is, the one half colour, the other mettal. The ſubſtance of the cornet ſhould bee of damaſke, and the forme muſt be almoſt ſquare (only a little longer from the ſtaffe, then on the ſtaffe) and fringed about ſutably. The ſtaffe ſhould be ſmall, like a foot enſigne, and not ſo long as an ordinary launce; it muſt be headed with ſteele, and either guilt or ſilvered; with faire taſſels ſuitable to the cornet. If the cornet belong to a great officer, it ſhall then be of one entire colour, of leſſe quantitie, and ſtill ſquare; and in this cornet, the captaine may carry deviſe and word, or elſe none, at his own pleaſure.

"The trumpet is not bound to any armes at all, more than his ſword, which in former times was not allowed, but with the point broken: he ſhall have a faire trumpet, with cordens ſuitable to the captaine's colours, and to his trumpet ſhall be made faſt a faire banner, containing his captaine's full coat armour; he may weare a ſcarfe and feather, and all other ordinary accoutrements of a horſeman; and for his horſe, it ſhall be a good hackney, with gentleman-like furniture.

"The corporalls ſhall be armed at all points, and horſt like the maine body of the troope, onely in their right hands they ſhall carry truncheons; for their office is to be like the ſerjeants of foot companies, to ride extravagantly up and down on either ſide the troope, and to ſee them keep their rankes and files, and that all thinges may bee performed which ſhall come from the captaine's direction. They are likewiſe to ſupply and doe all the duties of corporalls and lamprezadoes of foote, both upon ſcoutes, watches, and guards, as alſo to looke to the proviſion of all neceſſary things which appertaine to the troope, and where their own power cannot reforme, there to informe their ſuperior officers; and therefore theſe officers are to be choſen out of the troope, as the principall and beſt underſtanding men therein.

"The captaine of the hargobuſſieres ſhall be armed, horſt, and accoutered, at all points, like the lieutenant of cuiraſſieres, and the lieutenant of the hargobuſſieres like the cornet of cuiraſſieres; and the cornet of hargobuſſieres like a private gentleman of the troope of cuiraſſieres.

"The captaine of dragons ſhall be armed like the lieutenant of the

hargobuſſieres, the lieutenant of dragons like the cornet of hargobuſſieres, the cornet and piſtols excepted (for he ſhall carry the weapons of his owne troope), and the guydon (for theſe ſhall not be led with a cornet) of the dragons ſhall be armed like a private gentleman of the hargobuſſieres; and here is to be noted, that the difference betwixt the cornet and the guidon is much; for the guidon is the firſt colours that any commander of horſe can let flie in the field; this guydon is of damaſk fringed, and may be charged either with the creſt of him that is the owner thereof, or with other deviſe at his pleaſure; it is in proportion three foot at the leaſt deepe in the top, next the ſtaffe, and upon the ſtaffe, and ſo extendeth downe narrower and narrower to the bottome, where the ende is ſharpe, but with a ſlit divided into two peaks a foot deepe; the whole guidon is ſixe foote longe, and ſhoulde be carried upon a lance ſtaffe. If the captaine (owner of this guidon) ſhall doe a good daies ſervice, or produce from his vertue ſomething worthy advancement, ſo that he is called to a better command, as to lead hargobuſſieres or cuiraſſieres, then the generall or officer in chiefe ſhall with a knife cut away the two peaks, and then it is made a cornet, which is longer one way than another, if (after that) hee doe any thing worthily, whereby he is made by the king or ſupreme, either bannaret or baron, then ſhall his cornet be made juſt ſquare in forme of a banner, whiche none may carry in the fielde on horſeback, under thoſe degrees; now if theſe noble cuſtomes be neglected, and that men out of ambition, uſurpation, ignorance, or connivance, take to themſelves other liberties; let thoſe great knowledges which have command of armies reforme it; or elſe vertue will ſit mourninge at the ladder foote, becauſe ſhee hath not one true round left to mount by."

Sir James Turner gives the following liſt of the officers of a troop of cavalry, which evidently appears to have been taken from the Germans.

"The ſtronger the troop be, it ſhould have the more corporals, who begin now to be qualified with the title of brigadiers, for it ſeems not proportionable for a troop of one hundred and twenty to have no more corporals than a troop of ſixty or ſeventy. Yet for moſt part

now all troops have a like number of officers; and theſe are the captain or ritmaſter, the lieutenant, the cornet, the quarter maſter, three corporals or brigadiers, two trumpeters, ſome have three, and ſome four, a ſadler and a ſmith, and ſome allow a chirurgeon, and a clerk. Many troops have no allowance for the laſt four, though all four are very neceſſary; in ſome places, if a chirurgeon be allowed for every regiment, it is thought very fair; many ritmaſters entertain a ſadler and a ſmith in their troops, allowing them the pay of troopers, and what benefit elſe they can make by their ſeveral trades; but if all who ride in the troop be gentlemen, they will not permit theſe two mechanicks to ride with them; yet my opinion is, ſince all who ride now in troops are not gentlemen, they may, without any diſparagement, ſuffer a ſmith and a ſadler to ride in rank with them, being they are profitable members of that little commonwealth. It is, I think, an overſight that a clerk is not allowed for every company of horſe, for a quarter maſter hath enough to do otherwiſe, though he be not bound to officiate for the clerk, to receive the pay of the troop, and give it out, and keep the accounts of it; unleſs you will ſay, that the paying money to a troop falls out ſo ſeldom, that the receiving it will be rather a divertiſement than a trouble to the quarter maſter.

"HAVING ſpoke to the duties of a captain, lieutenant, and enſign-bearer of a foot company, I have nothing to add to the duties of a ritmaſter, lieutenant, and cornet; but between the quarter maſters of foot and horſe there is the difference, that the firſt hath no command, but the ſecond hath, in other duties there is none. But I ſhall tell the quarter maſters of horſe, that they ſhould have ſkill in caſtrametation, as much as the foot quarter maſters have, and rather more; for the laſt look only to the regular quartering of men in the field, the firſt to the quartering of both men and horſes. A corporal of horſe ſhould have experience, for he either aſſiſts the lieutenant in placing or ſetting the guards, or he doth it himſelf without his lieutenant; he ſets the centinels and ſees them reliev'd; and orders the patrouels, which are rounds. He is to ride in rank, and if the troop march not in breaſt, but in three ſeveral ſquadrons, then there is a corporal

on the right hand of every ſquadron; but in abſence of higher officers, corporals lead diviſions, ſo do they thoſe parties which they are to command, if there be none to command above them.

"When a troop is divided into three ſquadrons they have not their denominations from the corporals or brigadeers, but the firſt is called the captain's ſquadron, the ſecond the lieutenant's, the third the cornet's, and if there be a fourth it is called the quarter maſter's. When a troop marcheth, the captain leads the firſt diviſion, the cornet with his ſtandard the ſecond, the quarter maſter leads the third, and the lieutenant brings up; yet ſome will have the eldeſt corporal to lead the laſt diviſion, and the quarter maſter to bring up on the lieutenant's left hand, for which I ſee very ſmall reaſon, or rather none at all. Some French troops, and ours likewiſe, have, beſides theſe officers whom I have named, a ſub-lieutenant or under lieutenant who hath no command in the lieutenant's preſence, but in his abſence he commands over the cornet: the French have likewiſe a guidon, to whom perhaps may anſwer he who in other places is appointed to carry the ſtandard, either in the cornet's abſence, or when he pleaſeth to appoint him to carry it. As to the officers of the regiment ſtaff of the cavalry, they are the ſame with thoſe of the foot*."

---

* The office of earl marſhal ſtill continues hereditary in the family of the Duke of Norfolk, the firſt Engliſh peer; but it is no longer conſidered as a military office: that of high conſtable has been long ſince aboliſhed; inſtead of which a commander in chief has been occaſionally appointed.

The general ſtaff of the army, at preſent (January, 1800), conſiſts of ſix field marſhals, 58 generals, 80 lieutenant generals, and 148 major generals, beſides ſome others having local rank.

Other general officers of the ſtaff are, the adjutant general, with his deputy; the quarter maſter general, with his deputies and aſſiſtants; the commiſſary general of muſters, with his deputy; the commiſſary general of ſtores, with his deputies and aſſiſtants; the judge martial, with his deputy; the phyſician general, ſurgeon general, and apothecary general, with their aſſiſtants; the barrack maſter general, with his deputy; the chaplain general, and the pay maſters general of the forces. The field and regimental officers continue as before.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of the Pay of the Engliſh Armies.

THE pay of our ancient armies comes next into conſideration; in theſe armies there was at all times, both before and ſince the conqueſt, beſides the feudal tenants, ſtipendiary or mercenary ſoldiers, natives as well as foreigners. Our ancient hiſtorians have not handed down to us a regular liſt of the pay of the different officers and ſoldiers, of which our armies were compoſed; but we are left to collect it from different records and official accounts. Of theſe the chief and moſt inſtructive are the accounts of the great wardrobe, as that office ſeems formerly to have had the payment of moſt of the ſervants of the crown; but I believe there are none of them extant older than the reign of King Edward I.

THE earlieſt information reſpecting military pay reaches no higher than the reign of King Henry II. in which reign, according to Fitz Stephens, a contemporary hiſtorian, the knights of Archbiſhop Becket's houſehold, employed in the war of Thouloufe, who were no fewer than ſeven hundred in number, received 3s. a day, the country being beſides obliged to provide for their horſes and eſquires.

THE pay and allowance of the conſtable was ſettled in that reign by a book of the conſtitutions of the king's houſehold: this we learn from a reference made to it in the 10th of Edward I. printed in Rymer; part of the contents has been already quoted (page 191) under the article of conſtable; to which may be added, that all matters reſpecting the king's hawks came under his regulation, or that of his deputy; that he was one of the ſubſcribing witneſſes to all the accounts

at

at the exchequer, where he had alſo a right to ſtop the ſums due to him out of the wages of the ſtipendiary troops.

It does not appear that the mareſchal of that or ſeveral ſucceeding reigns had any ſtanding pay more than that of his rank as duke or earl; his perquiſites and emoluments have been already mentioned.

Mr. Petit and Dr. Brady cite a record of the 6th year of King John, wherein it is ordered, that every nine knights, throughout England, ſhould contribute to find a tenth, well provided with horſe and arms for the defence of the kingdom, and ſhould allow him 2s. by the day for his wages.

In the wardrobe account of the 28th of King Edward I. A. D. 1300, publiſhed by the Society of Antiquaries, we have the following articles reſpecting the payment of the military eſtabliſhment of that reign. From divers inſtances, it appears the pay did not take place till after the muſter and appreciation of the horſes; probably the recruits ſubſiſted on their way to the army, as was afterwards practiſed, by an allowance called conduct or preſt-money, which was generally paid by the ſheriffs of the counties wherein they were raiſed, or through which they paſſed, according to the number of days' march, reckoning each day's march at twelve and ſometimes ſixteen miles.

The pay and emoluments of the conſtable in this reign were the ſame as in that of Henry II. the regulations of that period being cited as an authority.

The pay of a banneret was four ſhillings; from the paſſage given in the note below, it appears that ſome bannerets uſed to diet at court, till the paſſing of the ſtatute of St. Alban's, when certain wages were aſſigned them in lieu of their table (q).

(q) D'no Willmo de Cantilupo, baneretto, qui ſolebat comedere in aula regis ante ſtatutum factum apud Sanctum Albanum, de aula non tenenda, et non comedenti amplius, ſed percipienti certa vad. videlt, per diem 6s.—pro ſe et milite ſuo per ſtatutum predictum, pro hujuſmodi vadiis, a 27 die Junii, quo die venit primo ad curiam poſt ſtatutum prædictum, uſque ſecundum diem Julii utroque computato per 6 dies, per quos fuit in Cur' et extra rotulum hoſpicii per compotum factum, cum Domino Rico de Nevill, militi ſuo, apud Drombou. 1l. 16s.

THE daily pay of a knight was 2s. and that of an eſquire 12d.; both were obliged to have barded horſes; thoſe who had them not, or neglected to have them muſtered and appreciated, had part of their pay ſtruck off, of which an inſtance occurs in an eſquire of the name of John de Clothale, who inſtead of 12d. received only 8d. per diem, till his horſe was muſtered and appreciated (r).

THE pay of a conſtable was alſo 1s. per diem: and though the appellation of conſtables in this reign was given to officers of infantry as well as cavalry (s) the former, like eſquires, were obliged to have covered or barded horſes; and we find, that ſuch as were deficient in this article, received only 6d. a day, which was only half their ordinary ſtipend (t).

IN this account, under the article of eſquires, we meet with many perſons entitled valets, with the daily pay of 12d. Du Cange, and other writers, are of opinion that the appellation of valet was generally given to young gentlemen of rank and family who were not yet knighted (u).

(r) JOHANNI de Clothale percipient' per diem 8d.—quia ſine equo appreciato, pro vadiis ſuis, a 20 die Novembr' anno preſenti incipient' uſque 23 diem Decembr', utroque computato, per 34 dies, 22s. 8d. Eidem, pro vadiis ſuis a 24 die Decembr, quo die equus ſuus fuit appreciat', uſque ultimum diem ejuſdem menſis, utroque computato, per 8 dies, percipient' per diem 12d. 8s. per manus proprias ibidem, 29 die Decemb. ſumma 1l. 10s. 8d. p. 211.

(s) GALFRIDO de Ampleford conſtabular' equitum, &c. the pay the ſame as a conſtable of foot, i. e. 1s. per diem, p. 220.

(t) ——— cuilt. conſt. per diem 6d. quia cum equis diſcoopertis. p. 145.

(u) FATHER DANIEL in the Mil. Fr. fol. 1. p. 131. from Du Cange, cites an ancient French manuſcript Romance, called le Roman de Rou, where in ſpeaking of William the Conqueror it is ſaid

Guillaume fut, valet petit
A Falaiſe poſé & norrit.

And in another place:

Et me fit avoir en otage
Deux valets de noble lignage,
N'ert [n'étoit] mi Chevalier, encore ert Valleton.

The term ſoldier frequently occurs, as if the party ſo diſtinguiſhed was of a different order from the other troops; and there likewiſe appears to have been different ranks of ſoldiers; for we meet with the term ſcutifer, or eſquire ſoldiers, at 12d. per diem each, and others ſtiled ſoldier conſtables, and ſome ſimply ſoldiers, but all at the ſame pay (x).

The daily pay of a hobiler was 6d. A vintner of croſs bow men, 6d. A private croſs bow man, 4d. An archer, 2d. There appears to have been but few hobilers at this time employed, and ſome of thoſe were Iriſh men, and moſt of them belonged to different garriſons.

The ſerjeants at arms, of which there ſeem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received alſo 1s. per diem (y); ſeveral of them appear to have been particularly aſſigned to different garriſons for their defence; ſix were ſent to the town of Berwick (z).

Here likewiſe we find ſome ſlight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Maſter Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcaſtle upon Tyne, to the ſheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuſe timber for the making of machines for the caſtle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (a) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem (b).

And ſpeaking of Henry II. King of England:

Cinquante trois ans plus ſa terra juſtiſa
Emprés la mort ſon pere qui valet le laiſſa.

(x) Page 216, 217, &c. Eidem pro vad' 50 ſcutiferorum ſoldar' quolt, percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 conſtabl' quorum unus in numero ſoldar', videlt Simon de Blakſale percipit vad' inter ſoldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardevill, ſoldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.

(y) Item 28 die Julii admiſſus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam ſerviens ad arma, ad percipiend' ſicut alii ſervientes de hoſpicio Regis. P. 211. Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nafard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Griſmak, ſervientum Regis ad arma aſſignatorum ad' morand' in municione predicta, per idem tempus, euilt', per diem 12d.

(z) P. 145. (a) P. 78. (b) P. 148.

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Durham, for timber, and making two large engines conſtructed by him for the defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the ſaid town, 3l. 6s. 8d. (c).

Brother Robert de Ulmo, maſter engineer, retained in the king's ſervice for the Scottiſh wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (d)

Gerard de Mayak, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each (e).

Three maſter carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem each; thirty-five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each (f).

A master ſmith, Thomas Furneys, working on the ſame pele, had for his daily pay 6d.; and of ſeven other ſmiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each (g).

For the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, againſt the king and his army ſhould come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, maſter Everard of Carliſle, and ſix maſons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other maſon at 4d. per diem; two labourers to ſerve the ſaid maſons are charged at 2d. and a ſmith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem (h).

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a maſter; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the maſter at 6d. per diem; four men were alſo paid 4d. per diem, as overſeers. A number of women were likewiſe employed to aſſiſt theſe ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half-pence per diem each (i):

(c) P. 78. (d) P. 257. (e) P. 268.

(f) P. 263 and 264. (g) Ibid. (h) Ibid.

(i) Eidem, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos foſſatores ad mundand' dictum foſſatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cuilt. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro vadiis 9 mulierum per 3 dies, 27 die Octobr' pro ultimo computato cuilt. per diem ut prius. 3s. 4d. ob. Eidem pro vad' 10 mulierum per 28 diem Octobr. et 14 mulierum per 29 diem

a bounty was diſtributed among the ſaid ditchers by the king, over and above their wages; as alſo 5s. to the maſons.

Some plaiſterers were paid 3d. a day, others 2d.; boys ſerving as labourers to them were alſo paid 2d. (k)

Miners hired for the Scotch war, had each for their daily wages 3d. and their apprentices, ſtiled pages, 2d. (l). Four pence per diem is charged for an artificer ſtiled attillator, in the caſtle of Berwick, the ſame for a chaplain, a clerk of the chapel, a watch-man, and a waſher-woman (m). Clerks employed to chuſe and pay the troops, had moſtly 12d. per diem, others paying the artificers only 6d. (n).

In Rymer, A. D. 1281, the 10th of Edward I. there is a writ for raiſing a number of wood-cutters in the county of Glouceſter, who are directed to join the king's army at Rutland in Wales, they were allowed 3d. each per diem, during their march; this was to be advanced by the ſheriff.

The daily pay of the conſtable of the caſtles of Berwick was 2s., that of the conſtable of Jeddeworth the ſame; this ſeems to have been the general pay for the conſtable of a caſtle, unleſs he was of ſuperior rank, as a banneret, &c.

John de St. John, captain and keeper of the Marches of Cumberland and Vale of Annan, received 4s. per diem for that office (o). Many marches and places were defended by perſons indenting and contracting for a certain ſum.

The account of Roger de Waltham, keeper of the great wardrobe, gives a very accurate liſt of the pay of the army raiſed againſt the Scots in the 15th and 17th years of King Edward II. wherein the ſums paid do not materially vary from thoſe of the preceding reign; but the titles of the officers are different in ſeveral inſtances; among others the

---

29 diem Octobr' cuilt. ut prius. 3s. Eidem pro vad' 25 mulierum per unum diem. videlt. 30 diem Octobr. 3s. 1d. ob. Eidem ad diſtribuend' inter dictos foſſatores de dono et curialitate Regis ultra vadia ſua 1l. 5s. 7d. P. 269.

(k) P. 266.

(l) Ibid.

(m) The attillator was a kind of armourer. P. 152.

(n) See P. 53 and 263.

(o) P. 138.

term conſtable, applied to a regimental officer, is not once mentioned; the denomination of conſtable was afterwards chiefly confined to the cavalry (p).

The account opens with the roll of the Welch foot, who have divers officers not found in the Engliſh corps; theſe are leaders, ſub-leaders, chaplains, phyſicians and cryers (q). The pay of the leader was 2s. per diem: the ſub-leader, every eſquire, centenary or commander of an hundred men, and chaplain, had 1s. per diem each. Phyſicians 6d. Cryers, ſtandard-bearers, and vingteners, each 4d. No regular proportion ſeems to have been obſerved between the private men and ſtandard-bearers. Some leaders of ſmall numbers, not exceeding an hundred men, had only 6d. a day. The pay of the other ſoldiers was, as is ſaid above, the ſame as in the preceding reign, except that the foot ſoldiers, armed with acketons and bacinetts, received 3d. each per diem; and thoſe unarmed, ſtiled naked footmen, had only 2d.

Some hobilers are charged 4d. and ſome 6d. a day; no reaſon is aſſigned for this difference, but perhaps the former had no horſes, for we find in another corps that a centenary not having a war horſe, was credited only at 6d. per diem.

Among the armed foot ſent by divers eccleſiaſtics and others to perform their feudal ſervices, ſome of them having ſerved the time for which they were hired, remained afterwards with the army, in the king's pay; one of them, Andree de Netlee, is ſtiled ſoldario ad arma; his daily pay was 12d. Divers croſs bow men and lanceirs, infantry, from Gaſcony, are charged 4d. a day.

Adamar de Valence Earl of Pembroke ſerving in theſe wars, received for his own daily pay 8s. for every banneret in his ſuite 4s. every knight 2s. and every man at arms 1s.

(p) This valuable manuſcript is in the library of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq.

(q) Stiled in the manuſcript, ductor, ſub-ductor, centenarius, capellanus, medicus, clamator, ſtandardarius, vintenarius. In one account there were two ſtandard-bearers to 1818 private men, but a third was added by the king, as appears by the following entry, Tres ſtandardaii q' habuerunt unu' ſtand. de novo ex liberatione Domini Regis. Another corps of 968 men had ſix ſtandard bearers.

An ancient manuſcript gives the annexed eſtabliſhment of the army of King Edward III. in Normandy and before Calais, in the 20th year of his reign, with their ſeveral ſtipends (r).

		At per diem. l.	s.	d.
	My Lord the prince - - - - -	1	0	0
	Biſhop of Durham - - - - -	0	6	8
13	Earls, each - - - - - - -	0	6	8
44	Barons and bannerets - - - - -	0	4	0
1046	Knights - - - - - - -	0	2	0
4022	Eſquires, conſtables, centenary, and leaders -	0	1	0
5104	Vintenars and archers on horſeback - -	0	0	6
335	Paunceners			
500	Hoblers			
15480	Foot archers - - - - - -	0	0	3
314	Maſons, carpenters, ſmiths, engineers, tent-makers, miners, armourers, gunners, and artillery men - - — Some at 12d. 10d. 6d. and 3d. per diem.			
4474	Welch foot, of whom 200 vintenars at - -	0	0	4
	the reſt at - - - - - -	0	0	2
700	Maſters, conſtables, mariners and pages			
900	Ships, barges, balingers and victuallers			
-	Sum total of the aforeſaid men beſides Lords 31000—294			

Of whom ſome men from Germany and France, each receive for their wages 15 florins a month.

The ſum total of the wages of war, with the wages of the mariners from the 4th day of June in the 20th of the ſaid King Edward III. to the 12th day of October in the 21ſt of the ſame king, for one year 131 days, as appears from the book of particular accounts of Walter Wentwaght, then treaſurer of the houſehold, entitled wages of war in Normandy, France, and before Calais, was 127201l. 2s. 9½d.

(r) Ex Rotulo quodam penes Arth. Agard. Theſ. in Novo Palatio, Weſtm. repoſito collect. v. 1. p. 160. The original in Latin.

In the account of Walter Wentwaght here mentioned, in the 21ſt year of the ſame reign, there is the following article (s).

Rates and Wages of Warre by the Daie.	l.	s.	d.
The Prince of Wales - - - - -	1	0	3
A biſhoppe, or an earle - - - - -	0	6	8
A barone, a bannerette, the king's chamberlaine, the ſtewards, the treaſurer of the king's houſe, the keeper of the privy ſeale, every man by the daye - - -	0	4	0
A knight, comptroller, coferer of the king's houſe, the king's ſtandard bearers, the clerk of the kichine, pantry and wardrope, the clerke, comptroller, and the keeper of the victualles, every man at - - - -	0	2	0
The king's chaplines, eſquier, ſergentes of armes, men of armes, ſergeauntes of office, and other clerks of the king's houſe, marſhall of the hall, uſhers, and ſewers of the hall and chamber, ſewer at dreſſer, harbengers, pantekers, butlers, ſurgions, minſtrelles, ductors or centeners, every man by daye - - - - - -	0	1	0
The king's archers, vintners, yeomen of offices in the king's houſe, archers on horſe, hobilers, meſſengers, artificers, chaplines of Welchmen, a maſter, a clarke, and conſtable, and a carpenter of a ſhipp, pannecos (t), couners, and croſsbowes of Almaynes, Lorians, and Hymonde, every one at - - - - - - -	0	0	6
Archers on horſe, vinteners of footmen, ſtandard bearers of Welſhmen, ſurgeons of Welſhmen, and criers of Welſhmen, every man - - - -	0	0	4

(s) From a manuſcript which ſeems a copy of that cited by Brady in his Hiſtory of England.

(t) Pannecos probably paveros or paviſors, perſons bearing pavaiſes or large ſhields: a great number of theſe occur in the liſt of the officers and ſoldiers that were with King Edward III. at Calais, publiſhed by Rowe Mores.

THE following liſt of the army ſent to Ireland 36 of Edward III. is taken from a manuſcript in the Britiſh Muſeum (u).

A ROLL of the RETINUE of LIONELL the King's Sonne, Earl of Ulſter, Lord of Clarence and Connaught, and Lieutenant of his father in Ireland.

Knights	
Sir Thomas de la Dale Sir Philip Topham Sir John Cornewall Sir Robert Clinton Sir Symon Flemming	Himſelf at 6s. 8d. per diem, five knights at 2s. per diem, five eſquires at 12d. per diem, 70 archers at 6d. per diem, for a quarter of a yeare, viz. from the 14th of Auguſt till the 12th of November, 526l. 5s. 8d. and for regards (x) to the ſaid earl and his retinue, 155l. 11s. 1d. q. d. Total 681l. 16s. 9d.

AFTER he was created Duke of Clarence his own wages was 13s. 4d. per diem, and eight knights at 2s. per diem. Total 582l.

360 Archers on horſeback of the county of Lancaſter at 6d. per diem.

23 Archers on horſeback from Wales.

RALFE Earle of Stafforde, for himſelf 6s. 8d. as aforeſaid, for a banneret, 4s. per diem, 17 knights at 2s. per diem, 78 eſquires at 12d. per diem, 100 archers on horſeback at 6d. per diem, his entertaignment began when he and his ritinue came to Briſtow to tranſmitt for Ireland. ffor a quarter 973l. 11s. 7d.

24 Archers out of Staffordſhire
40 Archers out of Worceſterſhire
6 Archers out of Shropſhire
} under the Earle of Strafforde.

JAMES Earle of Ormond for himſelf 4s. per diem, 2 knights 2s. per diem, 17 eſquires, 12d. per diem; 20 hobilers armed, at 6d. per diem, and 20 hobilers not armed, at 4d. per diem each, to guard the Marches of Leinſter for a quarter 165l. 6s. 8d.

O'KENEDY for himſelf, 12d. per diem, 11 hobilers at 4d. 88 archers on foot at 1½d. per diem.

(u) MARKED Julius f. 6. Cotton.

(x) REGARDS was a kind of contingent allowance, which will be further explained in its place.

John Carew, banneret, at 4s. per diem, one knight at 2s. two eſquires at 12d. 10 archers on horſeback at 6d. per diem.

William Windsore for himſelf, 2s. two knights 2s. 44 eſquires at 12d. ſix archers on horſeback at 6d. per diem each. For the quarter 493l. 16s.

Sir Thomas Hoggeshawe for himſelf, 2s. per diem, two knights 2s. 30 eſquires and 30 archers as above.

Sir John Shardlewe 2s. two archers on horſeback.

Sir Thomas Nanton 2s, and his valet at 6d.

Donald Gall, an Iriſh captayne, 4d. per diem; 280 archers on foot at 2d per diem.

Hugh Swiset, an Iriſh captayne, at 6d. per diem, four hobilers not armed at 4d. per diem, 35 archers at 1½d. to guard the Marches of Baltinglaſſe.

Richard Talbot, a captayne of the Iriſh, and 17 archers on horſeback of Darbyſhire, 14 of Shropſhire, 15 of Nottingham.

Vintenaries at 4d. per diem, and 12 archers on foot 4d. per diem, 150 more archers of different countries.

Sir Windesore 16 archers more.

Sir Eustace Tabrickecourt, banerett, 4s. per diem, one knight, four eſquires, and eight archers.

Sir John St. Laude, five eſquires, and 20 archers on horſeback.

The paſſage of the Duke of Clarence, the Earle of Stafford, and the reſt amounted to 500l. or upwards. A vintenarius had 20 archers under him, and no more.

No alteration appears to have been made in the pay of the army during the reign of Richard II. But in the ſucceeding reign there ſeems to have been ſome irregularity in that article, which had like to have produced very diſagreeable circumſtances to Prince John, ſon of King Henry IV.; this we learn from the rolls of parliament A. D. 1404, being the ſixth year of that king's reign, wherein it is recited, "That whereas Monſieur John, the king's ſon, was at the point of having been put to great diſhonor, and danger of his ſoldiers, for default of payment, if it had not happened that the Sire de Fournyvall

aſſiſted him and formed a credit in different manners; for the ſaving of the honor of the ſaid Sire John, as well as for the honor of the ſaid Sire de Fornyvall, the commons pray that payment be made, as reaſon and good faith require.

"Also the ſaid commons pray our lord the king, as they have before done, that he will pleaſe to conſider the good and agreeable ſervice that the Duke of Everwyk has done him at the time he was lieutenant in Guyen, and that the ſaid duke for default of payment of him and his ſaid ſoldiers in thoſe parts, had ſold and pledged all his gold and ſilver plate, as well for the preſervation of the honor of our ſaid lord the king, as of himſelf and all the kingdome; and that it may pleaſe our lord the king, to order that payment and ſatisfaction may be made to him in theſe parts as he truſteth.

"Also the commons beſeech our ſaid lord the king, that it may pleaſe him to have in eſpecial recommendation Monſieur Thomas de Erpyngham, Monſieur Thomas Remptſon, John Norbury, and the other vailliant knights and eſquires who riſqued themſelves with our ſaid lord the king at his arrival in England, and that our ſaid lord the king himſelf would have them in honor and eſteem for their good and agreeable ſervice performed to him both here and abroad."

Another petition appears in the ſecond year of the ſucceeding reign, A.D. 1414, wherein the ſoldiers forming the garriſons of the caſtles on the frontiers of Picardy, ſet forth, that being obliged to come to England for payment of their wages, the expences of their journey coſt them the greateſt part thereof, and alſo that the ſaid frontier was conſiderably weakened by their abſence; wherefore they prayed that they might receive their pay at the exchequer of Calais, according to the tenure of their indentures: They were referred for an anſwer to the king and council, but their complaint ſeems not to have been remedied till the next reign.

In an indenture between King Henry V. and the duke of Clarence, A.D. 1415, wherein the duke covenants to ſerve the king for a year in France with a certain number of men to be paid as follows. The duke for himſelf, 13s. 4d. for an earl 6s. 8d. a banneret 4s. a knight 2s. an eſquire 1s. and for each archer 6d. per diem, with the uſual

regards. It was alſo covenanted that if it happened that theſe troops ſhould be employed in the duchy of Guyenne, that he ſhould then receive for each eſquire 40 marks, and for every archer 20 marks for the whole year, this to be paid half the firſt quarter on ſigning of the indenture, and the other half after the muſter. The king to find tranſports going and returning for men, horſes, harneſs, and victuals, at the following rate:

50 Horſes for the duke himſelf
24 Horſes for an earl
16 Horſes for each banneret
6 Horſes for each knight
4 Horſes for each eſquire
1 Horſe for each archer (y).

In another indenture made at the ſame time with Henry Le Scrope, as a ſecurity for the payment of the ſecond quarter, the king covenanted to deliver in pledge on a certain day, jewels worth the ſum of the ſaid wages and regards, which jewels were to be returned at any time his Majeſty ſhould chuſe to redeem them within a year and a day from the time of their delivery, and if not redeemed within that time, Leſcrope was authorized to diſpoſe of them at his pleaſure without hindrance from the king or his heirs, according to the contents of the letters patent under the great ſeal (z). The king likewiſe covenanted with the perſons thus indenting with him, that no proceſs ſhould iſſue againſt them for default of homage for any lands deſcending to them during the time they were abroad in his ſervice.

(y) See Rymer, vol. 9, p. 227.

(z) At the death of this king, many of his jewels were in the hands of captains who had indented to ſerve him, who applied to parliament to authorize them to outſet the thirds of the gains of war due from them to the king, againſt the arrears of pay due to them; and alſo for permiſſion to ſell the jewels depoſited in their hands, paying the balance, if any, into the Exchequer; this was granted to take place within half a year, if ſuch jewels were not the jewels of the Crown. See Rot. Parl. 1ſt Henry VI.

Besides the daily ſtipend paid the troops, there was an additional douceur ſtiled regards (a); this was a kind of perquiſite to the commanding officer, or chief contractor with the crown for every body of men, to enable them to keep a table for their officers, and to provide for the different contingent expences: the quantum of this allowance differed according to the nature of the ſervice or country in which the troops were to be employed; the uſual ſum was at the rate of an hundred marks for a quarter of a year, for every thirty men at arms, which amounted to near ſix-pence a day each (b). Sometimes we meet with a ſtipulation for regard and a half, and ſometimes for double regards and double wages (c).

It alſo appears that the troops were occaſionally paid half the quarter in advance, or had aſſignments on the ſupplies granted to the king, and in ſome indentures it is ſpecified, that in default of payment of their wages or other reaſonable cauſe, the parties indenting might diſband and go whither they pleaſed, without any hindrance from the king or his heirs (d). Edward III. I think, more than once paid his army with wool.

(a) Translated by Du Cange, Reward.

(b) Rymer, 3 Hen. V. tom. 9. p. 227.

(c) In a MS. in the library of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq. entitled Names of the Nobility and others retained to ſerve the kings of England in their warrs from the 19th of Ed. III. to Henry VIII. extracted out the office of the Pells, by the induſtry of Sir William Le Neve, knight, Clarentius King of Arms, digeſted by Sir Edward Walker, knight, Garter, principal King of Arms, anno 1664, with an index, by J. Anſtis, Garter; and the ſeals of the perſons indenting, neatly drawn with a pen in the margin. There are ſeveral inſtances of regard and a half, double regard, and even double regard and double wages, in the reigns of Edward III. and Richard II. The originals of theſe indentures were removed from the Pells by order of a Committee of the Houſe of Peers, anno 1719, and put into the hands of Mr. Ineledon, houſe-keeper of the Houſe of Lords, from whom they were delivered to Mr. Anſtis to be arranged, they remained at his houſe at Mortlake till after his death. In 1756 they were taken into the cuſtody of Mr. Carrington, in whoſe poſſeſſion they continued till July, 1770, when purſuant to an application made by a Committee of the houſe of Peers to the Secretary of State, they were delivered into the State Paper Office, where, anno 1784, they remained.

(d) Rymer, A.D. 1347. 21 Edward III.

Some little alteration in the denomination of the troops, cauſed a difference in their pay, about the beginning of the reign of Henry VII. as we learn from an indenture of war made in the year 1492, being the 7th of that king; wherein George, Earl of Kent, engages to ſerve the king abroad in ſuch places as he ſhall direct, for one whole year, from the firſt day of muſter, with ſix men of arms, himſelf reckoned as one; each man of arms having with him his cuſtrill and page, ſixteen demi-launces, ſixteen archers on horſeback, and ſixty archers on foot, all able men fit for ſervice, properly horſed, armed, garniſhed, and arrai-ed, according to their different kinds and ſtations, and the cuſtoms of war, or as ſhall be approved of by the king's commiſſioners deputed for taking the muſters; the whole to be muſtered at Guildford, on the 4th of June, and on their arrival at Portſmouth, probably the rendez-vous of the whole army, to receive the conduct money (e), which was an allowance for marching, to be calculated at the rate of 6d. for every twenty miles each ſoldier ſhould march, to be reckoned from his reſidence to that place, each ſoldier to ſwear to the number of miles marched by him. And that from the firſt day the ſaid earl ſhall arrive at Portſmouth, and during the time he ſhall ſerve the king in his wars, he ſhall receive for every man at arms, garniſhed with his cuſtrill and page, 1s. 6d. by the day; for every demi-lance, 9d. and for every archer, whether horſe or foot, 6d. The earl to receive a month's pay in advance, immediately on his arrival at Portſmouth, reckoning twenty-eight days for a month; this to be paid him, with-out any deduction whatſoever, before the tranſports leave the harbour,

(e) This conduct money ſeems to have been in lieu of all other ſubſiſtence, as the troops do not appear to have drawn any pay from the treaſurer of the army till they had actually joined it. Sums of money were, about the time of King Edward VI. and Queen Elizabeth, frequently if not always iſſued to troops going on foreign ſervice, under the title of empreſt or impreſt money, from the French word *preſt*, a loan, being conſidered as advanced or lent to enable them to provide ſea ſtores, and other neceſſaries. Thus 20 days' impreſt was ordered to the 2100 men embarked for Fluſhing, 34th Elizabeth anno 1592, under the com-mand of Capt. Pooley, and it was directed that they ſhould have ſuch weekly lendings during the time they remained in France. See Rymer.

and on the laſt day of the month ſo paid, he ſhall receive another month in advance; the money ſo received he covenants to pay within ſix days to his ſoldiers, and in like manner to continue receiving and paying, during the time of his ſervice. Reſpecting the payment of the thirds, and thirds of thirds of all plunder or priſoners of war (f) performing watch and ward, and other duties according to the ſtatutes and ordinances of war, made by the king, with the advice of the lords of his council, a copy of which was delivered to him, he acknowledges himſelf liable to them, and covenants that he will obey and ſubmit to them and the penalties therein contained; and that if any of his corps or retinue ſhall do any thing contrary to them, he will do his utmoſt to bring him to juſtice according to the ſaid ſtatutes. This indenture was ſigned the 9th day of May.

VERY little, if any, alteration was made in the pay or eſtabliſhment of our armies from this period till the reign of Queen Mary. From the liſt of the army (g) which ſerved at St. Quintins, anno 1557, the following appears to have been the ſubſiſtence of the officers and ſoldiers.

	Per diem.		
	l.	s.	d.
The captain general - - - - - -	5	1	2
The lieutenant general - - - - - -	3	6	8
The high marſhal - - - - - -	3	6	8
Maſter of the camp - - - - - -	1	0	0
General of the horſemen - - - - -	3	6	8
Captain general of the footmen - - - -	3	6	8
His lieutenant - - - - - - -	1	0	0

(f) EVERY commanding officer was accountable to the king for one third of his gains of war, whether made by priſoners or plunder; and he was entitled to one third of the gains of war of every one ſerving in his corps; for one third of theſe thirds he was alſo accountable to the king. This will be further explained under the article, priſoners of war.

(g) THERE are ſeveral copies of this liſt; one in the library of the College of Arms, marked W. S.; another in the Britiſh Muſeum, among the Harleian manuſcripts, No. 6844.

	l.	s.	d.
The ſerjeant major (our major)	0	15	0
The maſter of the ordnance	1	6	8
His lieutenant	0	13	4
Maſter of the Carriages	0	10	0
The treaſurer	1	6	8
The maſter of the muſters	0	16	8
The provoſt	1	0	0
The chief harbinger	0	4	0
Maſter of the forage	0	6	0
Maſter of the ſcouts	0	6	0
The herald	0	5	0
Captain of armed horſemen	0	10	0
Lieutenant	0	5	0
Standard bearer	0	3	4
Surgeon	0	2	0
Trumpeter and private	0	1	6
Captain of light horſemen	0	6	0
Lieutenant	0	3	0
Standard bearer	0	2	0
Surgeon	0	1	6
Trumpeter	0	1	6
Light horſemen	0	1	0
Captain of foot	0	4	0
Lieutenant	0	2	0
Enſign	0	1	0
Chaplain	0	1	0
Surgeon	0	1	0
Serjeant	0	1	0
Drummer and fifer	0	1	0
Private ſoldier	0	0	8

THE next eſtabliſhment of the Britiſh army that occurs is that levied

by Queen Elizabeth, to repel the Spaniſh armada; in which we find ſeveral officers ſtated at a much lower pay than in the preceding account.

The RATES for the ENTERTAINMENT of the OFFICERS of the COMPANIES appointed for the ſervice in the year 1588.

	l.	s.	d.
The lieutenant general of the army, per day	6	0	0
—— Halberdiers, at per day	1	10	0
The marſhal of the field per day	2	0	0
—— Halberdiers, at per day	0	15	0
The provoſt marſhal per day	0	13	4
The gaoler per day	0	1	8
Eight tipſtaves, at 8d. each per day	0	5	4
Ten halberdiers at ditto	0	6	8
The captain general of the lances, per day	1	0	0
Lieutenant	0	10	0
Guidon	0	1	6
Trumpet	0	1	6
Clerk	0	1	6
Surgeon	0	1	6
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	0	6	8
The captain general of the light horſe per day	1	0	0
Lieutenant	0	10	0
Guidon	0	1	6
Trumpet	0	1	6
Clerk	0	1	6
Surgeon	0	1	6
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	0	6	8
The colonel general of the footmen, per day	2	0	0
Lieutenant	0	10	0
Serjeant major	0	10	0
Four corporals of the field, at 4s. each	0	16	0

	l.	s.	d.
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each - - -	0	6	8
The treaſurer at war, per day - - -	0	6	8
Four clerks at 2s. each - - - -	0	8	0
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each - - -	0	6	8
The maſter of the ordnance, per day - - -	0	10	0
Lieutenant - - - - -	0	6	8
Inferior officers of the ordnance, per day			
Ten halberdiers, at			
The muſter maſter, per day - - - -	0	6	8
Four clerks at 2s. each - - - -	0	8	0
The commiſſary of the victuals, per day - -	0	6	8
One clerk - - - - - -	0	2	0
The trench maſter, per day - - - -	0	6	0
The maſter of the carriages, per day - - -	0	4	0
Maſter cart takers, each per day			
Four clerks, each at			
The quarter maſter, per day - - -	0	10	0
Six farriers, each at			
The ſcout maſter, per day - - - -	0	6	8
Two light horſe, at 10d. each - - -	0	2	8
The judge general, per day - - - -	0	2	8
The entertainment of the officers of the regiment			
The colonel, being a nobleman, per day - -	1	0	0
He being a knight or nobleman's ſon, per day - -	0	13	4
Lieutenant colonel, per day - - - -	0	6	0

THE pay of the captains and ſubalterns of the different corps being here omitted, as well as divers other officers, another liſt of the army in Ireland, A.D. 1598, is adduced from Fyne's Morriſon's Travels to ſupply thoſe and other deficiencies, from which it appears that the pay of the army was conſiderably raiſed in ſo ſhort a time as ten years.

PAY of the ARMY in IRELAND under the EARL of ESSEX, ſigned by QUEEN ELIZABETH, 24th March, 1598.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
The lord lieutenant general		10	0	0
The lieutenant of the army		3	0	0
General of the horſe		10	0	0
Marſhal of the camp		1	10	0
Serjeant major		1	0	0
Lieutenant general of the horſe		1	0	0
The quarter maſter		1	0	0
The judge marſhal general		1	0	0
The auditor general		0	13	4
The comptroller general of the victuals		0	10	0
Lieutenant of the ordnance		0	10	0
The ſurveyor		0	6	8
Two clerkes of munition, each		0	5	0
Four corporals of the field		0	6	8
One commiſſary of victuals		0	8	0
Three others, at each		0	6	0
The carriage maſter		0	6	8
Twenty colonels, each		0	10	0
Captains of horſe, each at		0	4	0
Lieutenants of horſe, each at		0	2	6
Cornets of horſe, each at		0	2	0
Horſemen, (N. B. a troop conſiſted of one captaine, one lieutenant, one cornet, with fifty private troopers) each		0	1	3
Captains of foot, each		0	4	0
Lieutenants of foot, each		0	2	0
Enſigns of foot, each		0	1	6
Serjeants of foot, each		0	1	0
Drummers, each		0	1	0
Surgeons, each		0	1	0

EACH company conſiſted of a captain, lieutenant, and enſign, two ſerjeants, one drummer, and one ſurgeon, with ninety-four effective private men, at 8d. per diem each, and ſix dead payes for non-effectives allowed the captain.

THERE is another liſt anno 1599, of the army under Lord Montjoy, where all the aforementioned officers and men are paid as before, but there is the addition of a provoſt marſhal for Lough Foyle, and another for Bally Shannon, at 4s. per diem, each, 1600 gunners, canoneers, armourers, and clerks of the ordnance, ſome at 4s. ſome at 2s. per diem, an inginere, at 10s. per diem, ſixteen ſurgeons, the chief at 5l. the other at 50s. and 40s. a peece, the week; the lord deputy's doctor of phyſicke, at 5l. the week, and his chief chaplain at the ſame rate, and other ten preachers at 30s. or 40s. the week, and the commiſſaries of muſters augmented from five to twenty, at 3s. 4d. per diem each; one to follow the army in each province, the reſt to reſide in garriſons.

THE pay of the army in the ſucceeding reign of King James I. with the prices of all ſorts of military ſtores are minutely exemplified in a manuſcript frequently before cited in the courſe of this work (h). An extract from this MS. may be ſeen in No. 4. of the Appendix.

RUSHWORTH has preſerved an account of the eſtabliſhed pay for the army raiſed by King Charles I. againſt the Scotch, in the year 1639, the ſubſtance of which here follows:

A LIST of the ſeveral ENTERTAINMENTS of the Officers General of the Field, the Lord General his Train, Officers of four Regiments of Foot-bands, and Companies of Footmen; Officers General of the Horſe, and twelve Troops of Horſe.

Officers General of the Field, per diem.	l.	s.	d.
The lord general - - - - -	10	0	0
The lieutenant general - - - -	6	0	0

(h) No. 5109. Harl. MSS.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Serjeant major general		2	0	0
Quarter maſter general		1	0	0
Provoſt marſhal general		0	6	8
Waggon or carriage maſter		0	6	8
Four corporals of the field, at 6s. 8d. each		1	6	8

The Lord General's Train.

Treaſurer at war		2	0	0
Muſter maſter general		1	0	0
Commiſſary general of the victuals		0	10	0
Judge marſhal		0	10	0
Two chaplains, at 6s. 8d. each		0	13	4
Two phyſicians, at 6s. 8d. each		0	13	4
Two apothecaries, at 3s. 4d. each		0	6	8
Secretary to the council of war		0	10	0
Two chirurgeons, at 4s. each		0	8	0
Fifty halberdiers, at 1s. each		2	10	0
Four colonels of four regiments of foot, each regiment conſiſting of 1500 men, at 1l. each colonel per diem		4	0	0
Four lieutenant colonels, at 10s. each		2	0	0
Four ſerjeant majors, at 6s. each		1	4	0
Four quarter maſters, at 5s. each		1	0	0

A LIST of the TRAIN of ARTILLERY, according to his Majeſty's Direction, reduced to ſuch a number of Officers and other Miniſters as will be merely neceſſary for a mean Train of 30 or 40 Pieces of Ordnance, viz.

The general of the ordnance	4	0	0	
Lieutenants	1	0	0	

Sundry other Officers, Artificers, and Attendants upon the Ordnance and Train of Artillery, viz.

A comptroller, per diem	0	10	0

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Two commiſſaries of the two magazines of munition, viz.				
one for the train, at - - - -		0	6	0
The other for the army, at - - - -		0	5	0
Four clerks under them, each - - -		0	2	0
Two engineers, one at - - - -		0	8	0
And the other at - - - - -		0	6	0
Two clerks for them, each - - - -		0	2	0
Six conductors of the trenches and fortifications, each at		0	2	0
One fireworker - - - - -		0	3	0
His aſſiſtant - - - - -		0	1	8
One petardier - - - - -		0	2	6
Twelve aſſiſtants, each - - - -		0	1	0
One maſter gunner - - - - -		0	6	8
Four gentlemen, each - - - -		0	4	0
Gunner's mates, each - - - -		0	2	6
Thirty gunners, each - - - -		0	1	6
A paymaſter - - - - -		0	5	0
Captain of the pioneers - - - -		0	5	0
Quarter maſter - - - - -		0	4	0
Four conductors of the matrozes - - -		0	2	6
Forty matrozes, each - - - -		0	1	0
A purveyor - - - - -		0	3	0
One maſter ſmith - - - - -		0	3	0
Six ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0
One maſter wheelwright, at - - - -		0	2	6
Four ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0
One tent maker - - - - -		0	2	8
Two ſervants, each - - - - -		0	1	0
A tent keeper, at - - - - -		0	1	6
One aſſiſtant to him - - - - -		0	0	8
A maſter carpenter - - - - -		0	3	0
Six ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
One cordage maker - - - -		0	2	0
Two ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0
One ſaddle maker - - - -		0	1	6
One ſervant under him - - - -		0	1	0
One cooper - - - - -		0	2	0
Two ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0
Four armorers, each - - - -		0	2	6
Four ſervants under them, each - - -		0	1	0
Two gunſmiths, each - - - -		0	2	6
Four ſervants, each - - - -		0	1	0
One harneſs maker, at - - - -		0	1	6
Two ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0
One farrier, at - - - - -		0	2	6
Two ſervants under him, at each - - -		0	1	0
One bridgemaker - - - - -		0	2	6
Six ſervants, each - - - - -		0	1	0
One provoſt marſhal - - - -		0	2	0
Two ſervants under him, each - - -		0	1	0
One chirurgeon - - - - -		0	4	0
One ſervant under him - - - -		0	1	0
One waggoner for the train - - - -		0	5	0
One aſſiſtant to him - - - -		0	2	6
Two principal conductors, viz. one for the munition of the army, the other for the munition of the artillery, each - - - - - -		0	3	0
Forty conductors, viz. 20 for the waggons and 20 for the ordnance, each - - - - -		0	2	6
One commiſſary for the draught horſes, at - -		0	4	0
Two aſſiſtants to him, each - - -		0	2	6
In all, per diem, - - -		21	7	6

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Four provoſt marſhals, at 5s. each -	- -	1	0	0
Four carriage maſters, at 3s. each -	- -	0	12	0
Four preachers, at 3s. each - -	- -	0	12	0
Four chirurgeons, at 4s. each -	- -	0	16	0

The PAY of a COLONEL'S COMPANY of 200 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. enſign 2s. 6d. three ſerjeants at 1s. 2d. each; three drums at 1s. each; three corporals at 10d. each; 188 ſouldiers at 8d. each. Being in all for one colonel's company of 200 men, 7l. 8s. 10d. per diem.

The PAY of a LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Company of 150 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAINE per diem 8s. a lieutenant 4s. enſign 2s. 6d. two ſerjeants at 1s. 2d. apiece; two drums at 1s. apiece; three corporals at 10d. apiece; and 140 ſoldiers at 8d. apiece. In all, per diem, 5l. 14s. 8d.

And for four LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Companies of 150 Men, per diem, 22l. 18s. 8d.

Four REGIMENTS of FOOT, containing in Officers and Souldiers 6000 Men, being 1500 Men in each Regiment, viz.

The PAY of a Company of 115 Men, viz.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. enſign 2s. 6d. two ſerjeants at 14d. each; three corporals at 10d. each; and 105 ſoldiers at 8d. each per diem. In all for one company of 115 men, per diem, 4l. 11s. 4d.

AND ſo for forty companies of 115 men the piece, being ten companies in each of the four regiments, beſides the colonel's and lieutenant colonel's companies; per diem, 182l. 13s. 4d.

OFFICERS GENERAL of the HORSE.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
The general of the horſe	- - - -	5	0	0
The lieutenant general	- - - -	2	0	0
Serjeant major or commiſſary general	- - -	1	10	0
Quarter maſter general	- - - -	0	6	8
Provoſt marſhal -	- - - - -	0	5	0
Waggon or carriage maſter	- - - -	0	3	4
Preacher - -	- - - - -	0	4	0
Chirurgeon	- - - - -	0	4	0

The PAY of a Troop of a hundred Horſe, viz.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. (a) a lieutenant 5s. a coronet 4s. three corporals at 2s. each; two trumpeters, one quarter maſter, a chirurgeon and 80 horſemen, at 2s. 6d. each per diem. After which rates, the pay of a troop of 100 horſemen, with their officers, is, per diem, 13l. 1s.

AND ſo the pay for 12 troops of 100 horſe the piece, with their officers is,

	l.	s.	d.
Per diem - - -	156	12	0
Per menſem - - -	4384	16	0
Per annum - - -	57159	0	0
Sum total of the entertainment aforeſaid is			
Per diem - - -	442	17	8
Per menſem - - -	12420	14	8
Per annum - - -	161652	8	4

Dated 19th March, 1639.

AFTER the breaking out of the troubles between King Charles I. and his parliament, ſeveral alterations were from time to time made by the latter in their military eſtabliſhments. And, according to Ruſhworth,

(i) IF not a miſtake, Ruſhworth.—Probably the allowance for horſes is omitted; the pay here ſtated being the ſame as that of a captain of infantry.

an ordinance was alſo paſſed, September 1643, wherein it was enacted, that all officers of Lord Eſſex's army, whoſe pay amounted to 10s. a day or upwards, ſhould regularly receive only half their pay, the other half to be reſpited till the troubles were over. All officers whoſe daily pay was leſs than 10s. to receive only two thirds thereof. When three months reſpited pay became due, the general was authorized to grant certificates thereof to the different officers.

APRIL 13th, A. D. 1647. The following entry appears on the journals of the Houſe of Commons, ſhewing the pay of the officers of the parliamentary troops, ſerving in England; and the manner in which that of the cavalry was computed.

RESOLVED, &c. That the proportions following are fit proportions of pay for the officers of horſe that are to continue in this kingdom (k).

		l.	s.	d.	Per diem. l.	s.	d.
Colonel	As colonel - - -	0	12	0	1	10	0
	Four horſes - - -	0	8	0			
	As captain - - -	0	10	0			
Major	As major - - -	0	5	0	1	1	0
	Three horſes - - -	0	6	0			
	As captain - - -	0	10	0			
Captain	Captain - - - -	0	10	0	0	14	0
	Two horſes - - -	0	4	0			

(k) APRIL 9th, 1647, Reſolved, &c. That the pay of ſuch commanders and officers as ſhall be employed in the ſervice of Ireland, ſhall be higher than ſuch as ſhall be employed in England.

12. RESOLVED, &c. That this Houſe doth agree with the Committee, that the eſtabliſhment for the officers and ſoldiers, now in Ireland, and to go over thither, ſhall be the ſame with that of Sir Thomas Fairfaxe's army: and that the ſame proportion of pay, which was reſpited upon the public faith, to Sir Thomas Fairfaxe's army, ſhall now alſo be reſpited for the preſent, and made good unto them out of the rebels lands, by Engliſh meaſure, according to the rates and proportions ſettled by act of parliament, upon the finiſhing of the war, after ſatisfaction ſhall be firſt given to the adventurers. Reſolved, &c. That coats and knapſacks ſhall be provided, over and above their pay, for the foot ſoldiers of the army that are to go for Ireland, for their better encouragement.

		l.	s.	d.	Per diem. l.	s.	d.
Lieutenant	Lieutenant - - -	0	5	0	0	9	0
	Two horſes - - -	0	4	0			
Cornet	Cornet - - - -	0	4	0	0	8	0
	Two horſes - - -	0	4	0			
	Quarter maſter - -	0	4	0	0	6	0
	One horſe - - -	0	2	0			
Provoſt marſhal - - - - -		0	3	4	0	7	4
Two men - - - - -		0	4	0			
Corporals and trumpets, each - - -		0	2	6	0	5	0

RESOLVED, That the proportions following are fit proportions for the officers of foot that are to continue in this kingdom.

	Per diem. l.	s.	d.
Captains - - - - - -	0	8	0
Lieutenants - - - - -	0	4	0
Enſigns - - - - - -	0	2	6
Serjeants - - - - - -	0	0	12
Drummers - - - - - -	0	0	12
Corporals - - - - - -	0	0	12

RESOLVED, &c. That there ſhall be no officer within any garriſon, above a captain, but only the governor.

RESOLVED, &c. That there ſhall be no company in any garriſon, under the number of one hundred, where there is above one company in that garriſon.

RESOLVED, That the governors of Pendennis, Cheſter, Plymouth, Hull, Glouceſter, Leverpool, Lynn, Newcaſtle, Portſmouth, ſhall have for their pay, 12s. as governor, and 8s. as captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That the governors of Weymouth, Tynmouth caſtle, the caſtle and great fort of Briſtol, ſhall have each of them 7s. as governor; 8s. as captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That all ſuch garriſons as have fifty foot, and under, their governors to have 5s. per diem only: the reſt of the garriſons not

named, that have above fifty, the governor to have 10s. per diem as governor and captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That as many of the dragoons of the army as can be perſuaded to go for the ſervice of Ireland may receive order for that purpoſe.

RESOLVED, &c. That the officers, &c. that ſhall go for Ireland, may have their debentures for their arrears; and that their accounts ſhall be made up, according to their muſters, in their abſence.

AMONG the manuſcripts in the Harleian Library is one marked No. 6844, entitled "An Eſtabliſhment of the Forces in England and Wales, as the ſame ſtood the 27th February, 1659," wherein the pay of every officer and ſoldier is ſtated as follows.

General Officers.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Commander in chief		10	0	0
Lieutenant general of the army		1	0	0
Lieutenant general of the horſe		1	0	0
Major general of the foot		1	0	0
Commiſſary general of the horſe		0	15	0
Scout maſter general		1	0	0
Quarter maſter general		1	3	0
Judge advocate to the army, at 15s. and his clerk, at 3s. 4d.		0	18	4
One adjutant general of horſe and foot		0	15	0
One adjutant general of horſe and foot who hath command of a troop of horſe		0	5	0
Commiſſary general of the muſters 15s. ten deputies each at 5s. and one clerk at 2s. 6d.		3	7	6
Surgeon to the commander in chief and his mates		0	8	0
Marſhall general of the army 10s. and ſix men and horſes, each at 2s. 6d.		1	5	0
		22	16	10

Field and Staff Officers to a Regiment of Horſe.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel - - - -		0	12	0
Major, as major - - - - -		0	5	8
Surgeon 4s. and one horſe to carry his cheſt 2s. -		0	6	0
		1	3	8

Colonel's Troop.

Colonel, as captain, 10s. and two horſes each at 2s. -		0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horſes, each at 2s. - -		0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horſes, each 2s. - - -		0	9	0
Quarter maſter 4s. and one horſe at 2s. - -		0	6	0
Two trumpeters, each at 2s. 8d. - - -		0	5	4
Two corporals, above trooper's pay, each 5d. - -		0	0	10
Eighty ſouldiers, each at 2s. 3d. - - -		9	0	0
		11	5	2

Major's Troop.

Major, as captain, 10s. and two horſes, each at 2s. -		0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horſes, each at 2s. - -		0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horſes, each at 2s. - -		0	9	0
Quarter maſter 4s. and one horſe at 2s. - -		0	6	0
One trumpeter - - - - -		0	2	8
Two corporals, above trooper's pay, 5d. each - -		0	0	10
Eighty ſoldiers, each at 2s. 3d. - - -		9	0	0
		11	2	6

The pay of four troops more to complete a regiment of horſe, at the ſame rates and numbers which are mentioned in the major's troop - - -		44	10	0

	l.	s.	d.
In all for one regiment conſiſting of 480 ſouldiers beſides officers	68	1	4
In all for nine ſuch regiments	612	12	0

Field and Staff Officers of a Regiment of Foot.

Colonel, as colonel	0	12	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel	0	7	0
Major, as major	0	5	0
Preacher	0	6	8
Surgeon 4s. and one mate 2s. 6d.	0	6	6
Quarter maſter and provoſt marſhal, to be executed by one perſon (l)	0	4	0
	2	1	2

A Company of Foot.

Captain	0	8	0
Lieutenant	0	4	0
Enſigne	0	3	0
Two ſerjeants, each at 18d.	0	3	0
Three corporals, at 3d. per diem each above ſouldiers pay	0	0	9
One drumm	0	1	0
One hundred and twenty ſouldiers, each at 9d.	4	10	0
	5	9	9
The pay of nine ſuch companys more to compleat a regiment of ffoot, conſiſting of 1200 ſouldiers, beſides officers	49	7	9
In all for one regiment	54	17	6

(l) At preſent the office of provoſt marſhal is executed by the adjutant, whoſe duty it is to ſee all ſentences of regimental courts martial inflicted.

	l.	s.	d.
In all for twelve regiments of foot, conſiſting of 14400 ſouldiers beſides officers - - - -	683	4	0
A regiment of foot more, conſiſting of nine companys and 1100 ſouldiers beſides officers - - -	51	8	11
In all for two regiments - - - -	102	17	10
Ffive companys of foot, conſiſting of 500 ſouldiers beſides officers, colonel's pay included - - -	24	5	9
Three companys more, conſiſting of 300 ſouldiers beſides officers - - - - - -	14	4	3
In all for fourteen regiments and eight companies as above	824	11	10

Life Guard.

Captain - - - - - -	0	19	8
Lieutenant - - - - - -	0	14	0
Cornet - - - - - -	0	12	0
Quarter maſter - - - - -	0	9	0
Ffour corporals, at 5s. each - - - -	1	0	0
Two trumpeters, each at 3s. 4d. - - -	0	6	8
Two other trumpeters, each at 3s. 6d. - -	0	7	0
One hundred and ſixty ſouldiers, each at 3s. 6d. -	28	0	0
	32	8	4

Trayne	Engineer general - - - -	0	10	0
	Comiſſary of ammunition - - -	0	5	0
	Quarter maſter of the trayne - -	0	4	0
	A tent maker - - - -	0	2	6
	Three mattroſſes, each at 12d. - -	0	3	0
		1	4	6

At this time we find that the governors of the ſeveral forts and caſtles were paid as follows:

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Governor of Cariſbrook caſtle	- - -	0	12	0
——— Guernſey - - - -		0	10	0
——— Jerſey - - - -		0	10	0
——— Scilly Iſlands - - - -		0	10	0
——— Iſle of Man (beſides his pay as captain) -		0	6	0
——— Pendennis caſtle - - -		0	6	0
——— Plymouth caſtle and iſland - -		0	8	0
——— Portland, Weymouth, and Sandford caſtles		0	6	8
——— Brun Sea caſtle - - -		0	3	4
——— Calſhot caſtle - - - -		0	5	0
——— Hurſt caſtle - - - -		0	5	0
——— Portſmouth and South Sea caſtle - -		0	8	0
——— Dover caſtle - - - -		0	8	0
——— Sandgate caſtle - - -		0	3	0
——— Walmer caſtle - - -		0	5	0
——— Deal caſtle - - - -		0	5	0
——— Sandown caſtle - - -		0	5	0
——— Upnor caſtle - - - -		0	5	0
——— Tilbury fort - - - -		0	6	0
——— Landguard fort (as governor and captain)		0	10	0
——— Hull - - - - -		0	8	0
——— Teinmouth caſtle - - -		0	4	0
——— Berwick - - - -		0	5	0
——— Carliſle - - - -		0	12	0
——— Shrewſbury (as governor and captain) -		0	10	0
——— Warwick - - - -		0	5	0
——— Windſor (as governor and captain) -		0	10	0
——— Chipſtow, ditto - -		0	10	0
——— Hereford, ditto - -		0	10	0
——— Beaumares, ditto - -		0	10	0
——— Holyhead - - - -		0	5	0

TOTAL CHARGE of this ESTABLISHMENT.

	Per diem. l.	s.	d.	Per menſem. l.	s.	d.
General officers - - -	22	16	10	639	11	4
Nine regiments of horſe - -	612	12	0	17152	16	0
Fourteen regiments and eight companies of foot - - -	824	11	10	23088	11	4
Life guard of horſe - -	32	8	4	907	13	4
Trayn - - - -	1	4	6	34	6	0
Guarriſons - - -	205	15	2	5761	4	8
Contingencies - - -	-		-	1500	0	0
Totall per menſem - -	-		-	49084	2	8
Totall for a year at thirteen months	-		-	638093	14	8

	Men.
This eſtabliſhment conſiſts of nine regiments of horſe, with a troop of guards, officers included - - -	4870
Fourteen regiments of foot, with the officers - -	18732
The ſouldiers, gunners, mattroſſes, and officers employed in the garriſons - - - - -	4740
The whole army of horſe and foot as above expreſſed, beſides the general officers, officers of the trayne of artillery and ſtaff officers, containeth in all - - -	28342
Whereof the annual charge of their pay, with the pay of the general officers, trains of artillery and contingencies doth amount to the ſum of -	638093 14 8

IN the Journals of the Houſe of Commons of the 1ſt of King William III. in the eſtimate of the charge of divers regiments of horſe, dragoons, and foot, to be employed in the ſervice of Ireland, the following ſums were allowed for the pay of the officers and private men.

HORSE.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel 12s. as captain 10s. and two horſes, at 2s. each		1	6	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 8s. as captain 10s. and two horſes, each 2s.		1	2	0
Major, as major (N.B. No troop)		1	0	0
Captain, as captain 10s. and two horſes at 2s. each		0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horſes, each 2s.		0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horſes, each 2s.		0	9	0
Quarter maſter 4s. and one horſe 2s.		0	6	0
Corporal 3s.		0	3	0
Trumpeter 2s. 8d.		0	2	8
Private trooper		0	2	6

DRAGOONS.

Colonel, as colonel 15s. as captain 8s. and three horſes, at 1s. each		1	6	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 9s. as captain 8s. and three horſes 2s.		1	0	0
Major, who has no troop		1	0	0
Captain 8s. and three horſes, at 1s. each		0	11	0
Lieutenant 4s. and two horſes		0	6	0
Cornet 3s. and two horſes		0	5	0
Quarter maſter, for himſelf and horſe		0	4	0
Serjeant 1s. 6d. and 1s. for his horſe		0	2	6
Corporal 1s. and 1s. for his horſe		0	2	0
Drummer 1s. and 1s. for his horſe		0	2	0
Hautboy 1s. and 1s. for his horſe		0	2	0
Private dragoon 1s. 6d. for himſelf and horſe		0	1	6
Adjutant		0	5	0
Surgeon		0	6	0

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Chaplain		0	6	8
Gunſmith and his ſervant		0	5	0

FOOT.

Colonel, as colonel 12s. as captain 8s.		1	0	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 7s. as captain 8s.		0	15	0
Major, as major 5s. as captain 8s.		0	13	0
Captain		0	8	0
Lieutenant		0	4	0
Enſign		0	3	0
Adjutant		0	4	0
Quarter maſter		0	4	0
Surgeon 4s. and mate 2s. 6d.		0	6	6
Chaplain 6s. 8d.		0	6	8
Serjeant		0	1	6
Corporal		0	1	0
Drummer		0	1	0
Private ſoldier		0	0	8

In addition to the daily pay here ſtated, the officers of the different corps of the army had the following allowance of ſervants, whoſe pay they were permitted to receive. At what time it was firſt granted, I have not been able to diſcover, but in the year 1697–8, being the 10th of the reign of King William III. it was allowed in the computation of the half pay, then firſt eſtabliſhed, by the king's warrant (m) given in

(m) William R.

Whereas our regiments of foot commanded by our right truſty and right entirely beloved couſin and counſellor, Charles Duke of Bolton, and our truſty and well beloved Colonel Richard Coote, Colonel Thomas Brudenell, Colonel Thomas Saunderſon, Major General Thomas Erle, Colonel John Gibſon, Colonel William Northcote, and Colonel Thomas Farrington, together with the independent companies commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Rouſe and Captain John Pitt, have been lately diſbanded; and we being graciouſly pleaſed to allow half

the note below, from the votes of the Houſe of Commons. It ſeems as if this allowance was not at that time made to the whole army, for it is ſaid in the report from the committee appointed to conſider the

---

half pay to the officers of our ſaid regiments and companies for their ſupport untill they ſhall be fully paid off and cleared, and be otherwiſe provided for; our will and pleaſure is, that out of ſuch monies as are or ſhall come to your hands, for the uſe of our forces, you pay unto the ſeveral officers of our ſaid regiments and companies, the reſpective allowances mentioned in the liſt and eſtabliſhment hereunto annexed, being the half pay of themſelves and ſervants, reſpectively; to commence from the 1ſt day of April next, and to be paid unto them by monthly or quarterly payments, upon certificates from our commiſſary general or deputy commiſſary general of the muſters, of their being alive and qualified as aforementioned: and for ſo doing, this with the acquittances of the ſaid officers, or of their aſſigns, ſhall be from time to time your ſufficient warrant and diſcharge.

Given at our court at Kenſington, the 16th of March, 1697-8, in the tenth of our reign,

By his Majeſty's command.

CHA. MONTAGUE
STE. FOX
THO. LITTLETON
T. PELHAM.

To our right truſty and right well beloved couſin and counſellor, Richard Earl of Ranelagh, Paymaſter General of our forces.

VOL. 12. 567.

HORSE.	Per diem. l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Colonel, as colonel and captain - - - - - -	0 13 0	
For ſix ſervants, at 15d. each - - - - - -	0 7 6	
		1 0 6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain - -	0 11 0	
For three ſervants, each at 15d. - - - - - -	0 3 9	
		0 14 9
Major, as major and captain - - - - - -	0 9 9	
For three ſervants, each 15d. - - - - - -	0 3 9	
		0 13 6

Captain

ſtate of the land forces and marines in 1746, that " the firſt increaſe in the charge of the land forces (ſince the year 1700), was by virtue of an eſtabliſhment ſigned the 15th of June, 1713, to take place from

	Per diem. l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Captain	0 7 0	
For three ſervants, at 15d. each	0 3 9	
		0 10 9
Captain lieutenant	0 5 0	
For two ſervants, 15d. each	0 2 6	
		0 7 6
The lieutenant the ſame.		
Cornet	0 4 6	
For two ſervants, at 15d. each	0 2 6	
		0 7 0
Quarter maſter	0 3 0	
One ſervant at 15d.	0 1 3	
		0 4 3
Chaplain 3s. 4d.		
N. B. No adjutant mentioned.		
DRAGOONS.		
Colonel, as colonel and captain	0 13 0	
For ſix ſervants, at 9d. per diem each	0 4 6	
		0 17 6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain	0 10 0	
For three ſervants, at 9d. each	0 2 3	
		0 12 3
Major, as major and captain	0 8 0	
For three ſervants, at 9d. each	0 2 3	
		0 10 3
Captain	0 5 6	
For three ſervants, at 9d. each	0 2 3	
		0 7 9
Captain lieutenant	0 3 0	
For two ſervants, at 9d. each	0 1 6	
		0 4 6

Other

the 24th of that month;" ſo that it did not commence till almoſt three months after the peace of Utrecht; and this firſt addition to the

	Per diem. l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Other lieutenants the ſame.		
Cornet	0 2 6	
For two ſervants, at 9d. each	0 1 6	
		0 4 0
Quarter maſter	0 2 0	
For one ſervant at 9d.	0 0 9	
		0 2 9
Chaplain 3s. 4d.		
N. B. Adjutant not mentioned.		
FOOT.		
Colonel, as colonel and captain	0 10 0	
For ſix ſervants, at 4d. each	0 2 0	
		0 12 0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain	0 7 6	
For three ſervants, at 4d. each	0 1 0	
		0 8 6
Major, as major and captain	0 6 6	
For three ſervants, at 4d. each	0 1 0	
		0 7 6
Captain	0 4 0	
For three ſervants, at 4d. each	0 1 0	
		0 5 0
Captain lieutenant	0 2 0	
One ſervant, at 4d.	0 0 4	
		0 2 4
Lieutenant	0 2 0	
One ſervant	0 0 4	
		0 2 4
Enſign	0 1 6	
One ſervant at 4d.	0 0 4	
		0 1 10
Chaplain	0 3 4	
Quarter maſter	0 2 4	
		0 5 8

national expence conſiſted entirely of allowances to commiſſion officers in lieu of their ſervants: this was afterwards twice increaſed, once by an eſtabliſhment ſigned the 29th of April, 1714, to commence from the 25th of December, 1713, when a further charge was introduced for ſervants to officers and quarter maſters of horſe and dragoons; and a ſecond time by an eſtabliſhment ſigned the 24th of June, 1718, when a further increaſe was made for ſervants to the quarter maſters of thirty battalions of foot. Although this allowance has continued ever ſince, it was not conſolidated to their pay in Ireland till the year 1728, when it was done by the warrant tranſcribed in the note below from an authentic MS. eſtabliſhment for that country (n).

Two other ſmall additions were likewiſe made to the pay of the army, one in the ſeventh year of King George I. when three-pence was added to the pay of the ſerjeants, corporals, and private men of the dragoons, and four-pence per day to the pay of the ſerjeants and corporals of the three regiments of foot guards; but at what particular time the laſt addition took place, the committee before mentioned reported they were not able to learn (o). Some farther little addition has

---

(n) WHEREAS we have thought fit in the foregoing eſtabliſhment to add to the perſonal pay of the officers of our army, the number of ſervants which have been uſually allowed them, whereby the effective men do more plainly appear, and our ſaid officers are more regularly entitled to the pay of their ſervants than formerly. Our will and pleaſure therefore is, and we do hereby ſtrictly require and command, that all the officers of our ſaid army, now and for the time being, do make their care, that their reſpective companies are kept complete, and that they do contain the number of effective men ſettled by our ſaid eſtabliſhment, under pain of our diſpleaſure; and hereof our muſter maſters are to take particular notice from time to time, in the muſtering of our ſaid forces, that the officers neglecting the ſame may be known.

(o) THERE appears to have been great irregularity in the payment of the army during the latter end of the reign of King James II. and that of the reign of King William III. inſomuch that the publicans of ſeveral towns where the troops were quartered, were not only obliged to truſt them for their diet, but alſo to advance them part of their pay. Of this we have an inſtance among many of the publicans of Royſton, in Lincolnſhire, who, January 12th, 1694, petitioned the parliament, ſetting forth, that Capt. Henry Cartwright's company

within five or ſix years been made to the pay of the private men, by returning them the deduction of one ſhilling in the pound made out of their full pay, and likewiſe aboliſhing the weekly ſtoppage of 2d. per

---

company in Colonel Haſting's regiment of foot being quartered on them, demanded over and above their lodgings, and other neceſſaries directed by law, the following ſubſiſtence to be paid them weekly, viz. to the lieutenant 17s. 6d. the enſign 14s. the ſerjeant 6s. every corporal 4s. 6d. and every private centinel 3s. 6d. threatening in caſe of non-payment to take the petitioners goods. That the petitioners were willing to give them ſuch ſubſiſtence as they were able to do, and as the law directs, but were not able to bear a grievance of this nature, having formerly been great ſufferers by quartering two companies of Sir John Edgworth's regiment, from the 12th of February, 1688, to the 15th of April, 1689, for which they were never paid one farthing. They therefore prayed that the houſe would take the premiſes into their conſideration. On this the officers in queſtion, and the agents of that, and ſeveral other regiments, were ordered to attend the houſe, and were examined; in conſequence whereof on the 26th of February, 1694, the commons cauſed a repreſentation thereof to be made to his majeſty, complaining of it as a violation of the liberty and property of the ſubject, and ſtating that it was in a great meaſure cauſed by the extortions of the agents and impoſitions of the colonel, who had alſo been guilty of divers acts of tyranny and oppreſſion therein ſtated, for which he was by the king diſmiſſed the ſervice. About the ſame time various petitions for long arrears of pay to the widows and repreſentatives of particular officers occur in the journals of the Houſe of Commons.

Another inſtance in the ſame reign occurs in Ireland, reſpecting the Inniſkilling regiment of dragoons, who for a long time received no pay, but ſubſiſted themſelves at their own expence. At length, A.D. 1694, a great number of both officers and ſoldiers, unable to procure any payment, though repeatedly promiſed by General Ginkle, ſurrounded the coach of the Lord Lieutenant Capel, when going in ſtate to St. Patrick's church, and declared that if they did not in a few days receive what was due to them, they would uſe force to obtain it. The Lord Lieutenant promiſed them redreſs, and threw out his purſe with thirty guineas in it, to one of the ſoldiers, who contemptuouſly threw it back into the coach through the glaſs of the window. Queen Mary was then regent, the king being in Flanders, an account of this matter was ſent to her, whereupon ſhe ordered a thouſand pounds to be paid to the officers and men, out of her privy purſe, promiſing that the remainder ſhould be ſhortly paid, their demands being then ſettling by a board of officers. In the year 1702, 2000l. more was paid, which was all they got for their pay, from the year 1689, a very ſmall portion conſidering they were then a regiment of nine troops. This anecdote was communicated to me by an old officer, who had it from his grandfather. The ſame gentleman gave me the following account of a like irregularity, ſo late as the latter end of the reign of King George I.

About

week from each ſerjeant, 1½d. from each corporal and drum, and 1d. per week from each private man, in the regiments of infantry, for the uſe of the paymaſter and ſurgeon.

The full pay of the different corps of the army, with their ſubſiſtence, and nett arrears, is given under their ſeveral eſtabliſhments; as it ſtood at the commencement of the preſent war. An augmentation took place in 1797 to certain branches of the ſervice, which ſhall afterwards be ſpecified.

About the year 1718 or 1719, the 7th regiment of foot, with another, whoſe number is forgotten, were put on board Admiral Byng's fleet, after the action off Meſſina; they were landed and quartered at the Devizes in Wiltſhire, Taunton in Somerſetſhire, and the neighbouring towns, at which time there was four years' pay due to moſt of the officers and men, ſome excepted, who held employments about the court. Although no money was iſſued for the above time, a kind of commiſſary, by the connivance of the colonel, attended the regiment, occaſionally furniſhing neceſſaries to the different officers, and even ſometimes paying their tavern bills, taking uſurious aſſignments on their pay for ſuch goods and diſburſements. After ſome time, the officers preſented a memorial to Lord Tyrawley their colonel; he referred them to Mr. Ford their agent, who ſaid he had not received any money from the treaſury for ſix years. On this they memorialized the colonel anew, and alſo the War-office; and after a courſe of time were promiſed to be paid in the following proportions, till money could be raiſed to pay them in full; a captain to receive lieutenant's pay, a lieutenant that of an enſign, and an enſign one half of his daily ſubſiſtence; but this promiſe was not kept. In the mean time the officers paid none of their bills, and kept together in bodies, armed, to prevent arreſts, and finally embarked for Ireland, without clearing any of their ſcores.

On their arrival in Ireland their pay being greatly diminiſhed, by the difference of the eſtabliſhments, it cauſed the officers more earneſtly to ſolicit for their arrears of pay, and they accordingly filed a bill in Chancery againſt Mr. Ford, who in his anſwer depoſed, that Lord Tyrawley had for twenty years charged certain ſums againſt each officer's pay on their firſt appointment or promotion, viz. to a captain 120l. a lieutenant 70l. and an enſign 40l. ſome more, ſome leſs; on complaint being made of this to my lord, he pleaded the cuſtom of the army, and ſaid it was not unknown to the king. After many years theſe particulars were laid before King George II. who paid my informant, then a midſhipman, 100l. as ſome compenſation for the demands of his father, on account of his pay of lieutenant and adjutant.

ROYAL REGIMENT OF HORSE-GUARDS. (Oxford Blues.)

	Subsiftence.						Nett Arrears.					
	Per Diem.			For 365 Days.			Per Diem.				For 365 Days.	
									Parts of			
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	365	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Colonel }	1	11		565	15		7	3		93	132	14	
Lieutenant Colonel } and Captain -	1	2	6	410	12	6	5			160	91	18	4
Major }	1	1	6	392	7	6	3	8		159	67	11	8
Captain - - - - - - - - -		16	6	301	2	6	3	7		78	65	14	5
Lieutenant - - - - - - - -		11	6	209	17	6	2	6		7	45	13	1
Cornet - - - - - - - - -		11		200	15		2			299	37	14	11
Quarter Maſter - - - - - -		6	6	118	12	6	1	5		75	26	3	4
Chaplain - - - - - - - -		5		91	5		1	2		246	22	19	9
Adjutant - - - - - - - -		4	6	82	2	6		2		2	3	11	
Surgeon - - - - - - - -		4	6	82	2	6	1	1		76	20	1	9
Surgeon's Mate - - - - - -		3		54	15			3		74	5	4	5
Kettle Drummer - - - - - -		2	6										
Trumpeter - - - - - - - -		2											
Corporal - - - - - - - -		2	6										
Private Man - - - - - - -		2											

DRAGOON GUARDS AND DRAGOONS.

	BRITISH.												IRISH.					
	Subsiftenee.						Full Pay.						Full Pay.			Subsiftence.		
	Per Diem.			For 365 Days.			Per Diem.			For 365 Days.			Per Diem.			Per Diem.		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Colonel }	1	6	6	483	12	6	1	15		638	15		1	11	4	1	3	8
Lieut.Col. } and		18	6	337	12	6	1	4	6	447	2	6		19	4		14	7
Major } Captain		15	6	282	17	6	1		6	374	2	6		17	4		13	1
Captain - - -		11	6	209	17	6		15	6	282	17	6		12	4		9	2
Lieutenant - -		7		127	15			9		164	5			7	2		4	9
Cornet - - - -		6		109	10			8		146				6	2		3	10
Chaplain - - -		5		91	5			6	8	121	13	4		6	8		5	
Adjutant - - -		4	6	82	2	6		5		91	5							
Surgeon - - -		4	6	82	2	6		6		109	10			4			3	
Surgeon's Mate -		3		54	15			3	6	63	17	6						
Quarter Maſter -		4		73				5	6	100	7	6		4			2	9
Kettle Drummer -		1	6					2	3					1	8		1	
Hautbois - - -		1	6					2						1	6		1	
Serjeant - - -		2	3					2	9					2	8		1	7
Corporal - - -		1	9					2	3					1	10		1	1½
Private Man - -		1	5					1	9					1	6			11

FOOT GUARDS.

	Subſiſtence.						Full Pay.						Nett Arrears.					
	P. Diem.			365 Days.			P. Diem.			365 Days.			Per Diem.			365 Days.		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*s.*	*d.*	*Parts of* 365	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Colonel	1	10	0	547	10	0	1	19	0	711	15	0	6	11	116	126	14	3
Lieutenant Colonel	1	1	6	392	7	6	1	8	6	520	2	6	5	5	352	100	6	5
Major	0	18	6	337	12	6	1	4	6	447	2	6	4	8	121	85	13	5
Captain	0	12	6	228	2	6	0	16	6	301	2	6	3	1	145	56	17	6
Capt. Lieut. & Lieut.	0	6	0	109	10	0	0	7	10	142	19	2	1	4	46	24	10	6
Enſign	0	4	6	82	2	6	0	5	10	106	9	2	0	11	228	17	13	7
Chaplain	0	5	0	91	5	0	0	6	8	121	13	4	1	2	360	22	15	10
Adjutant, Qu. Maſter, Surgeon, Solicitor	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	4	0	73	0	0	0	9	1	13	13	10
Surgeon's Mate	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	3	6	63	17	6	0	3	147	5	3	6
Drum-Major	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	1	6	27	7	6						
Deputy-Marſhal	0	0	9	13	13	9	0	1	0	18	5	0						
Hautbois	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	1	6	27	7	0						
Serjeant	0	1	4	24	6	8	0	1	10	33	9	2						
Corporal	0	0	10	16	1	7	0	1	2	21	7	6						
Drummer	0	0	8	13	9	0	0	1	0	18	5	0						
Private Soldier	0	0	6	10	8	7	0	0	10	15	4	2						

MARCHING REGIMENTS OF FOOT.

N. B. The Pay of the Militia, Invalids, and Marines, the ſame.

	BRITISH.												IRISH.					
	Full Pay.						Subſiſtence.						Full Pay.			Subſiſt.		
	P. Diem.			365 Days.			P. Diem.			365 Days.			P. Diem.			Per Diem.		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Colonel	1	4	0	438	0	0	0	18	0	328	10	0	1	5	0	0	18	4
Lieutenant Colonel	0	17	0	310	5	0	0	13	0	237	5	0	0	17	0	0	12	7
Major	0	15	0	273	15	0	0	11	6	209	17	6	0	14	0	0	10	4
Captain	0	10	0	182	10	0	0	7	6	136	17	6	0	10	0	0	7	1
Captain Lieut. and Lieutenant	0	4	8	85	3	4	0	3	6	63	17	6	0	4	8	0	3	4
Enſign	0	3	8	66	18	4	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	3	8	0	2	10
Chaplain	0	6	8	121	13	4	0	5	0	91	5	0	0	6	8	0	5	0
Adjutant and Surgeon	0	4	0	73	0	0	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	4	0	0	3	0
Quarter Maſter	0	4	8	85	3	4	0	3	6	63	17	6	0	4	8	0	3	4
Surgeon's Mate	0	3	6	63	17	6	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	2	6	0	2	4
Serjeant	0	1	6	27	7	6	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	1	6	0	1	0
Drum-Major	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	2	0	0	1	6
Corporal and Drummer	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	0	8	12	3	4	0	1	0	0	0	9
Private Soldier	0	0	8	12	3	4	0	0	6	9	2	6	1	0	7	0	0	5

ROYAL ARTILLERY.

	Full Pay.						Subsiſtence.						Arrears.					
	P. Diem.			Per Ann.			Per Diem.			Per Annum.			P. Diem.			Per Ann.		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Colonel	1	5	0	456	5	0	0	18	9	342	3	9	0	6	3	114	1	3
Lieutenant Colonel	1	0	0	365	0	0	0	15	0	273	15	0	0	5	0	91	5	0
Major	0	15	0	273	15	0	0	11	3	205	6	3	0	3	9	68	8	9
Captain	0	10	0	182	10	0	0	7	6	136	17	6	0	2	6	45	12	6
Captain Lieutenant	0	6	0	109	10	0	0	4	6	82	2	6	0	1	6	27	7	6
1ſt Lieutenant	0	5	0	91	5	0	0	3	9	68	8	9	0	1	3	22	16	3
2d Lieutenant	0	4	0	73	0	0	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	1	0	18	5	0
Serjeant	0	2	0	36	10	0	0	1	$7\frac{3}{4}$	30	0	$8\frac{3}{4}$						
Corporal	0	1	10	33	9	2	0	1	$6\frac{1}{2}$	28	2	$8\frac{1}{2}$						
Bombadier	0	1	8	30	8	4	0	1	$4\frac{1}{2}$	25	1	$10\frac{1}{2}$						
Gunner	0	1	4	24	6	8	0	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	20	3	$0\frac{1}{2}$						
Mattroſs Fifer and Drummer	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	0	$9\frac{1}{2}$	14	8	$11\frac{1}{2}$						

HALF-PAY.

	ENGLISH, per diem.						ENGLISH, per annum.						IRISH, per diem.					
	Drag.			Foot.			Drag.			Foot.			Drag.			Foot.		
	l.	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Colonel	0	13	0	0	12	0	237	5	0	219	0	0	0	15	8	0	12	3
Lieutenant Colonel	0	10	0	0	8	6	182	10	0	155	2	6	0	9	8	0	8	3
Major	0	8	0	0	7	6	146	0	0	136	17	6	0	8	8	0	6	9
Captain	0	5	6	0	5	0	100	7	6	91	0	0	0	6	2	0	4	9
Lieutenant	0	3	0	0	2	4	54	15	0	42	11	8	0	3	0	0	2	3
2d Lieut. Cornet & Enſign	0	2	6	0	1	10	45	12	6	33	9	2	0	2	0	0	1	9
Quarter Maſter	0	2	0	0	2	0	36	10	0	42	11	8	0	1	6	0	2	4
Adjutant	0	2	0	0	2	0	36	10	0	36	10	0				0	2	0
Surgeon	0	2	0	0	2	0							0	2	0	0	2	2
Chaplain	0	2	4	0	3	4							0	3	4	0	3	4

The only deduction from the Half-pay is the poundage of $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.
If the officer be not on the ſpot, to the Agent that receives it *6d.*

THE pay of the troops, as it was eſtabliſhed at the Revolution, underwent very little change till after the commencement of the preſent war in 1793. We find, indeed, in 1721, an addition of 3d. per diem to the pay of the ſerjeants, corporals, and privates of the dragoons;

and alſo of 4d. per diem to the ſerjeants and corporals of the foot-guards. The officers likewiſe in the intermediate time received ſome additional emolument, in the form of allowance for ſervants, &c. But, in the courſe of the preſent war, the pay and allowance of the officers and ſoldiers have received conſiderable augmentations. In 1795 his Majeſty iſſued a warrant for granting an addition of $2\frac{1}{4}$d. per diem to the ſubſiſtence of the non-commiſſioned officers and men; to this was afterwards added $3\frac{3}{4}$d. per diem, making the pay of the private foot-ſoldier 1s. per diem. In 1797 the ſtoppages from all the officers' pay, called arrears, were aboliſhed; beſides which 1s. per diem was added to the ſubſiſtence of each ſubaltern officer. The pay of the ſurgeon and his mate (now aſſiſtant) was alſo raiſed, the former to 10s. and the latter to 5s. a day. The following Tables will exhibit the rate of the officers' and ſoldiers' pay, according to the lateſt regulations *.

DAILY RATES of the SUBSISTENCE or PAY and ALLOWANCE of the Officers and Men of the Cavalry.

LIFE GUARDS.

	Subſiſtence, per Diem. l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - - - - -	1	7	0
Lieutenant colonel - - - - -	1	3	3
Major - - - - - -	0	19	6
Captain - - - - - -	0	12	0
Lieutenant - - - - - -	0	8	3
Lieutenant and adjutant - - - -	0	8	3
Cornet - - - - - -	0	7	3
Surgeon - - - - - -	0	9	0
Veterinary ſurgeon - - - - -	0	8	0
Quarter maſter - - - - -	0	4	9

* IN the Appendix, No. 5, may be ſeen the late regulations reſpecting the office of the Paymaſters General of the forces.

Subſiſtence, per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Corporal	0	3	$9\frac{1}{4}$
Trumpeter	0	2	0
Kettle drummer	0	2	0
Private	0	3	$2\frac{1}{4}$

N. B. The above rates of pay for the corporals and privates include, in each caſe, 1s. 3d. a day for the ſubſiſtence of a horſe.

Royal Regiment of Horse Guards.

Colonel, as colonel	0	14	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel	0	6	0
Major, as major	0	5	0
Captain	0	16	6
Lieutenant	0	11	6
Cornet	0	11	6
Adjutant	0	4	6
Surgeon	0	9	0
Aſſiſtant ſurgeon	0	5	0
Veterinary ſurgeon	0	8	0
Quarter maſter	0	6	6
Corporal	0	3	$0\frac{1}{4}$
Trumpeter	0	2	$5\frac{1}{4}$
Kettle drummer	0	2	6
Private	0	2	$5\frac{1}{4}$

Dragoon Guards, Dragoons, and Fencible Cavalry.

Pay and Allowance per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel and captain	1	12	10
Lieutenant colonel and captain	1	3	0
Major and captain	1	3	0
Captain	0	14	7
Captain lieutenant, or lieutenant	0	9	0
Cornet	0	8	0

Pay and Allowance per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Paymaſter - - - - - -	0	15	0
Adjutant - - - - - -	0	5	0
Surgeon of dragoon guards and dragoons - -	0	11	4
Surgeon of fencible cavalry - - - -	0	6	0
Aſſiſtant ſurgeon - - - - -	0	5	0
Veterinary ſurgeon - - - - -	0	8	0
Surgeon's mate - - - - -	0	3	6
Paymaſter ſerjeant - - - - -	0	2	11
Serjeant - - - - - -	0	2	11
Corporal - - - - - -	0	2	4½
Trumpeter - - - - - -	0	2	4
Private - - - - - -	0	2	0

N. B. In addition to the rate of pay above ſpecified, the colonel or commandant of a corps has an allowance for each troop of which the ſame may conſiſt, of 1s. 2d. a day in lieu of the pay of one warrant man, and 1s. 6d. a day in lieu of the pay of one hautbois.

The ſurgeon and ſurgeon's mate of fencible cavalry, if not holding double commiſſions, have an allowance of 1s. a day in addition to the rate of pay above mentioned.

In the fencible cavalry, where the paymaſter muſt neceſſarily hold a commiſſion in the corps, his pay, if a ſubaltern, is made up to 15s. a day; if a captain of a troop, it is 3s. 6d. a day in addition to his pay as captain; and an allowance of 2s. 2d. a day is made for the paymaſter's clerk, who is not borne in addition to the numbers of the corps.

*** The preceding rates of pay for the non-commiſſioned officers and privates of the Royal Regiment of Horſe Guards, Dragoon Guards, Dragoons, and Fencible Cavalry, include, in each caſe, 9d. a day for the ſubſiſtence of a horſe.

DAILY RATES of the SUBSISTENCE or PAY and ALLOWANCE of the OFFICERS and MEN of the INFANTRY.

FOOT GUARDS.

	Subſiſtence per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel		0	17	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel		0	9	0
Major, as major		0	6	0
Captain		0	12	6
Lieutenant		0	6	0
Enſign		0	4	6
Adjutant		0	3	0
Quarter maſter.	Pay 4s. 8d. Allowance 1s.	0	5	8
Surgeon		0	12	6
Aſſiſtant ſurgeon		0	5	0
Solicitor		0	3	0
Serjeant		0	1	$10\frac{3}{4}$
Corporal		0	1	$4\frac{3}{4}$
Drum major		0	1	0
Drummer		0	1	$2\frac{1}{4}$
Deputy marſhal		0	0	9
Hautbois		0	1	0
Private		0	1	1

INFANTRY of the LINE, MILITIA, and FENCIBLE INFANTRY.

	Pay and Allowance per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel		1	2	6
Lieutenant colonel		0	15	11
Major		0	14	1
Captain		0	9	5
Captain lieutenant or lieutenant		0	4	8
Second lieutenant or enſign		0	3	8
Paymaſter		0	15	0
Adjutant		0	4	0

Pay and Allowance per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Quarter maſter - - - - -	0	4	8
Surgeon of the line - - - -	0	9	5
Surgeon of militia and fencibles - - -	0	4	0
Aſſiſtant ſurgeon - - - - -	0	5	0
Surgeon's mate - - - - -	0	3	6
Serjeant major or quarter maſter ſerjeant - -	0	2	$0\frac{3}{4}$
Paymaſter ſerjeant - - - - -	0	1	$6\frac{3}{4}$
Serjeant - - - - - -	0	1	$6\frac{3}{4}$
Corporal - - - - - -	0	1	$2\frac{1}{4}$
Drummer - - - - - -	0	1	$1\frac{3}{4}$
Fifer - - - - - -	0	1	$1\frac{3}{4}$
Private - - - - - -	0	1	0

N. B. In addition to the rate of pay of the Infantry of the Line, &c. above ſpecified, the colonel or commandant of a corps has an allowance for each company of which the ſame may conſiſt, of 6d. a day in lieu of the pay of a warrant man.

Each lieutenant, enſign, adjutant, or quarter maſter, not holding another commiſſion, has an allowance of 1s. a day in addition to the abovementioned rate of pay. The like allowance is made to each ſurgeon, and ſurgeon's mate, of Militia and Fencible Infantry, in ſimilar circumſtances.

In the Militia and Fencible Infantry, where the paymaſter muſt neceſſarily hold a commiſſion in the corps, his pay is made up to 15s. a day; and an allowance of 1s. $6\frac{3}{4}$d. a day is made for the paymaſter's clerk, who is not borne in addition to the numbers of the corps.

Independent Companies of Invalids.

Captain - - - - - -	0	9	5	
Lieutenant - - - - - -	0	4	8	
Enſign - - - - - -	0	3	8	
Serjeant - - - - - -	0	1	$6\frac{1}{4}$	
Corporal - - - - - -	0	1	$1\frac{3}{4}$	
Drummer - - - - - -	0	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	
Private - - - - - -	0	0	$11\frac{1}{4}$	

We have ſeen that in our ancient armies there were, in addition to the regular ſtipend of the troops, certain allowances, called regards. Such there are, though under different appellations, at preſent. Among theſe we ſhall firſt notice the *non-effective* and *contingent* allowances to the captains of troops and companies. Formerly the captains received and kept the ſubſiſtence of the non-effective, or men wanting to complete their companies; but this becoming an enormous abuſe, it has been ſince reſtricted to 20l. for each captain per annum. The contingent allowance is proportioned to the ſtrength of the company.

Table of a Captain of Infantry's Allowance.

Strength of the Company.	Non-effective Allowance per Annum.	Contingent Allowance.		Total Allowance per Annum.
		Number of Contingent Men per Day.	Amount per Annum.	
	l.	*d.*	*l.* *s.* *d.*	*l.* *s.* *d.*
50 and under - -	20	2 Men at 6	18 5 0	38 5 0
Above 50 and leſs than 76	20	3 Do. at 6	27 7 6	47 7 6
76 and upwards - -	20	4 Do. at 6	36 10 0	56 10 0

In the Cavalry and Dragoons, the allowances to captains for non-effective men, contingents, and a riding-houſe, are as follows:

	Captain's allowance.				For a riding-houſe.		
	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
When leſs than 40 per troop	30	0	0	—	18	1	0
From 40 to 50 - -	30	0	0	—	23	6	0
From 50 to 70 - -	40	0	0	—	23	6	0
From 70 upwards - -	50	0	0	—	23	6	0

There are beſides other allowances to officers in general, ſuch as bât, baggage and forage money in camp, and lodging money in garriſon, when there are no barracks. Theſe allowances vary according to circumſtances. The following table will ſhew the allowance in the home encampments for 1794.

Officers.	Allowance for bât horſe.				Allowance for 100 days' forage.		
	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - -	18	18	0	—	27	10	0
Lieutenant colonel -	18	18	0	—	22	10	0
Major - - -	18	18	0	—	17	10	0
Captains, each - -	18	18	0	—	12	10	0
For every two ſubalterns and ſtaff officers -	18	18	0	—	12	10	0
Surgeon, for ſelf and medicine cheſt -	37	16	0	—	12	10	0

The number of horſes allowed to a regiment of infantry, when it takes the field, are as follows:

Colonel - - - - - - - -	9
Lieutenant colonel - - - - - -	7
Major - - - - - - - -	5
Captains, each - - - - - - -	3
Captain lieutenant - - - - - -	2
Every two ſubalterns and ſtaff officers - -	1
Surgeon, for ſelf and medicine cheſt - -	2

On firſt taking the field the officers are alſo allowed for their tents in the following proportion:

	l.	s.	d.
A field officer's marquée and tent - -	29	0	0
A captain's ditto - - - - -	21	0	0
For every two ſubalterns on ditto - -	21	0	0

The captains of the regiment and the independent companies of invalids, inſtead of the contingent men and non-effective money, are now to receive, as an indemnification for the repair of arms and other expences, 100l. each, when the eſtabliſhment of their company is at 70 and upwards, and 80l. when it is under 70 men; the corps of invalids being conſidered as an honourable retirement for officers of long ſervice.

CHAPTER IX.

Of the Clothing of the Troops.

As the ſoldiers who compoſed our ancient armies were not always clothed by government, it ſeems probable they had not any regular uniform: very little reſpecting ſoldiers' clothing occurs in hiſtory or the records of early date; in ſeveral writs commanding the ſheriffs to aſſemble the forces of their counties, the ſoldiers are directed to come clothed with a ſuit, but no particular direction is given, either as to its make or colour. Indeed their armour ſeems to have formed the chief part of the military dreſs of thoſe times; and this was the ſoldiers' own property, kept either in conſequence of their feudal tenures, or provided in obedience to the ſtatute of Wincheſter, or that of Queen Mary, by which it was ſuperſeded. It, however, appears, that government ſometimes clothed the troops, of which Rymer affords us an inſtance in the year 1337, 11th of King Ed. III. where that king having ordered a thouſand men to be raiſed and trained with lances, five hundred in North Wales, and five hundred in South Wales, he alſo directed the chamberlains of North and South Wales to purchaſe a ſufficient quantity of cloth for making one ſuit for each man, conſiſting of a tunic and mantle, the coſt of which ſhould be allowed in their accounts at the treaſury.

After the practice of furniſhing ſoldiers by indenture took place, it ſeems, that the captains uſed to ſtop part of the ſoldiers' pay, to purchaſe neceſſaries for them, and alſo for other purpoſes; this being complained of, an act of parliament was paſſed in the 18th of Henry VI. (chap. 18), wherein captains were forbidden to ſtop any part of a ſoldier's pay, except for his clothing; "that is to ſay, if he was waged for half a year, ten ſhillings a gown for a gentleman, and ſix ſhillings

and eight pence for a yeoman, upon pain of twenty pounds for every ſpear, and ten pounds for a bow, to the king;" a ſpear was the weapon carried by a gentleman, a bow by a yeoman; whence the ſoldiers of thoſe times, as at preſent, were denominated from the weapons with which they were armed. By the 2d and 3d of Edward VI. this ſtoppage is altered to 6s. 8d. per ann. for the livery coat of a yeoman, and 13s. 4d. for that of a gentleman, for a whole year; and that act being repealed in the 1ſt of Philip and Mary, was in the 4th and 5th of the ſaid reign again revived and made effectual.

Before this time ſoldiers were diſtinguiſhed by badges of their leaders' arms, ſimilar to thoſe now worn by watermen.

At the battle of St. Alban's the army of the Queen of Henry VI. and the Earl of Warwick, as well as that of the Duke of York, were diſtinguiſhed by badges; a miſtake concerning them gave the victory to the latter. Beſides theſe badges, the ſoldiers of thoſe times frequently wore diſtinguiſhing ſcarves. A.D. 1512, 4th of Henry VIII. that king having iſſued his commiſſion to the Earl of Shrewſbury, to raiſe an army to oppoſe an invaſion, threatened by the French, gives him the following direction: "And ye then to delyver, for us, and in our name, to every of our ſubjects ſo retayned in your company, ſuche badges, tokyns, or lyveres to were, as by you ſhall be thought moſt convenient for the ſame, which we will they ſhall were for the ſame purpoſe (p)."

A curious manuſcript in the college of arms (q) contains the orders of the Duke of Norfolk to the conductor of the waward of an army, raiſed the 36th of Henry VIII. reſpecting the clothing, which, according to our preſent ideas, ſeems more calculated for jack puddings or merry Andrews than ſoldiers: it is here literally tranſcribed: "Furſt, every man ſowdyer to have a cote of blew clothe, after ſuche faſhion as all fotemens cotes be made here at London, to ſerve his majeſtie in this jorney, and that the ſame be garded with redde clothe, after ſuch

(p) Rymer in anno.

(q) Marked W. S. and contains a great number of very curious military papers.

ſorte as others be made here. And the beſt ſene (r) to be trymmed after ſuch ſort as ſhall pleaſe the captayne to deviſe.

"PROVIDED alwayes, that noe gentleman nor other were any manner of ſilk uppon the garde of his coate, ſave oonely uppon his lefte ſleeve, and that noe yeoman were any manner of ſilke upon his ſaide cote; nor noe gentleman, nor yeoman, to were any manner of badge.

"ITEM, every man to provide a payer of hoſe for every of his men, the right hoſe to be all red, and the lefte to be blew, with oone ſtripe of three fingers brode of red upon the outſide of his legg from the ſtocke downward.

"ITEM, that every man have an arming doublette of ffuſtian or chanvas.

"ITEM, every man to have a cap to be made to put his ſculle or ſallete in, after ſuch faſhion as I have deviſed, wh. William Taylor, capper, within Ludgate, doth make for me, where you may have as many of them as ye lyſt for eight pence the pece."

THE badge here ſeems ſet aſide. A proclamation in the ſame book, ſigned J. Hertford, explains the diſtinction adapted in its place. "My lord lieutenant doth farther ſtraytley charge and command, that no man of this armye, nor any other reſortinge to the ſame, be he ſoldier, victualler, or other, do preſum after this proclamation to come within the circuit or preſynckt of this campe, oneles he have a red croſſe ſew'd upon his uppermoſt garment, upon payne of 15 dayes impriſonment, and to be farther ordered at my lorde lieutenante's pleaſure."

THIS was farther enforced by the 48th article of the ſtatutes and ordonnances of war, in force 35 Henry VIII. (s) which runs thus: "Alſo that every man goinge in hoſtinge or battayle, of what eſtate, condition or nation he be, of the king's partie and hoſt, except he be

(r) "THE beſt ſene," that is, the beſt looking men.

(s) IN ſame vol. i. e. W. S. where there is a MS. bearing the following title, "Statutes and Ordnanees of War, 35 Henry VIII. printed by Thomas Bartelet, printer to the King's Highneſs, the xx day of June, the Year of our Lord MDXLIIII."

a biſhop or officer of armes, bear a croſs of Saynt George, ſufficient and large, upon the payne that if he be wounded or ſlayne in the defalt thereof, he that ſo woundeth or ſlaeth him, ſhall bare no payne therefore: and if he for anie cauſe paſſe the bondes of the fields, that then he bare openly a croſſe of Saynt George, upon payne to be impriſoned and puniſhed at the king's pleaſure. And that noe ſoldier beare no cogneſſance but the kinge's and his captaine's, upon payne of death; and that none enemiſe bare the ſayde ſigne of Saynt George, but if hee bee a priſoner and in warde of his maſter, upon payne of death."

The colour of the ſoldiers' coats, notwithſtanding the particular before quoted exception, ſeems generally to have been white, as we learn from a letter, written by Thomas Lord Wharton to Francis Earl of Shrewſbury, in the Shrewſbury letters, marked vol. D. fol. 109, in the College of Arms.

In the reign of Queen Elizabeth, anno 1584, the colour of the uniform was changed again; for ſhe having cauſed an hundred men to be raiſed in Lancaſhire for the Iriſh ſervice, a letter from the lords of the council to the ſheriff and juſtices of that county directs, "that beſides the arms here ſpecified, the ſoldiers ſhould be furniſhed with ſwords and daggers, likewiſe convenient doublets and hoſe, and alſo a caſſocke of ſome motley or other ſadd grene coller, or ruſſet." Alſo every ſouldier to have five ſhillings to provide a mantle in Ireland, beſyds his livery coat, when he ſhall be there aryved (t).

This was the regulation for the clothing of the infantry: but we learn from the ſame authority, that the uniform cloaks worn by the cavalry were red (u); their faſhion is deſcribed in a detail of the appointments of the lanciers or horſemen, directed by Queen Elizabeth

(t) See Peck's Deſiderata Curioſa.

(u) Julius Ferretus, a writer of the middle of the 16th century, in his Treatiſe on the Military Science, ſays, that ſoldiers commonly wore a ſhort red ſagum, or frock, which colour was choſen that they might not be diſcouraged by the ſight of the blood from their wounds.

to be furniſhed by William Chalderton, biſhop of Cheſter, and his clergy, in part of a thouſand launces, to be ſent to the aſſiſtance of the Low Countries, "And for their apparell (ſays the order) yt ſhall be convenient that yow ſee them furniſhed of redd clokes, lined, without ſleeves, and of length to the knee, dubletts, hoſe, hatts, boots, and all other neceſſarie apparell for thre bodies."

A VERY particular account of the clothing of the army employed in Ireland, anno 1599, is given by Sir John Harrington, wherein the different articles are ſpecified, and the prices ſtopped for them weekly from the ſubaltern officers and private ſoldiers (x).

BUT I muſt not forget (ſays he) nor ceaſe to tell her majeſtie's good, wiſe, and gracious providings for us her captains and our ſoldiers, in ſummer heats and winter colds, in hunger and thirſt, for our backs and our bellies. That is to ſay, every captain of a hundred footmen doth receive weekly, upon every Saturday, his full entertainment of twenty-eight ſhillings, in like caſe every lieutenant fourteen ſhillings, and every enſign ſeven ſhillings, our ſerjant, ſurgeon, drum, and fife, five ſhillings pay by way of impreſt, and every common ſoldier three ſhillings, to be delivered to all by the pole weekly. To the four laſt lower officers two ſhillings weekly, and for every common ſoldier twenty pence weekly, is to be anſwered to the full value thereof, in good apparel of different kinds, part for winter and part for ſummer, which is ordered of good quality and ſtuff for the prices, patterns whereof muſt be ſent to the lord deputy, to be compared and prepared as followeth.

APPAREL FOR AN OFFICER IN WINTER.

A caſſock of broad cloth with bays, and trimmed with ſilk lace, 27 ſhillings and 7 pence.

A doublet of canvaſs with ſilk buttons, and lined with white linnen, 14 ſhillings and 5 pence.

Two ſhirts and two bands, 9 ſhillings and ſixpence.

(x) NUGÆ Antiquæ, vol. ii. p 17.

Three pair of Kerſey ſtockings, at two ſhillings and four pence, 7 ſhillings.
Three pair of ſhoes of neats leather, at 2 ſhillings and four pence per pair, 7 ſhillings.
One pair of venetians (y) of broad Kentiſh cloth, with ſilver lace, 15 ſhillings and 4 pence.

IN SUMMER.

Two ſhirts and bands, 9 ſhillings and ſixpence.
Two pair of ſhoes, 4 ſhillings and 8 pence.
One pair of ſtockings, 2 ſhillings and eight pence.
A felt hat and band, five ſhillings and five pence.

APPAREL FOR A COMMON SOLDIER IN WINTER.

A caſſock of Kentiſh broad cloth, lined with cotton, and trimmed, with buttons and loops, 17 ſhillings and 6 pence.
A doublet of canvaſs, with white linnen lining, 12 ſhillings and 6 pence.
A hat-cap coloured, ſeven ſhillings.
Two ſhirts of Oſnabridge Holland, and bands, 8 ſhillings.
Three pair of neats leather ſhoes, 2 ſhillings and four pence each, 7 ſhillings.
Three pair of Kerſey ſtockings, 8 ſhillings.
One pair of venetians, of Kentiſh broad cloth, with buttons, loops, and lining of linnen, thirteen ſhillings and four pence.

IN SUMMER.

Two ſhirts of Oſnabridge, and two falling Holland bands, ſeven ſhillings.
Two pair neats leather ſhoes, four ſhillings and eight pence.
One pair of ſtockings, two ſhillings and eight pence.
A hat-cap coloured, three ſhillings.

(y) VENETIANS, a ſort of long trowſers. "To make Venetians down below the garters." See Harrington's Epigram on the Taylor.

FROM the Votes of the Houſe of Commons, 30th of King Charles II. A.D. 1678, the prices of the clothing of the army were as follows:

	l.	s.	d.
Foot per man	2	13	0
Dragoons	6	10	0
Horſe	9	0	0
Horſe grenadiers	8	0	0

THE prices of the clothing for the non-commiſſion officers and trumpets and drummers is not mentioned.

AN original contract in 1693, between the right honourable the Lord Caſtleton and Mr. Francis Molineaux, a clothier, preſerved in the Britiſh Muſeum among the manuſcripts of the Harleian collection, No. 6844, gives the prices of the different articles of clothing for a regiment of foot at that time, both as charged by the clothier, and eſtimated by an after valuation, made by the officers of the regiment, the original contract being deemed an overcharge.

PRIVATE SENTINEL.

	Prices charged in contract.			Prices allowed.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Grey coat and breeches	1	12	0	1	5	0
Hat	0	6	6	0	5	0
Shoes	0	4	0	0	4	0
Shirt	0	3	6	0	3	0
Neckcloth	0	1	0	0	0	10
Stockings	0	2	0	0	1	8
	2	9	0	1	19	6

SERJEANT.

Grey coat and breeches	4	12	0	3	12	0
Shirt	0	6	6	0	5	6
Neckcloth	0	2	0	0	2	0

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Hat - - - -	0	12	0	0	10	0
Stockings - - -	0	5	0	0	4	6
Shoes - - - -	0	4	0	0	4	0
	6	1	6	4	18	0

DRUMMER.

Purple coat and grey breeches -	3	10	0	3	0	0
Hat - - - -	0	6	6	0	6	0
Neckcloth - - -	0	1	0	0	0	10
Shirt - - - -	0	3	6	0	3	0
Stockings - - -	0	2	0	0	1	8
Shoes - - - -	0	4	0	0	4	0
	4	7	0	3	15	6
Grenadier ſerjeants cap - -	0	16	0	0	14	0
Private grenadiers cap - -	0	9	0	0	8	0
Drummers badge - - -	0	3	6	0	3	6

FROM the above account we learn, that the ſoldiers' and ſerjeants' coats and breeches were then grey; the coats of the drummers purple with grey breeches, and that they were likewiſe diſtinguiſhed by badges.

IN 1729 the regulations for the clothing of his majeſty's forces in time of peace, dated the 20th of November, were as follows, viz.

FOR A TROOPER.

A new cloth coat, well lined with ſerge,
A new waiſtcoat,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff gloves, with ſtiff tops, once in two years,
A pair of new boots as they ſhall be wanting.

As it is difficult to fix a period of time for providing ſaddles, it is to be left to the judgment of the general officer who may be appointed to review them.

HOUSINGS, caps, new horſe furniture, bitts, and ſtirrup irons, cloaks faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, and new buff or buff coloured croſs belts, to be provided as they ſhall be wanting.

THE ſecond mounting is to conſiſt of new laced hats, and horſe collars.

FOR A DRAGOON.

A new cloth coat, well lined with ſerge,
A new waiſtcoat,
A pair of new breeches,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff coloured gloves, with ſtiff tops,
A pair of new boots, as they ſhall be wanting.

SADDLES to be left to the judgment of the general officer who may be appointed to review them.

HOUSINGS, caps, new horſe furniture, bitts, and ſtirrup-irons; and cloaks faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, as they ſhall be wanting.

NEW buff or buff coloured accoutrements, viz. a ſhoulder belt, with a pouch, a waiſt belt ſufficient to carry a ſword, with a place to receive the bayonet, and ſling for the arms, ſuch as the general officers appointed to inſpect the clothing ſhall approve of, as they ſhall be wanting.

THE ſecond mounting is to conſiſt of new laced hats, gloves, and horſe collars.

FOR A FOOT SOLDIER.

A good full bodied cloth coat, well lined, which may ſerve for the waiſtcoat the ſecond year,
A waiſtcoat,
A pair of good Kerſey breeches,

A pair of good ſtrong ſtockings,
A pair of good ſtrong ſhoes,
Two good ſhirts, and two good neckcloths,
A good ſtrong hat well laced.

FOR THE SECOND YEAR.

A good cloth coat well lined, as the firſt year,
A waiſtcoat made of the former year's coat,
A pair of good Kerſey breeches,
A pair of good ſtrong ſtockings,
A pair of good ſtrong ſhoes,
A good ſhirt and a neckcloth,
A good ſtrong hat well laced.

FOR the fuſilier regiments, caps once in two years.

THE new waiſtcoat, in the firſt year, is only given to regiments new raiſed, and to additional men: who are likewiſe to be furniſhed with two pair of ſtockings and two ſhirts.

A WARRANT for regulating the clothing of his majeſty's horſe and dragoon forces, dated the 26th of March, 1736, recites, that the general officers of the army to whom his majeſty was pleaſed to refer the fixing a periodical time for providing ſeveral ſpecies of clothing and accoutrements for the horſe and dragoon forces, had in obedience to his majeſty's commands, met, and taken the ſame under their conſideration: and in their report to his majeſty, bearing date the 11th day of March preceding, had given their opinion that the clothing for the horſe and dragoons, and the times for providing for them, ſhould be as hereunder mentioned: and his majeſty having approved thereof, was pleaſed thereby to authorize and direct, that the ſame ſhould be duly obſerved and put in execution, viz.

FOR A TROOPER.

A new cloth coat, well lined with ſerge,
A new waiſtcoat,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff gloves, with ſtiff tops, once in two years.

At the reſpective times of clothing, to be delivered to each troop of horſe, conſiſting of thirty-one or thirty-three men, four new ſaddles, with holſter pipes, buckets, ſtirrup leathers, and ſtirrup irons, and ſix bitts; and to each troop of horſe, of twenty-two or twenty-four men, on the eſtabliſhment of Ireland, three new ſaddles with a proportionable quantity of holſter pipes, buckets, &c. as before mentioned, and four bitts.

New boots to be ſupplied every third clothing to the whole regiment.

New head ſtalls, reins, breaſt plates, and cruppers, to be delivered every third clothing to the whole regiment.

New houſings and caps to be delivered every fifth clothing to the whole regiment.

Cloaks, faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, to be delivered every ſixth clothing to the whole regiment.

New croſs belts of the beſt buff that can be had in England, to be delivered every tenth clothing to the whole regiment.

The ſecond mounting is to conſiſt of new laced hats and horſe collars.

FOR A DRAGOON.

A new cloth coat, well lined with ſerge,
A new waiſtcoat,
A pair of new breeches,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff coloured gloves, with ſtiff tops.

At the reſpective times of clothing, to be delivered to each troop of dragoons, conſiſting of fifty-two men, ſix new ſaddles with holſter

pipes, buckets, ſtirrup leathers, and ſtirrup irons, and nine bitts; and to each troop of dragoons, of twenty-two or twenty-four men, on the eſtabliſhment of Ireland, three new ſaddles, with a proportionable quantity of holſter pipes, buckets, &c. as before mentioned, and four bitts.

NEW boots to be ſupplied every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW head ſtalls, reins, breaſt plates, and cruppers, to be delivered every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW houſings and caps to be delivered every fifth clothing to the whole regiment.

CLOAKS faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, to be delivered every ſixth clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW accoutrements of the beſt buff that can be had in England; viz. a ſhoulder belt with a pouch, a waiſt belt ſufficient to carry the ſword, with a place to receive the bayonet, and ſling for the arms, ſuch as the general officers appointed to inſpect the clothing ſhall approve of, to be delivered every tenth clothing to the whole regiment.

THE ſecond mounting is to conſiſt of new laced hats, gloves, and horſe collars.

AND his majeſty in purſuance of theſe regulations required, that the colonel of each regiment ſhould regulate the delivery of each of the ſpecies before mentioned, from the expiration of the then ſubſiſting aſſignment, which was to be in the year 1737, agreeably to the opinion of the ſaid board of general officers; and directed that, as it ſometimes happens, that ſeveral of the above-mentioned ſpecies are loſt, or totally deſtroyed, by extraordinary accidents, the colonel, in ſuch caſe, ſhould ſupply the ſame, that the regiments clothing may always appear in good order.

A COMMITTEE of the Houſe of Commons was appointed, in the reign of George II. to enquire into the ſtate of the army. In their report, made anno 1746, there was much intereſting information reſpecting the clothing; of which the leading particulars were as follows:

It appeared by the evidence before the committee, that the foot received clothing annually, except waiſtcoats, which were made out of the old coats of the preceding year*; the horſe and dragoons every two years; and the horſe and grenadier guards every three years. It appeared alſo, that the clothing fund aroſe from the ſtoppage of ſo much of the pay of the non-commiſſioned officers and private men as is above their ſubſiſtence, and is called off-reckonings. The off-reckonings from June 1740 to June 1743, for the firſt troop of horſe-grenadier guards, amounted to 2823l. 5s. 9d. the payments for clothes in that time amounted to no more than 1946l. 2s. 1½d. The balance therefore appeared to be 877l. 3s. 7½d. out of which the colonel having provided ſeveral other neceſſaries not particularly ſpecified, but alleged to amount to about 300l. a gain of above 500l. clear accrued to him by the neat ſurplus.

The off-reckonings of a regiment of foot, upon the eſtabliſhment, then amounted to 2173l. 0s. 1d. The clothing of ſuch a regiment amounted to 1961l. 17s. 3d.

Out of which balance the colonel was to find all ſorts of clothing and accoutrements loſt by deſertion, and other incidental charges, which in ſome years were conſiderable.

However, it appeared, that upwards of 578l. had been ſaved by a colonel, after clothing his regiment.

The committee proceeding to enquire into the nature of the fund appropriated to the clothing, it appeared, that the groſs off-reckonings conſiſted of all the pay of the non-commiſſioned officers and private men above the ſubſiſtence; and that the nett off-reckonings were the produce of the groſs off-reckonings, reſerved for the clothing of the men, after the warrant deductions of one ſhilling in the pound, and one day's pay of the whole regiment for Chelſea Hoſpital, and alſo the deduction of two pence in the pound for the agent, were made at the Pay-Office; that the balance of the officers' pay, over and above their ſubſiſtence after the warrant deductions were made, and the reſpited pay, if any,

* This regulation has been ſince altered; the ſoldiers being now provided with fronts to their waiſtcoats, and the backs are made out of the old coats as before.

charged to the officer, was called clearings, which was paid by the pay-maſter-general to the ſeveral agents.

It appeared alſo that this balance was not paid to the colonels till a year or two after the clothing was provided: that it was uſually the cuſtom for the colonel to aſſign the whole of the off-reckonings to the clothier for his ſecurity, or elſe to pay ready money; and that, in the former caſe, the clothier was allowed intereſt for forbearance. That the ſubſiſtence of the men allowed for clothing, loſt by deſertion, was paid to the reſpective colonels, the off-reckonings only being included in the aſſignment; and that there were ſeveral other articles of expence defrayed out of the clothing fund, as the charge of package, of carriage by land or water, of inſurance when not abroad, of intereſt more or leſs as the off-reckonings are paid, of fees of office, of ſmall accoutrements, colours, drums, and other contingent charges.

The clothes to be furniſhed by the colonels were found to be as follows:

To a trooper, a new coat, waiſtcoat, laced hat, and large buff gloves once in two years: to a dragoon the ſame, with the addition of breeches. At every clothing each troop of horſe of 31 or 33 men to receive four new ſaddles, with holſter-pipes, buckets, ſtirrups, and ſix bits: each troop of dragoons of 50 men ſix new ſaddles, with holſter-pipes, buckets, ſtirrups, and nine bits. The whole regiment, whether of horſe or dragoons, new boots, head-ſtalls, reins, breaſt-plates, and cruppers, every third clothing; new houſings and caps every fifth; new cloaks every ſixth; and new ſhoulder-belts, &c. of the beſt buff, every tenth clothing. The ſecond mounting, viz. the year they are not clothed, to conſiſt of new laced hats and horſe-collars to the troopers; and to the dragoons the ſame, with the addition of gloves.

Each foot ſoldier a new coat, a waiſtcoat made of the former year's coat, a pair of new breeches, a pair of ſtrong ſtockings, a pair of ſtrong ſhoes, a good ſhirt and neckcloth*, and a ſtrong laced hat every year.

* At preſent the neckcloth is changed to a black ſtock and roller; which, together with the ſhirt, ſhoes, and ſtockings, is called the half-mounting.

When a regiment is new raiſed, or men added, ſuch regiment or additional men to have new waiſtcoats, with two pair of ſtockings, two ſhirts and neckcloths.

To prevent abuſes in clothing the regiments abroad, the governor of each place, as well as the commanding officer of each regiment, was to ſee all theſe particulars delivered out to the men, and certify the condition of them to the clothing board.

The committee examined the agents of ſeveral regiments, as to the expence of clothing, compared with the total amount of the off-reckonings: when it appeared, that the nett off-reckonings of Lord Mark Kerr's regiment of foot, for each of the years 1730 and 1731, amounted to - - - - - 1713 5 7

That the expence of clothing, including intereſt, was for 1730 - - - - - 1570 16 2½

Balance 142 9 4½

Ditto, for the year 1731 - - - 1447 0 6½

Balance - - - - - 266 5 0½

1713 5 7

That the nett off-reckonings of Major General Bragg's regiment of foot, for the year 1742, were 2173 0 1

That the clothing and intereſt amounted to - 1847 18 8

Balance 325 1 5

Off-reckonings for 1743 - - - 2179 0 10

Clothing and intereſt the ſame year - - 1797 10 10

Balance 381 10 0

		l.	s.	d.
That the off-reckonings for Colonel Murray's regiment in the year 1743, amounted to - -		2173	0	1
Diſburſements for clothing and intereſt - -		1551	5	1¼
	Balance	621	14	10¾

		l.	s.	d.
The off-reckonings of Colonel Thomas Murray's regiment of foot for the year 1745 - -		2173	0	1
Diſburſements for clothing and intereſt - -		1602	19	4½
	Balance	570	0	8½

A STATE of the diſburſements for clothing and aſſignments of off-reckonings of General Campbell's regiment of dragoons, for twelve years, was laid before the committee, viz. from 1733 to 1745, when it appeared that on an average the colonel's clear annual gain was 641l. 8s. 5d.

LIKEWISE that of Colonel Handaſide's regiment of foot for ſix years, viz. from 1739 to 1744; when his clear annual profit upon the clothing appeared to be on an average 348l. 2s. 9d.

THIS report, containing much curious information, and being the lateſt authentic ſtatement reſpecting the clothing of the army, may be ſeen at large in No. 6. of the Appendix.

CHAPTER X.

Of Quarters.

THE ancient mode of quartering our troops may in a great meaſure be gathered from the ordinances of war, and ſeems to have differed very little from that now in uſe, except that they were indiſcriminately quartered upon all houſeholders, as was practiſed in England ſo late as the rebellion in the year 1745.

THE king, or ſome officer authorized by him, having directed the march of the army, or any part of it, iſſued out his mandate to the chief civil magiſtrate of that diſtrict to which it was deſtined, requiring him to provide quarters and proviſions for the occaſion (z). On the approach of the army the marſhal, who acted as quarter-maſter-general, attended by the chief harbinger, thoſe belonging to the different corps, and the harbingers of the great officers, went forward, when the general quarters being aſſigned to the marſhal, were by him divided and delivered out to the regimental and other harbergers, whoſe names had been previouſly given in to the conſtable and marſhal by their reſpective officers or lords: whether the preſent form of billetting was then uſed, is not certain, though it is moſt likely that it was.

RAPIN ſays, that William the Conqueror quartered almoſt all his troops upon the monaſteries, and obliged the monks to find them in

(z) IN order to provide victuals for the army, it was ſometimes ordered that no market ſhould be held in a number of the different counties: many proclamations of this kind, temp. Edward III. are extant, and one of the 13th Richard II. wherein it was directed, that no markets ſhould be held in theſe ſeven ſhires, to wit, Berks, Surrey, Suſſex, Southampton, Dorſet, and Somerſetſhire; but that all victuals ſhould be brought to Portſmouth to the army, where it lay waiting for tranſportation.

neceſſaries; by which means he maintained his army without any charge, and had ſpies in all the religious houſes, who watched the actions of the monks: theſe houſes were long after charged with finding carts and horſes for the carrying of the baggage of the army; and there are ſtill extant many of the original returns from different monaſteries, ſtating the number of each they were able to furniſh for that purpoſe; copies of ſome of them will be given in the Appendix.

In the 9th of Richard II. anno 1385, an order was ſent from the king and council to all mayors, &c. reciting, that having retained William Drayton and Hugh Spenſer, with a certain number of men at arms and archers, to ſet out for the town of Gaunt with all poſſible ſpeed; they the ſaid mayors, &c. were commanded to be aſſiſtant to certain ſervants appointed by the ſaid William and Hugh to ſecure decent and ſufficient quarters at Dover, Sandwich, and the ports adjacent, ſuch as to them ſhall ſeem moſt proper and convenient for obtaining victuals and neceſſarys (a).

In the 10th of the ſaid king, there is an order to the mayor of London, acquainting him, that his majeſty being informed that Charles, King of France, meditated an invaſion of this kingdom; he had ordered his army to aſſemble, as ſoon as poſſible, at London; and that he, being deſirous that his army and liege men may be lodged in the ſaid city, and that they may be accommodated with victuals for their money; had directed the herbergers of the different leaders, to meet the marſhall at a ſtreet, called the Ropery, there to receive quarters from him: it was alſo ordered, that no herberger to any leader ſhould quarter any one by his own authority, without the warrant of the marſhall, under pain of forfeiting his armour and harneſs.

The ſoldiers were forbidden (under pain of forfeiting all they could forfeit) to moleſt any victualler, or to take any proviſion without payment.

No one to rob or pillage his quarters, on pain of life and members, and every other poſſible forfeiture.

(a) Rymer in anno.

No victualler, armourer, or dealer in horſes, to take greater prices for their goods than before this time were uſually given, under pain of forfeiting the ſaid goods. Theſe ordinances were directed to be publickly proclaimed at all expedient places. A proclamation was alſo iſſued, forbidding the raiſing the prices of horſes, armour, &c.; perſons diſobeying this order, to be arreſted and impriſoned till the king ſhould order their enlargement (b).

It appears that the great officers of ſtate attending our kings, had particular quarters aſſigned them and their retinue for life, as is inſtanced in Thomas, Earl of Dorſet, to whom Henry V. A. D. 1414, the 2d year of his reign, aſſigned the town of Stratford Langthorn, with the pariſh of Ham, in Eſſex, for life, for the herbergage of his men ſervants and horſes, whilſt attending the king at Weſtminſter; inſomuch that the king's herbergeours could not aſſign it to any other, nor take from thence graſs, hay, horſe, cart, carriages, nor other neceſſaries during his ſtay there; always provided that the ſaid earl ſhould juſtly pay for all ſorts of hay, horſes, carts, &c. taken for his uſe; in like manner, Canford and Poole, in Dorſetſhire, were granted for the herbergage of the Earl of Saliſbury, whilſt attending the king in thoſe parts (c).

In the year 1415, the third of King Henry V. that king iſſued his commiſſion to John Merſton and William Enger, directing them to provide quarters at Plymouth and places adjacent, for John Tiptoft, Knight, ſeneſchal of the dutchy of Acquitaine, his men at arms, ſoldiers and their horſes, who were to embark from thence for the ſaid dutchy; and alſo to take and provide victuals and other neceſſaries for them during their ſtay, to be promptly paid for with the money of the ſaid John; in this purveyance, the fees of the church to be excepted: the civil magiſtrates were herein directed to be aſſiſting (d).

About the time of Henry VII. we meet with a regulation that ſomewhat reſpects quarters; this is a coat and conduct-money; the firſt

(b) Rymer, vol. 7, p. 584.
(c) See Rymer in anno.
(d) See Rymer in anno.

was, as has before been obſerved, a ſpecies of clothing, probably for recruits; the money for which was advanced by the county wherein they were raiſed, or ſuch other as was directed by the king or his privy council; conduct-money was an allowance for ſubſiſtence, to and from the army, according to the number of days the ſoldiers had to march; a day's march was ſometimes eſtimated at twelve and ſometimes at fifteen miles; both the coat and conduct-money was occaſionally advanced by the different counties wherein the troops were quartered, under the promiſe of being repaid by government (e).

Towards the latter end of the reign of King James II. and even after the acceſſion of King William III. ſoldiers uſed to oblige the inhabitants of the towns wherein they were quartered, not only to furniſh them with diet and lodging, but alſo to advance them their daily ſubſiſtence; the Journals of the Houſe of Commons furniſh many inſtances wherein this is complained of.

After the revolution, by the mutiny act paſſed the 23d day of December, anno 1689, the following laws and regulations reſpecting quarters were enacted:

And whereas, by the petition of right in the third of Charles I: it is enacted and declared, that the people of this land are not by the laws to be burthened with the ſojourning of ſoldiers againſt their wills; and by a clauſe in an act of parliament, made 31ſt of Charles II. for granting his majeſty 206,462l. 17s. 3d. for paying and diſbanding his forces: it is declared and enacted, that no officers, military or civil,

---

(e) 1280l. is charged for ceote and conduyt money in Cardinal Woolſey's warrant, anno 14 Henry VIII. by Thomas Magnus Clerk, for the king's army going to Scotland. *See book marked W. S. in Coll. Arm.*

In the paper-office there are divers letters from the deputy-lieutenants of counties, reſpecting the marching, quartering, and paying new-levied troops in the year 1627: in one from the deputy lieutenants of the county of Surrey, coat money appears to have been ſettled at 12s. 6d. Six hundred men were, it is there ſaid, coated at that rate; the conduct-money was 8d. per diem, accounting twelve miles for a day's march.

Anno 1640, conduct-money was ſettled by King Charles I. at 8d. per diem, and a day's march at not leſs than fifteen miles. *See Rymer.*

nor any other perſon whatſoever, ſhall from henceforth preſume to place, quarter or billet, any ſoldier or ſoldiers, upon any ſubject or inhabitant of this realm, of any degree, quality, or profeſſion whatſoever, without their conſent; and that it may be lawful for any ſuch ſubject and inhabitant to refuſe to ſojourn or quarter any ſoldier or ſoldiers, notwithſtanding any command, order, warrant, &c. &c. But foraſmuch as at this preſent time there is a rebellion in Ireland, and a war in France, whereby there is occaſion for the marching of many regiments, troops, and companies in ſeveral parts of this kingdom towards the ſea coaſt and otherwiſe; be it enacted, &c. that during the continuance of this act, and no longer, it ſhall be lawful for conſtables, &c. to billet officers and ſoldiers on inns, livery ſtables, ale-houſes, victualling-houſes, and all houſes ſelling brandy, ſtrong waters, cyder, or metheglin, by retail, to be drunk in their houſes, and no other, and in no private houſes whatſoever; any conſtable, &c. preſuming to quarter officers or ſoldiers on private houſes, the owner to have his remedy at law.

The officers and ſoldiers ſo quartered, to pay ſuch reaſonable rates as ſhall from time to time be ſettled by the juſtices at the quarter-ſeſſions; which ſaid juſtices are required to appoint all neceſſary proviſions for ſuch officers and ſoldiers, for one or more nights in their marching through the cities, towns, villages, &c. and for the firſt night only, in ſuch places as ſhall be appointed for their reſidence or quarters, provided the price ſo ſet by the ſaid juſtices be within the ſubſiſtence money paid to the ſoldiers, which is,

	l.	s.	d.	
Each trooper - - -	0	2	0	per diem.
Each dragoon - - -	0	1	2	
Each foot ſoldier - - -	0	0	6	

And after the ſaid firſt night in their quarters, the owners and occupiers of the inns, ale-houſes, and other publick-houſes as aforeſaid, are hereby required to furniſh ſuch officers and ſoldiers ſo quartered and

billetted as aforeſaid with dry lodgings (f), ſtable room for horſes, and with fire and water, and neceſſary utenſils to dreſs their meat, and not otherwiſe, without the ſaid officers or ſoldiers ſhall make a contract or agreement for their proviſions with the ſaid owners or occupiers: provided alſo, and be it enacted, that if any officer or ſoldier ſhall take any money of any perſon for excuſing the quartering of officers or ſoldiers on any of them, in any houſe allowed by this act; every ſuch officer or ſoldier ſhall be caſhiered and made incapable of ſerving in any military employment whatſoever.

In the act of 12th Anne, to take place June 5th, 1714, was the following clauſe: provided alſo, and it is hereby enacted, that nothing in this act contained ſhall be conſtrued to extend to compel the quartering of any officer or ſoldier of the regiments of foot within that part of Great Britain called England, the dominions of Wales, and town of Berwick upon Tweed, unleſs it be within ten miles of the palace or place of her majeſty's uſual reſidence, or within ten miles of the place where her majeſty ſhall be preſent, or in ſome garriſon or garriſons where ſufficient barracks are not provided for them; and unleſs it be in the marches of ſuch officers and ſoldiers: and that in ſuch marches, no perſon ſhall be obliged to quarter them more than ſix days at a time; any thing in this act to the contrary notwithſtanding.

Officers, &c. were to be quartered in Scotland, as by the laws in force there at the union.

The preſent mode of quartering our troops is according to the form following:

(f) Great diſputes have at all times ariſen, between the officers and landlords of the houſes wherein they are billeted, reſpecting the quality of the room to be furniſhed for them: an opinion has long prevailed in the army, that the ſuperior commiſſion officer quartered in any publick-houſe, has a right to the ſecond beſt apartment in the houſe; this we find affirmed by Edward Davis, who wrote in the year 1619; his words are: "note, that "a ſouldier in garriſon being furried in a houſe, is allowed the beſt bed and chamber, ſave "one, faire ſheetes, boardclothes, plates, napkins, towels, dreſſing of his meate, ſervice at "the table, oil, vinegar, muſtard, candle-light, fire, &c."

When a regiment is to change its quarters, an order, ſtiled a route, is ſent from the ſecretary of war or his deputy, ſignifying that it is his majeſty's pleaſure that the ——— regiment ſhall march from its preſent quarters on a day ſpecified, to the place or places deſtined, there to be quartered, and to remain till further orders. Routes are either particular or diſcretionary; in the firſt, the number of diviſions in which the regiment is to march, the places through which they are to paſs, and where they are to reſt, with the days and places at which they are to halt on their way, are all ſpecified in the margin; a diſcretionary route ſimply directs the corps to march from its preſent quarters to thoſe deſtined for it, in ſuch diviſions, and by ſuch routes, as ſhall be found ſhorteſt and moſt convenient, halting as there ſhall be occaſion, or, as is moſt frequent, on Sundays and Thurſdays; both routes contain an order for all civil magiſtrates to be aſſiſting in impreſſing carriages, and providing quarters, as is by the act of parliament directed: the power of granting routes is confined to the commander in chief, the maſter-general, and lieutenant-general of the ordnance, or the king, ſignified by the ſecretary of war: the difference of the routes above mentioned are very material; for, ſhould any accident delay or prevent the corps arriving at the place directed in the firſt at the day therein directed, the remainder of the route would be made void, and the magiſtrates not authorized to furniſh quarters or carriages.

On the receipt of the route, ſeveral copies atteſted by the commanding-officer, the quarter-maſter or adjutant, are made out, and the original, or one of them, is ſhewn to the chief magiſtrate or neighbouring juſtice; who thereupon grants his warrant to the conſtable, to impreſs as many carriages as are required to carry the regimental baggage, which he, under the penalty of forty and not leſs than twenty ſhillings, is obliged to execute: the hire of theſe carriages is to be paid into the hands of the conſtable at the following rates; for a waggon with five horſes, one ſhilling per mile; and a cart with four horſes, nine pence per mile; the firſt, to carry thirty hundred, and the ſecond in proportion, the over-weight (if any) to be paid for; the

common price for a day's march is one ſhilling per hundred: officers are forbidden to take the waggon further than it can return in the ſame day; to force the waggoner to carry their women, children, ſervants, any other than the ſick or lame ſoldiers, or to beat or abuſe the driver; the treaſurer of the county to pay the perſons to whom the carriages belong ſuch additional ſums as the juſtices at the quarter ſeſſions ſhall direct.

In caſe the waggon ſhould break down on the march, or the horſes become unable to draw it, it has been the cuſtom to demand other waggons of the conſtable of the place where the accident happens, and even without a conſtable to impreſs waggons or horſes, as the caſe required.

The carriages being provided, which is commonly done the day before the march, the quarter-maſter or ſome other commiſſioned or non-commiſſioned officer goes forward with the route to the firſt ſtage or day's march, to provide billets; for which purpoſe he applies for them with a copy of the route, to the chief magiſtrate, as well as for carriages for the next day's march; the billets being made out, the conſtable meets the regiment in the place where they draw up, and delivers them their billets; before the regiment quits theſe quarters, it is the duty of the commanding officer to ſee that all the landlords are paid according to the rates laid down in the mutiny act; theſe are, for a commiſſion officer of horſe, under the degree of a captain, for his diet and ſmall beer, 2s. per diem, for that of an officer of dragoons of the ſame rank, or one of foot, 1s. each, and for their horſes for their hay and ſtraw, 6d. per diem each, for the diet and ſmall beer of a non-commiſſion officer or private trooper or dragoon, 6d. per diem, and 6d. per diem for the hay and ſtraw for their horſes; for every non-commiſſion officer or private foot ſoldier, 4d.

The common method practiſed by the publicans, is to give the ſoldiers their dinner and ſmall beer gratis, to avoid further trouble.

These forms are repeated at every day's march. On the arrival of the regiment at its quarters, the commanding officer ſends a drum and ſerjeant round the quarters, to give public notice to the publicans not

to credit the ſoldiers for above two days' diet, they being paid twice a week; ſhould this be neglected, the commanding officer is liable, by the articles of war, to pay all the ſoldiers' debts; this is called crying down credit.

Two or three days after the arrival of the regiment in their quarters, a liſt, called a comptroll of quarters, is given to the conſtable, to enable him to correct any error made in diſtributing the men at the firſt billetting.

For the ſums above mentioned the publicans may at their option either board the non-commiſſion officers and ſoldiers, or find them fire, candle, vinegar, ſalt, and five pints of either ſmall beer or cyder, with utenſils for dreſſing their victuals, gratis; of this they are to give notice; but recruiting parties and the recruits by them raiſed, or troops on a march, they are obliged to board.

The commanding officer may, for the benefit of the ſervice, exchange one man for another at any of the quarters in the ſame place.

Any officer taking or ſuffering any one to take money, to excuſe quartering ſoldiers in any houſe liable by the act, is to be caſhiered and rendered incapable of holding any military employment. No juſtice inveſted with a military office can be concerned in quartering ſoldiers.

The houſes ſubject to the quartering of ſoldiers are livery-ſtables, ale-houſes, victuallers, and the houſes of perſons ſelling wine by retail to be drunk in their own houſes, or places thereunto belonging, except tavern-keepers that are free of the company of vintners in London, admitted before the year 1757, or ſuch as have and ſhall be afterwards admitted in right of patrimony or apprenticeſhip.

In the mutiny act the ſame rate continues to be ſpecified for the payment of quarters; but ſince 1793, the publicans, and other perſons obliged to furniſh quarters, have been relieved by a further allowance of 4d. each man per diem for the cavalry, and 6d. each man per diem for the infantry; which makes the whole ſum for each man's diet and ſmall beer per diem 10d. They are alſo, by virtue of the ſame act,

entitled, An act for the relief of innkeepers, &c., allowed 4½d. for each horſe's hay and ſtraw, in addition to the former ſixpence. This additional or extra rate is called *Marching* or *Billet* money, and is charged in the extraordinaries of the army. There is alſo a further allowance of 2d. each man per diem, to the publican, when he does not diet the ſoldiers, but is obliged to provide them with fire and candle, cooking utenſils, vinegar, ſalt, and ſmall beer or cyder. This allowance is called *Beer money*, and comes likewiſe under the head of the army extraordinaries.

CHAPTER XI.

Of Field Exercise and Tactics.

WHAT was the particular form of exercise used by the infantry in our ancient armies is uncertain, nor is it mentioned in any books I have been able to find; probably it was somewhat like that handed down to us by Ælian, in which was practised the facings, opening, closing and doubling the ranks and files, counter-marching, and wheeling; indeed, it would be an absurdity to suppose, that an army could ever have been led to the field uninstructed in some uniform principles of movement, and handling their arms; and it is also certain, as has I believe been before observed, that the great number of various troops assembled at the crusades, would tend to assimilate the tactics of the whole, as every nation would undoubtedly adopt the form of discipline most approved of in the army (g).

(g) THE French Military History is as barren on this matter as our own; from father Daniel, it appears, that the oldest form of military exercise, he has found, is of the year 1473, being a manuscript in the king's library, containing the ordonances of Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, for the corps of gendarmerie, formed on the model of those of France, and composed of men of arms, archers, coustilliers, and pages; but the infantry, the Genoese cross-bow-men, and archers excepted, being long after held in small estimation, no great attention was paid to their discipline; the free archers only assembled on holidays in their villages, to practise shooting, and the game of the popenjay, which was A.D. 1721, when father Daniel wrote, still in use; a military writer (Montegon), who had served under Charles IX. and Henry III. contemporaries with Queen Elizabeth, complains (says father Daniel), that in his time, no soldiers were made to perform an exercise except the regiment of guards; this fact, incredible as it may appear, is in some measure confirmed by the testimony of Monsieur de Montgommeri de Corboson, who lived at the same time; for that gentleman in his Treatise on the French Militia, speaking of the exercise of the Greek Soldiers,

as

By Camden's letter printed in a preceding chapter of this work, we learn, that an innovation in our national military diſcipline took place towards the latter end of the reign of Queen Elizabeth; introduced by the officers who had ſerved in the low countries; this, it appears, was diſapproved of by many ancient commanders and ſoldiers, a circumſtance extremely natural, ſince they were thereby reduced from the rank of maſters or teachers, to that of ſcholars or learners, a degradation to which it requires great philoſophy to ſubmit; this innovation in part conſiſted of a more general introduction of fire arms, and a conſequent decreaſe of archers.

Soon after this era, a number of military treatiſes were written; from theſe we learn, that the infantry was drawn up ten deep; one reaſon for which was, that the firſt rank having fired, would be able to march into the rear, form, and reload, by the time that the other nine ranks had ſeverally done the ſame; a company then generally conſiſted of an hundred men, which being a ſquare number, preſented an equal face every way; a matter then conſidered as of great importance: a company contained four eſcadrons or ſquares of twenty-five men each, five in each face.

Both ranks and files had three different diſtances at which they ſtood; they were diſtinguiſhed by the terms; 1ſt. open order; 2d. order; and 3d. cloſe order: the firſt was ſix feet; the ſecond three feet; and the third only one foot and a half.

The meaſure of open order, or ſix feet between the ranks, was judged by obſerving, that the but end of a ſoldier's pike when ſloped, almoſt reached the heels of his file leader; the diſtance of order, or three feet, was found by cloſing up, till every man almoſt touched the chape or point of the ſword of his file-leader.

The diſtances of files were regulated by the following rule: for open order, a diſtance of ſix feet was taken by each file, ſtanding ſo far

---

as deſcribed by Ælian, compares it with that uſed in Holland, under Prince Maurice, and not with that practiſed in France, which ſhews, that the military exerciſe was not at that time ſo accurately or frequently performed there.

from their right and left hand men, that their arms being mutually extended, their finger ends would juſt meet.

For order, the ſoldiers putting their hands on their hip bones, with their arms (as the term is) ſet a-kimbow, the elbows juſt met or touched thoſe of their right or left hand men.

Close order was commanded by the word cloſe; it was one foot and a half diſtance between the files, and three feet between the ranks; it was for pikes only, and was never to be uſed but in ſtanding to receive the charge of an enemy; muſketteers were never to be cloſer than the ſecond diſtance, or order, three feet ſquare, that they might have a free uſe of their arms.

In exerciſing or performing the motions of the pike, muſket, and caliver, or manual, as it is now called, the ranks and files were at open order, each man being allowed a ſpace of ſix feet ſquare.

The ſecond diſtance or order was uſed when the regiment was embattled or marched in the face of an enemy, to halt or to wheel, in marching through a country; the files were at order, and the ranks at open order.

Every corps conſiſted of pikes and muſketteers; the pikes were drawn up in the centre, the muſketteers on the flanks.

It does not appear from any book I have ſeen, that at firſt the muſketteers ever attempted to fire more than one rank at a time; all their firings by ranks were conducted ſomewhat in the manner of the modern ſtreet firings.

The poſtures or motions of the manual exerciſe for the muſket and pike, are repreſented in the annexed plates; the words of command for theſe exerciſes are engraved beneath each figure, as are alſo thoſe for the halbert: beſides the muſket, there was a lighter kind of fire-arm, called a caliver, uſed without a reſt; the exerciſe of which differed in ſome ſmall matters from that of the muſket.

The evolutions were facing, wheeling, countermarching, and doubling their ranks and files; exhibiting a variety of methods of changing the front, increaſing either the breadth or depth of the corps, or changing the ſituation of the ranks and files with reſpect to

front and rear, and right or left; the manœuvres of this time were forming wings, wedges, rhombs, ſquares, triangles, the ſheers, the ſaw, and a variety of other whimſical figures (h).

It does not appear that any great attention was paid to the mode of marching or dreſſing, or that the officers of that time had the leaſt idea of the points of direction or allignement.

The following extract from a ſmall pamphlet entitled "A worthy ſpeech ſpoken by his excellence the E. of Eſſex in the head of his armie before his arrivall at Worceſter, on Saturday laſt, being the 24th September, 1642. Pub. September 29th, 1642," ſhews the ſtate of the diſcipline of the parliamentary army at that period, and is replete with good ſenſe.

1. I shall deſire all and every officer to endeavour by love and affable carriage to command his ſouldiers, ſince what is done for fear is done unwillingly, and what is unwillingly attempted can never proſper.

Likewise 'tis my requeſt that you be very carefull in the exerciſing of your men, and bring them to uſe their armes readily and expertly, and not to buſy them in practizing the ceremonious formes of military diſcipline, onely let them be well inſtructed in the neceſſary rudiments of warre, that they may know to fall on with diſcretion and retreat with care, how to maintaine their order and make good their ground: alſo I do expect that all thoſe which voluntarily engaged themſelves in this ſervice, ſhould anſwer my expectation in the performance of theſe enſuing articles.

(h) Towards the latter end of the laſt century, military manœuvres were, particularly in France, ſo multiplied and complicated, as to exhibit as many ridiculous conceits, as a Dutch parterre; an inſtance of this occurs in Mr. Guibert's Eſſay on Tacticks; who ſays, "when I entered into the ſervice, this puerile exerciſe ſtill prevailed; though men's minds began to be enlightened for twenty years before; they manœuvred with open ranks, and paſſed their time in countermarching by rank and file, in grounding their firelocks, and taking them up without bending their knees; they formed battalions into circles, triangles, ſquares, and baſtions; M. de Chevert related, that when adjutant to the regiment of Beauce, he was much admired for having at the end of a field-day, he conducted before the inſpector, delineated with the regiment, the words, 'Vive le Roy,' and cauſed this living alphabet to fire a feu de joye."

1. That you willingly and chearfully obey ſuch as (by your owne election) you have made commanders over you.

2. That you take ſpeciall care to keepe your armes at all times fit for ſervice, that upon all occaſions you may be ready when the ſignal ſhall be given by the ſound of the drumme or trumpet to repaire to your colours, and ſo to march upon any ſervice, where and when occaſion ſhall require.

3. That you beare yourſelves like ſoldiers without doing any ſpoile to the inhabitants of the country; ſo doing you ſhall gain love and friendſhip, where otherwiſe you will be hated and complained off, and I that ſhould protect you, ſhall be forced to puniſh you according to the ſeverity of law.

4. That you accept and reſt ſatisfied with ſuch quarters as ſhall fall to your lot, or be appointed you by your quarter-maſter.

5. That you ſhall (if appointed for centries or per-dues) faithfully diſcharge that duty, for upon failure hereof, you are to undergo a very ſevere cenſure.

6. You ſhall forbeare to profane the Sabbath, either by being drunke, or by unlawfull games, for whoſoever ſhall be found faulty muſt not expect to paſſe unpuniſhed.

7. Whosoever ſhall be knowne to neglect the feeding of his horſe, with neceſſary provender, to the end that his horſe be diſabled or unfit for ſervice, the party for the ſaid default ſhall ſuffer a month's impriſonment, and afterwards be caſhiered as unworthy the name of a ſouldier.

8. That no trooper or other of our ſouldiers ſhall ſuffer his Paddee (i) to feed his horſe in the corne, or to ſteale mens hay, but ſhall pay every man for hay 6d. day and night, and for oats 2s. the buſhell.

Lastly; that you avoid cruelty, for it is my deſire rather to ſave

(i) The meaning of this word I have not been able to aſcertain; it is by ſome ſuppoſed to mean Iriſh boys; many of them were then, it is ſaid, ſerving as grooms to the troopers: Paddee, according to this idea, originated from the vulgar appellation of paddy, given by the Engliſh to the Iriſhmen of all denominations.

the life of thouſands, than to kill one, ſo that it may be done without prejudice.

THESE things faithfully performed, and the juſtice of our cauſe truely conſidered, let us advance with a religious courage, and willingly adventure our lives in the defence of our king and parliament.

THE exerciſe adopted in the attempt to re-introduce the long bow into our armies, by connecting it with the pike, comes next under conſideration..

THE following are the directions given by Nead in his treatiſe, entitled, The Double-armed Man (k).

Now the perfection of this exerciſe, if they have been bowmen, may be attained unto by practice without any great difficultie, and thereby he is a double armed man ; and for the order and poſtures belonging to the pike and bow, for the true uſe thereof is as followeth.

FIRST, the whole body of pikes muſt keep their fyles of pikes ſtreight by line, for in ſo doing, they may all ſhoot, as well the middle and the rear, as the front, without offending one another.

SECONDLY, every follower muſt ſhoot right over his leader's head, and ſo ſhoot thorow his own fyle of pikes, for that muſt be his true direction to make his ſhoot.

THIRDLY, after the enemy comes on, and that the leaders do ſhoot

---

(k) PRINTED A.D. 1625. It appears by the preface, that the author, William Nead, cauſed a ſoldier to perform this exerciſe before King Charles I. in St. James's Park, and that he by petition ſolicited the king to give orders for its being practiſed in the artillery gardens of London and Weſtminſter ; to which the king anſwered, that it were meeter for them to practiſe it of their own accord : he alſo there complains of having neither ſupportation, nor countenance from any (but God alone) ; he, however, at length obtained a commiſſion, about the year 1633, for himſelf and ſon, alſo named William ; wherein he (the father) is ſtiled an ancient archer, who had preſented to the king a warlike invention for uniting the uſe of the pike and bow, ſeen and approved by him and his counſel of war ; wherefore his majeſty had granted him a commiſſion to teach and exerciſe his loving ſubjects in the ſaid invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his train band to learn and practiſe; and the juſtices, and other chief magiſtrates throughout England, are therein enjoyned to uſe every means in their power to aſſiſt Neade, his ſon, and all perſons authoriſed by them in the furtherance, propagation, and practice of this uſeful invention.

Double armed Man. Pl.2.

Soldier armed with a Lance

Pikeman armed with a Roundel

The double arm[illegible]

breaſt high, then are the followers to bear their bowe hand even with the top of his leader's head, for that is the loweſt and ſhorteſt diſtance that they can ſhoot, ſtanding in their order and ſquare body.

Fourthly, after your laſt ſhoot, which is about ſixe ſcore yards, you muſt faſten your bowe and come up to your cloſe order for the charge; and if it be for horſe, while the five or ſix firſt ranges ſtand charged with their pikes, reſted at the foot, and their ſwordes drawne; the middle of the reare may ſhoot their voleyes of arrowes, and doe good ſervice; whereas, without their bowes they can doe nothing but ſtand with their pikes ſloapt or ported.

These obſervations for the practice of this exerciſe, I have here ſet downe for the inſtruction unto all thoſe that hereafter ſhall endeavour to practiſe the ſame.

Here followeth the proper words of command belonging to this exerciſe for the pike and bow, accordinge as it hath been practiſed by the worthie ſocietie in the Artillerie-garden, London.

The proper words of command for this exerciſe are as followeth:

Order your pike.	Faſten your bow.
Slope your pike.	Recover your pike.
Unfaſten your bow.	Advance your pike.
Draw out your arrow.	Come up to your cloſe order.
Nock your arrow.	Charge your pike.
Shoot wholly together.	Recover your pike.
Port your pike and march.	Shoulder your pike and march.
Port your pike and retire.	Comport your pike and march.

Here followeth alſo, ſixe ſeverall portraitures moſt proper for this exerciſe, with the pike and bow, by this invention, with the obſervations and words of command, properly belonging to each ſeverall poſture(l).

(l) Ward in his animadverſions of Warre, mentions this invention with approbation: "This invention of joyning a bowe to the pike, may bee of excellent uſe in the warres, to impale the flankes of an army; for when the horſe ſhall charge eyther in flank or reare, thoſe arrowes will gaule them; they are very good to be drawn out to ſafeguard ſome ſmall troopes to

Fig. 1. The pikemen ſtands ordered.

This portraiture is firſt placed, being properly the firſt poſture; for the pikemen ſtanding ordered, is ready alſo for all other poſtures or ſervice whatſoever he ſhall be commanded, as

Advance your pike, &c.

Shoulder your pike, march.

Sloape your pike.

Unfaſten your bow and ſhoot.

Port your pike and march.

Port your pike and retire, &c.

Fig. 2. The pikemen ſtands ſloaped and ſhooting.

This portraiture is properly for ſhooting with this obſervation, that the butt end of the pike be faſt in the ground, at the right foot.

The words of command for this poſture are as followeth:

Sloape your pike.

Unfaſten your bow.

Draw out your arrow.

Nocke your arrow.

Shoot wholly together.

Fig. 3. The pikeman ſtands ported, to march or retire.

This portraiture is moſt proper for the third place; for after ſhooting the firſt volley of arrowes at the fartheſt diſtance, if any fall ſhort, you are ready, ſo ported, to march ten paces, or more or leſſe, as you ſhall be commanded, to ſhoot your ſecond volley of arrowes, &c.

After which, the words of command are;

Faſten your bowe.

Recover your pike.

Fig. 4. The pikeman ſtands charged.

This portraiture is placed next after the former; for when the

---

of ſhot that ſhall be ſent out to diſcharge upon the horſe; but for the placing of theſe in the front of the maine batalia's, I hold it not ſo good, unleſſe it be only the two firſt rankes, for it will be very troubleſome when the troopes ſhall joyne at puſh of pike; beſides, the pikes heads will ſoon cut their bow-ſtrings in ſunder, and make them of no validitie; and queſtionleſſe in time of ſtormie wet weather, theſe bowes would doe great ſervice, when the muſquet cannot be diſcharged for wet.

Order your Pike.

Advance your Pike in 3 motions
The 1st motion.

The 2d motion.

The 3d motion being advanced.

Order your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion

The 2d motion

The 3d motion being ordered.

Shoulder your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.

The 2d motion

N. Goodnight sc.

The 3d motion being Shouldered

Port your Pike in 3 motions
The 1st motion.

The 2d motion

The 3d motion being Ported.

Charge your Pike

Advance your Pike.

Shoulder your Pike in 3 motions
The 1st motion

The 2d motion.

The 3d motion being Shouldered.

S.t C.Goodnight sculp

PIKE EXERCISE Pl.2.

Charge to the Rear in 3 motions.
The 1st motion

The 2d motion

The 3d motion being charged.

Recover your Pike & Shoulder in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.

The 2d motion

The 3d motion being Shoulder'd

Order your Pike

Check your Pike
The 1st motion

The 2d motion being Check'd

N. Goodnight

EXERCISE OF THE PIKE Pl 3

Trayle your Pike.

Recover your Pike and Charge.
The 1st Palming motion.

The 2d Palming motion

Charge your Pike.

Order at close order.

Put up your Sword & order your Pike.

ſouldier hath ſhot his volleys of arrows, and faſtened his bow, if the enemy will come to the puſh, then is he readyly a pike-man, and ſo to receive his enemy at the puſh.

The words of command for this poſture are as followeth:

Advance your pike.

Come up to your cloſe order.

Charge your pike.

Fig. 5. The pikeman ſtands coucht and charged for the horſe, with his ſword drawne.

This portraiture of charging for horſe, is to ſhew, that the bow is very material for this ſervice; for the five or ſix firſt rankes ſtanding coucht at the charge, the middle and the reare may ſhoot their volleys of arrowes, and therewith both gaule, wound, diſorder, and kill the enemie, both man and horſe.

The words of command are:

Five firſt ranks, draw your ſwordes cloſe to your pouldrons, charge at the foot and couch low; middle and reare, port and come up to your order, and ſhoot your arrowes.

Fig. 6. The pikeman ſhoulders and marches.

This portraiture of ſhouldering and marching, is placed to ſhew with what eaſe the bow is carried with the pike, and without incumbrance unto the pikeman, either for carriage or ſervice.

The words of command for this poſture are;

Shoulder your pike and march.

Likewise comporting is very proper upon ſome occaſion for the pike and bow; the words are,

Comport your pike and march.

By an abridgement of the Engliſh military diſcipline, publiſhed by royal authority, A.D. 1686, it appears, that great improvements had been made in that ſcience in a very few years; the troops were many of them armed with firelocks inſtead of matchlocks; the idea of the bayonet began to be adopted, and the muſketteers fired three deep, the front rank kneeling, the center ſtooping, and the rear ſtanding upright: in this firing, the platoon diviſion or regiment having pre-

pared themſelves as here mentioned, the center and rear ranks fired, and recovered their arms; and laſtly, the front rank did the ſame; the whole then clubbed their muſkets at the word given for that purpoſe, and on the word, fall on! ruſhed forward with a huzza!

THE grenadiers likewiſe practiſed the grenade exerciſe; in which, after flinging their firelocks, they lighted and threw their grenades by ranks, and at the ſame time ſeizing their hatchets, which made part of their appointments, at the word of command, "fall on!" ruſhed forwards hatchet in hand, as at an attack of the covert way, the hatchets being intended to cut down the palliſades.

WHEN a regiment was drawn up for exerciſe or a review, the files were ſix deep, the ranks at open order, the companies poſted according to their ſeniority, the eldeſt on the right, the next on the left, till the youngeſt came into the center: the battalion was then formed by the muſketteers facing to the right and left, outwards, and the pikes to the right and left inwards; at the word "march" they interchanged their ground, the front rank of the pikes paſſing before the front rank of muſketteers, and the remainder between the ranks, in the ſame manner as was lately practiſed by the grenadiers in covering the flanks of the battalion; by this movement the pikes were all in the centre flanked by the muſketteers.

THE ſerjeants were poſted, part on the flanks to the right and left of each rank, and the remainder in a rank in the rear, three paces from the rear rank of the regiment; the drummers on the flanks of the ſerjeants, dreſſing with the front, or with the front and ſecond ranks; the muſick was on the right of the drummers of the right wing, and dreſſing with them.

THE officers were thus placed: the lieutenants were divided equally, half at the head of the right wing of muſketteers, and the other at the left; the enſigns at the head of the pikes upon the ſame line with the lieutenants, and each of them two paces from the body; the captains were divided equally, and placed on each wing, two paces before the lieutenants; none were to ſtand before the enſigns, but he only who commanded in chief, who was to be two paces before the captains

Goodnight sculp.

A Musketeer with his Match-Lock, Bandileers and Rest.

...arch with your rest in your hand

March, and with your Musket carry your rest.

Unshoulder your Musket.

Poize your Musket

Join your rest to your Musket

Take forth your Match

Blow off your Coal.

Cock your Match.

Try your Match

MANUAL EXERCISE OF ... MUSKETEERS PLA

Guard, blow and open your pan.

Present

Give Fire

Dismount your musket.

Uncock your match

Return your match

Clear your pan.

Prime your pan.

Shut your pan.

N° C Goodnight

MUSKETEERS Pl 2

Cast of your loose powder

Blow of your loose powder

Cast about your Musket

Trail your rest

Open your Charge

Charge your Musket

Draw forth your scouring Stick.

Shorten your scouring Stick

Put in your Bullet & Ram

Withdraw your scouring stick

Shorten your scouring stick.

Return your scouring stick

Recover your Musket

Poize your Musket and recover your Rest

Rest your Musket

Draw out your match

Blow your match

Cock your match

MUSKETEERS Pl 4

Try your match.

Guard your pan.

Present.

Give Fire.

Come up to your Musket.

Return your match.

Take up your rest.

Blow off your loose Powder and wet about your Musket.

Trail your rest & open your charge

MUSKETEERS Pl.V.

(that is), ſix paces from the pikes, unleſs when a regiment made but one battalion, and the colonel and lieutenant-colonel were both preſent; then the lieutenant-colonel was to be poſted on the left hand of the colonel; the major (who always was to be on horſeback,) in a direct line before the ſerjeants on the right angle, a little advanced before the line of captains; and the adjutant on the left angle in like manner on horſeback.

To receive the king or queen, the pikes were advanced, and the muſkets ſhouldered; but to all others the pikes were ordered.

If there was a company of grenadiers, it was drawn up on the right of the battalion three deep, about two or three paces diſtance between the drums of the battalion, and that of the grenadiers.

The files were now opened to the right or left, and the officers took their poſts of exerciſe in the rear, forming two ranks, the ſubalterns and colours eleven paces, and the captain thirteen paces, to the rear of the rear rank of the battalion.

The ſerjeants at the ſame time moved through the intervals oppoſite to them, into the front, forty-ſix paces beyond the front rank; that is, ſix paces beyond the exerciſing officer, and then divided themſelves at equal diſtances along the front, in a line parallel to the battalion.

The regiment then went through the manual exerciſe of the muſket and pike; this being done, both the pikemen and muſketteers were ordered to ground their arms, and to go to the right about, and march to the rear, and as ſoon as they were clear of the officers to diſperſe; on the beating of the preparative, the ſoldiers all drew their ſwords, and carrying their points upwards, ran to their arms with a loud huzza, and ſtood beſide them, their ſwords poiſed before them: they then, on the word of command, returned their ſwords, took up their arms, and the officers reſumed their poſts in the front.

The evolutions and manœuvres were opening, cloſing, and doubling the ranks and files, wheeling forwards and backwards by ſubdiviſions, paſſing a defile, forming and reducing the hollow ſquare; in this manœuvre, the colours, one to each company, were in the center, and the grenadiers covered the angles.

THE firings were to the front, the rear, and the flanks, the ſtreet firing, volley, and running fire, or firing by files.

FIRING to the front was thus performed; the files being ſix deep, the front, ſecond, third, fourth, and fifth ranks, all kneeled; the ſixth, or rear, made ready and fired; the fifth then roſe, and did the ſame, and ſo on ſucceſſively till the front had fired; this firing was alſo performed by two or three ranks at a time; in the laſt caſe, the firſt and ſecond ranks ſtooped, and the third ſtood upright.

THIS firing was likewiſe performed advancing and retreating, much in the ſame manner as was lately practiſed in the ſtreet firings.

FIRING to the rear differed only in the battalion going to the right about, and the front rank beginning inſtead of the rear; firing to the flanks was performed by leaving an interval of ſix feet on the right and left, between the diviſion of muſketteers and pikemen: the battalion having faced to the right and left outwards, the right and left hand files made ready, preſented, and fired; after which they faced outwards, divided, and marched into the intervals prepared for them, where they joined, formed and reloaded; this was ſucceſſively repeated till the whole had fired; the officers after every fire taking care to make their men move forward a few paces, in order to keep theſe intervals open.

THE volley and running fire require no explanation, as they were performed in the ſame manner as at preſent (m).

THE ſtreet firing differed very little from the preſent mode of performing it, that except for that purpoſe the muſketteers occupied the center, and the pikemen the flanks of the diviſions.

THE following regulations are given for marching paſt the king or any perſon to be ſaluted.

(m) IT may not, perhaps, be improper here to correct an error, into which many military writers have fallen; this is confounding a general diſcharge with a volley: the volley is a feu de joy, always fired with the ranks at half diſtance without bayonets, and with the muzzles elevated, whence it derives its appellation of volle, or flight, borrowed from a flight of rockets; a general diſcharge is always fired with fixed bayonets and well levell'd arms.

THE MUSKET & HALBERT EXERCISE Pl 6

THE HALBERT EXERCISE Pl 7.

If the battalion be to march in three diviſions, the captains are to be divided, one half at the head of the firſt diviſion of ſhot, and the other half in the rear of the laſt diviſion; one half of the lieutenants in the rear of the firſt diviſion of ſhot, and the other half at the head of the laſt diviſion of ſhot.

The colours are to march at the head of the pikes, which are to be advanced: the colonel, or lieutenant-colonel, or (in their abſence) the officer in chief, is to march two paces before the rank of captains, at the head of the firſt diviſion of ſhot; the captains and all the officers keeping at the ſame diſtance from the ſoldiers as they were poſted at, at the head of the battalion, when drawn up, and taking great care that they keep that diſtance exactly, and no more; viz. the captains four paces from the ſoldiers, and the lieutenants and enſigns two, or at leaſt at a proper diſtance to ſalute.

The officers that are to march in the rere of the diviſion are to fall after them as they march off, and not before, and the ſerjeants that were poſted in the rere are to take care of the pikes in their marching.

The drums are to be divided equally to the diviſions, and to march between the ſecond and third rank.

The grenadiers are to march about twenty yards before the battalion.

The equipage of the colonels and officers of the front, is to march a little on the left hand, between the grenadiers and the battalion; the ho-boys are to march at the middle diſtance between the commander in chief and the grenadiers.

Whenever a diviſion is commanded to march, they are to ſtep together at once, both front and rere, with their left feet, and to march ſlowly.

In marching, both colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and all officers, are to march with their pikes under hand comported, taking care not to droop the ſpear too much, nor to ſwing their hands in marching, but to keep them ſteady.

As ſoon as they come near the king or perſon whom they are to ſalute, they are to ſhoulder their pikes, and to take care to doe it to-

gether, that is, every rank of officers as they approach the king, to ſhoulder their pikes together, and to carry them level upon their ſhoulders, and when they come to ſalute, to be very exact in doing it together, that it may ſeem as if but one man ſaluted.

The firſt rank of captains are not to begin to ſalute till the colonel or commander in chief has done ſaluting, and the officers muſt take care above all things that they neither ſtand ſtill when they ſalute, nor mend their pace ſo as to get too far from the men, and to take care in the ſalute not to do the motions too quick (n).

The enſigns are to take care to bring their colours down altogether directly before them, without waving them to either hand, and to take them up altogether without ſtanding ſtill, or mending their pace.

As ſoon as the officers have ſaluted, they muſt pull off their hats, and keep them off till they are paſt by the perſon they ſalute, without bowing, and when they are paſt at a convenient diſtance, they are to bring their pikes again underhand.

The ſerjeants are to march with their halberts ſhouldered, the but ends upwards, and are always to march with their hats off when they paſs by the perſon that comes to view the battalion, whether the officers ſalute or no.

None is to ſalute the ſame perſon but once ſtanding, and once marching.

The major and aid-major have no fixed poſt for marching, but are always to attend the colonel, or officer in chief, to receive his orders.

No ſerjeant or corporal is at any time to carry or hold the colours in the abſence of the enſign, but onely a pikeman.

Besides the figures repreſenting the exerciſe of the pike and muſket, that of the halbert is likewiſe given, copied from the engravings of Hogarth, made for the artillery company.

Since theſe regulations, the national exerciſe has been frequently

---

(n) The motions of the ſalute, both ſtanding and marching, were the ſame as lately uſed.

THE STANDING SALUTE

STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES. Pl.2.

STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES Pl.3

changed by authority, three different ſyſtems having been practiſed within the ſpace of about forty years; among other improvements, the introduction of the quick ſtep in marching and manœuvring, is not the leaſt important; before that, every movement was performed with a ſlow, and almoſt funereal ſolemnity; till about the year 1750, the firelock was carried nearly in the poſition now termed ſloped, and held by the ſwell; the motions were all performed as ſlow as poſſible, wide, and in the poize, and divers other motions, at the full extent of the arm.

The exerciſe of the antient cavalry ſeems in a great meaſure to have reſembled that of modern times; the methods of diſmounting and linking their horſes practiſed by the archers on horſeback being very much like the mode now uſed by our dragoons; this may be gathered from the following ſketch extracted by father Daniel, from a manuſcript in the king of France's library, written about the year 1473, containing inſtructions for a corps of gens d'armes raiſed by Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, in imitation of thoſe of France; each lance, or man at arms, being attended by two archers, with a couſtillier and page.

My ſaid lord alſo ordains, that for the better accuſtoming the ſaid body to the uſe of arms, and that they may be better taught and inſtructed, when opportunity offers, the captains of the genſdarmes and chiefs of ſquadrons being in garriſon, or havinge time and leiſure to do it, ſhall take parties of their men at arms to exerciſe in the fields, armed ſometimes with their upper pieces only, that is to ſay, with head pieces or caſks, and cuiraſſes only, and at other times completely armed, and ſhall practice them in running at each other with the lance, keeping themſelves cloſe and compact, teaching them to charge briſkly, to keep to their enſigns, to leave them if ordered, and to rally, ſuccouring each other when commanded, and the manner of ſuſtaining a charge: to inſtruct the archers how to manage their horſes, to accuſtom them to diſmount and to ſhoot with their bows, cauſing them to learn the manner of linking their horſes together with their bridles, and making them march after them to the front, fixing the horſes of the archers by their bridles to the cornets of the hinder part of the ſaddle of the

page to the men at arms to whom they belong: moreover to march briſkly to the front, to ſhoot without breaking their ranks, and to make the piquenaires, or pikemen, march with a cloſe and even front before the ſaid archers, and on a ſignal, to kneel on one knee, keeping their pikes lowered to the height of a ſaddle bowe, in order that the archers may ſhoot over the ſaid pikemen, as over a wall; and that the ſaid pikemen ſeeing their enemies fall into diſorder, may be ready to ſally forth upon them, and alſo to ſet themſelves back to back upon a double defence, or in a ſquare or round order, the pikemen being always in cloſe order before the archers, to ſuſtain the charge of the enemy's horſe, encloſing within their centre the pages and horſes of the archers; and the ſaid conductors or captains may in the beginning introduce theſe operations, by ſmall companies, and as ſoon as one of them is accompliſhed, they ſhall teach another.

In the reign of King James I. the cavalry, according to Markham, was formed ſix deep; the horſes being ſet on their haunches were taught to run the circle in the lunge, to turn, paſſage, and rein back.

Only two ſorts of diſtance were then obſerved, in both ranks and files; namely, cloſe and open order; cloſe order in files was, cuiſſe to cuiſſe, or knee to knee; open order was ſix feet, in both files and ranks; cloſe order in ranks was cloſe to the croop, or in other words, the head of each horſe was cloſe to the tail of his file-leader, leaving no interval between.

The evolutions on horſeback were opening and cloſing the ranks and files to the right and left, and to both hands by diviſions.

Doubling the ranks and files to the right and left, and to both hands by diviſions; middle-men and bringers up doubling the front to the right, to the left, and to both by diviſions, turning to the right and right about, the left and left about by converſion, countermarching to the right and left, countermarching to both by converſion, wheeling to the right and left, and to both.

The manual exerciſe of the piſtol was alſo practiſed; the motions and words of command are exhibited in the plates engraved from thoſe of Captain Cruſe, publiſhed at Cambridge, A. D. 1632.

To Horse.

Uncap your Pistol

Draw your Pistol.

Order your Pistol.

EXERCISE OF THE HORSE Pl.I.

Span your Pistol

Prime your Pistol

Shut your Pan.

Cast about your Pistol.

EXERCISE OF THE HORSE Pl.2.

9

Gage your Flask.

Load your Pistol.

11

Draw your Rammer.

Load with Bullet & ram home.

13

Return your Rammer.

Pull down your Cock.

15

Recover your Pistol.

Present & give Fire

EXERCISE OF THE HORSE Pl:4.

Return your Pistol.

Bend your Cock.

Guard your Cock

Order your Hammer

Free your Cock

The Marching Postures

Of the Harquebusiers.

The cavalry occaſionally formed, what was called, the ſquare battle, the wedge, and the rhombe, with divers other figures then in faſhion.

Towards the latter end of the reign of King James II. the cavalry were armed with carabines which they fired on horſeback.

The horſe-grenadiers then acted like a company of grenadiers to a battalion, and were armed with muſkets and grenades, linked their horſes, diſmounted, fired, ſcrewed their daggers into the muzzles of their muſkets, charged, returned their daggers, fired, and threw their grenades by ranks, the center and rear ranks advancing in ſucceſſion through the intervals between their file-leaders; they then grounded their arms, went to the right about, diſperſed, and at the preparative or beating to arms, drew their ſwords, and ſtood by their arms, falling in with a huzza! they then returned their ſwords, ſhouldered and ſlung their muſkets, marched to their horſes, unlinked and mounted; after which, they fired their piſtols and muſkets on horſeback.

The exerciſe of the dragoon differed very little from that of the horſe-grenadier, except in that part relative to the grenade.

Very great alterations have of late taken place in the field exerciſe and manœuvres both of the cavalry and the infantry. Moſt of the dragoon regiments have been made light; and a new ſword exerciſe has been adopted for the cavalry. The whole ſyſtem of the army has been rendered uniform, by regulations iſſued from the adjutant-general's office. Within the laſt fifty years, the Britiſh infantry has been gradually falling into the Pruſſian ſyſtem; and the new regulations are almoſt wholly founded on the Pruſſian inſtitutions. The number of motions, which the ſoldier has to go through, in the exerciſe of the firelock, has been conſiderably diminiſhed; and the manœuvres or principal movements for a battalion are confined to eighteen in number. For the particulars, the reader is referred to the "Rules and regulations for the formations, field-exerciſe, and movements of his majeſty's forces."

CHAPTER XII.

Of Military Machines and Artillery.

THE projectile machines, or antient artillery, uſed by our anceſtors about the time of the Norman invaſion, were the ſcorpion, catapulta, baliſta, and onager of the Romans, with divers other ſpecies of the ſame machines, under a variety of different appellations.

THESE machines, their proportions and properties, are deſcribed in the works of Vitruvius, Ammianus Marcellinus, and other writers; but for want of illuſtrative delineations the deſcriptions are in general extremely obſcure, and in ſome parts unintelligible.

MANY mathematicians and engineers have at different times taken great pains to inveſtigate this ſubject; among them is Mr. Newton, an ingenious architect, who, meaning to favour the world with a new edition of Vitruvius, has been particularly attentive to the part which treats of theſe machines, and not only examined and compared the ſeveral authors who have written on that matter, but alſo, by models and experiments, has endeavoured to aſcertain the theory of the different conſtructions: the drawings and deſcriptions here given are the reſult of his labours, which he has generouſly permitted me to copy, and inſert in this work. I have been the more particular in the conſideration of this article, as the moving powers of moſt of the different machines ſo variouſly named, the ſcorpion excepted (o), depended on the ſame principles as thoſe of the baliſta, catapulta, and onager;

(o) THE ſcorpion was only a large croſs-bow; the baliſta was at firſt chiefly uſed for throwing ſtones, and the catapulta for lancing darts or arrows; but by degrees they were confounded, and indifferently appropriated to both.

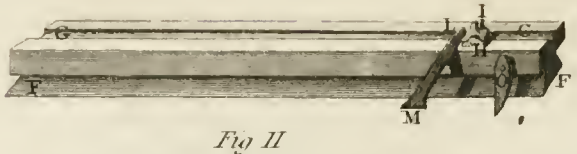


Fig II

Fig III

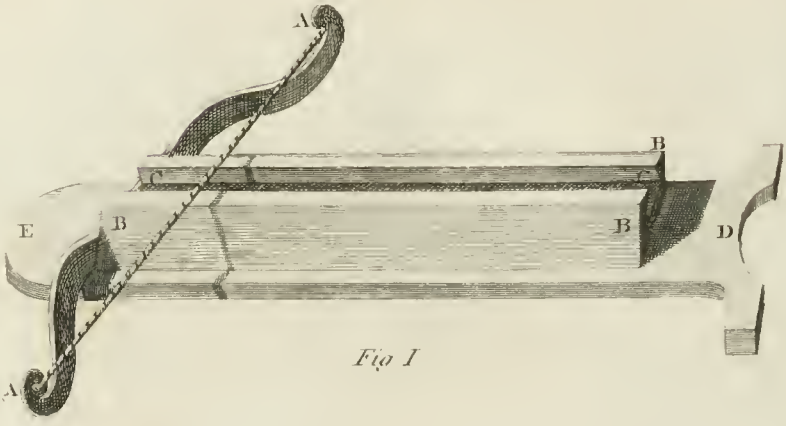


Fig I

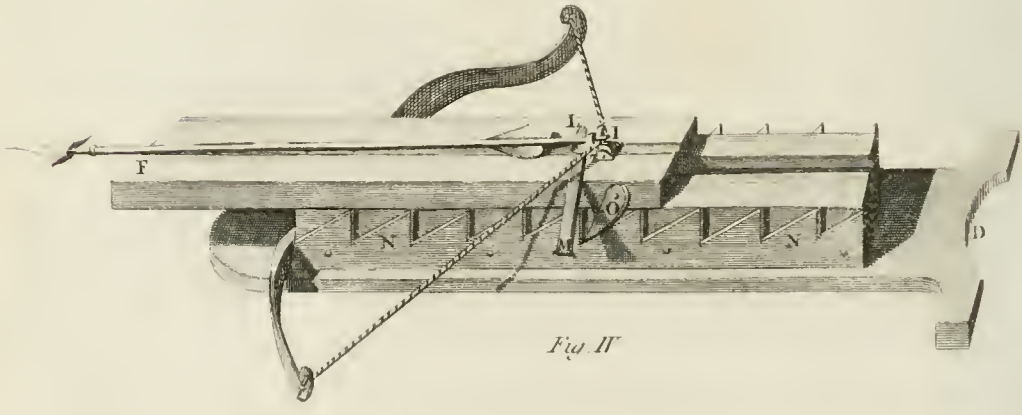


Fig II

Copyright reserved

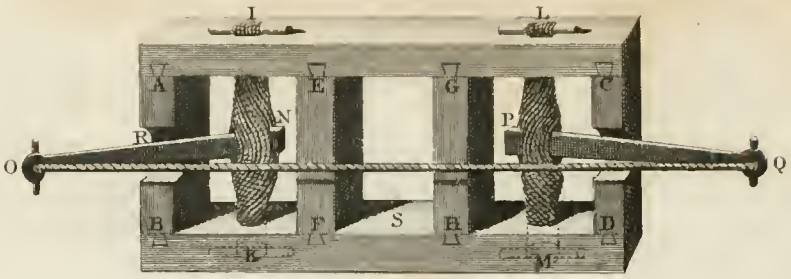


Fig I.

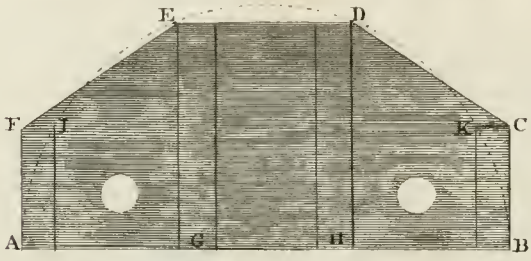


Fig. II.

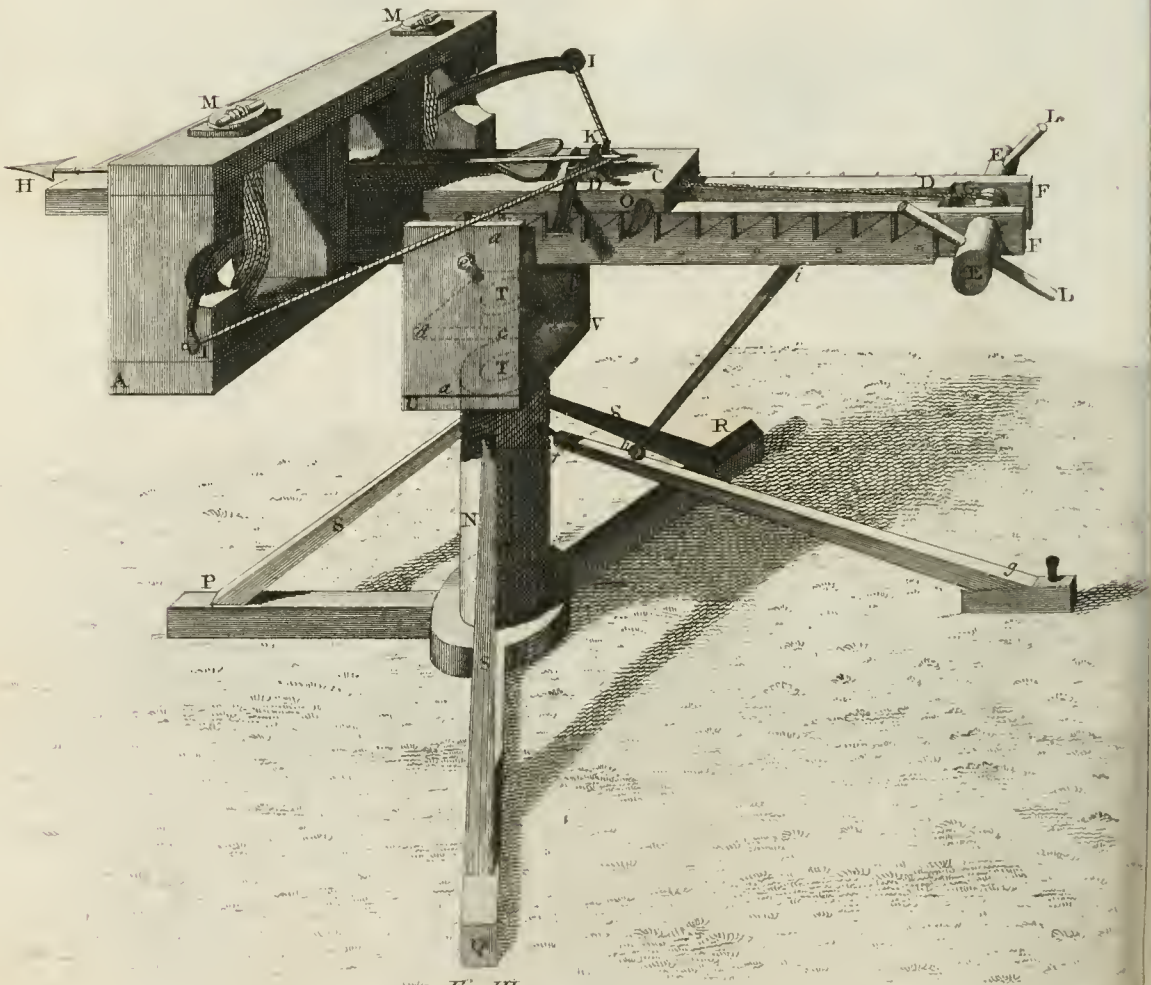


Fig. III.

N.C. Goodnight sculp.

ANCIENT ARTILLERY. Pl. 2.

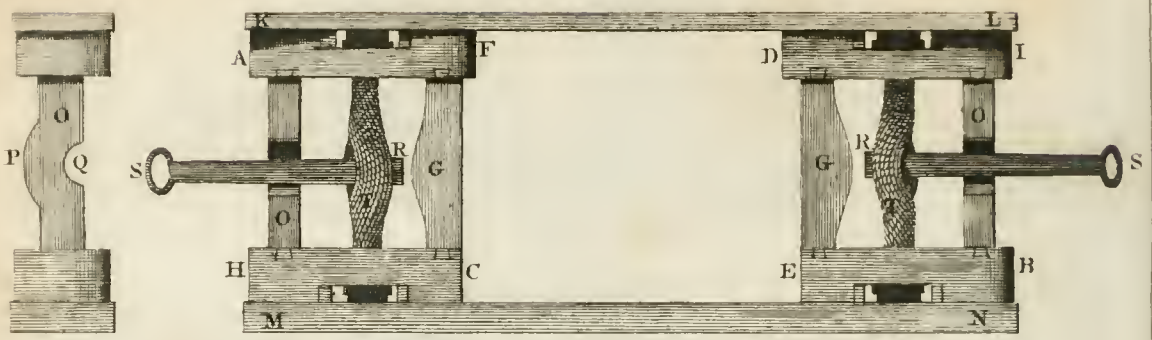


Fig. 1.

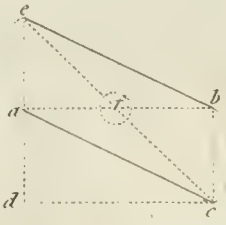
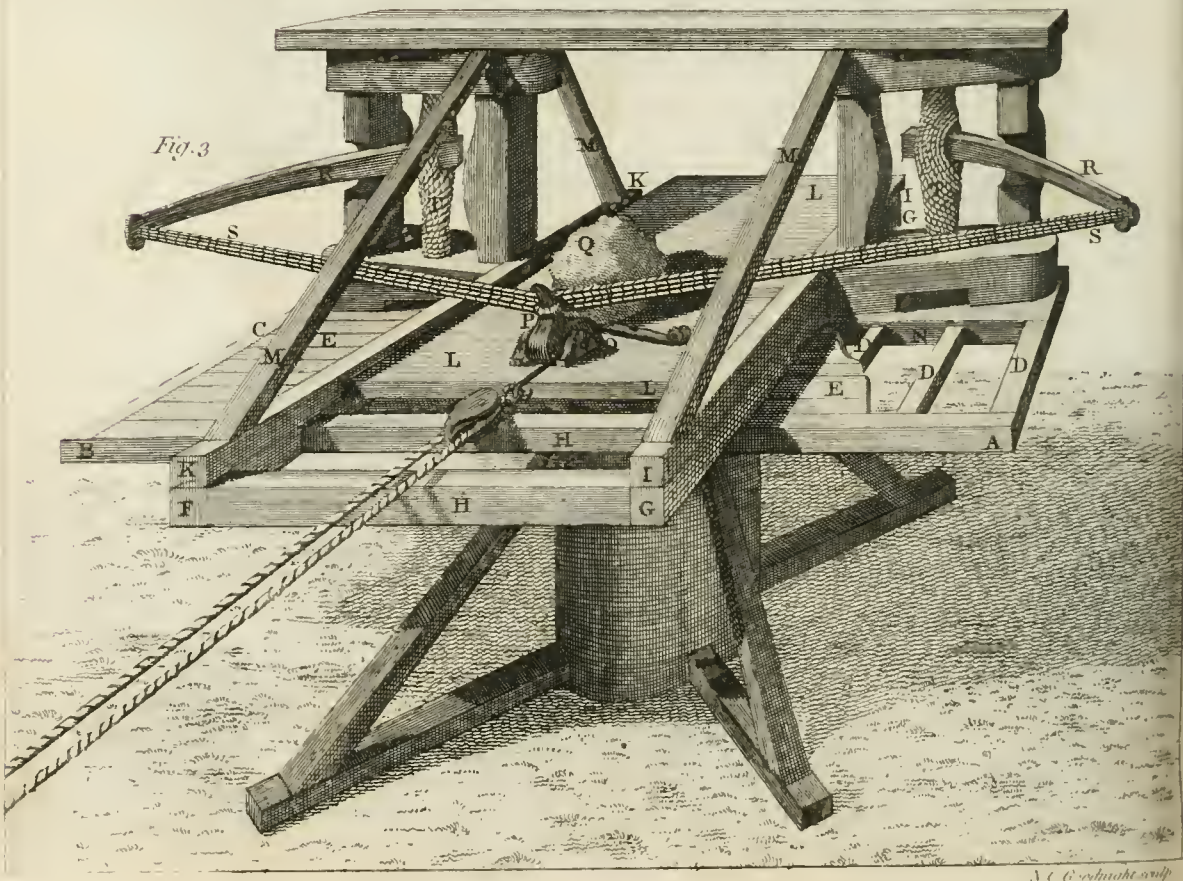


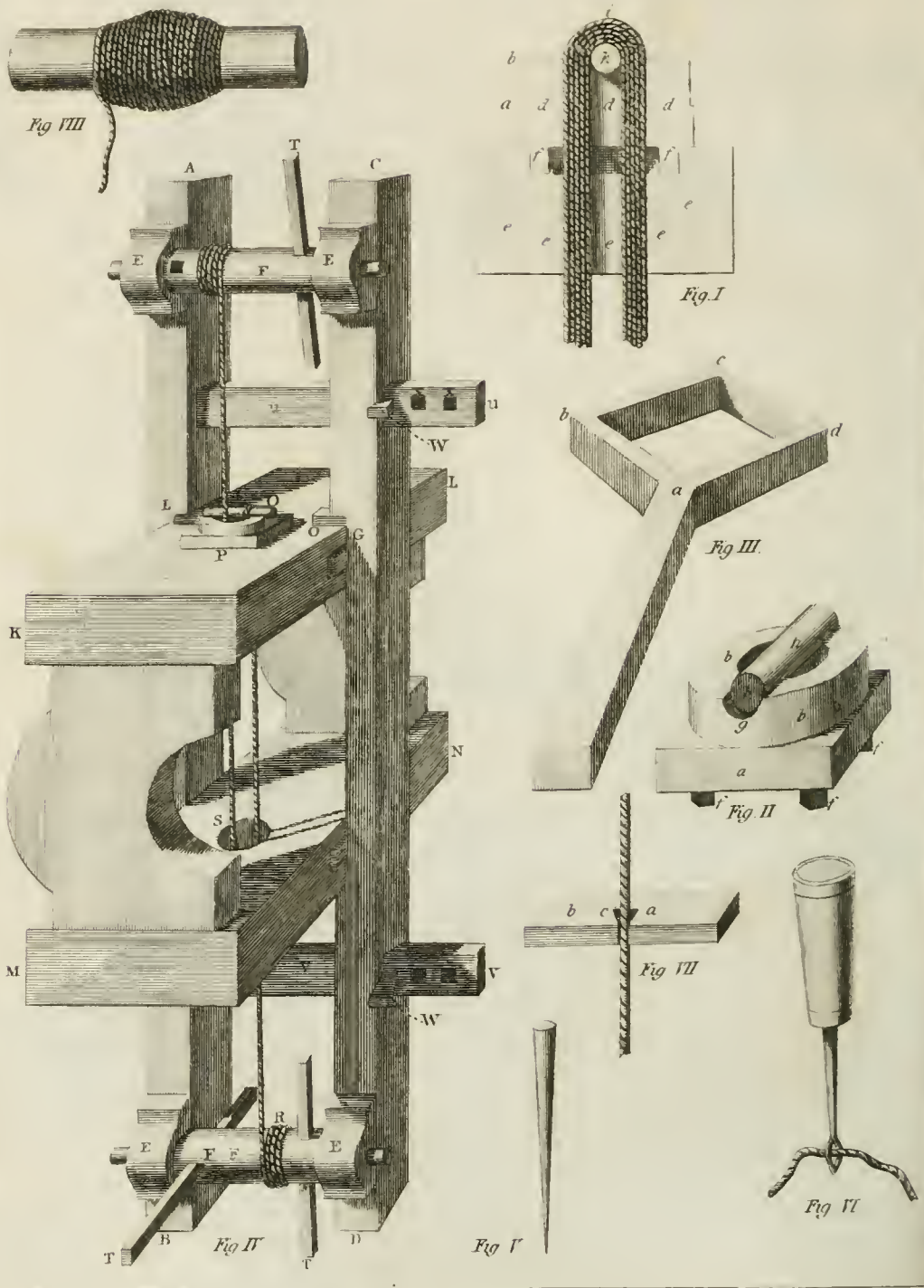
Fig 2

Fig. 3



J. C. Golmake sculp

ANCIENT ARTILLERY. Pl. 3.



ANCIENT ARTILLERY. Pl.IV

namely, the elaſticity of twiſted cords formed of the bowels of animals, ſinews, human hair, flax, and hemp.

The ſcorpion was the ſmalleſt machine of its kind, and of the leaſt effect; it was ſo called, becauſe its form was thought to have ſome reſemblance to that of the inſect ſo named; it conſiſted of a bow AA., fig. 1., made of ſteel, or of ſome elaſtic wood, having a cord made of the bowels of animals, ſtretched from one end to the other, and fixed through holes made for that purpoſe at its extremities; in the middle was placed the *regula* BB., which had in its upper ſurface a channel cut in the ſhape of a ſwallow's tail, the lower part being the broadeſt; this *regula* was called the *ſyrinx*; it was made of wood, and of ſuch ſize as was thought ſuitable; it was fixed on a board DE., ſomewhat exceeding it in length and breadth, called *catagogis*; upon the ſyrinx was placed another regula, fig. 2., equal to it in length and breadth, having a *maſculus* FF. ſwallow-tailed, fitting exactly for form and ſize to the ſwallow-tailed channel or groove, cut on the *ſyrinx*, and which was joined to it in its lower part; this laſt regula was called the *dioſtra*, and being placed on the *ſyrinx* with its *maſculus* F. inſerted into the ſwallow-tail'd groove C., it might be made to ſlide backward and forward without riſk of ſeparation.

In the upper ſurface of this *dioſtra* there was a ſemi-circular channel G. of its whole length, called *epitoxis*, in which the arrow was placed; and at the end of the ſaid *epitoxis*, which was fartheſt from the bow, there were two perpendicular plates of iron HH., fig. 3., called *catochas*, fixed on the dioſtra, at a ſmall diſtance one from the other; between them was placed a hook, or hand of iron, I., called *chira*, and *manucla*; one of theſe extremities was bent back like a hook, and was ſlit, ſo as to be able to receive the thickneſs of the arrow between its two parts; its other extremity L. terminated in a point; afterwards, croſs the ſides of the *catochas*, and of the chira, was placed an iron axis K., ſo that the chira could turn vertically about; under the pointed extremity L., of the *chira*, was the end of a thin bar of iron LM., which was fixed upon the upper ſurface of the *dioſtra*, to the left of the *epitoxis*, by an axis of iron, on which it turned

horizontally ; this bar was called the *ſbaſteria*, and whilſt its extremity L. reſted under the end of the *chira*, it hindered the latter from turning on its axis ; but when it was diſplaced by pulling forward the other extremity M., it permitted the hooked end I. of the *chira* to turn over and to put itſelf in the place of the pointed end L., which conſequently turned under, and put itſelf in the place of the hooked end, there being an opening cut in the *dioſtra*, purpoſely to let it paſs.

The points AA. of the bow were bent upwards, ſo that the ſtring or cord could paſs freely over the upper ſurface of the *dioſtra*, although the middle of the bow was lower than the *maſculus* F., which was under the *dioſtra* ; the *catagogis* was rounded off at its extremity E. near the bow, and was hollowed out at its other extremity D., the archer leant his body againſt the hollow, and then puſhed the *dioſtra* forward, until the *chira* I., fig. 4., came to the cord of the bow, which he then put upon the hooks of the *chira*, and to prevent it from turning, and conſequently letting go the cord, he put the *ſbaſteria* under its extremity, which ended in a point L., he then puſhed with all his force the end F. of the *dioſtra* againſt ſome wall, or againſt the earth, keeping his body in the cavity D. of the *catagogis* ; in this manner he drew to him by force the *dioſtra* and the *chira* ; the chira having ſeized the ſtring or cord of the bow, this laſt was in like manner drawn forwards towards his body, and the bow thereby bent: the following mechaniſm was made uſe of to hinder the bow from drawing the *dioſtra* backwards : there was a rule with teeth, N., fixed on both ſides the *ſyrinx* their whole length, and a hook of iron, O., called *cataclida*, which turned vertically, on an iron axis, on both ſides of the *dioſtra* ; when the dioſtra was puſhed forwards, the *cataclida* fell ſucceſſively between the teeth of the rule, which hindered the *dioſtra* from going backwards.

When the bow was bent as much as was thought neceſſary, and retained in that ſtate by the *cataclidas*, the archer placed the arrow in the *epitoxis*, inſerting its extremity where it is feathered between the parts of the *chira*, quite to the ſtring of the bow, which entered into a cut made purpoſely at that end of the arrow; he then raiſed the

machine and took his aim by looking along the arrow, and taking the end M. of the *ſhaſteria*, drew it towards him, and conſequently drew the other end of the *ſhaſteria* from under the *chira*, which by the tenſion of the ſtring of the bow, inſtantly turned on its axis, thereby diſengaging the ſtring; the arrow was diſcharged with a great force: this machine was called *gaſtraphcten*, becauſe the bow was bent by the action of puſhing with the belly.

The catapulta was a machine which ſerved for the ſame uſe, but which acted with a greater force; to encreaſe its force in a great degree without much augmenting its magnitude, which would have rendered the machine too heavy and difficult to make uſe of, it was neceſſary to make ſome alteration in its conſtruction, and above all in that part which was the firſt cauſe of its force; that is to ſay, in the bowe; but in encreaſing the force of the bow or the arms, it was alſo neceſſary to augment the force which acted on the bow or arms; inſtead of producing that effect by joining the force of many men, it was more conveniently and efficaciouſly done by the application of ſome mechanic power, which occaſioned ſome other difference in the machine; theſe differences conſiſted in that which follows:

Instead of a bow, as in the ſcorpion, the catapulta had a rectangular frame of wood, ABCD, pl. 2, fig. 1, conſiſting of four uprights, placed at a convenient diſtance, and two horizontal traverſes; one AC above, and the other BD beneath the four uprights, with which they were ſtrongly joined by tenons and plates of iron; the horizontal traverſes were called *ſcutulæ* by the Romans, and *peritretæ* by the Greeks, becauſe they had perforations on all ſides.

The two outſide uprights, AB and CD, were called paraſtæ, and the two others on the inſide, EF and GH, meſoſtæ.

Vitruvius gives to all the frames the name of *capitule*, and Hero of *plinthe:* the holes IKLM were pierced perpendicularly through the two peritretæ; in the middle between the *paraſta* and the *meſoſta*, on the right and left ſides of the *capitule*, oppoſite to the holes of the *peritrete*, were placed two ſtrong bars of iron, IL, and two others, KM.

were applied in the ſame manner, oppoſite in the holes under the lower peritreta; theſe bars of iron were called *epizygis*.

They then tied to the upper epizygis, I, one of the ends of a cord made of the bowels of an animal; the other end was paſſed through the holes of the two *peritretæ* to the lower epizygis, K, it was ſtretched round it, and paſſed again through the ſame holes to the upper epizygis, I, about which it was ſtretched, and again in like manner to the lower *epizygis*; the ſame operation was repeated till the holes were filled, and that the cord could no longer paſs there; they afterwards inſerted in the middle, N, of this aſſemblage of cords, the end, N, of an arm of ſteel, or elaſtic wood; the other end, O, projected out beyond the face of the *paraſta*, AB, near it; the two epizyges, I and K, were afterwards turned, ſo that the cords were extremely twiſted; by this means they kept the arm, NO, quite firmly, and cauſed it to preſs backwards with force againſt the face of the paraſta, AB, where a ſemi-circular cavity was cut purpoſely to receive it; the ſame manœuvre was repeated exactly at the other extremity of the capitule with the epizyges L and M, at the arm PQ, and the two arms being thus retained by the aſſemblages of twiſted cords, made of bowels, will acquire a great degree of elaſtic force, and produced exactly the ſame effect as the bow of the ſcorpion before deſcribed: the cord, OQ, made of the ſtrongeſt ſinews of animals, was paſſed through the extremities of the arms, and fixed; it was of ſuch a length, as to retain the arms at a ſmall diſtance from the *paraſtæ*, ſo that in the diſcharge they ſhould not ſtrike againſt and endanger them; theſe arms were called *brachiæ*, and likewiſe *ancones*: the aſſemblage or column, IK, of twiſted cords, which retained the arms, was called *tonus*, and the frame, ABEF, about it, was called *hemitonus*, and ſometimes *unitotonus*; the interval, FH, which was between the two *hemitones*, was left for the *ſyrinx*, and the *dioſtra*; the end of the ſyrinx being ſtrongly fixed upon the upper ſurface S, of the *ſcutula*, or lower *peritreta*.

Hero gives a deſcription of another capitule, differing, though not eſſentially, from this: the *ſcutula* having the form of a demi-octagon,

ABCDEF, fig. 2, ſo that it was broader in the middle than at its extremities; and the two *meſoſtæ*, GEHD, were conſequently broader than the two *paraſtæ*, AFBC, their breadth being determined by the interſection of the interior ſides of the *paraſtæ*, IK, and of the exterior ſides, ED, of the *meſoſtæ*, with the ſemi-circle, AIEDKB, as may be ſeen by the figure.

When the capitule AM, fig. 3, was finiſhed, there was fixed to it (as has been before ſaid) one of the ends, B, of the *ſyrinx*, which has alſo the dioſtra, CH, the *chira* and *ſhaſteria*, D, and *cataclida*, O, were ſimilar in all things to thoſe which are deſcribed in ſpeaking of the ſcorpion; but it had no *catagogis*; inſtead of which it had a *ſucula*, or axis, E, placed at the other end of the *ſyrinx*, its ſides, F, projecting properly to receive it.

In the middle of this *ſucula*, or axis, between the two ſides of the *ſyrinx*, was fixed a cord, GC, which extended from thence to the end C, of the *dioſtra*, where it was faſtened to a hook; when the machine was prepared, as was ſaid, ſpeaking of the ſcorpion, that is to ſay, when the dioſtra was puſhed forwards until the chira reached the ſtring of the bow, IKI, and was hooked to it, the *dioſtra* was drawn backward by means of the ſucula, which was turned by two men, with the aſſiſtance of the levers L, which paſſed through its two extremities; by this means the arms, II, were drawn and bent, and when they were bent ſufficiently, the arrow, KH, was placed in the epitoxis, and diſcharged in the manner before deſcribed.

The large machines of this ſpecies, whoſe forces were very conſiderable, were worked by different combinations of pullies, or pullies combined with the *ſuculæ*, inſtead of ſimple *ſuculas*; and inſtead of ſimple bars of iron, or *epizyges*, which ſuſtained the *tonus*, the machines, M, called by Vitruvius *modiols*, and by Hero *choenices*, were uſed; they ſhall be explained in the deſcription of the baliſta.

But as this machine of war was infinitely too large and too weighty to be managed by hand, and as it was required to turn and elevate it in different directions, it became neceſſary to ſupport it upon a baſe

which ſhould procure it thoſe different movements; that baſe was thus conſtructed:

A PILLAR, M, or *columella* (as Vitruvius calls it), in height two feet and a quarter, was fixed upright upon a foot with three branches, PQR, and ſuſtained by three props, SSS, placed thereon; on the top of the *columella* there was a cylindric tenon, T, upon which the *chalcheſium*, UV, turned, which was thus made: upon a horizontal and rectangular plane, UV, two perpendicular and rectangular ſides, U*a* and V*b*, were fixed on the right and left, and between theſe was fixed another ſimilar horizontal plane, *b*, *c*, *d*, a little above the firſt.

IN the middle of theſe two horizontal planes were holes capable of receiving the tenon, T, of the *columella*; the two perpendicular ſides were at ſuch a diſtance one from the other, that they could receive between them the breadth of the ſyrinx, which being placed there, an iron axis, E, was paſſed horizontally croſs the two ſides of the chalcheſium and of the ſyrinx, binding them altogether, and permitting the ſyrinx to revolve vertically about that axis, in ſuch a manner, that the whole catapulta could be inclined in all poſſible poſitions, and by means of the chalcheſium which turned upon the tenon of the columella, it might be moved horizontally on all ſides, and in this manner it might be pointed towards any object whatſoever.

To keep it fixed and immoveable in the direction deſired, it was thus managed; one end *f*, of a piece of wood, *f*, *g*, was joined to the top of the *columella* by a hinge or joint, which permitted it to turn vertically, ſo that the other end, which reſted on the earth, might be placed in different ſituations; this piece was called *anteridium*; near its upper extremity, the *anapauſeria*, *h*, *i*, was joined to it by a joint, which permitted it to turn vertically. When the *ſyrinx* was placed in the propoſed direction, the lower end *g*, of the *anteridium*, was moved and fixed it on the earth, ſo that the *anapauſteria* reſted perpendicularly under the ſyrinx; the end *i*, of the *anapauſteria*, was then raiſed and fixed under the ſyrinx in the holes purpoſely made: by this means the *ſyrinx* was rendered immoveable in its poſition, and then the archer

diſcharged the arrow in the ſame manner as is ſaid in the deſcription of the Scorpion; Catapultas were made of different ſizes, but there were only two generally in uſe: the ſmalleſt was called *triſpithamal*, becauſe it threw arrows of three ſpans long; the largeſt was called *tricubital*, becauſe it ſhot arrows of three cubits, or ſix ſpans long.

Vitruvius gives here the proportions of their different parts, but they are ſo altered and corrupted by the copyiſts, that they are not to be relied on. Hero ſays, that they can only be fixed after the experience of ſeveral trials. Philo makes mention of ſeveral of their proportions, and differs much from Vitruvius; they however all agree in this, that the proportions are regulated by the ſize of the holes in the *ſcutula*, and that the diameters of theſe holes were always made equal to the ninth part of the length of the arrow that the catapulta was made to throw.

The capitule, pl. 3, AB, fig. 1, of the baliſta, was ſimilar to that of the catapulta, except that the two hemitones, AE and BD, were placed at a greater diſtance one from the other, leaving a larger interval, CE, between the two meſoſtæ, G, G, which in the baliſta were called *antiſtæ*.

As this machine was deſigned for throwing large ſtones, it was neceſſary to have this large interval, which, according to Hero, ought to be a little leſs than double the length of the arm, RS; there was beſides another difference, namely, that the *ſcutulæ* or *peritretæ* AF and DI (which in the catapulta extended in piece over the two hemitones), were ſeparated in the baliſta, and extended only over one hemitone, AF.

The lower peritretæ, HC and EB, were alſo ſeparated in the ſame manner, ſo that the two hemitones were not united by their peritretæ, but by two other pieces of wood, KL and MN, one of which, KL, extended over the two upper *peritretæ*, and the other, MN, under the two bottom *peritretæ*, being faſtened to the ſame by tenons. The paraſtæ, O, were made like thoſe of the catapulta, but had on their back part a curvelinear projection, P, oppoſed to the circular cavity, Q, in which was the arm, in order to ſtrengthen it: The *antiſtæ*, G, had alſo a curved

projection, R, called *hypopterna*, on the ſide next the arm, R, S, againſt which the root, R, of the arm called *pterna* reſted. The grain of the wood in the *paraſtæ* and *antiſtæ* was perpendicular; they had both tenons placed at their upper and under extremities, which entered into the peritretæ, and there joined them ſtrongly, and all the angles and the joints of the capitule were ſtrengthened with plates of iron; the peritretæ in this machine had the figure of a rhombe, in order to permit the arms to diverge ſo much the more: Hero thus deſcribes them:—"In a rectangular parallelogram *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, fig. 2, whoſe breadth is one half its length, a diagonal line being drawn *a*, *c*; parallel to the ſame draw *b*, *e*, and *d*, *a*, continued to *e*: then will *a*, *e*, *b*, *c*, ſhew the figure of the *peritretæ*: the extremities *ae*, and *bc*, are enlarged in giving them a curved figure to ſtrengthen them. Drawing afterwards *c*, *e*, the interſection *f*, of that line, with the line *ab*, ſhews the middle of the peritretæ where the whole of the tonus is bored."

Philo gives another rule for determining the obliquity of the rhomboidal figure of the *peritreta*; "divide," ſays he, "a ſemicircle in eleven parts, and draw a line from the fourth diviſion to the center, that line will ſhow the obliquity ſought." Vitruvius differs from theſe two authors; he ſays that the oblique form ought to be a ſixth part of the length and a fourth of the breadth.

The capitule of the baliſta being finiſhed, the other parts were added, which anſwered to the ſyrinx, dioſtra, &c. of the catapulta, as hereafter.

To the piece of wood, MN, fig. 1, under the lower *peritreta*, was joined the horizontal frame of wood, NABC, fig. 3; it conſiſted of divers pieces of wood, DDD, placed at equal diſtances croſs-ways at the whole length of the capitule, they projected forwards, and were bound at their ſalient extremity by a piece of tranſverſe wood, AB; this frame was called *menſa*, the Greeks called it *trapeza*; over it was a covering of boards, EE, called *tabula*, of which the upper ſurface was on a level with the bottoms of the lower peritretæ: on the *tabula* was placed the *climax*, or, as Vitruvius calls it, the *climaciclos*, FGG, which was an horizontal frame of wood reſembling a ladder, from

whence it derived its name; it was compoſed of two long pieces, GG and FF, joined together by many tranſverſe pieces, HH, placed among themſelves at ſuitable diſtances.

The breadth FG, of the *climax*, according to Hero, was equal to the interval between the antiſtæ, and its length was of nineteen holes according to Philo, although it was but thirteen according to Vitruvius.

The climax anſwered to the ſyrinx of the catapulta; it was placed on the tabula, ſo that it projected from it on every ſide; upon two long parallel pieces were placed two others, called *alæ*, II, and KK, equal in breadth and length; between the ſaid *alæ*, and over the tranſverſe pieces, HH, of the climax, was placed the dioſtra, LLL, which was of the ſame length as the climax; the climax was ſtrongly faſtened to the menſa, and ſtrengthened by the antérides, or ſtays, MM, extending from the extremities of the alæ to the upper peritretas.

The chira (or manucla), ſhaſteria, &c. OP, were fixed on the dioſtra, in the ſame manner as in the catapulta, but here the crooked extremity, P, of the chira was not ſplit into a fork, but was made like a finger, and was raiſed high enough above the dioſtra, that the cord of the bow when diſengaged might ſeize the ſtone to be thrown, Q, towards the middle of its height, in order that it might act on it with more certainty and ſtrength; with the ſame intention the arms, RR, were diſpoſed in that manner, that the cord of the bow in going backwards might be moved at that height above the dioſtra; moreover, the cord of the bow, SS, was made broad like a girdle, and not round as in the catapulta, and had a loop, P, in the middle, which hooked upon the finger of the chira.

These machines were made with very ſtrong and hard wood, and as light as could accord with theſe two qualities, in order that they might the more eaſily be tranſported from one place to another; for the ſame reaſon, the different pieces of which theſe machines were compoſed, might be ſeparated one from the other, except the hemitones, which were always entire, on account of the difficulty and time

neceſſary for preparing the tonus; the manner of doing it is deſcribed in a chapter following.

In baliſtas and large catapultas, they made uſe of machines, that Hero calls, choenices, and Vitruvius modiols, pl. 4, fig. 1, 2, inſtead of ſimple bars of iron, or epizyges, before mentioned; if they were ſmall, they were made of braſs, but if they were great, of ſome hard wood: the upper part, *a*, *a*, was ſquare, and was placed on the peritreta, *c*, *c*, above the hole of the tonus; the upper part was circular. In the middle of the circle was pierced a hole *d*, through the *choenicis*, equal in diameter to the hole *e*, in the peritreta; joined to the inferior ſurface of the ſquare part were four tenons or teeth, called *antitormi*, *f*, *f*, which entered into a circular excavation, cut in the ſurface of the peritreta, in order to hold the *choenicis* firmly in its place: and in the ſaid excavation under the teeth was a plate of iron, to prevent them from penetrating into the wood; upon the upper ſurface of the *choenicis* was cut a groove *g*, paſſing exactly through the diameter, and in that groove was placed the *epizygis*, *h h*; one of theſe *choenicis* was put in every hole of the *peritreta* through which the *tonus* was ſtretched, the teeth entered into the upper ſurface of the upper *peritreta*, and the lower ſurface of the lower *peritreta*; then was put about the *epizygis* (as has before been deſcribed) the cords, *i i*, which form the *tonus*. That being done, the cords were twiſted by turning the choenicis with a key of iron, fig. 3, having a ſquare collet, *a b c d*, exactly fitting the ſquare part of the *choenicis*. When the *choenicis* was made of wood, the grain ought to be diſpoſed perpendicularly, but the *epizygis* was made of the ſtrongeſt iron, as having all the effort of the tonus to ſuſtain.

The proportions of the parts of a baliſta are mentioned by Vitruvius. I refer the reader to him, with the advice before given in the explication of the catapulta; ſome information might be there obtained; but as Hero remarks, it is only after experience and trials that they ought to be fixed.

The baliſta was mounted on a baſe; Vitruvius and Hero both

mention it, without deſcribing it; Vitruvius gives to many of its parts the ſame names which he made uſe of in ſpeaking of the baſe of the catapulta; nevertheleſs that baſe could not be exactly like that of the catapulta, for the different figure of that machine, and the different manner of making it act, will not permit it.

For the baliſta was not made to act by means of the *ſucula*, or any other power joined to it, as was the caſe in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverſe conſtructions were uſed, differing among themſelves according as the force of the machine or other circumſtances required. Vitruvius remarks, that ſome were put in action with the *ſucula* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper diſtances and convenient ſituations.

The diameter of the hole of the *tonus*, pierced in the *peritreta*, was proportional to the weight of the ſtone to be thrown by the baliſta; when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practiſed in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the ſizes of the holes correſponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

The following method was obſerved in preparing the *tonus*, that is to ſay, the combination of twiſted cords, from the elaſticity of which was derived the force of theſe military machines.

For this purpoſe the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made uſe of, it was called *entonium*. It conſiſted of two parallel poſts, AB and CD, ſo joined by the two traverſes, UU and VV, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity either the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, KLMN, of the baliſta to which it was applied. The extremities of theſe two traverſes paſſed through the poſts, and had holes, X, in which, when the hemitone was inſerted in the frame, wedges, W, were driven in, and by theſe means the hemitone was held firmly fixed in the frame; there was alſo cut a notch, GH, at the inner ſide of each poſt, to receive the hemitone, which was fixed in it with wedges, OO, ſo that it could not move; at each extremity of the two poſts there was an axis, FF, the ends of which

turned in the cheeks E, which were fixed to the poſts. The ſaid capitule, or hemitone, KLMN, being thus placed between the poſts with the two *peritretæ* towards the two axles, and the choenices or modiols, P, being placed in the holes, as has before been deſcribed; there was tied to one of the epizyges one of the ends Q, of a cord, and the other end, R, was paſſed through the holes of the two choenices at the fartheſt roller, FF, to which it was fixed; the end of another cord, S, was, in like manner, faſtened to the other epizygis, and it was paſſed in the ſame manner through the two choenices to the other roller, by means of levers, T, which ſtretched the two cords, R and S, until (as Vitruvius ſays) in ſounding them both, they ſounded in uniſon. Wedges were then driven in the choenices, to hinder the parts of the cords which were between the choenices from ſliding, and to keep them in the ſame degree of tenſion.

After that, the parts of the cords which were about the rollers were looſened, and they were put about the *epizygis* by paſſing them through the two choenices, in the ſame manner as before, and they were faſtened to their oppoſite rollers, by means of which the cords were ſtretched till they had the ſame degree of tenſion as thoſe preceding; this proceſs was repeated till the holes of the choenices were entirely filled by the cords, ſo as to have no room for more.

When the holes of the choenices were nearly full, and it became difficult to paſs the cords through them, an iron point, called ceſtra, fig. 5, was forced in, which being well poliſhed and dipt in oil in order to open a paſſage, afterwards a cord was paſſed by means of a poliſhed iron needle, called *ramphis*, fig. 6, which had a hole near its point through which was paſſed the end of the cord. At the other extremity there was a head upon which ſtrokes of a hammer were given, in order to force a paſſage for the needle.

This operation being finiſhed, a ſmall portion of the cord was tied about the tonus, and the remainder cut off. After this the tonus was twiſted, by turning the choenices with the key, fig. 3, as before explained. It was then finiſhed.

To fix the cord in the hole of the choenices, to hinder it from ſliding

and loſing its tenſion, the periſtomis, fig. 7, was uſed; it was a piece of wood of the length of two or three palms, having a groove, *a*, in its ſide, big enough to receive the cord. The *periſtomis* was placed over the choenicis, and the cord was placed in the groove, where it was fixed by the wedge *b*. The cord was ordinarily prepared beforehand, and fitted for the purpoſe, it was rolled about a wooden roller called *epiſtomis*, fig. 8.

Perault obſerves, among his remarks, that it is difficult to comprehend how cords made of hair, which were eight inches thick, could give a ſound diſtinguiſhable by the ear. This remark ariſes from a falſe idea, which he had formed of theſe machines. He imagined that Vitruvius ſaid it was the entire tonus, or the aſſemblage of twiſted cords, which yielded the ſound; inſtead of which it is every ſeparate cord, the aſſemblage of which makes the *tonus:* what has been ſaid before explains it ſufficiently.

What was ſought in this operation was, that every cord of the *tonus* ſhould have the ſame degree of tenſion, and that the two *tonus* of the capitule ſhould be equal in force: for had one been ſtronger than the other, the arm it held would have had a ſtronger recoil than the other, and it would have acted on the miſſile, or thing to be thrown, ſooner than the other, by means of which the miſſile would have been impelled by the force of one arm only, and would alſo have been projected with an oblique direction.

The cords which formed the *tonus* were commonly made with the ſinews or tendons of animals; thoſe of the legs of the deer kind, and of the neck of a bull, were particularly recommended; but they oftenеſt preferred cords made with women's hair, and conſidered them as the ſtrongeſt.

When from long uſe the elaſticity of the *tonus* was diminiſhed, it was re-eſtabliſhed to a certain degree by turning the choenices with the key, in the ſame manner as was done in forming it at firſt.

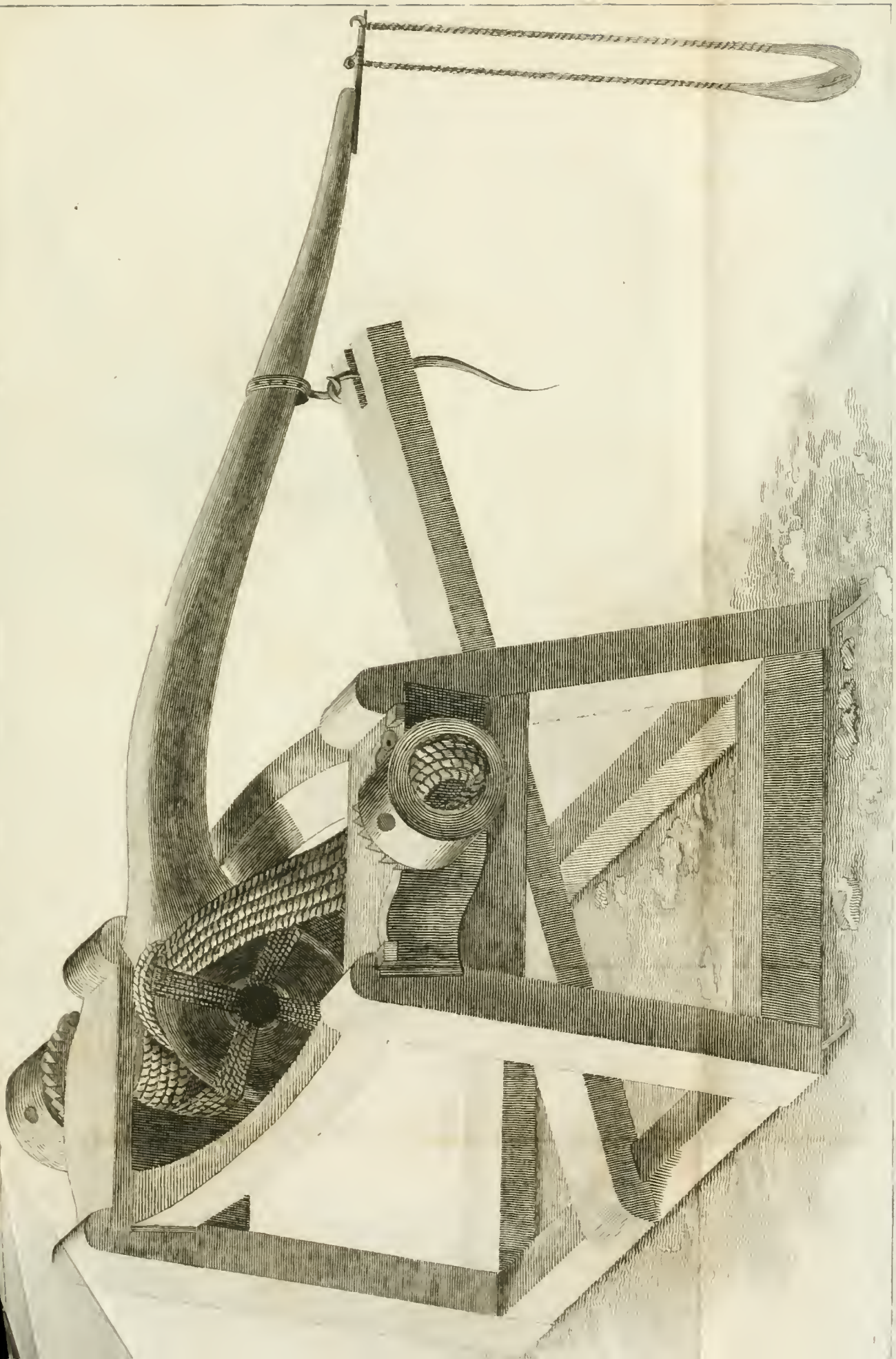
The antients had baliſtas and catapultas, which were of conſtructions different from thoſe we have been deſcribing. Bito has given a deſcription of two of theſe machines, and ſays, that it was often ne-

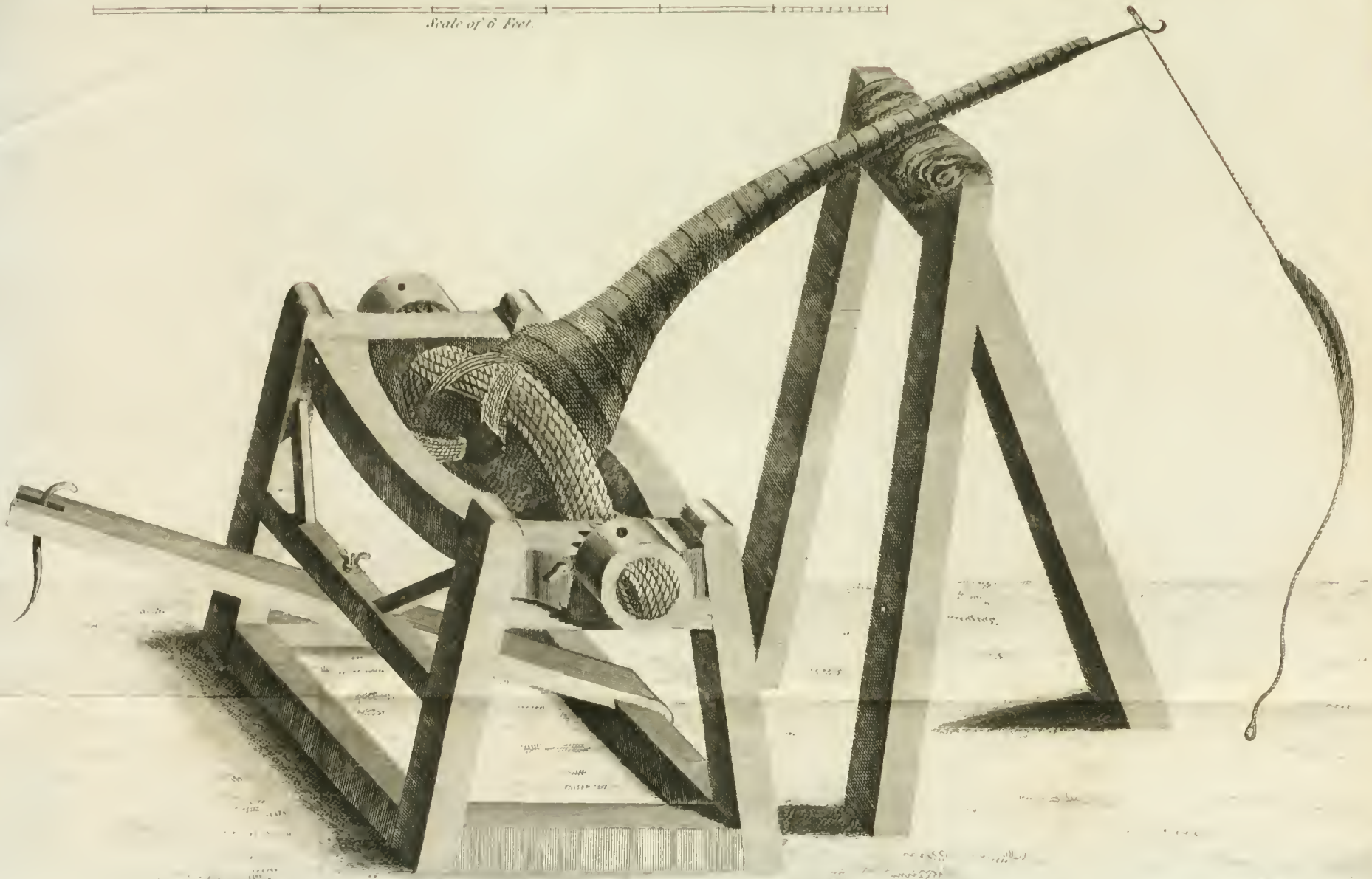
ceſſary to diverſify their form, according to place, different cuſtoms, and other circumſtances. Philo alſo makes mention of ſeveral alterations and corrections he had made in the conſtruction which was moſt commonly followed.

The catapulta that Lipſius found in the arſenal of Bruſſels, although it much reſembled the ſpecies above deſcribed, nevertheleſs differed in ſome particulars, and had ſome of the corrections which Philo mentions. The deſcriptions found in Vegetius and Marcellinus, who lived ſome years after Vitruvius, prove that during that interval of time, the forms as well as the names of thoſe military machines had undergone many changes. Theſe authors call the machine which lanced arrows and darts *baliſta*, and thoſe which threw ſtones *onager*, after the animal of that name, of whom it is reported, that he throws ſtones with his feet at the hunters when purſuing him. Marcellinus alſo ſays, that the ſame machine was called a ſcorpion, becauſe, like the inſect of that name, it had its ſting always raiſed.

The power of theſe machines, according to what the antients relate, muſt have been very great: Athenæus ſpeaks of a catapulta, which was only one foot long, and threw an arrow to the diſtance of half a mile. It is ſaid, that others could throw javelins from one ſide of the Danube to the other. Baliſtas threw great beams of wood, lances of twelve cubits in length, and ſtones that weighed 360 pounds. Polybius makes mention of ſtones which were thrown by baliſtas to hinder veſſels from entering into the port. Joſephus has likewiſe related ſeveral examples of the power of theſe machines; he ſays, they beat down the battlements and corners of towers, and overthrew whole files of ſoldiers even to the rear rank; in fine, many other antients have likewiſe ſpoken of their prodigious effects: I refer the reader to thoſe authors for a more extenſive knowledge of them; my deſign here being only to deſcribe the form and conſtruction of theſe antient machines of war.

Thus far Mr. Newton. Lieutenant General Melville, an indefatigable and ſucceſsful inveſtigator of the military ſcience and machines of the antients, has, by dint of a long and careful conſideration of the




Scale of 6 Feet.

deſcription given by Marcellinus and others, aided by a knowledge of mechanicks, diſcovered the conſtruction of the machine above mentioned, called the onager; a model of it has been made by Mr. Wenlow, a delineation of which is here given, plate 4, of antient artillery, that will ſufficiently explain its ſize and ſtructure; on a trial it has anſwered very well, conſidering that it is ſtrung with common cords only (p).

These were the machines uſed by the Greeks and Romans, and afterwards by our anceſtors even after the invention of gunpowder, and its application to cannon; ſome of them retained their original names, as the baliſta and catapulta, though theſe were alſo applied to other engines (q); indeed, as moſt of the writers by whom theſe machines have been mentioned, were either monks or lawyers, who could only know them by hereſay, and conſequently had but a very imperfect idea of them, it is not to be wondered at that they often confounded their names and properties.

The catalogue of projectile machines in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, excluſive of the baliſta, catapulta, onager, and ſcorpion, were the mangonel, the trebuchet, the petrary, the robinet, the mate-griffon, the bricolle, the bugle or bible, the eſpringal, the mata-funda, the ribaudequin, engine a verge, and the war wolf; many of theſe continued in uſe after the introduction of bombards and cannon.

The term mangona is, it is ſaid, generical, ſtanding for all kinds of machines, and was a Greek word of that import, in uſe in the time of the lower empire; mangonel was a diminutive, applied to the ſmaller machines.

(p) Another machine of the catapulta kind, for throwing ſtones, was made for the garriſon of Gibralter, but it did not anſwer ſo well as the Onager above mentioned; the coſt was 137 pounds, though the artiſt that made it generouſly relinquiſhed all profit: it threw a ball of iron of ſix pounds.

(q) The croſs bow was called in Latin, baliſta, and ſometimes manubaliſta. The term catapulta was uſed in our antient law Latin, to ſignify a ſling.

The trebuchet was a machine for throwing ſtones, for which purpoſe a ſling was ſometimes fixed to it; it acted by means of a great weight faſtened to the ſhort arm of a lever, which being let fall, raiſed the end of the long arm with a great velocity; a ſingular delineation of the trebuchet is given in this work, taken from an ancient carving in ivory, ſuppoſed to be of the time of Edward II.

The petrary was alſo a ſtone-throwing machine, as its name imports.

The robinet and mate-griffon threw both darts and ſtones (r).

The bricolle, according to Froiſſart, ſhot darts, called carreaux, and in Engliſh quarrels, from their ſolid ſquare pyramidical heads of iron; this is ſaid to have acted by the ſame moving power as the trebuchet (s).

Beugles, or bibles, were alſo engines for throwing large ſtones, as we learn from an antient poem (t).

The eſpringal was calculated for throwing large darts, called muchettæ; ſometimes inſtead of feathers winged with braſs; theſe darts were alſo called viretons, from their whirling about in the air.

The matafunda; this was a ſtone-throwing machine, probably by means of a ſling; ſome derive its name from the words, funda and mactare, ſometimes written, matare, i. e. a murdering ſling.

The ribaudequin was a large kind of croſs bowe.

The war wolf is very differently deſcribed by different writers; Procopius makes it a kind of portcullis, or rather a harrow for defending a gate; Mathew of Weſtminſter, and Camden, a machine for

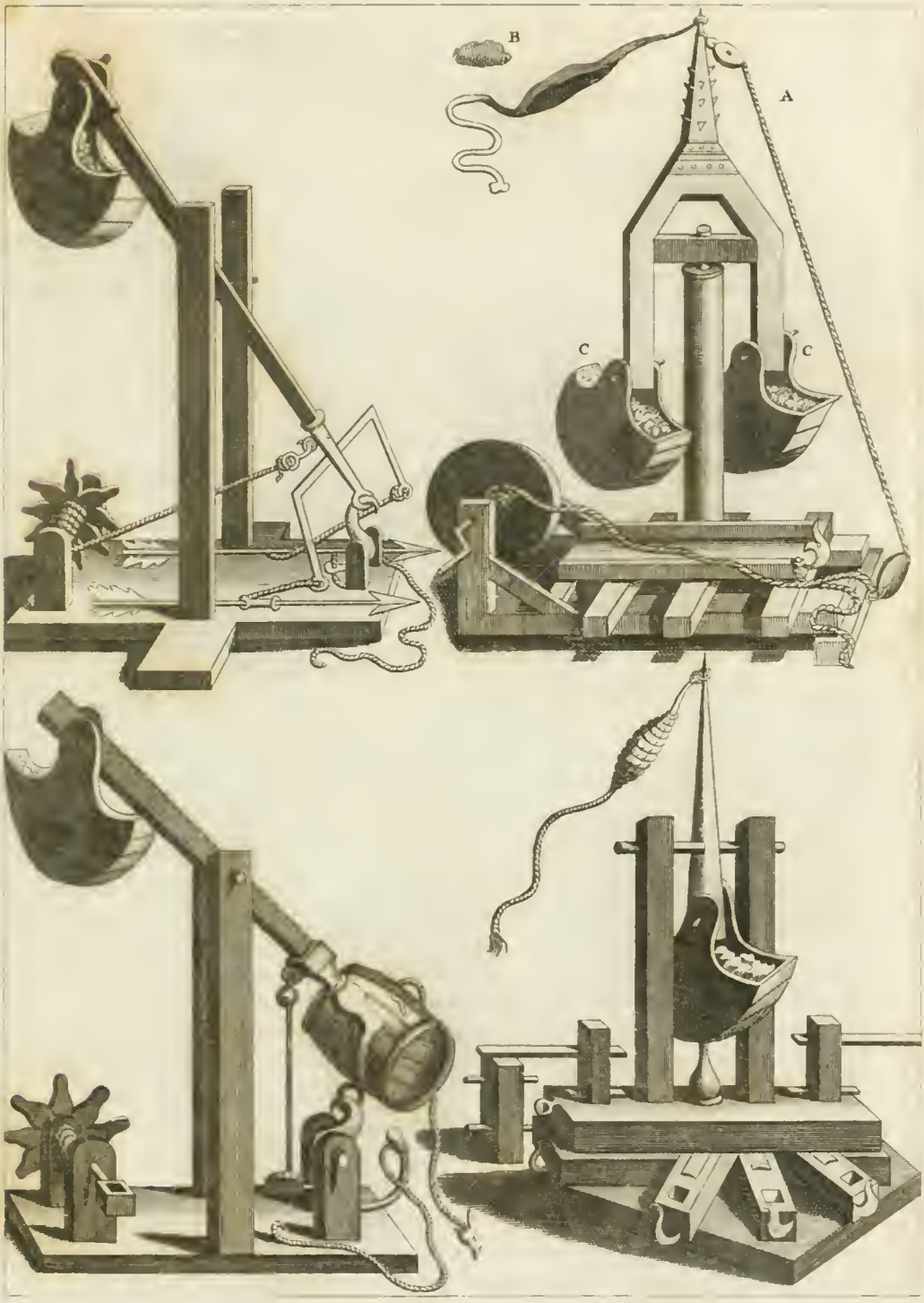
---

(r) Mate-griffon, the deſtroyer or terror of the Greeks.

(s) See the plate of different machines for throwing ſtones and darts, conſtructed on this principle.

(t) Et pierres grans, & les perrieres,
Et les bibles qui font trop fieres;
Gétent trop manuement.

From the Romance of Claris in the French king's library, No. 7534. See a large extract in the appendix, No. 1.



MACHINES FOR THROWING DARTS AND STONES.

throwing ſtones. See both their deſcriptions in the note (u); poſſibly they might be different machines under the ſame name.

Of the engine a verge, there is no particular deſcription; but from a paſſage in the hiſtory of Charles VII. of France, quoted by father Daniel, we learn that it was a projectile machine; that it was uſed with cannon, and that it remained in uſe after the other machines were laid aſide. "Leſquels engins a verge & bombardes, dit l'hiſtorien, jettoient & tiroient nuit & jour ſans ceſſe contre ce chateau."

Of the vaſt force of theſe machines ſurpriſing ſtories are related, though, from the conſtruction of our antient caſtles, it does not ſeem as if their range was very great, ſince many of our moſt important fortreſſes are commanded by hills within four or five hundred yards of them, an inſtance of which may be ſeen in the caſtle of Dover, once deemed the key of this kingdom, and alſo in thoſe of Corſe and Guild-

(u) At the gates they ſet up *wolves* made thus: they ſet two beams from the ground reaching to the battlements, and laying chequer wiſe pieces of timber wrought, ſome upright, and ſome croſs; they joint them ſo that the mortiſſing holes meete one another; and before each joint ſticks out a pointed piece of wood like a thick ſpurr, and faſtening the croſs timbers to another beam, which from the top, reaches half way down; they lay the beams flat long upon the gates, and an enemy approaching, men above lay hold of the higher ends of the beams, and thruſt them down, which falling ſuddenly among the aſſailants with thoſe wooden points ſticking out, kill all they light on. *Procopius Hiſtory of the Gothic Wars, book* 1. *p.* 27. Probably there was a chain or cord to draw it back after it had taken effect.

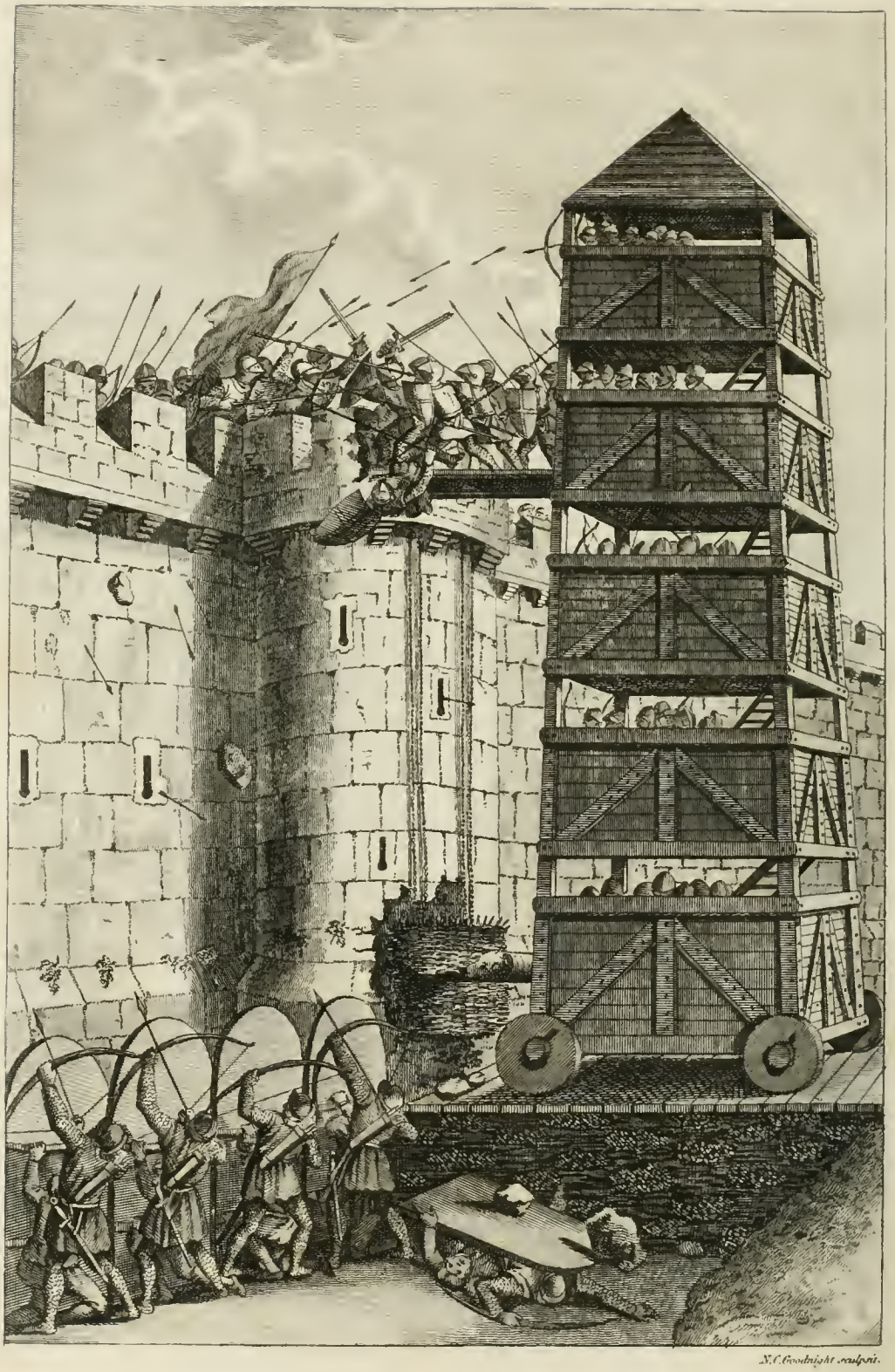
The war-wolf is thus mentioned from Mat. Weſtm. by Camden in his Remains, ſpeaking of King Edward I. "At the ſiege of Stivelen, where he with another engine, named the war-wolfe, pierced with one ſtone, and cut as even as a thread, two vauntmures; as he did before at the ſiege of Brehin, where Thomas Maule, the Scotſman, ſcoffed at the Engliſh artilleric, with wiping the walls with his handkerchief, until both he and the walls were wiped away with a ſhot." Again in his Britannia relating to the ſiege of Bedford: "concerning theſe mangonels, petraries, trabucces, bricoles, eſpringolds, and what our anceſtors called the war-wolf, out of which, before the invention of bombs, they threw great ſtones, with ſo much force as to break open ſtrong gates, concerning theſe (I ſay) I have ſeveral things to add, if they were not foreign to my purpoſe." Juſſit rex arietem fabricari, quem Greci nicantam vocant, quaſi vincentem omnia, et lupum belli. Verum aries indecens, et incompoſitus parum aut nihil profuit: lupus autem belli, minus ſumptuoſus incluſis plus nocuit. *Mat. Weſtm. Ann.* 1304.

ford; Monſieur Joly de Mezeray ſays, the greateſt range of a mangonel was five ſtadia, or 1042 yards, but then this was at an elevation: theſe machines not only threw darts and large ſtones, but even the bodies of men and horſes; inſtances of both are mentioned by Froiſſart.

Of the machines moved by human ſtrength, the chief was the ram, which was a huge beam or beams joined together, having its extremity ſhod with iron, ſometimes caſt in the ſhape of the head of a ram; it was puſhed forwards by the united ſtrength of a number of men in the method ſhewn in the plate, when its iron head ſtriking or butting againſt the wall, in the manner of the animal whoſe name it bore, it diſplaced the ſtones, and made a breach. The ram, though ſometimes ſupported on the ſhoulders of men, was more frequently ſuſpended to a triangle or beam, ſo that the whole force of the men was directed to puſhing it forwards; the ram was frequently uſed in the middle of the 14th century. In Dr. Deſagulier's Lectures on Experimental Philoſophy, the momentum of a large battering ram, worked by a thouſand men, is compared with and found equal to that of a point blank ſhot from a thirty-ſix pounder (x).

The machines uſed for covering the approaches of troops employed in ſieges, were moveable towers of ſeveral ſtories, called belfreys, cats and ſows, ſimilar to the tortoiſe, vinea and pluteus, of the antients: theſe were fixed on wheels, and likewiſe puſhed forward or drawn by human ſtrength; latterly, ſometimes aſſiſted by the capſtern or other mechanical contrivances.

(x) Dr. Desaguliers has demonſtrated in the annotations on his ſecond lecture on experimental philoſophy, that the momentum of a battering ram, twenty eight inches in diameter, one hundred and eighty feet long, with a head of caſt iron, of one ton and a half; the whole ram, with its iron hoops, weighing 41,112 pounds, and moved by the united ſtrength of 1000 men, will be on lyequal to that of a ball of thirty-ſix pounds weight, ſhot point blank from a cannon. Sir Chriſtopher Wren made great uſe of the battering ram to demoliſh and throw down the walls of the old church of St. Paul, when he was pulling it down in order to rebuild it. He found no machine equal to it for that purpoſe, particularly in disjoining the ſtones.



PAVISORS, & A MOVEABLE TOWER.

THE moveable towers of the antients were of an amazing magnitude. Hero diſtinguiſhes three kinds; the ſmalleſt were, he ſays, of ſixty cubits and ten ſtories; the baſe, which was ſquare, meaſured ſeventeen cubits on each ſide. The larger were of ninety cubits height, and had fifteen ſtories; the greateſt, called double, were of twenty ſtages, they were largeſt at bottom, and decreaſed every ſtory: the dimenſions of the timber uſed for the uprights, the traverſes, and other principal pieces, were proportioned to each of their three ſizes. The ſtrength and thickneſs of the wheels was alſo in the ratio of the weight they were to carry. The number of the wheels was in the proportion of the ſquares of their baſes; they had at leaſt ſix, and ſometimes eight.

THE towers or belfreys of more modern times were not ſo large; they rarely exceeded three or four ſtages or ſtories, and were covered with raw hides, to protect them from fire; in them was a bridge to let down on the parapet, when the works were to be ſtormed.

THE lower ſtage or ground floor was occupied by a ram; the upper ſtories by archers and croſs bow men. In the annexed plate there is a view of an attack of the parapet from one of theſe towers, and in the ditch, the archers covered by their paviſours.

A MOVEABLE tower was conſtructed by the royaliſts ſo late as the troubles under King Charles I., and ſurpriſed and taken by the parliamentary forces; it was miſnamed a ſow (y).

(y) AND much about the ſame time we had certaine information by letters from Glouceſter, that that valiant and moſt active governour of Glouceſter had intelligence of a deſigne againſt Canon Froom by the enemy in Hereford, for the ſtorming and ſurpriſing of it, with a ſtrange engine, which they had provided for that purpoſe, and brought along with them; marching thus forth out of Hereford with about 400 men, with their governour, they only faced the houſe, and after that wheeled about toward Malvern hills, to meet with additional forces from Worceſter, fully to beſiege it; whereof the governour of Canon Froom having knowledge, and conſidering his preſent diſ-furniſhment of things neceſſary to defend the garriſon againſt a ſiege or aſſault, he ſent to valiant Colonell Morgan to Glouceſter, praying his aſſiſtance, who preſently came forth to help him, with 500 horſe and

THE cattus, cat-houſe, gattus or cat, was a covered ſhed, occaſionally fixed on wheels, and uſed for covering ſoldiers employed in filling up the ditch, preparing the way for the moveable tower, or mining the wall: it was called a cat, becauſe under it ſoldiers lay in watch, like a cat for its prey. Some of theſe cats had crenelles and chinks, from whence the archers could diſcharge their arrows; theſe were called caſtellated cats. Sometimes under the cover of this machine the beſiegers worked a ſmall kind of ram.

THE ſow was alſo a covered machine for the ſame purpoſe, and much of the ſame conſtruction; though probably leſs, as it derived

---

200 foot, and marched to Ridley, where he joyned with 300 of Corſlane men, but the enemy having notice thereof (lying then about Ledbury) poſted thence quite away, but had left behind them the ſtrange engine (which ſorely frighted our men at Froom) guarded with two or three troops of horſe from Hereford, till they returned; in the interim thoſe that had faced Canon Froom, as was touch't before, falling in at Ledbury, in their way to Malvern, to refreſh themſelves there, a quarter-maſter of Canon-Froom, with about twelve onely of their horſe, accidentally being forth to view the coaſts, and coming through the towne, not knowing of the Royſters being there, fell upon them all, and ſeeing themſelves ſuddenly engaged, cried out, fall on! fall on! ſlew two on the place, and brought away five priſoners, paſt by the engine without much ado, the enemy, it ſeems, being amazed at the ſudden onſet, and unprovided, ſome drinking, and others careleſſe of any ſuch attempt, cried horſe! horſe! and went away in a diſtracted manner, where they ſurpriſed the engine within a mile and half of the place, drove away the troops that were with it, ſeized on it with two captains, and many priſoners, and brought all, with their ladders and other inſtruments provided for the ſtorme, to the garriſon at Canon Froom; upon the coming in whereof, ſuch a ſhout was made, that all the country rang of it. The engine was ſuch a one as the like hath not been known ſince theſe wars: the Royſters call it a Sow: it was carried upon great wheeles, and to be drawn with oxen; it was made with rooms or lofts one over another, muſquet proof, and very ſtrong, out of which were holes to play and ſhoot out. It was ſo high, that it was above all the works at Canon Froom, ſo that they could diſcharge over the works; beſides which, a doore opened to bring them into the works, out of which a bridge went for their entrance. The garriſon was then in ſuch a condition, that had they not been thus diſappointed, in all probability this engine had effected their intended deſign; but, God be praiſed, it was prevented. On the Lord's day following, November 9th, Maſter Jackſon, a Miniſter of Glouceſter, having information thereof in the morning (before ſermon), gave public thanks in the pulpit for ſo great a deliverance, and unexpected and unlikely preſervation. A.D. 1645. *See Vicars's Chronicle, entitled the Burning Buſh not conſumed, p.* 318.

its name from the ſoldiers under it lying cloſe together, like pigs under a ſow; though another reaſon is given for that appellation, namely, its being applied to digging and rooting up the earth. The former was alluded to by the counteſs who defended the caſtle of Dunbar againſt King Edward III. when ſhe threatened, that unleſs the Engliſhmen kept their ſow better, ſhe would make her caſt her pigs. Camden, who mentions this circumſtance, ſays "The ſow is yet uſed in Ireland." Two machines, the one called the boar, and the other the ſow, were employed by the parliamentarians in the ſiege of Corfe caſtle, Dorſetſhire (z).

The Greek fire was, as the oriental Greeks pretend, invented by Callinicus, an architect of Heliopolis or Balbeck, who lived in the reign of the emperor Conſtantine Pogonatus. That emperor, it is ſaid, forbade the art of making it to be communicated to any ſtrangers or others, except his ſubjects (a); it was, however, at length known, and in common uſe among the nations confederated with the Byzantines; the cruſaders alſo poſſeſſed the ſecret of preparing this wonderful compoſition (b).

(z) Among ſome antient drawings of the time of Henry VIII. preſerved in the Britiſh Muſeum, there is the repreſentation of a kind of covered war cart, or waggon, filled with muſketteers, the top and ſides of the waggon are pierced with loop holes, the horſes placed under cover beneath the waggon; ſeveral of theſe waggons were ſtationed in the centre of a ſquare battalion of halberdiers; one of them is repreſented as without its covering in order to explain its conſtruction; a kind of portable mantlet is alſo ſhown in thoſe drawings and copied here.

(a) The Greeks if aſked to give the compoſition, anſwered it was ſtrictly forbidden by Conſtantine the Great, according to them the original inventor.

(b) This is more properly ſuppoſed to have been the invention of ſome of the Arabian chymiſts, who were formerly great adepts in their art. Something like this fire is mentioned by Quintus Curtius. It is ſuppoſed to have been compounded of the gum of the pine and other reſinous trees, reduced to powder with brimſtone, to which was added *Naptha*, and other bitumens, and according to ſome, the water of a fountain in the Eaſt, which had the property to amalgamate with theſe combuſtibles, and to render them more inflammable; this ſeems hardly poſſible, as in that caſe it could have been only made where the water was to be had, whereas it was in uſe both all over Aſia, and in Europe. *L'Eſprit des Croiſades*, &c. Amſterdam, 1780.

Anna Commena has given an account of the ingredients of which it was compoſed; theſe were, bitumen, ſulphur and naptha. The Greek fire is much ſpoken of in all the Hiſtories of the Holy Wars, as frequently employed with ſucceſs by the Saracens againſt the Chriſtians. Procopius, in his Hiſtory of the Goths, calls it Medea's oil, conſidering it as an infernal compoſition prepared by that ſorcereſs.

It is ſaid to have been known in China, in 917, 300 years after Conſtantine Pogonatus, under the name of the oil of the cruel fire, and was carried thither by the Kitan Tartars, who had it from the king of Ou (c).

By the following deſcription of it, given by Joinville, who was an eye-witneſs, it has ſomewhat the appearance of one of the iron rockets ſtill uſed in India: he ſays it was thrown from the bottom of a machine called a petrary, and that it came forwards as large as a barrel of verjuice, with a tail of fire iſſuing from it as big as a great ſword, making a noiſe in its paſſage like thunder, and ſeeming like a dragon flying through the air, and from the great quantity of fire it threw out, giving ſuch a light that one might ſee in the camp as if it had been day; ſuch was the terror it occaſioned among the commanders of St. Louis's army, that Gautier de Cariel, an experienced and valiant knight, gave it as his advice, that as often as it was thrown, they ſhould all proſtrate themſelves on their elbows and knees, and beſeech the Lord to deliver them from that danger, againſt which he alone could protect them; this counſel was adopted and practiſed; beſides which, the king being in bed in his tent, as often as he was informed that the Greek fire was thrown, raiſed himſelf in his bed, and with uplifted hands thus beſought the Lord; "Good Lord God, preſerve my people!" The effects of this fire do not ſeem to juſtify the

(c) L'Esprit des Croiſſades. A machine ſeemingly depending on the Greek fire, or that of gunpowder, is mentioned in the Speculum Regale, an iſlandiſh manuſcript, ſuppoſed to have been written ſome time in the 13th century, where treating of the different kinds of warlike machines then in uſe, it is ſaid, "omnium autem quæ enumeravimus armorum et machinarum, præſtantiſſimus eſt incurvus clypeorum gigas, flammas venenatus eructans.

great terrors it here occaſioned; ſome of their caſtelated cats were ſet on fire, but extinguiſhed; it was thrown three times in the night from the petrary, and four times from a large croſs bow; the fire cauſed by this compoſition is ſaid to have been inextinguiſhable by water: Geeoffry de Vineſauf, who accompanied King Richard I. to the cruſade; ſays of it, "with a pernicious ſtench and livid flame, it conſumes even flint and iron, nor could it be extinguiſhed by water; but by ſprinkling ſand upon it, the violence of it may be abated, and vinegar poured upon it will put it out (d);" from other deſcriptions it appears, this compoſition was of an unctious and viſcid nature, ſticking to the objects againſt which it was thrown; it was in land engagements and ſieges projected by the machines of the times, and at ſea by hand, encloſed in veſſels or phials, in which it was alſo kept and tranſported (e); it was likewiſe ſometimes faſtened to the heads of arrows; ſea-water, inſtead of extinguiſhing it, ſeemed to give it new violence and activity.

Father Daniel ſays this wildfire was not only uſed in ſieges, but even in battles, and that Philip Auguſtus, King of France, having found a quantity of it ready prepared in Acre, brought it with him to France, and uſed it at the ſiege of Dieppe, for burning the Engliſh

---

(d) To theſe ſome add urine and even oil. See Ducange.

The following lines ſhew the general opinion of its properties:

Pereat ó utinam ignis hujus vena,
Non enim extinguitur aquâ, ſed arenâ,
Vix que vinum acidum arctat ejus fræna
Et urinâ ſtringitur ejus vix habena:
Ignis hic conficitur tantum per paganos,
Ignis hic exterminat tantum Chriſtianos,
Incantatus namque eſt per illos prophanos,
Ab hoc perpetuo Chriſte, libera nos.

Monachus Florentinus de Expugnat. Acconenſi.

(e) Ainsi qu'il alloit par mer, il recontre une nef de Saracens que le Soudan Saladin envoioit en Acre pour le ſecours faire a ceux, qui etoient en la cité & cele nef avoit grand plant de fioles de voire pleines de feu Gregois. *Chron. MS. Franc. ex Bib. Mammiana, an.* 1190.

veſſels in that harbour. It was alſo uſed at ſeveral other ſieges in France, and an engineer named Gaubert, a native of Mante, acquired the art of making it, which luckily for mankind has been ſince loſt. A compoſition ſomething of the ſame nature was a few years ago invented by a chymiſt in this country, who at preſent enjoys an annual allowance ſo long as it ſhall remain a ſecret; our government being unwilling to encreaſe the deſtruction and cruelty of war; a like diſcovery was made in France or Holland, and for the like reaſon ſuppreſſed (f).

Greek fire was uſed long after the introduction of fire-arms, particularly in ſieges. When the biſhop of Norwich beſieged Ypres, A.D. 1383, the garriſon is ſaid by Walſingham to have defended themſelves ſo well with ſtones, arrows, lances, Greek fire, and certain engines called guns, that they obliged the Engliſh to raiſe the ſiege with ſuch precipitation, that they left behind them their great guns, which were of ineſtimable value. A great part of that army was ſoon after beſieged in the town of Burburgh by the French, who threw ſuch quantities of Greek fire into it, that they burned a third part of the town, and obliged the Engliſh to capitulate (g).

Although the invention of gun-powder, with its application to fire-arms, may be ranked among the moſt important and beneficial diſcoveries, yet, ſtrange to relate! the date of that invention, with the name of the perſon to whom mankind are indebted for it, are both

---

(f) Dans ce ſiecle des gens aut pretendu en avoir retrouvé la compoſition; & il n'y a pas dix ans qu'un nommé Dupré eſt mort avec un penſion, que lui faiſoit le gouvernment, pour tenir ſon ſecret dans l'oubli; nous connoiſſons nous mêmes un medecin, qui a fait la même decouverte, ou de moins quelque choſe de bien approchant, mais dont la miniſtre ſeſt bien gardé de recompenſer les travaux, humanité qui fait autant d'honneur a la philoſophie qu'a notre nation, la ſeule, peut etre, ou il puiſſe ſe trouver des hommes en place aſſez amis des hommes pour ne pas multiplier les germes de leur deſtruction, pour ſe ſouvenir que ſi malheureuſement les guerres ſont quelque fois neceſſaire il faut laiſſer aux armées infernales des ſecrets infernaux, et que c'eſt deja trop de la poudre à Canon. *L'Eſprit des Croiſſades.*

(g) T. Walsingham, p. 303 and 304.

equally unknown (h). Perhaps one cauſe of this was, that at firſt it was extremely weak; of this, indeed, we may be certain from the proportion of its ingredients here annexed; ſo that it probably reached its preſent perfection and force by degrees, and was originally only uſed for recreative fireworks, as Bacon ſeems to ſay, and afterwards might be applied to military uſes, in ſetting fire to ſhips, caſtles, and buildings.

The common ſtory reſpecting the invention of gunpowder and artillery is thus related: about the year 1320, one Bartholdus Schwartz, a German monk, and ſtudent in alchymy, a purſuit then much in faſhion, having in the courſe of his work mixed ſalt-petre, ſulphur, and charcoal in a mortar, and partly covered it with a ſtone, by ſome accident it took fire, and blew the ſtone with great violence to a conſiderable diſtance; thus by one accident furniſhing the hint for making gunpowder, its uſe, and a piece of ordnance for uſing it: and it is worthy of obſervation, that ſtones are ſaid to have been thrown from mortars long before point blank ſhooting was attempted; poſſi-

---

(h) Perhaps, at firſt ſight, the aſſertion of its being a beneficial diſcovery may ſeem ſomewhat paradoxical; but let any one compare the ſlaughter of antient battles, with the killed and wounded in modern engagements, and the length and conſequent miſeries of ſieges before and ſince the invention of gunpowder, where equal armies were engaged, or the ſame or ſimilar places attacked, and I flatter myſelf the propriety of the epithet beneficial will be apparent.

War is now carried on at a diſtance, and in large and diſtinct bodies, ſo that the leaſt advantage becomes inſtantly obvious; whereas formerly troops engaged hand to hand, whereby they were ſo intermingled as to be with difficulty ſeparated, and beſides the victor had no other certainty of his ſucceſs, than by finding no more of the enemy to ſlaughter: in ſieges, a numerous train of artillery, with a few barrels of this wonderful powder, depoſited in a mine, ſoon batter and throw down the ſtrongeſt walls, and we now rarely hear of thoſe long ſieges, where thouſands are deſtroyed by fatigue and famine.

Indeed the greateſt effects towards a victory or capitulation is by gunpowder and artillery, brought about without any miſchief or ſlaughter, but ſolely by the terror raiſed by the noiſe, few men having ſufficient firmneſs to ſtand their dreadful thunder; and it is undoubtedly a fact, that a battle or a town is won, more by the flight of thoſe who are terrified at the noiſe of the cannon, than from the loſs of thoſe killed or wounded by them.

bly, this ſtory may be true; but it does not at all follow from thence, that gunpowder was not before known, the ſame diſcovery having been frequently made by different perſons engaged in the ſame ſtudy.

MANY modern writers carry the invention of gunpowder, and even its application to artillery, back to very remote antiquity; the ingenious tranſlator of the Gentoo Laws, finds fire-arms, gunpowder, and cannon, mentioned in that code, ſuppoſed at leaſt coëval with Moſes; it will, no doubt (ſays he), ſtrike the reader with wonder, to find a prohibition of fire-arms, in records of ſuch unfathomable antiquity; and he will probably from hence renew the ſuſpicion which has long been deemed abſurd, that Alexander the Great did abſolutely meet with ſome weapons of that kind in India, as a paſſage in Quintus Curtius ſeems to aſcertain (i); "gunpowder has been known in China, as well as in Hindoſtan, far beyond all periods of inveſtigation."

"UFFANO, ſays another author (k), reporteth, that the invention and uſe, as well of ordnance as of gunnepowder, was in the 85 yeere of our lord, made known and practized in the great and ingenious kingdom of China; and that in the maretyme provinces thereof, there

---

(i) THERE is alſo the following antient teſtimony to this point in Grey's Gunnery, printed A.D. 1731. In the life of Appolonius Tyanæus written by Philoſtratus, about fifteen hundred years ago, there is the following paſſage concerning a people of India, called Oxydracæ; (L. 2. c. xiv.) "Theſe truly wiſe men, ſays he, dwell between the rivers Hyphaſis and Ganges; their country Alexander the Great never entered, deterred not by fear of the inhabitants, but as I ſuppoſe by religious conſiderations; for had he paſſed the Hyphaſis, he might doubtleſs have made himſelf maſter of the country all round them; but their cities he could never have taken, though he had led a thouſand as brave as Achilles, or three thouſand ſuch as Ajax to the aſſault, for they come not out to the field to fight thoſe who attack them, but theſe holy men, beloved by the Gods, overthrow their enemies with tempeſts and thunderbolts ſhot from their walls: it is ſaid, that the Egyptian Hercules and Bacchus when they over-run India, invaded this people alſo, and having prepared warlike engines, attempted to conquer them; they in the mean time made no ſhew of reſiſtance, appearing perfectly quiet and ſecure; but upon the enemyes near approach, they were repulſed with ſtorms of lightning, and thunderbolts, hurled upon them from above."

(k) ROBERT NORTON, in a folio book, entitled, the Gunner, London, 1664: Norton there ſtiles himſelf, one of his late majeſties gunners and engineers.

yet remains certaine peaces of ordnance, both of iron and braſſe, with the memory of their yeares of founding engraved upon them, and the armes of King Vitey, who he ſaith was the inventor; and it well appeareth alſo in antient and credible hiſtoryes, that the ſaid King Vitey was a great enchanter and nigromancer; who one time being vexed with cruel warres by the Tartarians, conjured an evil ſpirit, that ſhewed him the uſe and making of gunnes and powder, the which he put in warlike practice in the realm of Pegu, and in the conqueſt of the Eaſt Indies, and thereby quieted the Tartars; the fame being confirmed by certain Portingales that have travelled and navigated thoſe quarters, and alſo affirmed by a letter ſent from Captain Artred, written to the King of Spaine; wherein, recounting very diligently all the particulars of Chyna, ſayd, "that they long ſince uſed there both ordnance and powder; and affirming further, that there he found antient ill-ſhapen pieces; and that thoſe of later founding, are of farre better faſhion and metal than their antient were; ſome alſo imagine powder and ordnance were invented by the famous mathematician, Archimedes, who made uſe of them at the ſiege of Syracuſe, in Cicillia, and they grownd that ſuppoſition upon Vitruvius, who reporteth that one of his engines with a terrible noiſe did ſhote foorth great bullets of ſtone; which, by reaſon of that report, could neither be ſuppoſed the catapulta, baliſta, ſcorpion, nor any other of the known engines.

Our countryman, Frier Bacon, whoſe works were written at Oxford, about the year 1270, fourſcore years before the ſuppoſed invention by Swartz, has expreſsly named the ingredients of gunpowder as a well known compoſition uſed for recreation (l), and deſcribes it as producing a noiſe like thunder, and flaſhes like lightning, but more terrible than thoſe produced by nature; and adds, this might

(l) Et experimentum hujus rei capimus ex hoc ludicro puerili quod ſit in multis mundi partibus, ſcil. ut inſtrumento facto ad quantitatem pollicis humani, ex violentia ſalis, qui ſal petræ vocatur, tam horibilis ſonus naſcitur, in ruptura tam modice rei ſcil. modici pergameni, quod fortis tonitrum excedere rugitum & corruſcationem maximam ſui luminis jubar excedit. Vide Dr. Jebb's Preface to his edition of Bacon's Opus Majus.

be applied to the deſtruction of an enemy by ſea and land: Bacon acquired this compoſition from a treatiſe on Artificial Fireworks, written by one Marcus Græcus; the manuſcript is ſtill extant, and is quoted by the Reverend Mr. Dutens in order to prove that gunpowder was known to the antients (m); the compoſition therein preſcribed is, two pounds of charcoal, one pound of ſulphur, and ſix pounds of ſaltpetre, well powdered and mixt together in a ſtone mortar; this is a better compoſition for powder than many in late uſe.

In a black letter book in quarto, entitled, the Forreſt, or Collection of Hiſtories (n), there is the following account of the invention of gunpowder and artillery: But all theſe were trifles of little weight and importance far ſurpaſſed in cruelty by the invention of ſhot in diverſe ſorts of artillery: the firſt invention of which ſome attribute unto an Almain whoſe name we find nowhere, as unworthy of memory; as report Blondus and R. Volateranus: the firſt that uſed ſhot to their behalf and profit were, the Venetians, againſt the inhabitants of Genua, in the yeere of our Lord, a thouſand three hundred and four ſcore; howbeit in my judgement this invention was yet

---

(m) The title of this manuſcript runs thus; "Incipit liber ignium a Marco Græco perſcriptus, cujus virtus et efficacia eſt ad comburendum hoſtes, tam in mari quam in terra." At page 9, of the MS. are the following directions for making a rocket; "Secundus modus ignis volatilis hoc modo conficitur: R. lib. i. ſulphuris vivi. lib. ii. carbonis faliciis, ſalis petroſe vi. libras, quæ tria ſubtiliſſime tereantur in lapide marmorea, poſtea pulvis ad libitum in tunica reponatur volatili, vel tonitrum facienta. Nota, quod tunica ad volandum debet eſſe gracilis et longa, et prædicto pulvere optime concalcato repleta; tunica vel tonitrum faciens debet eſſe brevis, groſſa, et prædicto pulvere ſemiplena, et ab utraque parte filo fortiſſimo bene ligata. Nota, quod in qualibet tunica primum foramen faciendum eſt, ut tenta impoſita accendatar quæ tenta in extremitatibus, fit gracilis, in medio vera lata, et prædicta pulvere repleta. Nota, quod ad volendum tunica plicaturas ad libitum habere poteſt, tonitrum vero, faciens quam plurimas plicaturas. Nota, quod duplex poteris facere tonitrum, ac duplex volatile inſtrumentum, vel tunicam ſubtiliter in tunica includendo. Duten's Inquiry, p. 266.

(n) Printed by John Day, dwelling over Alderſgate, 1576.

more antient, for that we read in the Chronicle of Alfonſus the XI. king, by juſt account, of Caſtille, who at the conqueſt of the citie of Algezear, found while he beſieged the towne, in the yeare of our redemption, a thouſand, three hundred, and fortie and three; that the Moores from within, threw out among the enemyes certain thunders through long mortars, or troughs of iron, and this was almoſt fortie yeares before that Blondus recordeth.

Again before that, it is reported by the ſaid Alphonſus which ſemblably conquer'd Toletam in Spain, that one Petus, biſhop of Leon, writeth, that in a certain battail don on the ſea, betwixt the King of Tunnye, and Morus, King of Sibilia, whoſe faction Alphonſus favoured, that the Tunnigenciens threw on their enemyes, certain bombards or tunnes of fire, which by all likelyhood might be deemed artillerye, although it were not in ſuch perfection as now, and that was foure hundred yeeres before and more.

To the above accounts it may be added, that iron rockets have been uſed as military weapons, or machines, in the Eaſt Indies, as far back as can be remembered, and are ſtill in great faſhion and eſtimation.

Camden, in his life of Queen Elizabeth, ſays, ſhe was the firſt that procured gunpowder to be made in England, that ſhe might not pray and pay for it alſo to her neighbours (o).

At firſt, gunpowder was not corned, but remained in its mealed ſtate; it was then called ſerpentine powder in ſeveral accounts of military ſtores in the time of Edward VI. and Elizabeth; there are large quantitys of ſerpentine powder.

(o) P. 56. In the work called, Cotton's Abridgment of the Records of the Tower of London, p. 24., there is a ſtrange miſtake reſpecting gunpowder; it being there ſaid, that a pardon was directed to be made out 14 Edward III. to Thomas de Brookhall, for a debt of 32 tuns of powder, and in the index it is added by way of note (before its pretended invention). The original in the rolls of parliament ſtands thus: Item, pur Thomas de Brookhall, pur trent & deux toneux *de pomadre*, des quex il eſt charge ſur ſon acounte du temps qu'il eſtoit aſſigne de faire divers purveances a l'œps le roi en le countee de Kent."

Pomadre, is cyder, inſtead of gunpowder, and probably provided for the king's drinking.

The following Proportions of the Ingredients for making Gunpowder is given by Peter Whitehorne (p).

The firſt invention and oldeſt manner in making ſerpentine pouder or pouder for ordinaunce.

1.	Saltpeter - - -	1 part
	Brimſtone - - -	1 part
	Coles - - -	1 part

The next practis of making pouder for ordinaunce.

2.	Saltepeter - - -	3 parts
	Brimſtone - - -	3 parts
	Coles - - -	3 parts

Pouder for ordinaunce of a newer making.

3.	Saltepeter - - -	10 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	3 partes
	Coles - - -	3 partes

Pouder for ordinaunce not ſo olde.

4.	Saltepeter - - -	12 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	3 partes
	Coles - - -	2 partes

Pouder for ordinaunce not verie olde.

5.	Saltepeter - - -	9 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	2 partes
	Coles - - -	3 partes

Pouder uſed of late daies for handgunnes.

6.	Saltepeter - - -	4 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	1 parte
	Coles - - -	1 parte

Pouder for ordinaunce uſed not long agon.

7.	Saltepeter - - -	20 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	3 partes
	Coles - - -	10 partes

Pouder for ordinaunce uſed of latter daies.

8.	Saltepeter - - -	100 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	10 partes
	Coles - - -	26 partes

Groſſe pouder of a newer ſorte.

9.	Saltepeter - - -	100 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	20 partes
	Coles - - -	37 partes

Groſſee pouder of a newer making.

11.	Saltepeter - - -	2 partes
	Brimſtone - - -	1 parte
	Coles - - -	1 parte

Harkabus pouder of a newer making.

12.	Saltepeter - - -	3 partes

(p) This work is entitled "Certaine Wayes for the ordering of Souldiours in Battelray, and ſetting of Battayles after diverſe Faſhions, with their Maner of marching: and alſo Figures of certayne new Plattes for Fortification of Townes: and moreover how to make Saltpeter, Gunpowder, and diverſe Sortes of Fireworks or Wilde-fire, with other Thinges appertayning to the Warres, gathered and ſet forth by Peter Whitehorne. Imprinted at London by W. Williamſon, for Jhon Wight. Anno 1573."

Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Coles of willow ſtickes - 1 parte

Fine pouder of newer making.

13. Saltepeter often refined - 5 partes
Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Coles of young haſell ſtickes - - - 1 parte

Groſſe pouder of newer making.

14. Saltepeter refined - - 3 partes
Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Willow coles - - 2 partes

Pouder of newer making.

15. Saltpeter - - - 10 partes
Brimſtone - - - 2 partes
Willow coles - - 3 partes

Harkabus pouder uſed nowe adayes.

16. Saltpeter very often refined - - - 10 partes
Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Coles made of haſell twigges, with the barke pilled - - - 1 parte

Handgun pouder of a newer making.

17. Saltpeter refined - - 27 partes
Brimſtone - - - 3 partes
Coles of haſell having their rinds pulled off - 3 partes

Handgun pouder of a ſtronger and of a newer making.

18. Saltpeter refined - - 7 partes
Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Coles of young haſell - 1 parte

Finer and ſtronger handgun powder.

19. Saltpeter diverſe times refined - - - 7 partes
Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Coles of young haſell twigges, having their rindes pulled off - 1 parte

Groſſe pouder uſed now a dayes.

20. Saltpeter - - - 4 partes
Brimſtone - - - 1 parte
Willowe coles - - 1 parte

Groſſe pouder uſed nowe adays.

21. Saltpeter - - - 20 partes
Brimſtone - - - 4 partes
Willow Coles - - 5 partes

Hande gun powder uſed nowe adaies.

22. Saltpeter refined drie - 48 partes
Brimſtone cetrine - 7 partes
Haſell coles - - 2 partes

Hande gun pouder uſed nowe adaies.

23. Saltpeter refined - - 18 partes
Brimſtone - - - 2 partes
Haſel coles - - - 3 partes

Nye, in his Treatiſe on Fireworks, gives the proportions as hereunder, with the dates when they were uſed.

The making of gunpowder after the moſt antient manner, anno 1380.

Saltpeter, brimſtone, charcole, equal parts.

Anno, 1410, ſaltpeter 3 parts, brimſtone 2 parts, charcole 2 parts.

Anno, 1480, ſaltpeter 8 parts, brimſtone 3 parts, charcole 3 parts.

The making beſt powder, 1520, ſaltpeter 4 parts, charcole 1 part, brimſtone 1 part.

Anno, 1647, the beſt ſort now made, ſalpeter 6 parts, brimſtone 1 part, charcole 1 part.

The muſket powder is now commonly made of ſaltpeter 5 parts, brimſtone 1 part, charcole 1 part; cannon powder, ſaltpeter 4 parts, 1 part charcole, 1 part brimſtone (q).

At what time cannon (r) were firſt uſed in Europe is not clearly aſcertained; if we may credit John Barbour, archdeacon of Aberdeen, King Edward III. had artillery in his firſt campaign againſt the Scotch, A. D. 1327; theſe the archdeacon calls (s) crakys of war;

(q) These were the moſt approved compoſitions, but diverſe conceits have prevailed at different periods reſpecting the ſtrengthening of gunpowder by the addition of various ſubſtances, ſuch as to every pound of brimſtone, an ounce of mercury, or to every pound of ſaltpeter, a quarter of an ounce of ſal armoniac; to ſprinkle the powder with brandy, or ſpirits of wine; and Ward has the following receipt to make a gun ſhoot half as far again as its uſual diſtance with the ſame quantity of powder; this is effected, he ſays, by taking of white caſe-pepper of the ſoundeſt cornes, and ſteepe them 24 houres in ſtrong aqua vitæ, then being taken out and dryed in the ſunne, ſo that they may not danke the powder; then charging the peece with the uſual charge of powder, you muſt take ſo many of theſe pepper-cornes as will cover the circumference of the bore, and being put downe cloſe with the ſticke to the powder; then putting next to the pepper the bullet, this being tryed at any marke, it ſhall be ſenſibly found to convey the bullet with ſuch a violence, farre beyond the accuſtomed ſhooting, and being charged without this ingredient, the bullet ſhall not come little more than half the way. Thomas Diggs, in his Stratioticos, likewiſe mentions an extraordinary degree of ſcience poſſeſſed by his father, who could, as he ſays, by reflection of glaſſes, fire powder, and diſcharge ordnance many miles diſtant; which, with ſeveral other curious matters, he partly acquired by the "aide he had by one old written book of the ſame Bacon's Experiments, that by ſtraunge adventure, or rather deſtinie, came to his hands." By Bacon, he meant the learned Friar of that name: I do not aſſert the truth of theſe matters.

(r) Cannon is derived from canna, a large hollow reed.

(s) In his metrical life of King Robert Bruce, p. 408, and 409.

Twa novelties that day the ſaw,
That forouth in Scotland had been nane,
Timbers for helmes was the ane,
That they brought then of great beautie,
And alſo wonder for to ſee;
The other crakys were of war,
That they before heard never air.

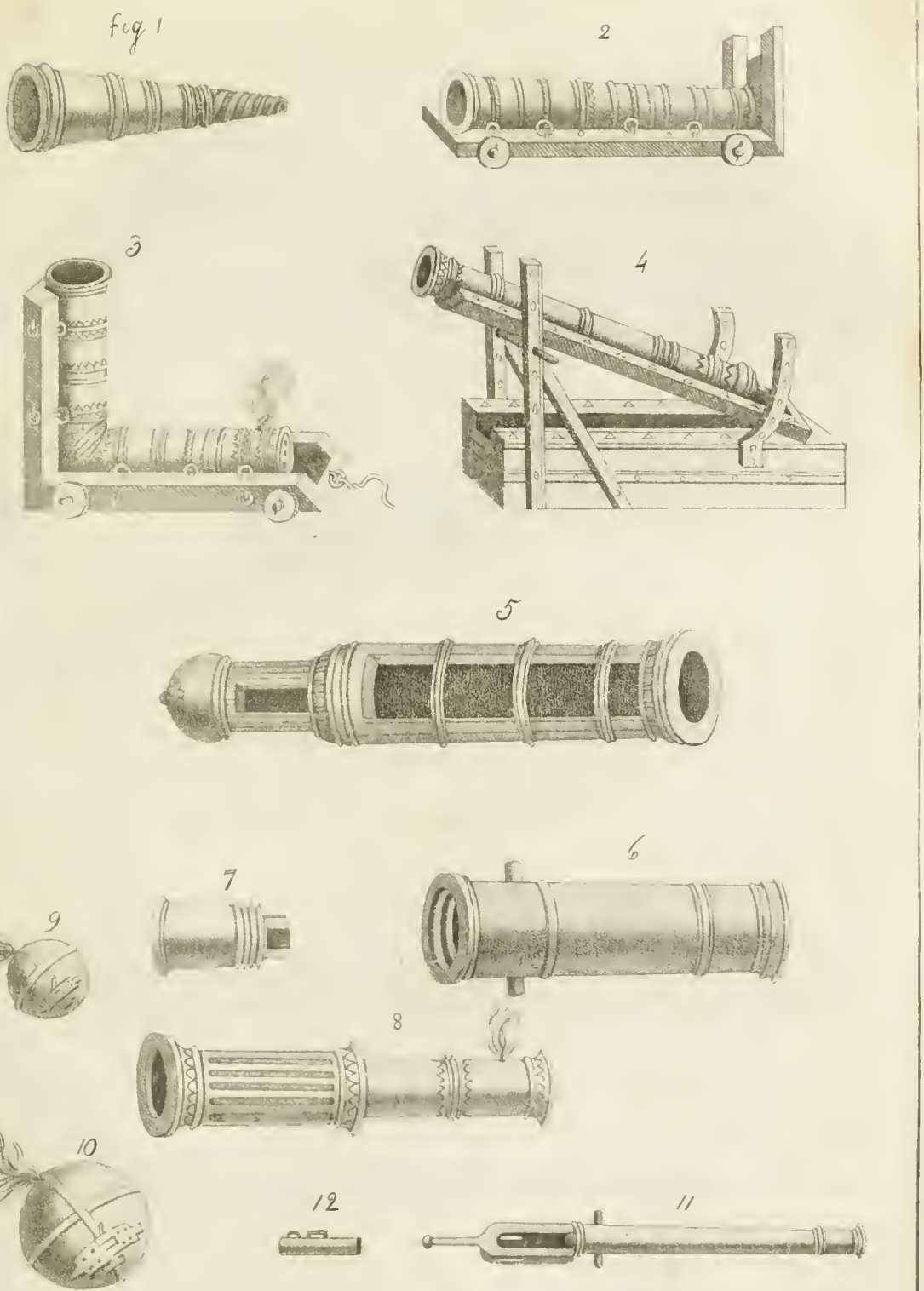


Fig 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

1 Foot

Scale of Nine feet for Fig 1, 2, 3, 4 & 6

Fig 1

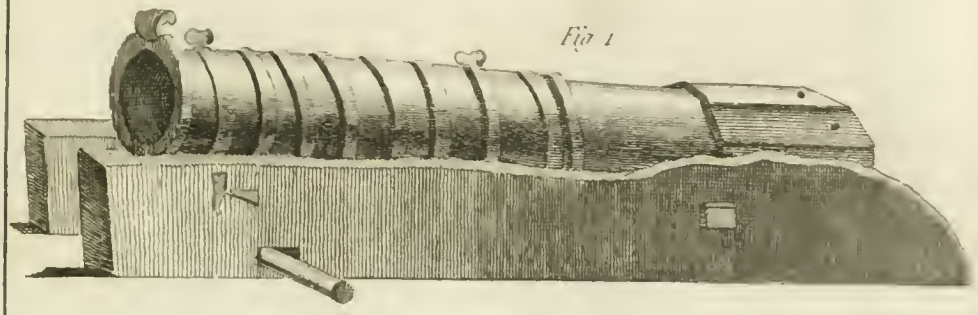


Fig 2

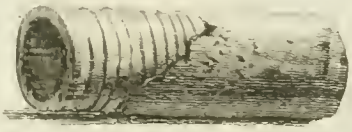


Fig. 4

Fig 5

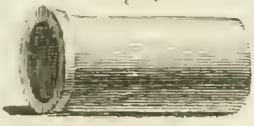
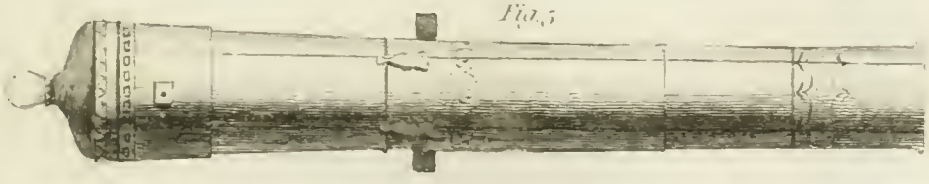


Fig. 5

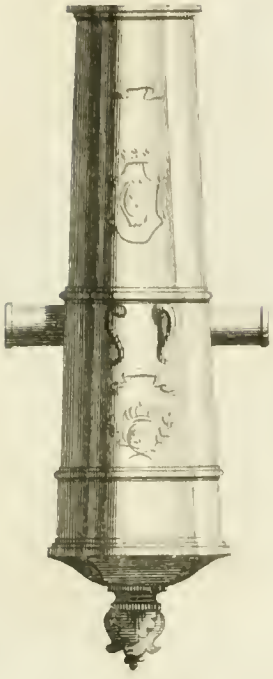


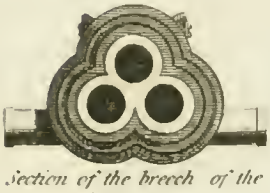
1 2 3 4

Scale of Four Feet for Fig. 5

Fig 6

Triple Cannon

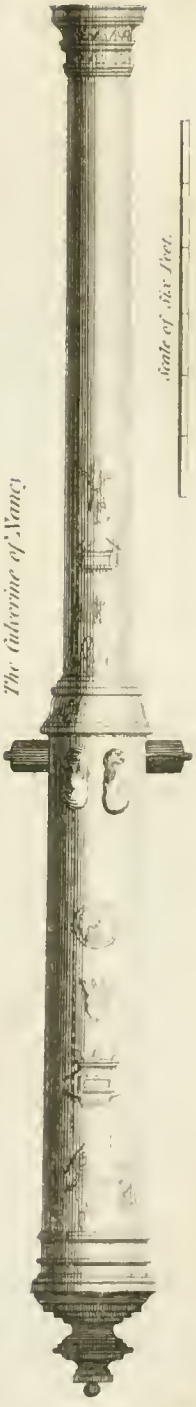




Section of the breech of the Triple Cannon.

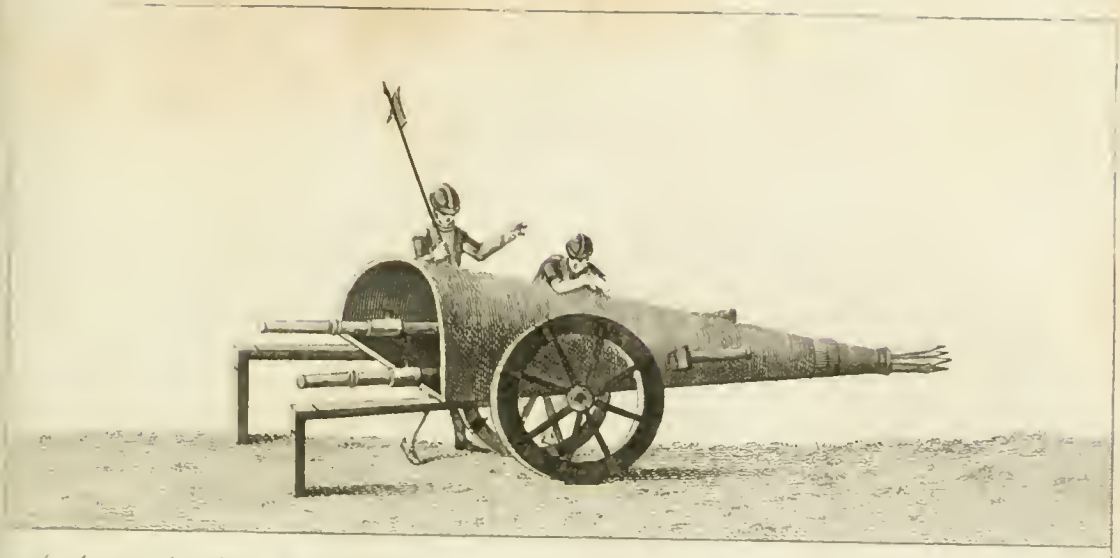
Twin Cannon

Ancient Screw-piece.

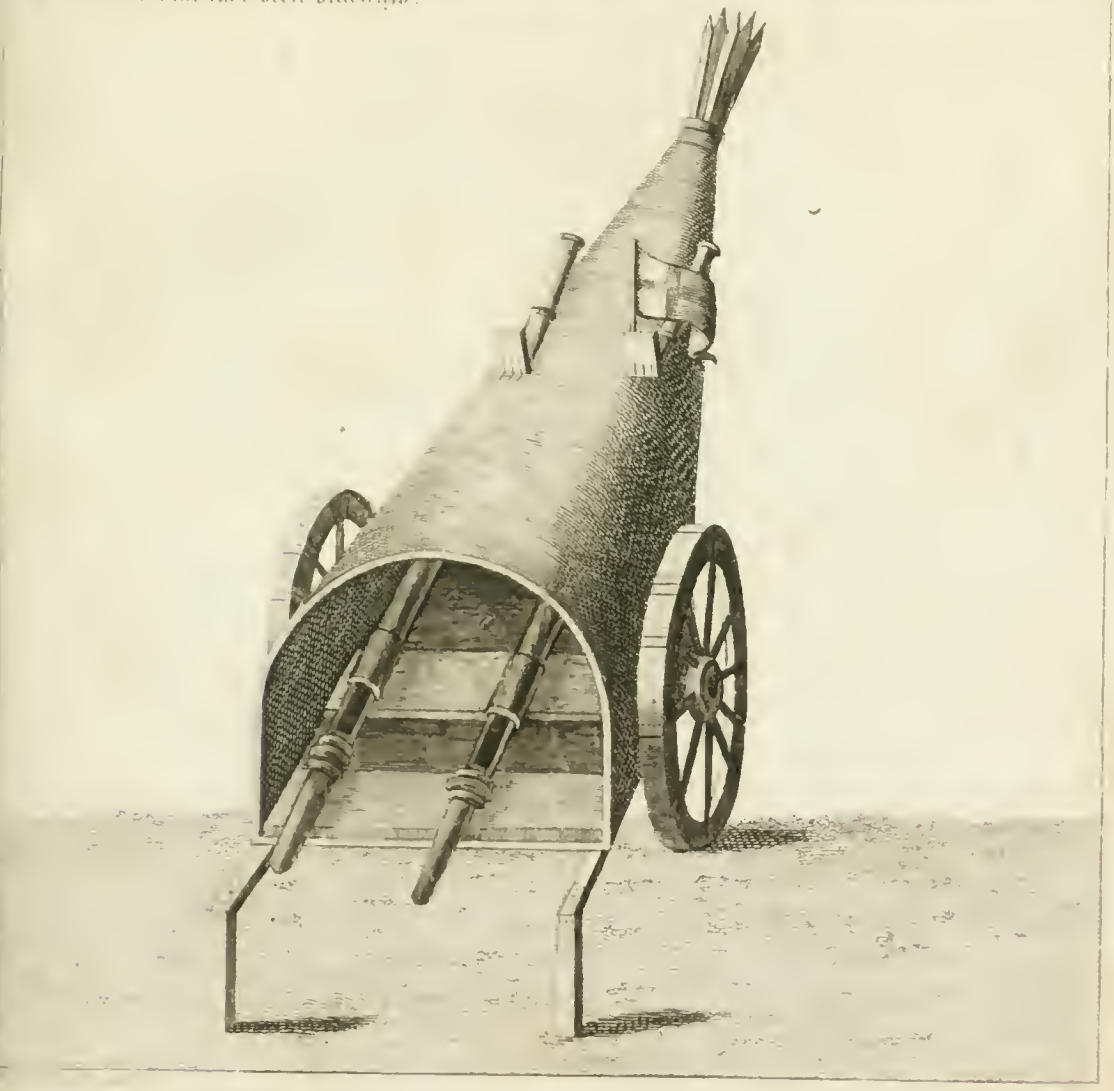


The Culverine of Nancy

EXTRAORDINARY PIECES OF ARTILLERY.



An Ancient Gun Cart seen sideways.



An Ancient Gun Cart viewed from the rear

ANCIENT GUN CALLED MONS MEG.
Scale of feet.

Father Daniel does not carry his claim in behalf of the French ſo high by ſome years, as he only cites a record preſerved in the Chamber of Accounts at Paris, to prove that the French had and uſed cannon in the year 1338 (t).

Vilani, an Italian author, ſays, the Engliſh had cannon at the battle of Creſſy, in 1346; this, however, is not mentioned by Froiſſart, or any other of the many hiſtorians who have deſcribed that battle.

Luigi Collado ſtates the introduction of cannon to have taken place in 1366; and other authors ſay, that cannon was firſt uſed by the Venetians againſt the Genoeſe, in 1378.

These machines, when firſt invented, were rather mortars than cannon, moſt of them having chambers; they were in general conſtructed of iron bars, ſoldered or welded together, and ſtrengthened with iron hoops; others were made of plates of iron rolled up and fortified with hoops of the ſame metal; of the firſt kind, there are ſeveral remaining; ſome I think at Woolwich. One belonging to — Pooley, Eſq. in Suffolk, and another, well known by the name of Mons Meg, now in the tower, are here engraved, and alſo ſeveral of thoſe hooped guns, which were loaded by chambers fixed in at the breech, theſe are kept in a cellar at Peel, in the Iſle of Man: cannons called alſo bombards (u) were at firſt chiefly made of hammered iron, but in proceſs of time many were caſt of that compoſition named bell or gun metal; they were alſo ſometimes made of plates of iron and copper, with lead run between them: one of theſe ſort of guns was taken up on the coaſt of Ireland by a fiſherman, and is ſuppoſed to have belonged to the Spaniſh armada: ſee Col. Vallency's account of it in the note be-

---

(t) In the accounts of Bartholomew de Drach, treaſurer of war for the year 1388, there is the following charge: To Henry de Faumechon, for powder and other things neceſſary for the canons which were before Puy Guilliaume Puy Guilliaume, is a caſtle in Auvergne.

(u) From the Greek word bombos, expreſſing the noiſe made by them in firing; great guns were afterwards named from ſerpents, as the baſiliſk, colouverine, &c. ſome of the large bombards were jocularly called, bourgeoiſe, from their conſtant reſidence in one place, their weight rendering them inconvenient to move.

low (x): another gun of this kind is kept in a cellar before mentioned, in the Iſle of Man; both are engraved in plate 2, of artillery; on particular emergencies, guns have been made of jacked leather.

THE antient bombards were ſometimes very large, and chiefly diſcharging ſtone balls of a monſtrous ſize. When Mahomet the II. beſieged Conſtantinople, anno 1453, he battered the walls with ſtone bullets, and his pieces were ſome of them of the calibre of 1200 pounds; but then they could not be fired more than four times a day (y).

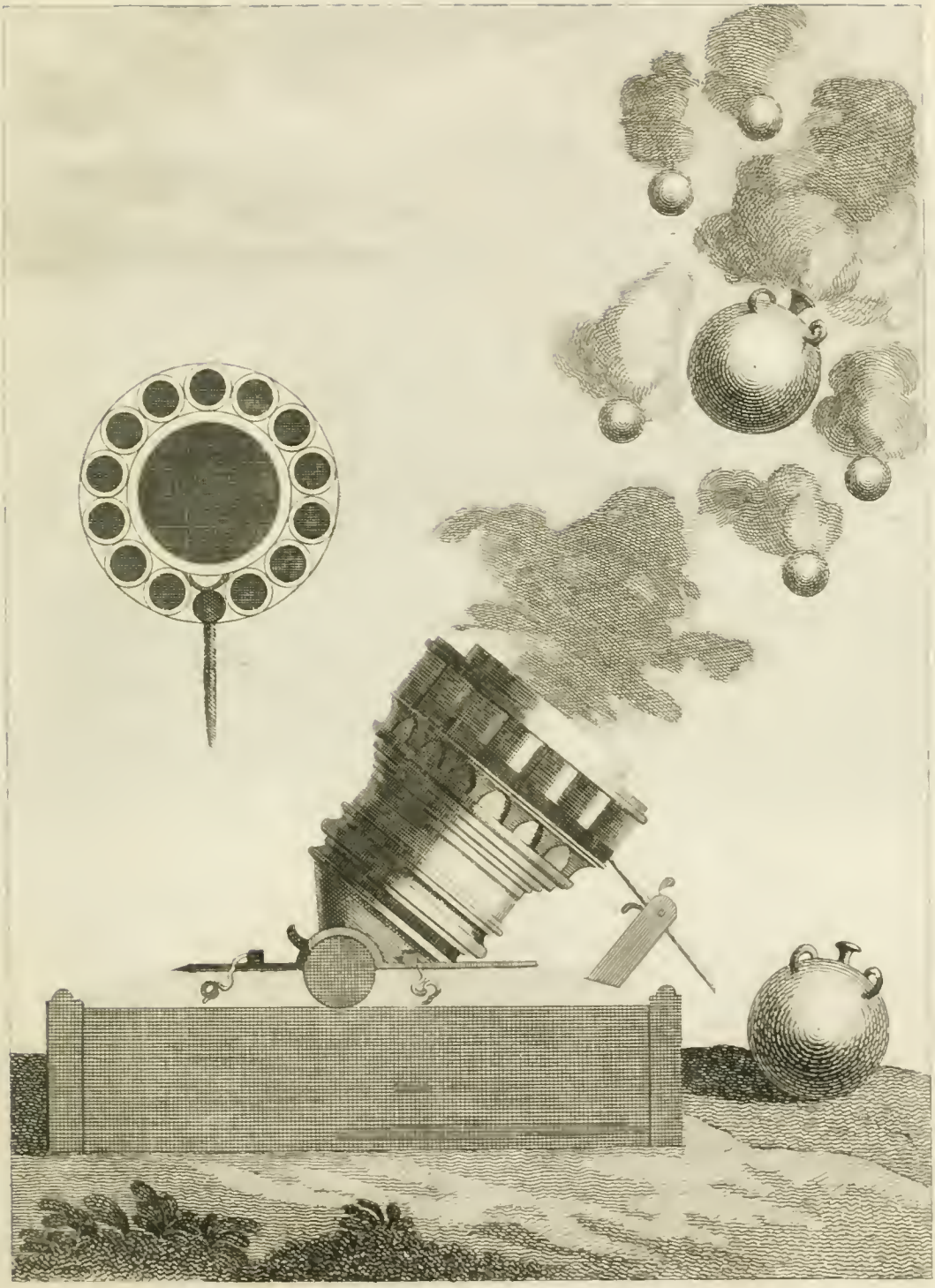
IN Rymer, there is an order from King Henry V. to the clerk of the ordnance, and John Bonet, a maſon of Maidſtone, to cut 7000 ſtone ſhot in the quarries there.

FROISSART deſcribes a very extraordinary bombard, uſed at the ſiege of Oudenarde, made by the people of Ghent, under the direction of D'Arteville; Therefore (ſays he), to terrify the garriſon of Oudenarde, he cauſed to be made a marvellous great bombarde, which was fifty feet long, and threw great heavy ſtones of a wonderful bigneſs; when this bombard was diſcharged, it might be heard five leagues by day, and ten at night, making ſo great a noiſe in going off, " that it

---

(x) THE inſide is a tube of copper ſoldered, the length of the piece; this tube is covered with a tube of plated, or hammered iron; as it could not be made to ſhut cloſe upon the copper, the interval is filled with melted lead; over the iron tube is lead, then plated iron where neceſſary to fortify it from the trunnions to the breech, and over all ſheathing copper, lapping over one another, as may be ſeen by the drawing. The dolphins are broke, the heads and tails remain; the caſcabel broke. The trunnions are compoſed of iron cylinders, half an inch diameter, covered with lead, probably they were alſo covered with ſheet copper, they are much bruiſed; the ornaments are punched. I ſend you ſome pieces of the outſide copper, and of the lead coatings, but could not rip off a piece of the iron tube, which is about an eighth of an inch in thickneſs were I opened it, which was half way between the trunnions and the muzzle. I do not recollect this conſtruction of a cannon deſcribed by any of our old authors. This gun, which is nearly a four pounder, was taken up in Kinſale harbour, by ſome fiſhermen in their nets. It is ſuppoſed to have belonged to the Spaniſh armada. See a delineation of it, artillery, plate 2, fig. 5; fig. 6, ſhews a gun ſaid to be conſtructed of the ſame materials, at Peel Town, in the Iſle of Man, where are alſo the pieces of antient hooped guns, fig. 2, 3, 4.

(y) SEE preface to Robins's Gunnery.



THE PARTRIDGES

ſeemed as if all the devils in hell were abroad." We frequently read of cannon or bombards carrying ſtone balls from 200 to 500 pounds weight.

THE terms cannon and colouverine were not confined to large guns, but were given alſo to thoſe of ſmall caliber, ſuch as were portable, and might be moved by hand.

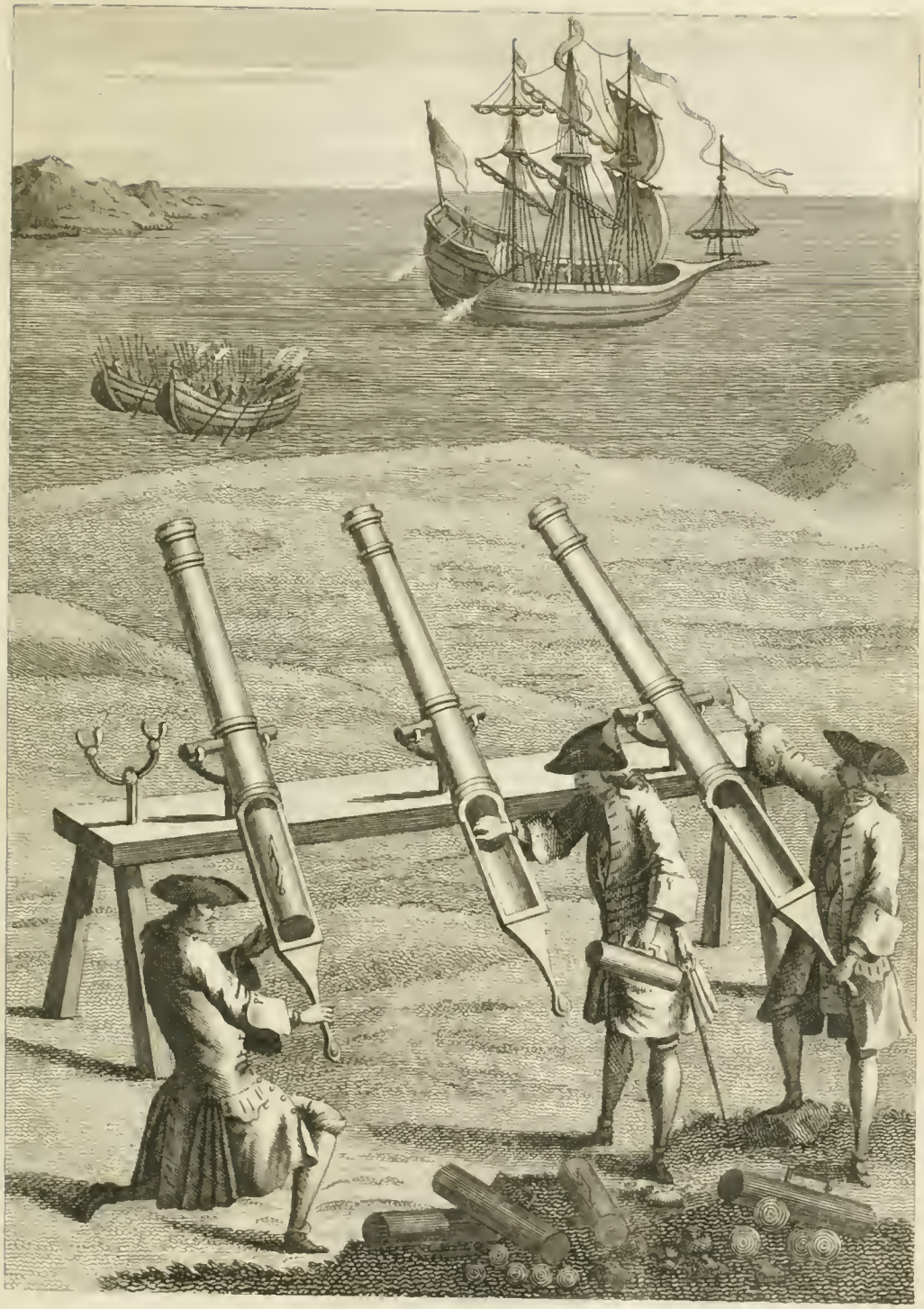
JUVENAL DES URSINS, an author contemporary with Charles VI. under the year 1414, calls them hand canons, and they were ſo named at the time of Louis XI.; for Philip de Comines, reckoning the ſtrength of the Swiſs army, and their allies, which defeated Charles the Bold, Duke of Normandy, before Morat, not far from Bern, in Switzerland, ſays, that there might be thirty thouſand footmen, well choſen, and well armed; that is to ſay, eleven thouſand pikes, ten thouſand halberts, and ten thouſand coulouverines: now it is manifeſt by the word, coulouverines, he could not mean thoſe great and long canons formerly ſo named, but ſomething like a muſquet, or arquebuſe, a croc, ſufficiently light to be carried by hand, or put on very ſmall ſtands, and moved and turned by one or two men (z); this ſuppoſition is further corroborated by diverſe other inſtances, in which ſmall armies are ſaid to have had ſeveral hundreds, and even thouſands, of canons and colouverines; one mentioned by the author laſt cited, who in the year 1411, ſays; that in the army of the Duke of Orleans,

(z) THE Duke of Burgundy appears to have had ſome very large ordnance in his army; our countryman Coriat, deſcribes one that he ſaw in the arſenal at Zurick; "among them, I ſaw one paſſing great murdering piece, both ends thereof were ſo exceeding wide, that a very corpulent man might eaſily enter the ſame; this alſo was wonne in the field from the ſaid duke." Vol. 2. p. 193. He likewiſe mentions another large piece, termed a baſiliſke, which he ſaw in the arſenal of Milan; "alſo (ſays he), I ſaw an exceeding huge baſiliſke, which was ſo great, that it would eaſily contayne the body of a very corpulent man."—In the 2d of King Henry V. A. D. 1414, there was a maſter of the ordnance named Nicholas Merbury, and John Louth, his clerk; to whom that king, by a warrant in Rymer, aſſigned the neceſſary workmen and materials, with authority for preſſing all ſorts of carriages required.

under Charles VI. there were four thouſand canons and colouverines; hand guns were not however introduced into England till ſixty years afterwards, as has before been mentioned (a): during this time perhaps they were improving, ſo as to become more manageable.

ALTHOUGH artillery was uſed from the time of King Edward III. and purchaſed from abroad by all our ſucceſſive kings, it ſeems extremely ſtrange, that none of our workmen attempted to caſt them, till the reign of King Henry VIII. when in 1521, according to Stowe, or 1535 (Camden ſays), great braſs ordnance, as canon and culverins, were firſt caſt in England, by one John Owen, they formerly having been made in other countries; whether this man did not ſucceed, or died before the year 1543, is not mentioned; but in that year, according to Stowe, the king employed two aliens as his gunfounders; his words are, "the king minding wars with France, made great preparations and proviſion, as well of munitions and artillery, as alſo of braſs ordinance; amongſt which at that time, one Peter Bawd, a Frenchman born, a gun-founder, or maker of great ordnance, and one other alien, called Peter Van Collen, a gunſmith, both the king's feedmen, conferred together, deviſed and cauſed to be made, certain mortar pieces, being at the mouth from eleven inches, unto nineteen inches wide; for the uſe whereof, the ſaid Peter and Peter cauſed to be made certain hollow ſhot of caſt yron, ſtuffed with fire works, or wild-fire; whereof the bigger ſort for the ſame, had ſcrews of yron to receive a match to carry fire kindled, that the fire-work might be ſet on fire to break in ſmall pieces the ſame hollow ſhot; whereof the ſmalleſt piece hitting any man, would kill or ſpoil him; and after the king's return from Bullen, the ſaid Peter Bawd by himſelf in the firſt year of Edward VI. did alſo make certain ordnance of caſt yron of diverſe ſorts and forms, as fawconets, falcons, minions, ſakers, and other pieces (b)." Chamber'd pieces for throwing ſtones, called cannon perriers, port-pieces, ſtock-fowlers, ſling-pieces, portingale baſes,

(a) VOL. I. p. 162. (b) STOWE's Chron. p. 584.



Pierriers vulgarly called Patteraroes.

and murtherers, were about this time much uſed in ſmall forts, and on ſhip-board.

King Henry VII. and his ſon Henry VIII. took great pains to introduce the art of gunnery into this kingdom, and for that purpoſe both of them had a number of Flemiſh gunners in their daily pay.

The wretched ſtate of that art is related by William Bourne, author of a treatiſe on the Art of ſhooting in great ordnance, printed at London, in 1587; "I have ſeen (ſays he) a number of bookes that have been written concerning ordnance, but ſurely they that wrote them were not ſeen in any part of the mathematical ſcience, neither good mechanicians; but (in reſpect) utterly void of any ſcience; in (compariſon) no good order deſcribed in the ſhooting of ordnaunce, to know what diſtance the ſhotte is delivered from the peece; neyther have they known what inſtruments have meaned; and although they have named degrees in their bookes, yet it appeareth unto me, that they have no knowledge what a degree ſignifieth, for that they have named a quadrant, a triangle, and other fond and fooliſh bye-names; wherefore, they that have written theſe bookes, that the gunners have amongſt them, were utterly unlearned in any manner of ſcience; which were in the beginning, in the time of King Henry VIII. made by Flemmings; for in the war of thoſe daies, the king ſent over into Flanders and thoſe parts thereabouts, to have gunners to ſerve him in the warres, and the gunners have no other bookes, but ſuch as were written by them; wherefore, I do thinke it good to ſhewe unto you what a degree is."

In the year 1626, the 2d of King Charles I. ſome improvement was attempted in the ordnance, for one Arnold Rotiſpen had a patent for 14 years for making guns of all ſorts both great and ſmall after a new way, or manner, not formerly practiſed by any within theſe dominions (c).

The next year a patent was granted to William Drummond, of

(c) Rymer.

Hawthornden, for the ſole making and vending a number of war-like machines. As we hear nothing further of them, it is moſt reaſonable to ſuppoſe, like many other wonderful projects, they proved abortive.

Since the introduction of artillery a variety of whimſical pieces have been invented, many by eccleſiaſtics, but in the whole the ſimple gun has been found the moſt ſerviceable. Several of theſe inventions, as matters of curioſity, are engraved for this work.

Bombs are certainly of greater antiquity than is generally ſuppoſed (d). Strada ſays, they were uſed in the year 1588, at the ſiege of Vakterdonc, a town in Guelders; but from his deſcription it appears, that what he calls a bomb was in reality a carcaſs. Nothing, ſays he, frightened the burgers more than certain hollow balls filled with powder and materials that could not be extinguiſhed; theſe balls were thrown into the air by mortars, and had a match of a certain length, in order to ſet fire to the powder. Falling on the tops of houſes they broke through them, and as ſoon as they had taken fire, they burſt, and ſpread out on every ſide a flame, which was difficult to extinguiſh with water. This inſtrument, which gave origin to grenades, fire-pots, and the like machines contrived for the deſtruction of the human ſpecies, were invented, as it is ſaid, a few days before the ſiege of Vakterdonc, by an inhabitant of Venlo, a maker of fireworks; the inhabitants of that town propoſed with this invention to divert the duke of Cleves, who was on a viſit to them, and to whom they had given a grand repaſt; they therefore were deſirous of making the firſt trial of it before him, and it ſucceeded much better than they propoſed, for the bomb falling on a houſe, beat in the roof and floors, and ſet it on fire, which communicating with the neighbouring houſes, burnt two thirds of the town, the fire being ſo violent, that it was impoſſible

(d) It has been ſuppoſed that the firſt guns or bombards were uſed for throwing ſtones, not point blank, but at an elevation, ſo that they might rather be conſidered as mortars than guns.

to extinguiſh it. I know, adds Strada, that ſome have written, that a month or two before, a like experiment had been made at Bergen Op Zoom, by an Italian deſerter from the Spaniſh troops, who had engaged with the Dutch, and had promiſed to make them ſome hollow balls of ſtone or iron, which being thrown into a beſieged town, and burſting after their fall, would ſet every thing on fire; but as he was preparing his compoſition, a ſpark having fallen on the powder, he was killed, and by his death left thoſe for whom he was working in an uncertainty, whether or not his ſecret would have ſucceeded. From both theſe deſcriptions it is evident the end propoſed was to burn the towns by means of theſe fire balls. The effect of the bomb is chiefly confined to beating down buildings by its fall, or by its exploſion and the pieces of broken iron thrown about in all directions, to break and deſtroy every thing around it.

Valturinus, who is the oldeſt of the modern writers on war, the firſt edition of whoſe book was publiſhed in Latin, at Baſle, in 1472, carries the invention of bombs at leaſt a century farther back than Strada; for in book x. page 267, of his work, there is the figure of a cannon, ſomewhat of the howitzer kind, deſtined to throw a brazen ball filled with powder. It is entitled machina quâ pilæ æneæ tormentarii pulveris plenæ, cum fungi aridi fomite urentis, emittuntur (e).

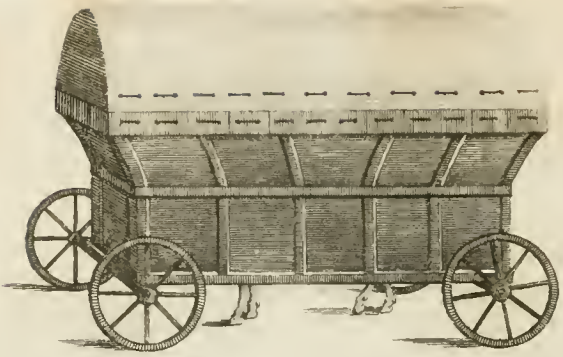
Bombs ſince their firſt invention have been much improved. They are now made of caſt iron; thickeſt at the part oppoſite the vent, by which means, that ſide being heavieſt, they fall with the fuſe upper-

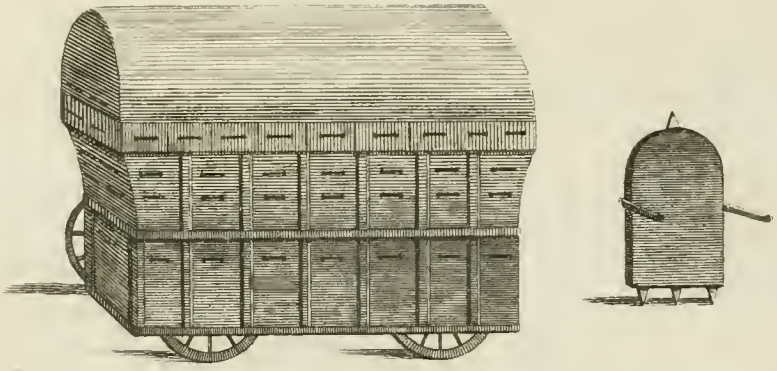
(e) This paſſage is in a note, p. 394, of Monſieur Joly de Maizeroy's Treatiſe on Ancient Sieges. I have never been able to ſee the Latin edition of Valturinus; but in a French tranſlation of that author, printed at Paris in 1555, in book X. p. 163. b. there is a print of a cannon as juſt fired, with a ball in the air, ſeemingly burning out of the vent, and another ball likewiſe burning on the ground. The balls appear to open by means of hinges oppoſite the vent. The title over it is Voyci encores une autre tienne invention d'artillerie par laquelle on tire un boulet artificiel plein de poudre avec un nouriſſement de feu. It is copied in Artillery, plate 1. fig. 8. 9. 10. the laſt is made a little larger than the other to ſhew the hinges.

moſt, and thereby prevent its being broken or ſmothered. Though ſome engineers think that when caſt equal they fly truer, and burſt into more pieces (f). Blondel at the end of his book (g) points out an extraordinary method of throwing ſtones into a beſieged town without making uſe of a mortar. " The Poles (ſays he) aſſiſted by ſome auxiliary troops, beſieged the town of Thorn in Pruſſia, held by the Swedes, into which they frequently threw ſtones of a monſtrous ſize, great quarters of mill ſtones, and ſquared ſtones of more than 800 weight, without making uſe of mortars, in this manner; in the firm ground near the counterſcarp, they digged holes juſt of the ſize and figure of the ſtone they intended to throw, the bottom of which hole being flat and even, was turned towards the town, with ſuch an angle of inclination as they judged by eſtimation was proper for the direction of their throw, and in the middle of this bottom they digged another hole deeper and in form of a chamber, and in ſuch ſort, that the axis of the laſt hole paſſing through the center of gravity of the ſtone, was perpendicular to its bed, and was the ſame as the line of direction; they filled this hole with powder, if the earth was ſufficiently firm, or elſe they put in a petard of a ſize proportioned to the weight of the ſtone, which reſting on the plane of the madrier of the petard, or of the tompion of the chamber, received the full force of the powder, which was lighted by means of a thread dipt in brandy, and compoſition of

(f) At the ſiege of Bergen Op Zoom in the year 1747, I was ſhewn a Scotch Hollander, I think of Collyer's regiment, who, tempted by the reward given for ſtifled ſhells, contrived a machine of the lever kind, with which he had, when I ſaw him, drawn out the burning fuſes of two bombs, but afterwards making a third attempt, an eighteen-inch ſhell burſt between his legs, and tore him in pieces.

(g) Entitled L'Art de Jetter les Bombes. This author agrees as to the abovementioned epocha of the invention of bombs, but at the ſame time remarks that that of mortars is ſtill more ancient; he ſays he has ſeen them both of iron and braſs, of a ſtructure which ſeemed to be of the time of the oldeſt cannon, and that they were uſed to throw ſtones and red hot balls. He confirms what he advances by a print, which is in the frontiſpiece of the book of Nicholas Tartaglia, a mathematician, of Breſſe in Italy, printed in the year 1538, where among diverſe other pieces of artillery, a mortar is repreſented throwing a burning ball.





Carts of Hire.

N.C. Goodnight sculpt.

artificial fire-works, and rifing to a great height in the air, fell in the town at the deſtined places, where it cruſhed every thing it met with in it's fall." This contrivance is alſo mentioned in an ancient Engliſh Book of Fireworkes, the name of whoſe author I cannot recollect. Diverſe mortars of this kind are (as it is ſaid) cut in the rocks at Malta, ſome of theſe perhaps ſuggeſted the idea to Healey for that he conſtructed at Gibraltar, an account of which ſee in the Appendix, No. 7.

After the firſt invention of bombs, thoſe of carcaſſes of different kinds, and grenades, naturally followed; the latter are ſaid to have been firſt uſed in 1594. The howitzer, which is a kind of mortar mounted like a gun on a field carriage, its trunnions being fixed in the middle, is a modern diſcovery, and on particular occaſions extremely ſerviceable; they were invented by the Germans about the year 1593 or 1594.

Another ſpecies of artillery were the war carts, each carrying two peteraros, or chamber'd pieces; ſeveral of theſe carts are repreſented in the Cowdry picture of the ſiege of Bullogne, one of which is given in this work; theſe carts ſeem to have been borrowed from the Scotch; Henry, in his Hiſtory of England, mentions them as peculiar to that nation, and quotes the two following acts of parliament reſpecting them; one A.D. 1456, wherein they are thus deſcribed, "it is tocht ſpeidfull, that the king mak requieſt to certain of the great burrows of the land that are of ony myght, to make carts of weir, and in elk cart twa gunnis, and ilk ane to have twa chalmers, with the remnant of the graith that effeirs thereto, and an cunnand man to ſhute thame:" by another act, A.D. 1471, the prelates and barons are commanded to provide ſuch carts of war againſt their old enemies the Engliſh (h).

These carts ſeem to be the ſame as mentioned by Monro (i), who

(h) Black Acts, James II. act 52. James III. act 55.

(i) Munro his Expedition with the worthy Scots Regiment, called Mac-Keycs Regiment, levied in Auguſt, 1626, &c. &c. part 2. p. 151.

ſpeaking of the invention of artillery, ſays; "and it is thought that the invention of cannon was found firſt at Nurenberg, for the ruin of man, being at firſt for a long time uſed for battering down of walles and cities, and for counter-batteries, till at laſt they were uſed in the field to break the ſquadrons and battailes of foot and horſe, ſome carrying pieces, called SPINGARDS, of foure foote and a halfe longe, that ſhot many bullets at once no greater than walnuts, which were carried in the fields on little chariots behinde the troopes, and how ſoone the trumpet did ſounde, the enemy was thundered on, firſt with thoſe as with ſhoures of haile ſtone, ſo that the enemies were cruelly affrighted with them, men of valour being ſuddenly taken away, who before were wont to fight valliantly and long with the ſword and launce, more for the honour of victory, than for any deſire of ſhedding of bloud; but now, men are marteryzed and cut downe, at more than half a mile of diſtance, by thoſe furious and thundring engines of great cannon, that ſometimes ſhoote fiery bullets able to burne whole cities, caſtles, houſes, or bridges, where they chance to light, and if they happen to light within walles, or amongſt a briggad of foote or horſe, as they did at LEIPSIGH, on the grave ſon Torne his briggad, ſpoiled a number at once, as doubtleſſe the deviliſh invention did within Waleſtine, his leaguer at this time."

THE petard is a machine made uſe of to burſt open gates, draw-bridges and doors of arſenals or fortreſſes and caſtles attacked by ſurpriſe.

IT is a kind of iron mortar of the form of a truncated cone, or that of a bell, with a touch-hole in the centre of the breech, and four handles for faſtening it to its madrier: petards were of different ſizes, according to the uſes for which they were deſigned; a ſmall one ſixteen lines thick at the breech, and eight or nine at the mouth; its caliber five inches at the breech, and eight at the mouth; its length from ten inches to a foot long, weighed about ſixty pounds, and was the beſt ſize for general uſe.

THE manner of loading it was this; it was to be filled nearly full with the beſt gunpowder, and then covered with wadding, and after-

THE PETARD.

wards by a wooden trencher exactly fitted to its caliber; after this, it was to be driven with ſeven or eight ſtrokes of a wooden mallet, care being taken not to break the grains of the powder (k): the remainder of the petard was filled with yellow wax, or Greek pitch, and covered over with a waxed cloth; the mouth of the petard was then placed in a cavity turned to receive it, in a ſtrong plank about eighteen inches ſquare, called a madrier, ſtrengthened on the oppoſite ſide with a croſs band of iron, and a ſtrong iron hook; to this madrier the petard was faſtened by ſtaples paſſing through the handles before-mentioned; when it was to be uſed, the madrier was made faſt by its hook, and divers other contrivances, to the gate to be broken, and fire ſet to the fuſe which paſſed through its vent or touch-hole into the center of the powder; the effect was generally a fracture in the gate equal to the madrier. In the annexed plate is ſhewn the back of the madrier, with its hook and croſs bands, the petard, its trencher, and fuſe; and under them, the cavity of the madrier, ſection of the petard, and the ſtaples for faſtening it; two different methods of applying it are alſo repreſented.

According to Father Daniel, the petard was invented in France, a ſhort time before the year 1579, in which year it was uſed by Henry IV. of France, then only King of Navarre. In December, 1641, Arundel caſtle was taken by the parliamentary forces under Sir William Walter and Colonel Browne, who coming unexpectedly, and finding the caſtle gate ſhut, blew it open with a petard (l).

(k) Several authors recommend driving in the powder with a force that muſt have broken the corns of the powder, in which caſe it is doubtful whether it would have had its intended effect; others recommend moiſtening the powder with ſpirits of wine, and afterwards drying it in the ſun, in order to make it ſtronger, and then to ſprinkle every layer of powder of two inches thick with mercury, laying the powder on it, and preſſing it down; then ſprinkling it again with mercury, and continuing the ſame operation till the petard is filled.

The beſt effect would probably be produced by filling the petard looſely with good powder, the fire would thereby be more quickly communicated.

(l) See *Vicar's Parliamentary Chronicle, God in the Mount*, p. 231.

THE infernals were floating mines conſtructed in the bodies of ſhips or boats; the firſt inventor of them, or, at leaſt, the firſt who put them in practice was, Frederick Jambelli, an Italian engineer; at the ſiege of Antwerp, by the Spaniards, under Alexander, Prince of Parma, in the year 1585: a very particular and intereſting relation of their wonderful effects is given by Strada, in his Hiſtory of the Belgic War.

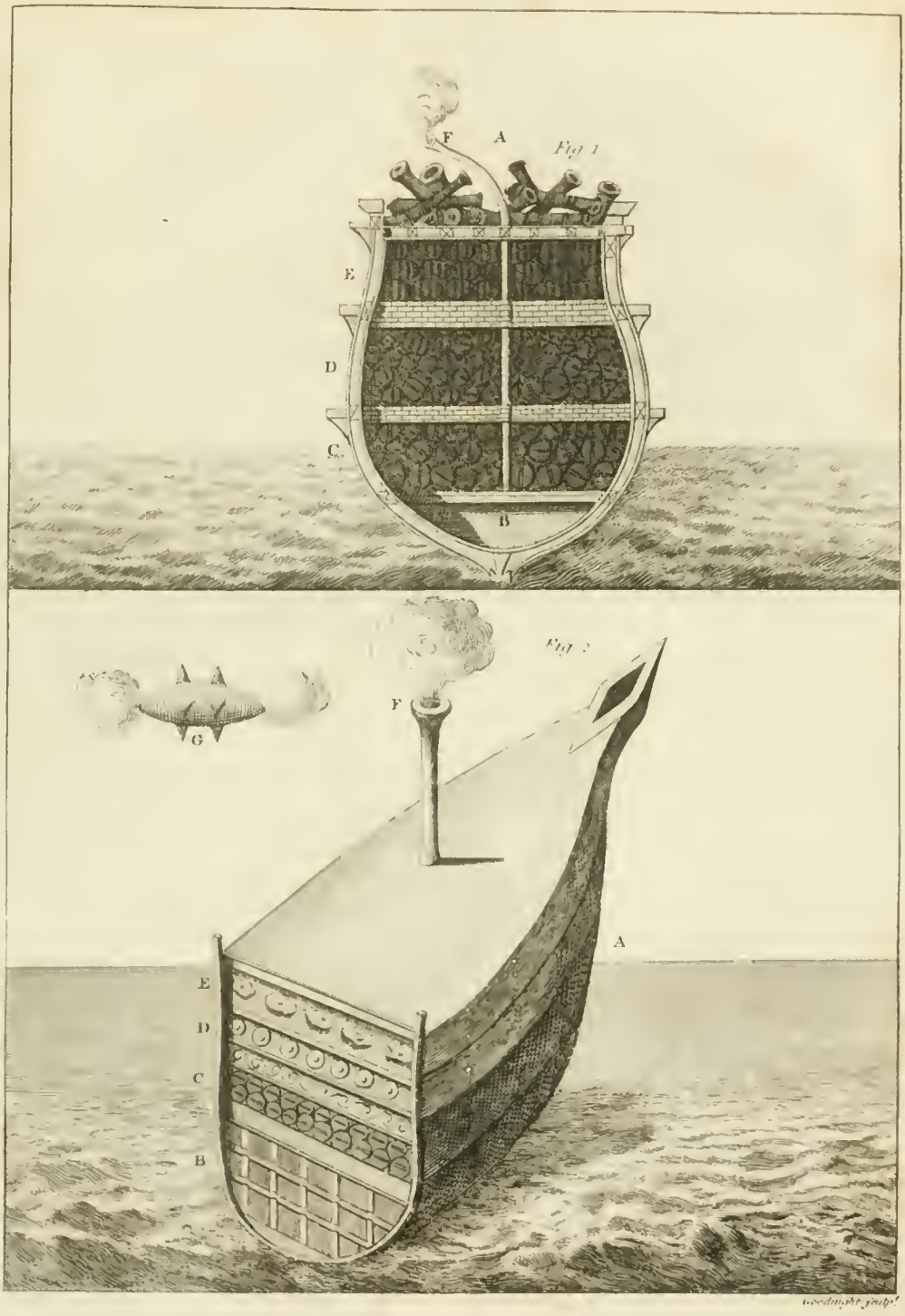
THE great deſtruction made by theſe cauſed ſeveral others to be tried, but none of them by any means ſucceeded. At Dunkirk, and St. Maloes, they were tried by the Engliſh; at Havre de Grace by the Engliſh and Dutch, under King William; and one was conſtructed by the French, to be uſed againſt Algiers, in 1688, but was not made uſe of.

IN St. Remi's Memoirs of Artillery, there is a ſection and view of the infernal uſed by the Dutch and Engliſh at St. Maloes, which is copied in this work; with it is the following deſcription; fig. 1. A, ſection or profile of the machine; B, bottom of the veſſel filled with ſand; C, lower deck filled with twenty thouſand pounds of powder, with a covering of maſonry a foot thick; D, ſecond deck furniſhed with ſix hundred bombs and carcaſſes, having two feet of maſonry over it; E, third deck above the gaillard, furniſhed with fifty barrils, hooped with iron, filled full of all ſorts of fireworks.

F, CANAL, or tube for conducting the fire to the powder, and to the priming; G, fig. 2, iron inſtruments, fifty in number, filled with fireworks, and armed with points, whereby they would, if they fell on wood, ſtick faſt to it.

THE machine or veſſel was thirty-four feet in length, eighteen in height, and drew nine feet water; the upper deck was covered with old iron cannon and langridge, it broke a great number of windows and uncovered many houſes without any other effect; one part of the veſſel did not blow up; by what remained its conſtruction was known.

IN no department of the army or of military ſcience has ſo great improvement and increaſe been made as in the artillery; particularly



The INTERNAL used by the English — of Mah

within the laſt fifty years *. Inſtead of being merely an appendage to an army, the artillery is now the principal arm by which the ſucceſs of campaigns and the fate of battles is decided. In the ſixteenth century, according to Macchiavel, the ſmall number of pieces of ordnance attached to an army ſeldom made more than one diſcharge; the troops were ſo awkward in the management of their clumſy guns, that the cavalry in general was able to charge them, before they could load again, after once firing. From this moment the artillery could have no ſhare in the action. But now, beſides the guns attached to each battalion, whole brigades of ordnance are employed, and combine their movements with thoſe of the other parts of an army.

The royal regiment of artillery does not date its eſtabliſhment beyond the commencement of the preſent century. From ſmall beginnings it has gradually been augmented to five battalions, each conſiſting of 10 companies and above 1200 officers and men. There is beſides a battalion of artillery invalids, and two companies ſtationed in the Eaſt Indies.

---

* In 1745 the whole of our artillery, employed in the campaign againſt the French in Flanders, conſiſted of the following pieces:

10	Six-pounders,	Heavy metal.
27	Three ditto,	
6	Gallopers.	
4	Eight-inch howitzers.	
Total 47		

The gradual augmentation may be ſeen from the following return of the ordnance in Germany, anno 1762.

18	Twelve-pounders, heavy, medium and light.
58	Six-pounders, of which 24 heavy and 34 light.
4	Royal howitzers.
8	Eight-inch mortars.
Total 88	

THE moſt novel inſtitution in this branch of the military art is the horſe-artillery, by which the force of cavalry and ordnance is united, and the moſt rapid movements executed with machines, that were once ſo cumbrous. Frederick II., in his laſt war, firſt mounted ſome artillery men on horſeback; but it was the French, who, at the commencement of the preſent, brought this inſtitution to the improved ſtate in which it now is, and ſo forcibly demonſtrated its utility and efficacy, that it has been introduced into ſeveral other countries. The Britiſh government was among the firſt to adopt it; and we have now ſix troops of horſe-artillery, not inferior to thoſe of a prior eſtabliſhment *.

---

* BRIGADE of Horſe-Artillery, ſix troops;

Colonel	1	Bombardiers	42
Lieutenant-Colonels	2	Gunners	582
Major	1	Gunner-Drivers	426
Captains	6	Farriers	24
Captain-Lieutenants	6	Smiths	6
Firſt Lieutenants	12	Collar-Makers	12
Second Lieutenants	6	Wheelers	6
Adjutant	1	Trumpeters	6
Quarter-Maſter	1		1195
Surgeon	1		
Aſſiſtant-Surgeons	4		
Riding-Maſter	1	Horſes.	
Serjeant-Majors	6	Riding	618
Quarter-Maſter Serjeants	7	Draft	858
Serjeants	18		1476
Corporals	18		

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

[*T. Daviſon, Lombard-ſtreet, Whitefriars.*]

UA
649
G75
1801
v.1
Grose, Francis
Military antiquities respecting a history of the English army. New ed.
Erindale College

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET